

EBCWA



“About the time of the end a body of men will be raised up who will turn their attentions to the Prophecies and insist upon their literal interpretation in the midst of much clamour and opposition” – Sir Isaac Newton

LAST WORDS COMMENTARY

DANIEL.

by

DR. PETER MOSES
(Revised Dr John C McEwan)

[BOOK 1]

Revised Easter 17 April 2022

WHO IS JESUS CHRIST?

Professor Simon Greenleaf was one of the most eminent lawyers of all time. His "Laws of Evidence" for many years were accepted by all States in the United States as the standard methodology for evaluating cases. He was teaching law at a university in the United States when one of his students asked Professor Greenleaf if he would apply his "Laws of Evidence" to evaluate an historical figure. When Greenleaf agreed to the project he asked the student who was to be the subject of the review. The student replied that the person to be examined would be Jesus Christ. Professor Greenleaf agreed to undertake the examination of Jesus Christ and as a result, when he had finished the review, Simon Greenleaf personally accepted the Lord Jesus Christ as his Saviour.

Professor Greenleaf then sent an open letter to all jurists in the United States saying in part "I personally have investigated one called Jesus Christ. I have found the evidence concerning him to be historically accurate. I have also discovered that Jesus Christ is more than a human being, he is either God or nothing and having examined the evidence it is impossible to conclude other than he is God. Having concluded that he is God I have accepted him as my personal Saviour. I urge all members of the legal profession to use the "Laws of Evidence" to investigate the person of the Lord Jesus Christ and if you find that he is wrong expose him as a faker but if not consider him as your Saviour and Lord"

HOW CAN I BE SAVED?

Salvation is available for all members of the human race.

Salvation is the most important undertaking in all of God's universe. The salvation of sinners is never on the basis of God's merely passing over or closing His eyes to sin. God saves sinners on a completely righteous basis consistent with the divine holiness of His character. This is called grace. It relies on God so man cannot work for salvation, neither can he deserve it. We need to realise that the creation of this vast unmeasured universe was far less an undertaking than the working out of God's plan to save sinners.

However the acceptance of God's salvation by the sinner is the most simple thing in all of life. One need not be rich, nor wise, nor educated. Age is no barrier nor the colour of one's skin. The reception of the enormous benefits of God's redemption is based upon the simplest of terms so that there is no one in all this wide universe who need be turned away.

How do I become a Christian?

There is but one simple step divided into three parts. First of all I have to recognise that I am a sinner (Romans 3:23; 6:23; Ezekiel 18:4; John 5:24).

Secondly, realising that if I want a relationship with Almighty God who is perfect, and recognising that I am not perfect, I need to look to the Lord Jesus Christ as the only Saviour (I Corinthians 15:3; 1 Peter 2:24; Isaiah 53:6; John 3:16).

Thirdly, by the exercise of my own free will I personally receive the Lord Jesus Christ as my Saviour, believing that He died personally for me and that He is what He claims to be in an individual, personal and living way (John 1:12; 3:36; Acts 16:31; 4:12).

The results of Salvation

The results of this are unbelievably wonderful:
My sins are taken away (John 1:29),
I possess eternal life now (I John 5:11,12),
I become a new creature in Christ (2 Corinthians 5:17),
The Holy Spirit takes up His residence in my life (I Corinthians 6:19),
And I will never perish (John 10:28-30).

This truthfully is life's greatest transaction. This is the goal of all people; this is the ultimate of our existence. We invite and exhort any reader who has not become a Christian by trusting in the Lord Jesus Christ to follow these simple instructions and be born again eternally into God's family (Matthew 11:28; John 1:12; Acts 4:12; 16:31).

© Evangelical Bible College of Western Australia 2004 - 2022

Many other Christian resources are available freely from our internet web site: www.ebcwa.org.au www.ebcwa.com and www.orakeibaptist.co.nz for weekly messages and

For further information contact Dr Peter Moses at pjmoses@bigpond.com.au or email Brian Huggett brianhuggett@bigpond.com.au

We encourage you to freely copy and distribute these materials to your Pastor and friends. You only need written permission from EBCWA if you intend using the materials in publications for resale. We encourage wide distribution freely!

CONTENTS

ITEM	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	3
CHAPTER 1	11
CHAPTER 2	26
CHAPTER 3	51
CHAPTER 4	68
CHAPTER 5	85
CHAPTER 6	102
CHAPTER 7	116
CHAPTER 8	135
CHAPTER 9	147
CHAPTER 10	166
CHAPTER 11	177
CHAPTER 12	198
DOCTRINE INDEX	209
EZEKIEL CHAPTERS 38-39	211
APPENDICES	226

INTRODUCTION (2 Peter 3:1-18)

Daniel is one of the most attacked books in the Bible. The conservatives see Daniel as a prophet, the liberals as a historian; as they do not believe in the supernatural and therefore write their commentaries on that basis. The liberals have to take this position due to the great accuracy of the history that Daniel records in advance. They say that “whoever he was”, he wrote history in a prophetic form to “sell” his works, so that they say he was a “fake” in the promotional business, and some even delight in saying he is “unmasked” as a fraud..... Liberals cannot have prophetic words, for they have a “god” who doesn’t “speak”. We believe God spoke to the real man Daniel, ruler in two Empires, and that he recorded real visions and details of his life, and that we have it here before us for these present days as encouragement.

We are therefore faced with a choice as to how we see the book. Do we take a literal or figurative approach to interpretation? If you take it literally you come face to face with the Great Tribulation, Millennium and the reality of an Antichrist, all of which the liberal theologian does not want to allow will be fulfilled literally. It is therefore very important to ascertain where the writers of commentaries on Daniel are coming from before you get “sucked in to” their viewpoint. We must allow the Scriptures to speak to us and if necessary modify our theological system rather than twist the Bible to suit our own preconceived ideas. Prophecy is one area where this is particularly important. **2 Peter 3:1-18.**

The liberal unbelievers hate, or mock, and then ignore this book. The book of Daniel can be defended and we will see that it can do away with all the presuppositions of liberal theology. It offends a large number of people by the directness of the prophetic words contained within its twelve chapters. There is no other book where prophecy is so clear and so detailed, and where so many things have been so clearly fulfilled. This is no fake like the Apocrypha and the pseudo-apocalyptic; this is the real words of a servant of God who heard the Word from God and recorded it. This is not “apocalyptic literature”, for that “genre” is an invention of the liberals to try to lump Daniel in with the satanic garbage that follows it in later periods. Satan has taken great care and attention to develop many fake “apocalypics” from the Maccabean period to the Gnostics of the fourth century of our era – that indicates his hatred of this book before us, and the truth that follows in The Revelation, six hundred years later. Satan hates this book for very good reasons – it reveals God’s Plan, and Satan’s alternatives each step of the way.

We believe here we see a supernatural God revealing himself to man. There are many fulfilled and also unfulfilled prophecies in the book of Daniel. People who attack this book hate the very thought of an all knowing infinite God who speaks to his creatures. There is no sound reason why Daniel, like any other book in the Scriptures, could not be considered to be authoritative, except unsaved people don’t like to be “told” anything. Like the enemy of mankind, Satan himself, they prefer independent arrogance to worshipful humility before their Creator, King and Saviour.

The main so called “intellectual problem” for the liberals, is their rejection of the inerrancy and inspiration of the Word of God. They presuppose that miracles **do not** occur, that God cannot talk to His creatures, and then they try and use debatable academic points to eliminate the authoritative nature of the Word of God. This is not an academic issue, it’s a volitional one! What do people prefer to label as “fake”, and what will they bow before as “real”? Satan hates Daniel!

Of the two books, Daniel and the Revelation, Daniel is the first one to study, as it sets the stage for the later revelation given to John. This book has had a great affect on people. It caused a reduction in the level of polytheism in the Middle East at the time of the Persian Empire, and was of critical significance for Ezra and Nehemiah and the last prophets. It was at this time of Daniel that a lot of things happened in the world, with the rise of Philosophy in Greece, Buddhism, the Sikhs and Confucius. Rationalism is the basis of these great changes. Daniel provides the prophetic information that will in end times convict and challenge all the deceived followers of all other religions – each of which will have been taken over by the Anti-Christ in the Tribulation. It is Daniel’s central position that explains why the satanic puts so much energy into the fake “apocalyptic genre writings” in later centuries, so that he could muddy the waters and distract from the words here in Daniel, but also in Ezekiel and Zechariah, and then later the New Testament revelation.

Up to the time of Daniel, indeed from the days of Moses, the Jews had been the nation responsible under God for the Scriptures. In Daniel’s life time however they went into captivity, showing the start of what Daniel will be shown is, “The Times of the Gentiles”. This period of time continues right up until the Second Advent of the Lord Jesus Christ, when he comes to destroy the last of the great gentile kingdoms that have oppressed God’s people. Daniel’s greatest application for believers in helping them understand the “times and seasons” of their own day, is still yet to come fully, but it begins.

The concept of the four kingdoms based on Daniel, was used in Germany in the nineteenth century by the philosopher Hegel, with the view that there would be the Oriental Kingdom, the Kingdom of Greece, the Kingdom of Rome and the Kingdom of Germany. This concept was also adopted by Marx, as the basis of Communism, which he saw as the “inheritor” of the great kingdoms of the past, and their replacement. Both the Nazis and the Communists have fallen, proving their viewpoints short term satanic falsehoods, but the last greatest satanic falsehood is still to come, and Daniel tells us plainly, that it will be Western; and it will be the inheritor of the Roman Empire. Modern concerns about Islam, China, and other forces being dominant in these “last days” are anxious falsehoods. The “Evil Empire” that ends the “times of the Gentiles” was always going to be Western European – we have God’s Word on it – from Daniel. Do you start to see believer, if you didn’t before, why Satan and his supporters hate this little book?

They argue there are a number of so called “critical problems” in Daniel, and they will be dealt with as they arise in the text, for each are, we will see, pagan side tracks from the message, and the message must be heard in the last days, for the unbelievers will then see that Daniel was right in all details. It is this little book that will confound the so called “wise”

critics of our days, and challenge all thinkers in these last days to face the choice for their own eternal destiny, as the powers of evil gather and consolidate into the final form of rebellion that Daniel warns us in advance about.

LOCATION OF THE BOOK OF DANIEL IN THE BIBLE

The first “critical” problem is the location of the book of Daniel. The Hebrew canon was divided into three parts. The first part is the Torah or Pentateuch, the five books of Moses. The second is the Nabiim or Prophets, and the third the Kethubim or the Writings.

As we in the West think, it would be expected that Daniel, with the considerable amount of prophecy in it, would be in the second grouping, but it is in the third, the Writings. Daniel is therefore seen by the critics/liberals as a “wisdom book” rather than a prophetic book. The problem with this “critical” opinion is its clear falsehood, as seen in its very origin and nature – it is “western” thinking, and not the way the Hebrew Canon is organized. This “western viewpoint” enables the liberal/unbelieving critics to make everything in Daniel “figurative”, and “part of the genre of apocalyptic writings”, which are seen only as giving “meaning making” stories, at best teaching philosophical principles, rather than having any specific prophetic significance and literal fulfillment.

The liberals (unbelievers, or better Fakes - “make-believers”) say that as Daniel is not in the Prophets Section, which they say are all written before the Writings, then it must be a late writing (ignoring Psalms), and so the detailed prophecy that has been fulfilled is in fact written history, and that the author (“whoever he was”) is “unmasked”; he was pretending it was prophecy. They used to say that it is written around 150 BC. They do have a major problem here, for one or more of the Dead Sea Scrolls copies of the book of Daniel date to far older than that, and it clearly is a copy of an older authoritative copy.....and the same scribe who copied the Isaiah Scroll copied Daniel, with the same care, “as Scripture!”

Ignoring the historically known facts, the liberals starting premise is that the prophecies cannot be real, and due to its accuracy the book must post date the historical events, and come from after the closure of the Old Testament Canon which terminated with the book of Malachi around 400 BC. As already noted however, one of the Dead Sea Scrolls has been dated very early, possibly even before the Maccabean Wars, which if true in itself defeats this viewpoint. Remember, the same scribe who produced the “Isaiah Scroll” from Qumran produced one of the copies of Daniel from there, clearly considering both the same inspired “Scripture”, and copying both from earlier scripture copies that went back another hundred+ years at least before.

It is also very easy, if you are a keen historian, focused on “facts” to get back 160+ years by oral history from reliable people, and be certain of events from that date. Dr McEwan wrote the history of the Naval Volunteers of Auckland (“Auckland Rockies” 1858 - 1995, Published by the RNZN Museum in 1995). As part of his research he spoke with many elderly people about recollections of their early years, and the stories their grand-parents told them, and was able in the 1980s to speak to an elderly historian in Blockhouse Bay about her conversations with her grand-mother in the early 1920s about her life in the 1860s in the “Block-house” that gave Blockhouse Bay its name. Pause and reflect on this, for written and photographic data backed the stories recounted. We are now in 2022 and Dr McEwan is just seventy, and if he lives to eighty, in the 2030s he will still be able to accurately speak of events of the 1860s! This is a gap of 170 years, and if we add that to the scribe who wrote a careful copy of Daniel as Scripture, then we must assert that he had to be sure that Daniel wasn't written by a fake pretending to be Daniel, given that he could have known that it was around for at least 170 years by his day! He could be sure of historicity back to the days of Alexander the Great in the 320s BC – who Daniel spoke prophetically about.... Think believer – think – the liberals don't think, and are not even mediocre historians!

The other premise that they believe/argue, is that the Torah, Prophets, and Writings, represent chronological sections of the Old Testament. The Scriptures however are organized by the ancient spiritual leaders of Israel (probably firstly by Ezra) under a topical system. The sections are best seen as, the Priests, the Prophets, and the Wise Men.

The Priests were the Levites who were ordained to teach the law and lead in worship. Their main section was the Torah, written by Moses, a son of Levi. This is not the oldest part of the Bible, but is the foundation for all following revelation. (The oldest book is Job – written possibly before 2500 BC). The Prophets added to the revelation of the Torah. Placing the prophetic works after the Torah showed that the Torah was being amplified, explained, or applied into history by the prophetic voices of Israel; many men born as priests being prophets also, like Samuel, Jeremiah, Ezekiel.

The “Wise Men”, were by Hebrew thought, the people who took the Word of God and applied it into the courtly, political, and religious life of the nation. The Psalms, Proverbs, Song of Solomon are the application of the doctrinal principles of other sections into real life situations. They had other formal “roles” other than “prophet”, but gave prophetic messages at time, and both Daniel and David are in this category as political leaders, but also having prophetic messages. The application of the “Writings” often includes significant prophetic “words”, and most of the “wisdom” books of Israel contain significant prophecies, especially the Psalms.

The Psalms are also the song books of the nation, Proverbs the “school books” of wisdom, applying wisdom into the very fabric of the details of daily life, and the Song of Solomon deals with sex and marriage. Daniel was not seen by those who formed the Old Testament Canon primarily as a book of prophecy, although it contains much significant prophecy as does Psalms. They saw the application of the prophetic words into political life as being central to the purpose of the book, just as they did with Psalms and Proverbs. They saw it as a very practical book of political wisdom, where through the application of the prophetic words within it, and walking spiritually as Daniel and his friends did, any believer can live

powerfully and with stability of mind, in the various sequential “gentile kingdoms of man”, without fear as to the eventual outcome of history. As David is the mentor of sanctification for us as godly King, so Daniel is the mentor of living as a successful godly politician in the often ‘anti-God/believer Gentile kingdoms of man’, for he has his eyes set on the Lord who is coming to end the kingdoms of men.

The type of literature that we have in Daniel is referred to as “prophetic-apocalyptic literature”. The liberals call it “literature” to emphasize their point that these are the “works of men”, not the Word of God. The Bible is not to be seen as literature – it is revelation, but that revelation comes through Holy Spirit filled and led men, who will utilize many “genre” to express the truths revealed. (Refer to the Doctrine of Inspiration in the Bible Topic Book). Included in this category of “apocalyptic genre” by most unbelieving/liberal “scholars” are Isaiah 24-27, much of Ezekiel, Daniel [chapters 2,7,8,10-12], Zechariah 1-6 and the Book of the Revelation; so be careful of swallowing their apparent logic too quickly.

How you interpret the book of the Revelation will be determined by your attitude to these far earlier Old Testament prophetic writings. The spread of the time frame of this form of divine revelation by visions, at times with angelic involvement, is from 700 BC (Isaiah – although the liberals will reject the early date for Isaiah as they do with Daniel) to 96 AD (John); not the short time frame of the few centuries before our era. The liberals who attack Daniel attack all other similar passages of Scripture that contain serious prophetic elements. They want them to be “literature that teach principles”; they cannot abide the concept of a prophetic word from God, and they certainly cannot accept that God revealed world history in advance, as He clearly does through Daniel and John.

This “Prophetic-Apocalyptic” type of revelation occurred towards the mid-point of the Old Testament period. Moses writes around 1400 BC, Isaiah around 700 BC, as the Northern Kingdom has been judged and removed from history. God’s People are suffering more and more under the attacks of evil empires (Assyrian Especially for Isaiah). It is a time of disaster and attempted genocide by the enemies of Israel, and Israel is moving by their spiritual disobedience to the Lord’s clear revelation, to the place where it will be set aside as a nation. Isaiah sees the end of the Northern Kingdom, and by Daniel’s day the Southern Kingdom ends, and the “Times of the Gentiles” has begun.

The liberal so called “scholars” argue that the genre of apocalyptic literature rises to the fore when you have major disasters, when things are very bad for people. They argue that it was “designed” by its authors to encourage people to persist and await deliverance, because God’s final objectives are certain. It has a pessimistic short term view, and is brutally honest about the nature and duration of suffering, but has an optimistic long term view, for it focuses upon God’s Plan unfolding through, and in spite of, the assaults of satanic people. This is logical, but we argue humanistic, where-as we are facing God speaking to his people at a turning point in redemptive history, and so we expect something different.

Our position on these so called “apocalyptic genre elements” in Isaiah, Daniel and the others, is that they reflect simply a shift in God’s revelation to his prophets as the days of Israel as a monarchy come to their end, and the, “Times of the Gentiles”, begins. These “elements” are not to be seen as men’s genre inventions, but as simply new and challenging aspects of the revelation of God at this “Age Shifting” time. Israel was ending as a kingdom when this sort of prophetic message begins, and Judah is ending as a separate kingdom as Daniel is carried off into Babylonian Captivity, and Ezekiel will be written in captivity, and Zechariah after it ends. We are to pay attention to each thing said by God’s chosen prophetic voices, and hear what God is saying, and see God’s reasons and the message behind the shift in the manner of prophetic revelation. We are not to read into the 6th Century BC text, 21st century AD theological concepts like “genre” – this is God’s Word – let’s hear it – within the context it was written. Let us hear the prophets speak as they did!

Some of the visions we meet through these centuries (700 BC – 96 AD) are mediated through angels, and we must remember that the Law itself was also mediated through angels, and by the Lord himself speaking with Moses. Often there is dialogue between the prophetic writer and the teaching angel as to the meaning of a certain concept or phrase, and the angel explains things. We will pause and reflect on each thing revealed, and we will be hearing the angels, as they are God’s messengers to pass on things we need to hear, understand, and act upon. Another characteristic of the visions received, is that there are many strange symbolic things, and yet what is communicated is literal in its application. We therefore need to define the meaning and application of symbols correctly. Often the symbols revealed in these books are repeated in the other books that follow right down to the Book of Revelation. Scripture interprets Scripture here. Refer Appendix 1 for a discussion of the unbelieving liberal phrase, “apocalyptic genre literature”.

DANIEL AND DAVID – Both men having the biblical “Gift of Prophet”, but not the “Office”.

Remember, Daniel was not placed in the prophet’s area of the Jewish Canon but in the writings. Daniel like David did not have the office of prophet, but both men have the “gift of prophet”, and speak in some places the prophetic material they were given, and thereby fulfil their part in the divine plan. Remember, the Psalms are not in the area of “the prophets” as well, although they contain significant prophetic material about the Lord’s First and Second Advents.

DANIEL AND EZEKIEL

Daniel was a senior official in the Babylonian court and then the replacement Persian court. His call is to exercise the role of Prime Minister, with the occasional gift of prophet, whereas his contemporary Ezekiel had both the gift and office of prophet, although, like Jeremiah, was born a priest. Daniel will be a key person in the life of the younger prophets, Zechariah and Haggai, who will be part of the return to Jerusalem in 535 BC under Zerubbabel and Joshua.

Daniel is also a crucial person in history, in being able to use the political power he has received from God, to receive the completed work of Jeremiah from Baruch, when it is delivered to him after Jeremiah's death in Egypt, and he is able to pass on all the prophetic material to the younger prophets for their return. He may have played a crucial part in the safe keeping of the scrolls of the Law and the other scrolls captured from the Temple when it fell in 586 BC. Only in heaven will we know all the things that Daniel did – but he is a key person in history, and did far more than is recorded here. Unlike those who attack him Daniel is not interested in telling his story, but only what the Holy Spirit directs. There is no arrogance with this man Daniel, and he is truly the humble servant of the Lord. Of the arrogant critics who attack him I think of Sir Winston Churchill's observation, that such critics have a great deal to be humble about, but their arrogance stops them seeing their limitations.

Daniel is not writing "apocalyptic" prophetic literature, or practical revelation type of writings; we need to avoid all these liberal concepts to really see Daniel as God wants us to see him. He is writing critical information he has personally received, and placing it into his own historic context as a leader within two of the first Gentile Empires, and his clear purpose is to brief God's people on their tasks as they re-establish their State, but as a Province of a Gentile Empire, awaiting the returning King of kings. Zerubbabel is entitled to be a king, but will never claim the title, for he is well briefed by Daniel on the situation the Jews face – they are waiting for the King of kings! We could call Daniel's work an "Apocalypse", but only if we remember that the word does not mean the "chaos of darkness", it means "unveiling of the light"; so it was an unveiling, making something prophetic clear for application into the very fabric of daily life for his people and all subsequent peoples. It is a book that orients all people to the First and Second Advents of Messiah!

In these things he has a common thread with Ezekiel, both of whom were encouraged by the older prophet Jeremiah. Daniel did not live to see many of the things he had written be fulfilled, but he did live through the first transition of Empires within the "Age/Times of the Gentiles", which begins the year of his captivity, 605 BC. Within 600 years, a lot of the things which he had written about, had come to pass. Some however are still future even now in 2022.

THE "TIMES OF THE GENTILES"

Daniel makes clear that 606/605 BC commences the "Times of the Gentiles", and that until the time of the Messiah's triumphant return as King, Jerusalem would be "trodden underfoot by the Gentiles". Jewish kings thereafter only rule courtesy of the controlling Gentile Power. We remain in this period today, with Israel existing only courtesy of Western Powers. Nebuchadnezzar's capture of Judah was an epoch changing time, and so the nature of revelation shifts to underline this fact. The clock starts ticking for world history from this date, and we are coming to the end of this time.

There were a succession of peoples who would do that "trampling"; the Babylonians, Persians, Greeks, Romans, Turks and even with Israel back in the land in substantial numbers, there is still Gentile support for them and coercion of them from the "eagle bearing" Gentile nations like America. Daniel however makes it clear that the "time of the Gentiles" is not a permanent thing, but that Israel will come back in power to spirituality at a future point, take spiritual rulership of all the nations, but only in ruling power under Messiah's Kingship. The Second Advent alone ends the "Times of the Gentiles".

In chapter 9 Daniel says that the Messiah will come initially, but that He will be rejected and cut off, and that Israel will then cease to play a major role in the Plan of God for a long period, although still remain at the centre of the Plan of God. Daniel further says that the Lord would return to Israel after a period of Great Tribulation, and that then the time of the Gentiles would come to an end, with the King's return. The history prophesied by Daniel has so far been fulfilled literally, but still we are in the "times of the Gentiles" in 2022. **We believe** that as all fulfilled elements from this book have been fulfilled literally so far, then so will the rest of the prophetic words here be literally fulfilled. We argue that this is the only logical theological perspective on Daniel's words!

We approach this study from a pre millennial viewpoint because we believe this viewpoint makes the most sense in light of already fulfilled prophecy. Daniel reveals a literal First and Second Advent, and a literal Millennium, and his younger protégé Zechariah will receive additional revelation to underline that. If the first event was literal so will the next two!

In addition John the Apostle, Paul, and all the early church fathers, all believed in a literal Second Advent and a literal Millennium, and we make no apology for standing with them. **Jude 3.** We will not fall out with you if you differ with us, but understand that this is our position on the basis of a straight forward reading of Daniel and the other books within their historical ancient context. We read Daniel in terms of "as and when it was written", not in accordance with the viewpoints and unbeliefs of so called and self appointed "scholars" in liberal seminaries today.

DANIEL AND ALEXANDER THE GREAT

That the book of Daniel was written and in common usage prior to the fourth century BC is shown by Josephus who recounts the event of the meeting of Alexander the Great and the High Priest of Israel in 331 BC. Please don't be fooled by unbelieving so called "scholars" over this incident, because the only explanation for Jerusalem being spared and the Jews given a special role in Alexander's Empire is given by Josephus' account. The same liberals who attack Daniel attack Josephus as a "myth maker", but his passage on Alexander's reception in Jerusalem is the only record that makes sense of events, and the subsequent joining of so many Jews into his supporting army groups.

Alexander was leading the Greeks in an expedition to conquer the Persian Empire and well before he left Macedonia and arrived at Jerusalem he had a vision in which he saw a great multitude dressed in white, coming down a hill to greet

him. This group Alexander saw was being led by a person in the exact regalia of the High Priest of Israel, although he had no knowledge of this at the time of the vision.

On hearing of the coming of the Greeks to besiege Tyre, and seeing what they had done to other cities on the way the High Priest prayed seriously about what to do, although he initially held the city in loyalty for the Persians, and didn't provide Alexander with provisions at Tyre, that he had asked for. God answered him in a vision, and led the High Priest to study the book of Daniel. He clearly then saw Alexander portrayed in the book of Daniel, identifying in the prophetic words in various places that a Greek would come and conquer the Persian Empire. In the vision the Lord showed the High Priest what he should wear and that he should lead the entire population out of the city, all dressed in white, to welcome Alexander and his army, and then offer sacrifices for his success, for he would succeed.

Alexander the Great was ready to destroy the city of Jerusalem for their refusal to provide supplies for him at Tyre, as more "pay" for his troops, but when he saw the High Priest leading the people out of the city he got off his horse and bowed low before the Priest, much to the consternation of his fellow Macedonians. The High Priest then read very "selected sections" of Daniel (**Daniel 7:1-6, 8:1-8a**) to Alexander in the hearing of his generals.

At this Alexander was very pleased as he saw this person referred to by Daniel 200 years before quite rightly as himself. The meeting had taken place outside Jerusalem with the High Priest in full regalia and all the people dressed in white. Sacrifices were then offered for Alexander, and many Jews joined his army, and followed it, spreading their synagogues throughout the Greek world, all ready for the evangelism of the apostles 360 years later. This incident shows that Daniel was written well before 200 BC (from where we have copies now) as it was part of the Hebrew Scriptures at that time of 331 BC. It is therefore clear that Daniel is a prophetic and historic book, and not a literary historic piece of fraud (liberal view). The liberals cannot accept that "God speaks" directly into situations this way, so they must reject the whole thing.

DANIEL IN EXILE

Daniel and his contemporaries were taken into exile on the first attack on Jerusalem in 605 BC. He served as a eunuch in the court with Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego. He led Nebuchadnezzar to a saving knowledge of the Lord and brought him through to faith. Daniel 4. We believe this is historic fact, not myth, and we expect to see both Nebuchadnezzar and Cyrus the Great in heaven. As we go through these sections, keep thinking and be discerning and see what your personal conclusion is. We will not fall out with you over this if you disagree, but think deeper than the dodgy liberals do on this matter. This book is a critical one to "get right" in these presently darkening days.

He was there at the fall of the Babylonian Empire under Belshazzar/Bel-shur-usar in 538 BC, and as we will see, most likely an active plotter for the Medio-Persian ascendancy. He is personally pro-Median, and remains so to the end, a confidant of the Median princesses/queens of the later Empire – which saves both he and Queen Nitocris in the end, although her unsaved son Belshazzar dies. Daniel continued through under Darius/Cyrus (most likely Cyrus' Persian and Median names) and was thrown into the lion's den in his late eighties. He is a leader in the two first great Gentile Empires, which have a saved man at the top to start things; and he remains a man of faith and prayer. Daniel gained a reputation as an interpreter of other people's visions, and then his own, which predicted the future of all the key empires, right to the final return of the King of all. Renowned for his wisdom he occupied leading government posts under Nebuchadnezzar, possibly other kings of Babylon, although he was seen as "pro-Persian", and certainly was not invited to the "final" party, Daniel 5, but he is restored to pre-eminence by Cyrus the Great (aka Darius the Mede).

Daniel was quoted by Jesus in regard to the future erection of the "abomination of desolations", and so we have the Lord's certification of the trustworthiness of Daniel as a prophetic voice. Pause and reflect on this, for to reject Daniel is to say Jesus was wrong about him! It is said that when Daniel died he was buried in Susa. Many great believers served and are buried in Persia; Daniel, his three friends, Nehemiah, Esther, Mordecai and many many others. It is known that Daniel lived at least 73 years in captivity and thus died at a full age in his late eighties or early nineties (as John would).

DESOLATIONS

Because of national sin, Judah was brought under servitude to Babylon for 70 years from 606/605BC with king Jehoiakim ruling. The Servitude commenced with Nebuchadnezzar as the crown prince. Daniel and other hostages/members of the royal family were transferred to Babylon at this time. **Daniel 1:1-2**.

This first period of "desolations" ended in 536 when Cyrus the Great issued an edict which released the Jews to return to Jerusalem. The people returned to the destroyed city of Jerusalem in 535 BC. A period of 70 years had elapsed (first capture of the city in 605 – restoration in 535). The second period of 70 years of desolations runs from the destruction of the temple in 586 through until the new temple is completed and dedicated in 516 BC, with encouragement of the prophetic ministries of Zechariah and Haggai (both men trained and protected by Daniel, and saturated in the words of Jeremiah and Ezekiel through Daniel's ability as ruler to get all needed biblical material to them).

Captured people's religious books were especially important to lay out and preserve in the key temple of the conquering people. Not just the holy vessels from the temple at Jerusalem were kept in the temple of Babylon's chief god, but the texts that were central to Jewish life were also there. They were true "trophy of war", but would form the spiritual foundation for the re-establishment of the second temple under Joshua the High Priest. They would also be respected and read by both Nebuchadnezzar and Cyrus, and Daniel's advice was given in accordance with the texts of Scripture. Oh, you may not know, but the same liberals who hate and despise Daniel, don't believe there are any significant

Hebrews Scriptures until the days of Ezra around 450 BC..... Ezra is called the “great Scribe” by them, but what they mean is that he is the “great fabricator...”, the inventor of Moses and David...and the Exodus writer himself....

THE LANGUAGE OF DANIEL

This book is written in two languages, in both Hebrew, and in Aramaic, which was spoken in the Babylonian Empire. It is the only book in the Old Testament which is mixed in language and this mix reflects audibly the shift of Israel’s history in this time to being “under the gentile boot” until Messiah returns to rule. The Aramaic language will become the lingua franca of the Middle East from the Babylonian period (around 600 BC) through until Greek replaces it in the second century of our own era, and Arabic later in the 7th century. Aramaic is used to record the book of Daniel from Daniel 2:4 until 7:28, appropriately as it is the language of Babylon, and it “rules” over Israel. Refer to Appendix 2, to study the “invention” of the Koine Greek, by Alexander the Great. Hebrew returns as an official national language in our own day.

FULFILMENT OF DANIEL'S PROPHECY

The reformed theologians, who are mainly Amillennial, see Daniel fulfilled by the time that Christ came, and they believe that we are in the Millennium, which they interpret as another term for the Church Age/the Age of Grace. We however see the Millennium as still future, brought in by the physical return of the Lord Jesus to rule as King over all at the end of the Tribulation Period. A “literal hermeneutical” view and reading of the Scriptures confirms the second viewpoint we believe. Once again, don’t fall out with us on this, but read Daniel and revisit your presuppositions as we have our own.

To reinforce the validity of the latter view, note that the Empires of Daniel 2 and 7 have already been fulfilled literally. The Babylonian Empire was literal, the Medio-Persia, Greek, and Roman Empires were literal. The world we live in now is the world still dominated by the “mixed” strength nations of the Western Confederacy of EU-NATO-USA and Daniel is clear that they will dominate the world until the end, when Jesus returns to smash the Western “evil empire”.

NOTE - Daniel **does not teach** that the Moslem world will dominate, or is “evil”, but that the West is the centre of satanic evil, and will be until the time of Jesus return to defeat the last western emperor – the Anti-Christ himself - outside Jerusalem. Daniel will make clear that both the Arabs and Jews will together resist the Anti-Christ to the very end.

It is therefore reasonable and logical to believe, on the basis that all fulfilled to date has been literally fulfilled, that everything else will be literally fulfilled. Let us be clear on our hermeneutics (interpretation), and that means we should not change our interpretation method half way through a chapter, so Daniel 2:44 is going to have as literal an interpretation as the rest of chapter 2 has already had. This is the principle we will follow.

THE INTERTWINING THEMES OF DANIEL

The book of Daniel can be divided into fifty three sections with two major themes:-

- [a] Unbelievers attacks on the believer, and the believer’s faith-based reaction, and God’s provision.
- [b] Prophecy that keeps us looking up to God’s provision in his eternally prepared plan, which will certainly work out.

DANIEL BY CHAPTERS

- 1 The steadfast faithfulness of Daniel and his companions
2. Nebuchadnezzars vision of the image made of four metals
- 3 Nebuchadnezzars golden idol and the fiery furnace
4. Nebuchadnezzars dream of the ruined tree and its meaning
5. Belshazzers doom announced and the writing on the wall
6. Decree of Darius and the Den of Lions
7. Daniel's dream of four beasts representing four world empires
8. Daniel's vision of the ram and goat nations
9. Daniel's vision of the seventy weeks of Gentile domination
10. Vision of God's glory introducing an outline of coming events
11. Prophecies of the future history of the Middle East
12. Prophecies of the End Times

DIVISIONS IN DANIEL

In the following division of the book the following index is used to categorise the piece of Scripture

The Book of Daniel

- 01 - Decline of Judah and fall of Jerusalem 1:1-1:5
- 02 - Daniel decides to be true to God 1:6-1:14
- 03 - Delight of Nebuchadnezzar in the progress of the four 1:15-1:21
- 04 - The Dream of Nebuchadnezzar and his wise men 2:1-2:9
- 05 - Decree to destroy the wise men for their failure 2:10-2:13
- 06 - Daniel prays to the Lord regarding the dream 2:14-2:18
- 07 - Daniel describes the dream as a multi metallic image 2:19-2:35
- 08 - Definition of four world empires and their destinies 2:36-2:43
- 09 - Destruction of the Empires and forming of a kingdom 2:44-49
- 10 - Construction of the Image of Gold 3:1-3:2
- 11 - Dedication of the Golden Image 3:3-3:7
- 12 - Three Hebrews fail to worship the Image 3:8-3:12
- 13 - Three Hebrews declare the power of God 3:13-3:18e
- 14 - Three Hebrews preserved from the fiery furnace 3:19-3:27
- 15 - Nebuchadnezzar's decree concerning God 3:28-30
- 16 - Testimony of Nebuchadnezzar 4:1-4:3
- 17 - Dream of Nebuchadnezzar 4:4-4:18
- 18 - The dream interpreted by Daniel 4:19-4:27
- 19 - The mental illness of Nebuchadnezzar 4:28-4:33
- 20 - Dream fulfilled and Nebuchadnezzar restored 4:34-4:37
- 21 - Feast of Belshazzar 5:1-5:4
- 22 - The Writing on the Wall - 5:5-5:7
- 23 - Failure of the wise men to explain the handwriting 5:8-5:12
- 24 - Daniel spurns the King's gifts 5:13-24
- 25 - Daniel interprets the handwriting on the Wall 5:25-5:29
- 26 - Fall of Babylon 5:30-5:31
- 27 - Daniel's position under Darius the Mede 6:1-6:3
- 28 - Plot to destroy Daniel
- 29 - Prayer of Daniel 6:10-6:15
- 30 - Daniel in the Lions Den 6:16-6:17
- 31 - Daniel's deliverance 6:18-6:24
- 32 - Prosperity of Daniel and the Decrees of Darius 6:25-6:28

- 33 - Daniel's vision of the Four Beasts 7:1-7:8
- 34 - Vision of the Son of Man coming in the clouds 7:9-7:14
- 35 - The definition of the Four Beasts 7:15-7:18
- 36 - Explanation of the Fourth Beast 7:19-7:28
- 37 - Vision of the Ram and Goat 8:1-8:14
- 38 - Meaning of the Vision 8:15-8:27
- 39 - Prayer of Daniel 9:1-9:21
- 40 - Prophecy of the Seventy Weeks 9:22-9:27
- 41 - Preparation of Daniel for the vision 10:1-10:3
- 42 - Vision of Christ glorified 10:5-10:6
- 43 - Transforming effect on Daniel 10:7-10:9
- 44 - Message from a heavenly messenger 10:10-10:14
- 45 - Daniel assured and strengthened 10:15-10:21
- 46 - Vision continued 11:1-11:20
- 47 - Antiochus Epiphanes identified 11:21-11:35
- 48 - The man of sin in action 11:36-11:39
- 49 - Temporary victory of the willful king
- 50 - The Great Tribulation 12:1
- 51 - Resurrection of Old Testament saints 12:2-12:3
- 52 - Sealing of the Prophecy until the end 12:4-12:9
- 53 - The Abomination of Desolation and Conclusion 12:10-12:13

SUMMARY

In chapter 1 Daniel enters Gentile politics, Chapters 2-6 show the successful career of Daniel in politics, Chapters 7-12 is mainly visionary. In the last half of the book he learns an outline of history and its relationship to the destiny of the Jewish people. There will be no dogmatism from EBCWA about the final format of the fulfilment of Daniel's prophetic words. While we hold that the Pre-Millennial and Pre-Tribulational view of Eschatology appears to fit the biblical data best, we will not fall out with any who disagree with us. Our reason is seen in **Daniel 12:8-13**.

Only those living at the time will receive the last pieces of the divine jigsaw, and be led by the Holy Spirit to the right responses and actions. Until then we are to be humble in our assertions of how things will work out. Any anger or arrogance proves we are on the wrong side of theology, let alone history! By the spiritual "fruit" of our life we are to be known! **Matthew 7:13-23, Galatians 5:16-26**. Arrogance and arguing are signs of the enemy – let us have nothing to do with them.

CHAPTER 1

DIVISION OF CHAPTER 1

Chapter one of Daniel can be divided into three sections

[A] DECLINE OF JUDAH AND FALL OF JERUSALEM	VERSES 1 - 5
[B] DANIEL DECIDES TO BE TRUE TO GOD	VERSES 6 - 14
[C] DELIGHT OF NEBUCHADNEZZAR IN THE PROGRESS OF THE FOUR	VERSES 15 - 21

INTRODUCTION

After Nebuchadnezzar's stunning victory over Egypt at the battle of Carchemish he besieged Jerusalem for the first time. On this occasion Daniel was taken into captivity. The king of Judah, Jehoiakim, was left on the throne but as was Babylonian custom, part of his wealth and a number of the boys from the royal line were taken as hostages to be trained in the ways of the Chaldeans, so that they would bring in Chaldean rulership to their nation and lower risk of rebellion.

We know from Plato that the Persians began the education of royal hostages at the age of fourteen and it appears they were following the practices of the Chaldeans who preceded them. Xenophon, the Greek historian, tells us that they were educated up to the age of seventeen. In this case the captivity of certain children of Israel was also a fulfilment of **Isaiah 39:5-7**.

SOME OF THE MAIN CHARACTERS - Nabopolassar

Nabopolassar was the founder of the Neo Babylonian or Chaldean Empire which was divided into five main clans with their own clan chieftains: Bit Dakkuri, Bit Sa'alli, Bit Shilani, Bit Amukkani and Bit Yakin. Of the five, Bit Yakin is probably the most famous because it contributed so many kings and rulers.

One of them, another genius by the name of Berodach - Baladan (mentioned in 2 Kings 20:12 and Isaiah 39:1), was a primary antagonist of the Assyrian Empire while it was still great, and his descendants may be the family of Nabopolassar. We do not know to which clan Nabopolassar belonged but he pulled all the Chaldean clans together and revolted against the Assyrian Empire in 625 B.C, one year after Jeremiah starts his preaching ministry.

By conning the Assyrians, he became their recognized vassal king of Babylon, as had Berodach-Baladan some one hundred years before. During the struggles with Assyria, Nabopolassar united with Cyaxares, king of Media, and with the Scythians for a final assault on Nineveh in 612 BC. Thus one empire, Assyria, vanished, only to be replaced by another great empire known in history as the Chaldean (or Neo-Babylonian) Empire, and in God's economy it was the first of the empires, of the "Age of the Gentile Empires", that will dominate the Jews until the end, when Messiah returns.

Nebuchadnezzar

Crown Prince Nebuchadnezzar - A son of Nabopolassar, who succeeded his father as the ruler of the Chaldean Empire in 605 B.C. According to The Cambridge Ancient History, Vol. III, p. 212, ". . . Nebuchadnezzar was a vigorous and brilliant commander, and physically as well as mentally a strong man, fully worthy of succeeding his father. He was to become the greatest man of his time in the Near East, as a soldier, a statesman, and an architect." God's verdict is that he is the greatest of all the Gentile rulers of world history! He is the "head of gold", and all that unfolds, flows from him.

He was greatly concerned with construction and reconstruction, and the glory of Babylon was worldwide as a result of his building projects. He married a Median princess, Amythia, daughter of Cyaxares, the last great king of the Medes, which secured his kingdom from the north-east. It was for his wife that the famous hanging gardens of Babylon were built (considered by the Greeks the seventh wonder of the world). His reign of some forty-three years was one of the most glorious in the long history of Babylon. He was indeed, as God assigned him, the "head of gold" of all Gentile Kings. Excavations and inscriptions have confirmed that he was one of the great men of antiquity – God's verdict is that he is the greatest of all in history.

Jehoiakim

Jehoiakim - second son of Josiah, the last significant king of Judah. During the time that Nabopolassar was fighting the Assyrians, Egypt was trying to exert influence in Palestine. After Josiah had been slain at the Battle of Megiddo (2 Chronicles. 35:20-25) while resisting the progress of Pharaoh Necho another son of Josiah, Jehoahaz was raised to the throne of Judah. When Jehoahaz revolted against Egypt, Necho returned to Jerusalem, sent Jehoahaz to prison in Egypt to die, and placed Jehoiakim on the throne as a vassal king for the Egyptians.

Knowing the fate of his brother (who had been taken hostage and later died in Egypt), Jehoiakim remained loyal to Egypt when Nebuchadnezzar besieged Jerusalem for the first time in 606 BC. He didn't have the forces or the will to resist for long – the siege was short and he surrendered. Following the capture of the city, deportation of Daniel and other Royal Family hostages, Jehoiakim changed allegiance to the Chaldean Empire, and was re-appointed as king until 598 BC, but was fatally weakened in his thinking by this point, played politics with the pro-Egyptian faction, and did not heed the words of Jeremiah, as Hezekiah had heeded the words of Isaiah one hundred years before.

With the backing of the pro-Egyptian religious leadership of Judah, Jehoiakim revolted against Nebuchadnezzar, despite prophetic warnings against looking to Egypt for help. Nebuchadnezzar returned a second time to Jerusalem in 598 B.C. and Jehoiakim died and was buried during that siege. Nebuchadnezzar had Jehoiakim's body dug up and dragged behind his victorious army, in front of the captives he took that time (including Ezekiel), and it fell to pieces and was strewn along the road on the way back to Babylon, just as Jeremiah had prophesied in **Jeremiah 22:18-19**.

Coniah

Jehoiachin (also called Coniah in Jeremiah 22:24, and Jechonias in Matthew 1:12). After Jehoiakim died during the siege of Jerusalem in 598 BC, Jehoiachin, his son, reigned as the nineteenth king of Judah for about 100 days. He was young and foolish and did not surrender immediately as he ought to have done, but enjoyed the harem while the enemy besieged the city, foolishly thinking an Egyptian Army would deliver him, and he treated Jeremiah badly.

He did not think or act in terms of eternity, only being focused on the very temporary pleasures of time. He did not call for Jeremiah, nor read God's Word, but lived for sex and the trappings of royalty which he soon lost! His mother pleaded with him to surrender, and finally he did, and was taken into captivity.

When Nebuchadnezzar took the city, he removed Jehoiachin from the throne and replaced him with Mattaniah (another son of Josiah), changing his name to Zedekiah. Coniah, together with his mother, his wives, servants and princes, were all taken to Babylon as captives. He remained in prison for thirty-six years, until the death of Nebuchadnezzar.

Jeremiah 22:30 records the curse on Coniah for his fatal carnal stupidity, valuing his own sexual pleasures in the harem ahead of the suffering of his people in the siege that needed to be ended by surrender to the Babylonians. God's verdict on his carnality was that it was indeed evil that he did, which is recorded in 2 Kings 24:9. God promised that his seed would never reign on the throne of Judah. This explains why Joseph (who was of Coniah's seed - Matthew 1:12) could not be the natural father of Jesus Christ (although he was the legal father, descended from David) and this curse is therefore one of the reasons for the virgin birth of Christ.

SECTION 1 - DECLINE OF JUDAH AND FALL OF JERUSALEM 1:1-5

1 In the third year of the reign of Jehoiakim king of Judah came Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon unto Jerusalem, and besieged it. **2** And the Lord gave Jehoiakim king of Judah into his hand, with part of the vessels of the house of God: which he carried into the land of Shinar to the house of his god; and he brought the vessels into the treasure house of his god. **3** And the king spake unto Ashpenaz the master of his eunuchs, that he should bring certain of the children of Israel, and of the king's seed, and of the princes; **4** Children in whom was no blemish, but well favoured, and skilful in all wisdom, and cunning in knowledge, and understanding science, and such as had ability in them to stand in the king's palace, and whom they might teach the learning and the tongue of the Chaldeans. **5** And the king appointed them a daily provision of the king's meat, and of the wine which he drank: so nourishing them three years, that at the end thereof they might stand before the king.

KEY WORDS

Third	Shalosh	Three
Year	Shanah	Year
Reign	Malekuth	Kingdom
King	Melek	King, Counsellor
Besieged	Tsur	To press
Gave	Nathan	To give
Hand	Yad	Hand
Vessels	Keli	Vessel, Instrument
House	Bayith	House, Household
God	Elohim	God, gods, objects of worship
Carried	Bo	To cause to come in or go in
Land	Erets	Land, Earth, Country
Brought	Bo	To cause to come in or go in
Treasure	Otsar	A treasure, A thing laid up
Master	Rab	Great, Mighty, Elder
Eunuch	Saris	Eunuch, Officer
Children	Ben	Son
Seed	Zera	Seed, Seedtime, Progeny

Princes	Partemim	Foremost
Blemish	Mum	Spot
Well favoured	Tob Mareh	Good or excellent in appearance
Skilful	Sakal	To cause or act wisely
Wisdom	Chokmah	Wisdom, Skill
Cunning	Yada	To know, be acquainted with
Knowledge	Daath	Knowledge
Understanding	Bin	To cause to understand
Science	Madda	Knowledge
Ability	Koach	Power, Strength, Wealth
Stand	Amad	To stand, Stand still, Stand firm
Palace	Hekal	Temple, Palace
Teach	Lamad	To teach
Learning	Sepher	A book, Literature
Tongue	Lashon	Tongue, Language
Appointed	Manah	To number
Daily	Yom Be Yom	Day by day
Provision	Dabar	A word, matter thing
Meat	Maakal	What is eaten, Food
Wine	Yayin	What is pressed, Grape juice
Drank	Mishteh	Drinking banquet
Nourishing	Gadal	To make great, Magnify, Bring up
End	Getsath	End, Extremity

Nebuchadnezzar Enters Jerusalem

There were three deportations from Jerusalem through this time in history. The first deportation is the one which we see here and consisted of key hostages of the royal household in 605BC. The larger second one occurred in 598 BC when one of the captives taken to Babylon was Ezekiel with others of the priests, army officers and artisans and their families.

The final deportation was the pitifully few survivors of the siege of Jerusalem in 586 BC, where the city was emptied of inhabitants. The great Psalm, Psalm 119, which is the song of the captives as they march to exile, may be related to the second deportation of the priests and artisans, or may relate to the last. Jeremiah 52.

After the Battle of Carchemish in 606 BC, Nebuchadnezzar was pursuing Pharaoh Necho as he raced back toward Egypt with the survivors of his beaten army. It was in this pursuit that Nebuchadnezzar first saw the beautiful city of Jerusalem on the hill. He surrounded Jerusalem with his army and demanded its surrender. When the gates were closed to him, a very short battle ensued and Nebuchadnezzar quickly entered Jerusalem and receives the homage of Jehoiakim and reinstated him as his vassal rather than the Egyptian king's servant. Jehoiakim was forgiven for the short siege, only as he could argue he had promised to hold the city for his "lord" the pharaoh, and so he would argue he would be as loyal to Nebuchadnezzar – but sadly he would not be.... He and his son were arrogant fools, not God's servant-kings. They persistently ignored God's Word, and abused God's prophetic voice – Jeremiah.

The Controversy of Daniel and Jeremiah and the Time of the Battle of Carchemish

In verse 1 we have the subject of one of the attacks on the book of Daniel. It is related to the phrase in verse 1 of the passage which says, "In the third year of the reign of Jehoiakim".

In apparent conflict with **Jeremiah 46:2** which says, "Against Egypt, against the army of Pharaoh Necho king of Egypt, which was by the river Euphrates in Carchemish, which Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon smote in the fourth year of Jehoiakim the son of Josiah, king of Judah". (Note this spelling of the name – probably the way it is pronounced).

In Jeremiah we have the fourth year of Jehoiakim whilst in Daniel 1:1 we have it occurring in the third year. Is there a conflict? If there is, it calls into question the inspired nature of the Word of God, and the dating of the two books.

The answer to this is simple, in that, in the nation of Judah the part year of the king's accession was counted as a full year of his reign, whilst the Babylonian custom was not to count the first part year. Jeremiah was looking at it from a Jewish viewpoint, whilst Daniel, an official in the court of Nebuchadnezzar, from the perspective of the "Times of the Gentiles", was viewing it from his environment, the Chaldean way. Therefore there is no conflict.

The Death of Nabopolassar

While at Jerusalem, Nebuchadnezzar received word that his father, Nabopolassar, had died; consequently, it was necessary for him to return to Babylon immediately. Since he had not finished setting up his administration in Jerusalem, he needed a puppet king.

Nebuchadnezzar initially admired Jehoiakim for his potentially fatal loyalty to the Pharaoh of Egypt, so he decided to leave him on the throne of Judah. However, Nebuchadnezzar wisely took measures to try to guarantee Jehoiakim's

loyalty to the Chaldean Empire. To make sure that during his absence the Jews would not revolt against him, Nebuchadnezzar gave orders to Ashpenaz his deputy to bring hostages of the royal family and priesthood.

Nebuchadnezzar was not only impressed when he saw the beautiful city and its fortifications, but when he realized it was Jerusalem, he remembered having heard stories of its wealth. The record of how Hezekiah imprudently displayed the entire wealth of Jerusalem to Merodach-baladan, king of Babylon, is found in **2 Kings 20:12-15**. He remembered the records of his ancestor's visit to Jerusalem, and he took the bulk of that wealth back to Babylon, to stop Jehoiakim from using it to pay for any rebellion later by bribing Egypt. Sadly it didn't work, as he simply taxed to get the money!

The Five Stages of Discipline

In Leviticus 26 we have the five stages of discipline for the nation Israel, to be executed by God upon them when they persisted in disobedience to His Word. Leviticus 26 verses 14-17 describes the first stage of discipline, verses 18-20, the second, and verses 21-22, the third. God's discipline on the nation is seen to intensify in each successive stage. In the fourth stage (verses 23-26) the nation falls under foreign domination whilst in the fifth (verses 27-39) the nation goes into captivity/dispersion. The northern kingdom, Samaria, had already been subject to this final stage under the Assyrians in 721 BC.

Here the southern kingdom of Judea is about to undergo dispersion/exile by the Chaldeans which was to occur fully and finally in 586 BC, but their political fall is dated from 605BC, when they are first captured. God's clock is ticking for them and Jeremiah keeps on giving them the truth, but he is abused and ignored. Probably under 5% of the nation will survive, but it will be the top 5%, and this explains why Israeli genetics have a top heavy intellectual bell curve. From 586 BC 95% of the Jewish people are in the top 5% of the standard bell curve.

The Dispersion of the Southern Kingdom

One of the main causes of the dispersion of Israel was the legacy of evil flowing from King Manasseh who ruled between 687 and 642 BC. He was a very cruel king who it is said killed Isaiah by sawing him in half. As a result dispersion was assured, even though he appears to have repented late in his life, the evil was done, and the majority of the people had joined him in his paganism. For a while it was deferred under Josiah, a godly king, but after his death on the battlefield his successors were evil and the people were idolatrous. Only the Exile will change them!

The fact that God was going to discipline Judah in this way is given in **2 Kings 21:10-16**, *"And the LORD spake by his servants the prophets, saying, Because Manasseh king of Judah hath done these abominations, and hath done wickedly above all that the Amorites did, which were before him, and hath made Judah also to sin with his idols: Therefore thus saith the LORD God of Israel, Behold, I am bringing such evil upon Jerusalem and Judah, that whosoever heareth of it, both his ears shall tingle. And I will stretch over Jerusalem the line of Samaria, and the plummet of the house of Ahab: and I will wipe Jerusalem as a man wipeth a dish, wiping it, and turning it upside down. And I will forsake the remnant of mine inheritance, and deliver them into the hand of their enemies; and they shall become a prey and a spoil to all their enemies; Because they have done that which was evil in my sight, and have provoked me to anger, since the day their fathers came forth out of Egypt, even unto this day. Moreover Manasseh shed innocent blood very much, till he had filled Jerusalem from one end to another; beside his sin wherewith he made Judah to sin, in doing that which was evil in the sight of the LORD."*

Jeremiah started preaching in 627/6 B.C. and preached for forty years until the temple was destroyed (586 BC). The same time period operates from the start of Jesus ministry until the destruction of the temple, 30-70AD. From Egypt where he had been forced to flee with the last rebels, he sent his work to Daniel. As he preached, Nabopolaser of Chaldea, Nebuchadnezzar's father formed a coalition army to the northwest to go against Assyria and he destroyed them in 612 B.C. Here we have the rise of God's instrument of destruction of Assyria, and then of Judah itself. Jeremiah doesn't know of these events until they occur, but he plays his part in the divine plan, and that is our challenge. We may not know what is occurring behind the political scenes, and we don't need to, but we are to play our called part.

Josiah, King of Judah, wrongly attempted to influence the outcome of the looming battle but was himself killed at Meggido. **2 Kings 23:29** says, "In his days Pharaoh Necho king of Egypt went up against the king of Assyria to the river Euphrates: and king Josiah went against him; and he slew him at Megiddo, when he had seen him". One of the sons of Josiah, Jehoahaz was placed on the throne but double crossed Pharaoh Necho and so was replaced by Jehoiakim.

Subsequently, after the defeat of Pharaoh Necho himself at the battle of Carchemish, which was at the centre of trade routes in the area, Nebuchadnezzar in 606 came into Jerusalem and took the bulk of the Treasury, some of the valuables from the Temple, and leads away captive the younger leadership group. The booty seized this time apparently included drinking vessels, which were later used in the orgy Belshazzar was involved in when the writing appeared on the wall, as recorded in Daniel chapter 5. Any thing that could be used as bribes for Egyptian help was taken away.

It is noted that in verse 2 Nebuchadnezzar did not remove all the temple vessels. This is confirmed in **Jeremiah 27:19-20** where it says that he took part of the vessels of the house of God. His god at that time was Marduk who was the chief god of the Chaldean pantheon. Shinar was the place where the tower of Babel was erected, and where the kingdom of man took its first form. It was from this culture that Abram was called out to form a counter culture. So now after 1600 years the counter culture was taken back in Babylon with the Word of God for the first time; they and their captors, and the nation that defeats them will all be changed forever by the Jewish Exile.

In verse 3 certain of the children of Israel are mentioned. This was a fulfillment of the prophecy of **Isaiah 39:6-7**.

"Behold, the days come, that all that is in thine house, and that which thy fathers have laid up in store until this day, shall be carried to Babylon: nothing shall be left, saith the LORD. 7 And of thy sons that shall issue from thee, which thou shalt beget, shall they take away; and they shall be eunuchs in the palace of the king of Babylon."

Thus Nebuchadnezzar took the cream of the Jewish nobility back with him as a guarantee that the King of Judah would not double cross him – it didn't work... Daniel was amongst those taken. The Babylonians were back in 598 when Jehoiakim indeed tried to "double-cross" Nebuchadnezzar. Ezekiel was among those taken at that second time, with all the officers and artisans and their families. The Babylonians came a final time in 586 to remove the rest of the inhabitants after the last doomed rebellion. There were few survivors from the last campaign, as Nebuchadnezzar's patience with them was exhausted. Jeremiah 52:28-30.

The word "master" in verse 3 literally means great or mighty, indicating that Ashpenaz was very high up in the Babylonian hierarchy. He was responsible for the training and selection of the captives. History indicates that not only Daniel and his three named companions but over 50 other young people were likely taken in this first deportation.

The principle of taking the best of the youth was to train these noblemen to become valuable leaders in the Chaldean Empire. Plato tells us that the Persians, who followed the Chaldeans, began the training of Royal hostages at age 14 and continued on until they were 17. It is assumed therefore that Daniel was a teenager when he was taken as a hostage to Babylon, and he is trained to become a ruler over his own people for the Chaldeans – to many he will appear a traitor. His role is critical for the survival of Israel, but he will be distrusted, even hated by many.

In verse 4 we have the selection criteria for the King's hostages. There were certain criteria which the hostages had to meet.

"No blemish" - this means that the hostages must have no external imperfections.

"Well favoured" - they were to be physically handsome.

"Skillful in all wisdom" - indicates that the hostages were to be good intellectually; real thinkers with energetic minds.

"Cunning in knowledge" - understanding science - the Chaldeans like the Persians who followed them were advanced in science and astronomy. The hostages needed to have an interest and have strength in the maths/scientific area.

"Stand in the Kings palace" - the young hostages were to have poise and good manners so that they would fit into Nebuchadnezzar's court. The concept was to use these young captives so that they could be advisers that could stand before the king - Daniel 1:19.

These young people were to learn the Chaldean language and culture and therefore needed some strength in the linguistic area as well. All rulers of this time were multi-lingual, although Aramaic will be the local and main language. Their instructing has a parallel in Acts 7:22, where Moses entered a pagan court and was brilliant in his learning.

The instruction was very successful as it is noted from clay tablets of the time that within 50 years a lot of the commercial activity of Babylon, including banking, was under Jewish control. They were very successful. This reminds us that the believer can survive in any human viewpoint environment as long as they seek God's way to excel.

APPLICATION

God disciplines both nations and individuals in time. **Hosea 4:6**, *"My people are destroyed for lack of knowledge: because thou hast rejected knowledge, I will also reject thee, that thou shalt be no priest to me: seeing thou hast forgotten the law of thy God, I will also forget thy children"*.

During periods of intense suffering for a nation, God will still show His care and faithfulness to believers who are in fellowship with Him.

After their release from captivity Judah/Israel was blessed due to the people being orientated to the Word of God in adversity. Often adverse situations can refocus the individual or nation on God, cf Assyria at the time of Jonah.

God at times uses pagan forces to discipline His own who have ignored the call of the Lord to repent.

God will discipline such oppressing nations if they do not turn to him, cf Assyria in 612 BC.

God disciplines both individuals and nations in time - Hosea 4:6, Daniel 1:2.

DOCTRINES

1. SCRIPTURE - 2 Kings 24,25; Jeremiah 22:21-39,43-52; 2 Chronicles 36; Daniel 1-4; Ezra.

2. BIOGRAPHY - Nebuchadnezzar was the eldest son of Nabopolassar, the founder of the Chaldean Empire. He married Nitocris whose son-in-law Nabonidus and grandson Belshazzar were the last co-rulers of the empire. Nebuchadnezzar, as the crown prince, led the Babylonian forces that defeated the Egyptians at Carchemish in 605 BC. At this time he brought Daniel and others of the Judean nobility as hostages back to Babylon. On the death of his father he ascended the throne on September 6, 605 BC. Jehoiakim of Judah submitted to him (2 Kings 24:1).

He captured Jerusalem on March 16, 597 BC, taking Jehoiakim captive and replacing him with Zedekiah (2 Kings 24:11-20). Zedekiah eventually revolted and he was taken into captivity with the remnant of Judea in 586 BC. Nebuchadnezzar had much contact with Daniel. The Jewish captive with God's help interpreted the visions of the arrogant man in Daniel 2 and of the Tree in Daniel 4. Late in life he suffered from zoanthropy and was in the fields for seven years.

He rebelled against God's plan of history by erecting a huge statue of gold on the plain of Dura. Because they would not worship the idol, Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego were cast into the furnace (Daniel 3). There is some evidence that late in life Nebuchadnezzar became a believer (Daniel 4:34-37). He died in 562 BC.

3. EVALUATION

Using the Daniel passages in chapters 1 - 4 we see Pride and its result. The main cause of Nebuchadnezzar's pride was his position:

- a) As conqueror (Daniel 1:1,2).
- b) As the taker of hostages (Daniel 1:3-6).
- c) As the judge with power of life or death (Daniel 1:10, 2:5).
- d) As King of Kings (Daniel 2:37).
- e) As the recipient of power, strength and glory (Daniel 2:37).
- f) As world ruler (Daniel 2:38).
- g) As the controller of religion (Daniel 3:3-6).
- h) As a great builder (Daniel 4:30).

4. However, he failed to see that his position was not of his own making but of God, and that God can demote as well as promote:

- a) God caused Jehoiakim to fall (Daniel 1:1,2).
- b) God gave Nebuchadnezzar his position (Daniel 2:37,38).
- c) God gave Nebuchadnezzar the dream of his fall (Daniel 4:13-18).
- d) God provided an interpreter (Daniel 4:19-27).
- e) He ignored God's direction (Daniel 4:30).
- f) God brought Nebuchadnezzar to act as an animal and demoted him (Daniel 4:31-33).
- g) Nebuchadnezzar believed and recognised God (Daniel 4:34-37).

5. PRINCIPLES

- a) Pride is the worst of all sins (Proverbs 6:16,17).
- b) Leaders of men often suffer from pride (2 Chronicles 32:25,26; 1 Timothy 3:6).
- c) Pride leads to abuse of power (Isaiah 3:13-16).
- d) God controls the destiny of man (Job 1:21).
- e) Those who oppress believers will be disciplined by God (1 Kings 21:19).
- f) God controls the individual and will not allow continual abuse of power (Amos 4:1-3).
- g) Great rulers can be brought down to the dust (Psalm 135:10).
- h) The choice is between pride (own will) and the Scriptures (God's will) (Proverbs 8:13).
- i) God will respond to the penitent soul (Psalm 51:17).
- j) God will have no other gods before Him (Exodus 20:3) - the first commandment.

JERUSALEM

1. Jerusalem is the Holy City of three monotheistic faiths.

a) JUDAISM: Jerusalem has always been the focus of the Jewish homeland as it was the capital of the first Jewish kingdom. The Western Wall (the Wailing Wall) is a remnant of the great temple, built by King Herod and is the most sacred of all Jewish shrines.

b) CHRISTIANITY: For Christians, Jerusalem is the site of Jesus Christ's last days on earth. It is the place of His trial and crucifixion, and also of His resurrection.

c) ISLAM: The Arabs call Jerusalem "Al Quds", which means "The Noble (or Holy) Sanctuary". After Mecca and Medina, it is the holiest city in the Muslim world. On the place where the Temple stood now stands the Dome of the Rock (or mosque of Omar). It is built over a rock from where Mohammed is said to have ascended to Heaven.

2. The name 'Jerusalem' is sometimes abbreviated to "Salem" which is the Hebrew word for peace. (Gen 14:18; Ps 76:2) Jerusalem means "City of Peace". (Ps 122:6,7; Isa 66:12; Hag 2:9)

3. It was the city of Melchizedek. (Gen 14:18)
4. Although the Israelites captured its "suburbs", they never took the citadel of Mount Zion. (Judg 1:8,21 ; 19:12; Josh 15:63). This fortress was called Jebus, after its inhabitants the Jebusites, descendants of Hittites and Amorites. (Ezek 16:3) It was finally taken by King David and renamed City of David. (2 Sam 5:6-9)
5. It was a suitable place for a capital as it had not played a role in the history of any of the tribes and was not in any of the tribes' territory, but on the boundary between Benjamin and Judah. (Josh 15:8; 18:16)
6. It was a strong fortress and had its own water supply in the spring Gihon. This could be reached from the city through a tunnel. (2 Sam 5:8), later improved by King Hezekiah. (2 Ki 20:20; 2 Chron 32:30)
7. The real spiritual meaning of Jerusalem began when King David brought the Ark of the Covenant to the City of David on Mount Zion (2 Sam 6:16). Zion became synonymous with Jerusalem as the place where God dwelt among His people. (Ps 48:1-3; 50:2; 87:2,3; 132:13,14; 137:5,6; 1 Kings 12:26-28)
8. Jerusalem the "City of Peace", was the scene of many battles and it changed hands many times during its 4,000 year history. Since 1967 it has been back in Jewish hands. (Luke 21:24)
9. ITS FUTURE:
 - a) A new temple is to be built on the old temple site. The Antichrist will enter this temple to declare himself God. (2 Thess 2:4)
 - b) The armies of all nations will be drawn against her. Its inhabitants will suffer terribly but they will be delivered by the Lord. (Zech 14:1-9)
 - c) The Lord will enter the city through the East Gate (Golden Gate) which, at present, is bricked in. (Ezek 44:1,2; Ps 24:7-9)
 - d) Jerusalem will be the capital during the Millennium. (Zech 2:10-13; 8:22; Isa 2:3,4)
 - e) But this Jerusalem is only a shadow of things to come. (Heb 11:10,16). After the Millennium there will be a new Jerusalem coming down out of heaven. (Heb 12:22; Gal 4:26; Rev 3:12; 21:2,10).

EDUCATION AND LEARNING

1. Man is taught spiritual things by the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit instructed Israel (Neh 9:20). The Holy Spirit teaches Christians. (John 14:26; 16:13).
2. God calls men as teachers. (1 Cor 12:28; Eph 4:11).
3. He leads in establishing schools. (2 Tim 2:2)
4. Believers are commanded to learn from the Lord. (Prov 8:10; James 1:21).
5. Failure to do so can mean lack of God's blessing. (Jer 6:8; Prov 5:7-13)
6. Believers must apply what they learn. (Prov 23:12; James 1:22)
7. Those who learn will be rewarded. (Prov 1:3-6)
8. Knowledge is better than riches. (Prov 8:10-12)
9. Knowledge brings favour with God. (Prov 8:33-35).

SECTION 2 - DANIEL DECIDES TO BE TRUE TO GOD 1:6-14

6 Now among these were of the children of Judah, Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah: **7** Unto whom the prince of the eunuchs gave names: for he gave unto Daniel the name of Belteshazzar; and to Hananiah, of Shadrach; and to Mishael, of Meshach; and to Azariah, of Abednego. **8** But Daniel purposed in his heart that he would not defile himself with the portion of the king's meat, nor with the wine which he drank: therefore he requested of the prince of the eunuchs that he might not defile himself. **9** Now God had brought Daniel into favour and tender love with the prince of the eunuchs. **10** And the prince of the eunuchs said unto Daniel, I fear my lord the king, who hath appointed your meat and your drink: for why should he see your faces worse liking than the children which are of your sort? then shall ye make me endanger my head to the king. **11** Then said Daniel to Melzar, whom the prince of the eunuchs had set over Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, **12** Prove thy servants, I beseech thee, ten days; and let them give us pulse to eat, and water to drink. **13** Then let

our countenances be looked upon before thee, and the countenance of the children that eat of the portion of the king's meat: and as thou seest, deal with thy servants. 14 So he consented to them in this matter, and proved them ten days.

KEY WORDS

Daniel	Daniel	God is judge
Hananiah	Hananiah	God is gracious
Mishael	Mishael	What God is
Azariah	Azariah	God is keeper
Names	Shem	Name Renown
Beltshazzar	Beltshazzar	The Lord's leader
Shadrach	Shadrach	Marduk
Meshach	Meshach	
Abednego	Abednego	Servant of Nego - the god of education
Purposed	Sun	To set, to place
Heart	Bal	The heart
Not Defile	Gaal	To make oneself free
Portion	Pathbag	A portion of food
Wine	Yayim	What is blessed out, grape juice
Drank	Mishteh	Drinking, banquet
Requested	Baqask	To seek, enquire
Favour	Chesed	Kindness
Tender Love	Rachamin	Pity, Mercy
Fear	Yare	Fearing, Reverencing
Appointed	Manah	To number
See	Raah	To see, behold, look, consider, enjoy
Faces	Panim	Face
Worse	Zaaph	To be displeasing
Sort	Gil	Circle, Age
Endanger	Chub	Endanger, Forfeit, Cause to owe
Head	Rosh	Head
Melzar	Melzar	Overseer
Set Over	Manah	To appoint
Servants	Ebed	Servant, Doer, Tiller, Slave
Ten	Asarah	Ten
Days	Yamim	Days
Pulse	Zeroim	Vegetables, Seeds
Eat	Akal	Eat
Water	Mayim	Water, Waters
Drink	Shathah	To drink, Banquet
Countenances	Mareh	Appearance
Looked Upon	Raah	To be seen
Consented	Shama	To listen to
Matter	Dabar	Word, Matter, Thing
Proved	Nasah	To try, Prove

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

Brainwashing

We often think of brainwashing as a modern phenomenon, perhaps being invented in the 20th century but here we see this technique in use 2600 years ago. Here in order to further break down their national identity, their captors gave them Babylonian names. The strategy behind name modification is seen, as the meanings of the names of the four captives in focus have very strong doctrinal implications. Satan's strategy remains consistent through time, and we see it here.

Daniel means "God is Judge", pointing to the work of the Lord Jesus Christ who was judged for our sins and was a reminder that God will judge those who are not His. Revelation 20:11-15. Daniel was the greatest of the hostages. He is compared to Noah and Job in Ezekiel 14:14, and was therefore renamed Beltshazzar meaning "Bel's Prince", where Bel was the Akkadian god Bellu, the chief God of the Akkadian Pantheon equivalent to Zeus. Marduk was the Babylonian equivalent, but was a divisive name/figure at this point, so Nebuchadnezzar doesn't select that name.

The second boy was named Hananiah meaning, "The Lord is Gracious". His name emphasised the personality of God with all three members of the Trinity being absolutely gracious. He was renamed Shadrach – "Illuminated by the sun god". Can you see the brain washing here? Every time you hear your new name you hear a pagan lie; to be ignored!

Mishael means, "Who and what is the Lord". Any hope for Grace to rule needs a perfect plan created in perfect love. His name speaks of the whole character of God behind God's perfect plan for humanity. Mishael was renamed Meshach

which means, "Who and what is Ishtar or Venus", as she was the goddess of sex, indicating a change from focusing on the Creator as light in the darkness, to focussing on pleasure and lust, being distracted from the darkness.

Finally Azariah which means "The Lord is my help", and recognised that we always need the Lord to help and strengthen us. He was renamed Abednego - "the servant of the god of education", indicating that education was the source of help. These names are further given in Daniel 2:26, 4:8, 5:12. Each of these names was an open insult to JHWH God, and yet the captives bore them, as they had been defeated and needed to acknowledge that the true God was actually doing something through their captivity. **Romans 8:26-28**. They accept the names, but they reject their meanings, and await God's revelation about what they are to do here in this pagan place.

Application of Doctrine

While accepting the names, as simply reminders of captivity, the issue of the food offered to idols and not being bled properly in accord with the Law of Moses was an "issue too far" for Daniel and the others. Daniel looked at the offered food and considered that the meat was not kosher to eat, as not conforming with the Mosaic Law, and he asked for vegetables only. While this caused the person in charge great concern, because this was against Nebuchadnezzar's orders, he agreed to an experiment, and at the end of ten days the effect of honouring God's Word was visible to all.

At the end of three years the four young people from Judea graduated top of the class and they received positions in the Chaldean Government. This occurred about 602 BC and the last verse of the chapter shows that Daniel's position of authority continued right the way through to the start of the Persian Empire in 538 BC. He had quite a career!

Daniel as a Wisdom Book (Wisdom to apply prophetic truth to political life)

The book of Daniel is not in the Prophets Section in the Hebrew Bible, but in the Writings Section. Daniel contains much in the way of prophecy, but its primary purpose is to provide mentoring in application of prophetic truth (wisdom) to assist coping with the challenges of living in the kingdoms of man. In Daniel 1 we see these teenagers entering Gentile politics, under the political power of others, but not accepting spiritual domination. This sets the scene for the book of Daniel as a wisdom book. We do not live in the kingdom of God at present, we live in the kingdom of fallen man.

We live with the kingdom of Christ active within us, but we await His Return to rule, and until then we have to accommodate ourselves to the demands of the pagan world without spiritual compromise. **John 16:33, 1 John 4:4**. We therefore face problems at times, as Satan still thinks he is the prince of this world, although removed by the Cross and Resurrection – where sin and death are defeated. We still however face his demon's attacks at times, just as Daniel will again and again. **James 4:6-10, 1 Peter 5:5-11**.

The Time of the Gentiles

At this very time the Shekinah glory was removed from the temple, **Ezekiel 10:4-19**, and the Time of the Gentiles had commenced in 605 BC, but foolish Jehoiakim starts plotting with Egypt at this time. Up to this point Israel had the potential for domination of world history, but after this time it was the Gentiles who dominated, and will dominate until the Second Advent of Christ. The modern state of Israel only exists because of Gentile power backing, military power and alliances, but when the Lord returns they will lead the world under the Lord.

Attempted Assimilation and "Mind-Control"

In verse 3 to 7 we see Nebuchadnezzar attempting to absorb Daniel and his friends into Babylonian culture with brain washing. Here this teenager had to exist on what resources he had in his soul not on loved ones, from whom he was separated. Daniel is a testimony of what parents can do with children, and then what children can do by applying the Word without their parents help from 14 years of age. The parents had clearly taught him how to apply Biblical principles and doctrines to his situation and to pray. Daniel becomes the epitome of a wise man in politics. External educational programmes challenge and can destroy the inner workings of the soul. Here the Babylonians were trying to assimilate people; making them "Chaldean". However they were not able to absorb the souls of Daniel and his companions.

Biblical Separation

In verse 8 to 16 we have some wisdom principles of Biblical separation. This shows how you can survive in the dominant human viewpoint culture without losing your eternal soul. **Matthew 16:26, 20:25-28**. The phrase "he purposed in his heart" deals with the fact that Daniel made a decision in his soul all by himself. He did not do it because of pressure but out of his loyalty to the God of the Bible. He decided to challenge the system.

Why did he challenge it here rather than at verse 4 or verse 7? Why did he not make a stand regarding the educational programme or the attempt to take away his name and separate identity? Daniel tolerated the education and the attempt to take away his identity. When he gets to the food however the accommodation and toleration stops. Why is this, is it just because the food is not in accordance to the Mosaic law? No, it was not just a dietary matter; it was way deeper.

Meat Offered to Idols in 1 Corinthians

In **1 Corinthians 8:7ff** we have the issue of food being offered to idols discussed fully. Here in 1 Corinthians we see that this is a problem for the weak believer with such things, but not for the strong believer who is able to say “grace” and dedicate the food back to God. Daniel however has demonstrated that neither he nor his friends are weak believers. It was common for meat and wine to be offered to idols in pagan societies. Daniel recognises that the idols are nothing, and the demons behind them are inferior to the Lord God, so that is not the reason for refusal.

The explanation to Daniel's attitude is given in **1 Corinthians 10:14 ff**. Here Paul tells believers to flee from idolatry. In 1 Corinthians chapter 8 the food is merely food, however in chapter 10 it's eating has become a religious act; where the very structure of the eating is saturated in idolatry(satanic worship). In chapter 8 he was just going into the meat market to get good meat but in chapter 10 it is the concept of participating in a religious service as the food is eaten. Paul points out that you cannot participate with any eating where worshipping demons/idols in the process is involved.

Whilst the idols are “nothings” as objects, the Gentile pagans sacrifice to the demons behind each idol, not to God. We are not to have fellowship with demons. False religion is basically the product of demonic work, and we are not to compromise with anything that involves the demonic. Our state as we come and worship the Lord either means that we will be blessed or disciplined, and demonic garbage only leads to trouble and then divine discipline.

This is seen with the admonition of believers to be in fellowship when they come to the Lord's Table in 1 Corinthians 11. The sin of taking communion when out of fellowship is emphasised as a sin above other sins in the Bible. You cannot worship both demons and God as seen in verse 21 of chapter 10. We cannot serve two masters, nor worship the satanic in any way whatsoever. **Leviticus 17:7, Deuteronomy 32:17, Matthew 6:24.**

In verse 25 the Corinthians are encouraged to eat meat from the market, asking no questions for their conscience sake. The reason is that the earth is the Lord's and the fullness thereof, and all may be eaten, especially when you dedicate it back to God by a prayer/grace. In verse 27 Paul does however warn, that if you are invited by a pagan to go for a meal which could turn into a religious service, you are to eat the food set before you politely, asking no questions. However if you are told it has been sacrificed to any idols, then that means that this specific meal is actually a pagan worship service - refuse to eat at that point, because by eating you are indicating that you are sharing the pagan's religious faith.

The difference therefore is not the meat but how the meat is served at the table and the rituals involved. One is served as a simple meal and that is satisfactory, for whatever it has previously been offered up to, is changed by your prayer/grace. The other is served as part of a religious service and that is forbidden. This may also be why Daniel would not defile himself, because he would be both breaking kosher law and possibly also participating in a religious service for the god Marduk, and therefore the demon behind Marduk. They can change his name to refer to a “god”, for that wont defile him, but participating in pagan worship of any “god/demon” will defile.

This gives us the first principle of what is called “Christian separation”. We need to select carefully the target for protest. In the case of education, Daniel would be able to discriminate between good and bad; the demonic nonsense and the good science and maths. With Bible doctrine in his soul he was able to divide right from wrong. He would be able to reproduce academic material in order to pass an exam in a very similar way to which we can satisfy an exam on certain aspects of evolutionary biology or geology, without believing in what we have written, as it has not affected our souls.

He decided not to protest the names given, as you are not able to cover up true character by changing people's names. Their new names will not destroy their worship or good character. He is going to contest a particular area and concentrate his efforts on resisting the “cosmos world system” of the satanic on that particular point. In an offensive situation you need to outnumber your opponent at that point. You cannot attack everything – pick your target.

Daniel now makes a specific request of the prince of the eunuchs in regard to the food. Verses 8 and 9 are sequential not simultaneous. Daniel tried to achieve his separation in the most peaceful way possible, without giving unnecessary offence, and God blessed that. He did not start deliberately to cause an uproar. He recognised the authority of the prince of the eunuchs and therefore requested his desire to him, and was reasonable, and very respectful.

He had official channels open to him, and he used them. God appreciated the way that Daniel approached this matter and blessed Daniel. The eunuch could recognise character, and was impressed by Daniel. Nebuchadnezzar would have had hundreds of hostages in Babylon but these four boys from Judah impressed him. The officer appreciated Daniel but we do not know if he became a believer. It is of interest that Daniel's desire not to defile himself is contrasted by the prophecy in Hosea 9:1-4, where the northern kingdom in its captivity would be defiled in Assyria. We are to stand against defilement; we are to be holy! **Proverbs 1:7, 20ff, Ephesians 1:4, 5:27, 1 Tim 2:8, 2 Tim 1:7-9, 1 Pet 1:12-16.**

In verse 9 we see Ashpenaz responding to Daniel in a favourable way through God's ministry to the unbeliever. This is mirrored in the relationship between Joseph and the keeper of the prison after his problems with the wife of Potiphor - Genesis 39:21. We position ourself in the place of obedience to the Word of God, and God protects from there.

The prince of the eunuchs however has a problem, in that he fears that if things go wrong Nebuchadnezzar will execute him. Universally people are concerned and worried about their boss, and in this case it was very realistic fear. He constantly feared Nebuchadnezzar, for kings in this day would execute others at the drop of a hat. It was not loyalty, it was a relationship fuelled by fear that ruled this man. Fear is not ever to drive us; rather we are to be driven forward by the Holy Spirit in application of the words of Scripture. **1 John 4-5, Hebrews 11:1-3, 2 Timothy 1:7.**

There is a separation in time between verses 10 and 11-14. Melzar in verse 11, is an overseer, or chief steward, who was in charge of the daily provisions for the captives, under Ashpenaz. They therefore now ask a lower official if they can experiment with vegetables and water for a ten day period. They seek a time trial, and then an authoritative decision.

A principle drawn from this event is that if you do not have a flat rejection to your request there is a possibility to use an experiment to demonstrate a position that you want to take. If there is a flat rejection you have to find a different strategy. The experiment is unusual for a teenager, in requesting vegetables and water! You need to negotiate on a pragmatic basis. Daniel tells the lower official that he should evaluate them in relation to the other hostages, who are on the standard pagan meat rich diet. Melzar considers the request, and agrees to the experiment for ten days, then he will review. Daniel has ensured the official still feels he is in control of the process.

APPLICATION

Religion (Satan's main tool) always seeks to obscure doctrine, as shown in the change of names - Daniel 1:7. It is possible to change a persons name or appearance but it is not necessarily easy to change a person's soul.

The more knowledge of the Word of God you have the greater your resistance to false teaching and wrong practices.

Many people look to education as the source of all help. Solomon summed up education in Ecclesiastes 1:17-18. Whilst education is important especially for professional careers it is not the solution to mankind's problems; salvation and the obedient Faith-Rest life is.

The wrong type of education can destroy a person's doctrinal outlook. The pursuit of pleasure and its emptiness is again seen in the book of Ecclesiastes, where in the end Solomon sums up his experimentation with the conclusion, "Fear God and keep His commandments: for this is the duty of man". Ecclesiastes 12:13.

Often decisions we make are as a result of whether we succumb to human pressures. We have to make sure our decisions are made in accordance with divine rather than human viewpoint.

The only source of divine viewpoint is the Bible. God states His thoughts are higher than our thoughts so it is critical to know and understand the Word of God. Divine viewpoint results in right decisions and right living - Daniel 1:8.

God can cause a believer who is in his will to have a favourable relationship with their captors and thus facilitate a harmonious working relationship and future honour for the believer.

Three principles

1. Love God 1 John 4:4-21
2. Trust God Hebrews 11:1-3, 12:1-3
3. Fear No-one Luke 12:16-32

We need to think through our strategies in the Christian life, as if one argument is rejected, another in the form of an experiment might be acceptable.

DOCTRINES

DANIEL - DEDICATION

1. SCRIPTURE Daniel; Matthew 24:15; Mark 13:14

2. BIOGRAPHY

Daniel was born to Judean nobility (Daniel 1:3-6). He was taken as a hostage by Nebuchadnezzar into Babylon in 605 BC after the shattering defeat of the Egyptians at the battle of Carchemish. There were to be two further groups to go into exile; the final one being in 586 BC, the start of the Babylonian captivity. In Babylon Daniel was given the name Belteshazzar, effectively changing his name from "God's judge" to "Zeus". For three years Daniel and his fellow hostages were taught Chaldean, science and the wisdom of the Babylonian civilisation (Daniel 1:4) and outshone all others as students (Daniel 1:20). He pined a reputation first as an interpreter of other men's visions (Daniel chapters 2 - 5) then of his own when he predicted the future of empires (Daniel chapters 7 - 12). Renowned for his wisdom he occupied leading governmental posts under Nebuchadnezzar, Belshazzar and Darius. Daniel is quoted by Jesus in Matthew 24:15 and Mark 13:14 in regard to the future erection of the "abomination of desolation", the statue of the world leader in the Temple (Daniel 12:11). Tradition has it that Daniel died at Susa, but there is no clear evidence of this. He did, however, live for at least 73 years in exile, thus he died at a full age.

3. EVALUATION:

Daniel's dedication is seen in many ways in the book of Daniel.

- a) He would not eat meat from the king's table as it had been offered to idols; nor would he drink wine (Daniel 1:8).
- b) He worked hard at his studies, being assisted by God (Daniel 1:20).
- c) He prayed for wisdom (Daniel 2:14-18).
- d) He gives God the credit for interpretation (Daniel 2:28-30).

- e) He is fearless in his interpretation (Daniel 2:37-45; 4:18-27; 5:17-28).
- f) When promoted he remembered his friends (Daniel 2:49).
- g) His friends were also consistent under pressure (Daniel 3).
- h) He obtained an excellent reputation in Babylon (Daniel 5:12).
- i) Daniel puts God before the laws of man (Daniel 6:10-15).
- j) Daniel receives protection (Daniel 6:22).
- k) Daniel receives an outline of human history culminating in the return of Jesus Christ to reign (Daniel chapter 7 - 12), including a detailed vision on the Greek kingdoms (Daniel chapter 11). These visions troubled him (Daniel 7:28; 8:27).
- l) Daniel studied the Scriptures (Daniel 9:2) and knew that the Jews would return.
- m) As an old man Daniel is still interceding for his country (Daniel 9:3-19).
- n) He is taught by an angel (Daniel 10:12,13), who had been delayed by demons in the country of Persia.

4. PRINCIPLES

- a) God must be honoured in our successes (1 Chronicles 29:12; Acts 12:23).
- b) Without God there is no promotion (Psalm 127:1; Psalm 113:7,8).
- c) The principles set down in the scripture are not only a guide but a source of hope in a hopeless situation (Psalm 119:105).
- d) In times of oppression God is still with you and able to keep (Psalm 42:11).
- e) Moral courage comes from Bible principles (Psalm 23:4).
- f) God's way has predominance over the laws of a state if those laws are antagonistic to God's Word (Acts 4:19-20).
- g) God knows our individual needs (Matthew 6:32).
- h) God controls history (Proverbs 8:15,16).
- i) Friends and colleagues benefit by association with believers (Genesis 39:3).
- j) God will give wisdom when requested (James 1:5).

NOT OF THIS WORLD

1. The believer has a different position. (1 Corinthians 15:22). In Adam all die but in Christ shall all be made alive.
2. The believer has a different birth. (John 3:5-7, Titus 3:5). Natural generation versus regeneration. All are born into the world. Believers only are born again. This places one outside the framework of the devil's world.
3. The believer has a different service. The unbeliever serves his father the devil. (John 8:44) The believer serves Christ. (John 13:16, 15:20)
4. The believer has a different purpose. (1 Corinthians 6:19, 20, Romans 15:6). The unbeliever in the world system is seeking some form of self gratification. Believer is under the form of God glorification.
5. The believer has a different power. (Galatians 5:16). The energy of the flesh versus the power of the Spirit. The satanic doctrine versus the power of the Word of God.
6. Different way of life. (Ephesians 4:22, 2:13). The world's way of life is religion and legalism. The Christian way of life is supernatural.
7. A difference in destiny. (John 3:36, 3:18). The World is headed for the lake of fire prepared for the devil and his angels. The believer is headed for heaven.

SECTION 3 - DELIGHT OF NEBUCHADNEZZAR IN THE PROGRESS OF THE FOUR DANIEL Ch 1:15-21

15 And at the end of ten days their countenances appeared fairer and fatter in flesh than all the children which did eat the portion of the king's meat. **16** Thus Melzar took away the portion of their meat, and the wine that they should drink; and gave them pulse. **17** As for these four children, God gave them knowledge and skill in all learning and wisdom: and Daniel had understanding in all visions and dreams. **18** Now at the end of the days that the king had said he should bring them in, then the prince of the eunuchs brought them in before Nebuchadnezzar. **19** And the king communed with them; and among them all was found none like Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah: therefore stood they before the king. **20** And in all matters of wisdom and understanding, that the king enquired of them, he found them ten times better than all the magicians and astrologers that were in all his realm. **21** And Daniel continued even unto the first year of king Cyrus.

KEY WORDS

End	Qetsath	End, Extremity
Appeared	Raah	To be seen
Fairer	Tob	Good, Fair

Fatter	Bari	Fat, Firm
Flesh	Basar	Flesh
Four	Arba	Four
Knowledge	Madda	Knowledge
Skill	Sakal	To cause, To act wisely
Learning	Sepher	A book. Literature
Wisdom	Chokmah	Wisdom, Skill
Understanding	Binah	Understanding, Intelligence
Visions	Chazon	Vision
Dreams	Chalom	Dreams
Bring	Bo	To cause to come in
Communed	Dabar	To Speak
Found	Matsa	To be found
Stood	Amad	To stand, stand still , stand fast
Matters	Dabar	Word, Matter Thing.
Enquired	Baqash	To seek, enquire, require, request
Magicians	Chartummim	Scribes, magicians
Astrologers	Ashshaphim	Enchanters
Realm	Malekuth	Kingdom
First	Echad	One
Cyrus	Cyrus	Sun, Throne

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

The agreed experiment was successful as after the ten days their appearance and skin texture were superior to captives on the standard meat heavy diet. This shows that God’s plan was better than that of the kingdom of man. Never again did the four children of Israel have to argue about their diet. Nebuchadnezzar was only focused on outcomes.

Daniel proposed his ideas in a submissive and pragmatic manner. The New Testament equivalent is given in Romans 12:18 which instructs us as far as it is possible to live peaceably with the unbeliever. Standing toe to toe with another rarely solves problems. The “kingdom of man” promises fulfilment on the basis of the man’s efforts, and not Gods rule over creation. This has been the case since the fig leaves incident in the Garden of Eden. God’s way is always best.

The destruction of personal liberty also occurs with the Kingdom of Man, as seen in such ideologies as Communism. In that case there is never an absolute standard, it is always a standard based on the dictator’s whim at the time, as all man’s efforts at “freedom” end in slavery to the strong leader. In an authoritarian regime freedom is spoken of but obedience is coerced, but manipulation occurs everywhere through “official” public opinion, through media company editorial control, and social media platforms tend now to be saturated with human viewpoint today, and such control is world wide. God’s Word alone stabilizes the believer in the presence of massive media manipulation.

The rulership of unsaved men and women is contrasted with the Millennium, when the Lord Jesus Christ is the sole law giver and judge. Sad to reflect that the majority of the captives in Babylon accepted the paganism of the Chaldeans!

Daniel is respectful, logical, and strong. He reasoned with the key man, he made an appointment, he thought things through and then rested on the basis that the Holy Spirit would work on the spirit of the man with whom he was dealing. God as a result of this gave wisdom and understanding, and built his reputation amongst the leadership.

While they are being taught a lot of human viewpoint they are doing a number of other things. They are in the Word of God daily. We know one of the books they studied was Jeremiah’s early work, which Daniel will have the final version of years later. They also read the Torah and reflected upon God’s deliverance, and they share things together, likely expressed in the singing of Psalms that went back to Moses and David. **Isaiah 61:3.**

There is no other substitute for being in the Word daily. You cannot learn under too much unresolved pressure, but casting our cares upon the Lord lifts that otherwise debilitating pressures. **1 Peter 5:5-9.** They also prayed daily, they needed a quiet time with the Lord to sort things out in the pagan context they found themselves in.

Once they were in a classroom situation it was too late to pray; they had to know what to do before hand. At the academic level they had a very onerous and very full curriculum. Daniel used the equivalent of **1 Corinthians 10:13** to rest in the Lord and trust that he would not be overcome by testing. No matter how difficult the going got there was always something (doctrine or angel) spiritually empowering that would help him through his problems.

In verse 17 God gave them knowledge, it was not the Babylonian tutors giving them knowledge, it was God Himself who gave them real wisdom. These young men had to look at the facts as presented to them and sort out what was the truth. The word for learning is saphar which means learning by literature, or by a scroll. He probably learnt Akkadian, as well as Aramaic, and already knew Hebrew. Daniel received wisdom for God as well, so he had a complete education.

Daniel however was given additional gifts by God in relation to visions and dreams. Verse 17 sets us up for the rest of the book. In the person of Daniel we have a parallel in the person of Joseph in Egypt where as a young man he also had to grow up in an alien society and was an interpreter of dreams.

We also see that in **2 Chronicles 26:5**, Uzziah was able to understand the real meanings of visions as long as he sought the Lord, who also gave him prosperity.

Dreams are produced in a number of ways. Sigmund Freud is the most famous, but “Pagan” person in this area. He suggested suppressed antagonism was part of it and external stimuli were another. The stimuli to produce dreams he believed was from the inside, those things that we already possess knowledge and operate behaviours from are being challenged by external events, and dreams are one of the ways the sub-conscious mind tries to work it all out. Interpretation of dreams nearly always traditionally involves set “primal” explanations of symbols, but also involves asking what the symbol means to the particular person. Freud’s explanations were coloured by his sex oriented philosophy – he was Jewish but thoroughly “pagan”...and as a result we believe his views were also “nonsense”....

The Scriptures say that there is a third source of dreams, and that is from spiritual powers outside the person. There are 22 dreams in Scripture with 16 in the Old Testament and 6 in the New. Eleven of the sixteen dreams in the Old Testament were given well before the Old Testament was written in its final form. This type of phenomena also happened in the New Testament times before it was written down. Dreams in Scripture are therefore linked with the doctrines of God before the canon of Scripture was written, or where specific guidance is required.

In Genesis 20 we have the dream of Abimilech who was warned of the situation with Sarah after Abraham had lied to him. God gave him insight so that he did not frustrate the plan of God. The dreams in the Bible can be of two kinds, dreams of the Jews and those of the Gentiles. The dreams do not often involve the individual having the dream in isolation, but often point to future events in the plan of God for them or others intimately involved with them.

As examples we have the Jewish dream of Genesis 28:12 where the dream was given to Jacob. In Genesis 31:2 we again see Jacob again. These are not self centred dreams but relate to a number of items including the Abrahamic Covenant... We have examples of dreams being symbolic, and the biblical interpretation of the symbols is given, and we are to take that seriously. In the case of the dream of Joseph we see the sun representing Jacob, the moon, Rachel and the stars, his brothers. Such symbolism is found not only in the Bible, but in other literature as well, as many symbols appear to be “primal”, and part of each culture’s common heritage back to Adam and Eve.

In Judges 7:13 we have Gideon facing the Midianites This dream is one of a victory in a holy war, and has to do with the destiny of the nation Israel. In 1 Kings 3:5 we see the rare case of a person being an active participant in a dream, in this case the participant was Solomon.

In the book of Daniel we have three dreams, two by Nebuchadnezzar and one by Daniel. The Gentile dreams are in Daniel 2 and 4 where the history of the Gentile Nations that will dominate Israel is presented. In some cases the dreams are terrifying as in the case of Pharaoh and Nebuchadnezzar. These were serious challenges from God directly!

In Daniel 2 we will see the source and interpretation of the dreams being God. Daniel if he is going to be superior to the kingdom of man must know the dream and the interpretation of the dream. As God is all knowing he is able to know of the dream and provide the correct interpretation. He knows world history from beginning to end and is able to illustrate what is going to happen through dreams.

This is why we see that Daniel says that only God can interpret dreams. Daniel never relates his experiences to Nebuchadnezzar, as until he is called by the king he has no opportunity to do so. In fact it is Nebuchadnezzar who is having the experiences. The fulfilment of prophecy is to glorify God. It is highly likely that dreams of this type are not occurring much today because of the completion of the Canon of Scripture, but God is sovereign in these things.

In verses 18-19 Daniel passes the final examination and the Jewish captives come top of the “royal hostage class”. In this passage Daniel uses their Jewish names, rather than their Gentile names, as this victory is a demonstration of their character. The word commended in verse 19 is the piel imperfect of dabal, which indicates that the examination they went through was an intensive examination and they all passed their “Civil Service Exams” with flying colours.

Here the four Jewish teenagers stood before Nebuchadnezzar, exactly as the released Joseph had done over a thousand years before in Pharaoh's court. **Genesis 41:46**. The phrase “to stand before” means that they were appointed to positions in government service, which in Daniel's case, will outlast the Chaldean Empire.

In verse 21 we have a testimony to the endurance/perseverance of Daniel. Here we have a young man who is exalting the Holy Character of his God. The standard that the four had reached vastly outstripped the court officials. This indicates that God rewards faithfulness and uses prepared people in His plan. Only in heaven will we hear all of what they did, and we believe that we will be amazed at the fruit of their obedient service for their fellow countrymen.

APPLICATION

Understanding biblical truths make academic perceptions easier - **Daniel 1:17-19**.

The expansion of the kingdom of man is always by power and enslavement. In this nationalism, or the state, take over from the foundational institutions, free will, marriage and family.

EVANGELICAL BIBLE COLLEGE OF WESTERN AUSTRALIA

Many dictators in the past have sought the perfect state, Alexander the Great, Nebuchadnezzar, Hitler with the Third Reich, Napoleon. They all thought of the concept of a perfect society where all conformed to them, which of course is not a perfect society – it has always proved to be a nightmare from Satan himself.

To the non Christian you cannot say that a thing is moral or immoral based on God's values, you have to prove that the moral way is a better way of solving a problem. The meat and wine is nutritious food, but it is also part of a religious ceremony, and therefore not acceptable the Daniel and his friends. Daniel had to demonstrate superior performance.

We need to believe that God will change a situation by responding to our obedience, recognising that He is in control. We need to be wise enough (Holy Spirit led) to know when to stop doing, and start resting.

In James 1:5-7 we are told that if anyone lacks wisdom, then we should ask God in humble faith, and without wavering.

Another Israelite, Moses, was in difficult circumstances but became a ruler in Egypt where he is said to have learned in all the wisdom of the Egyptians in Acts 7:22.

God honours those who put His Word first; you never lose if you do things God's way - **Romans 8:31, Daniel 1:19**.

God uses prepared, persistent, and prayerful people, and He honours faithfulness. He never leaves himself without a witness. Daniel 1:20, 21.

All things being equal a Christian should be able to outdo any unbelieving competitor.

DOCTRINES

SEPARATION

1. Believers are instructed to be separated from habitually carnal believers. (1 Corinthians 5:10, 11)
2. Separation is ordered from apostate religious organisations. (2 Corinthians 6:17)
3. Separation is commanded from unbelievers where scripture is compromised by the relationship or marriage, business partners. (2 Corinthians 6:14 ff)
4. Separation is commanded from the human viewpoint. (Romans 12:2, Romans 16:17, 18)
5. Separation is commanded from pseudo spirituality. (Romans 16:17, 18)
6. Separation is commanded from those who seek pleasure in fast living - pursuit of parties, immoral situations. (1 Peter 4:4)
7. Separation is commanded from other believers who reject Bible doctrine. (2 Thessalonians 3:14, 15)

VEGETARIANISM

1. In the Garden of Eden Adam and Eve were vegetarians, Genesis 2:15-16. (There was no death before sin - the penalty of sin is death, therefore death is a result of sin.)
2. This situation continued until the flood, Genesis 3:17-19, 9:1-5.
3. There were special diets for special purposes eg, a Nazarite vow. Numbers 6:1-5.
4. The Mosaic Law also had general restrictions that forbade certain foods as "unclean". Leviticus 11, Deuteronomy 14.
5. These restrictions were removed by the Holy Spirit in the vision given to Peter in Acts 10:1 -28.
6. All meat and vegetables are now given to us as food. Romans 14:1-3, 1 Corinthians 10:23-26. 1 Timothy 4:3-5.

CHAPTER 2

DIVISION OF CHAPTER 2

Chapter two of Daniel can be divided into six sections

THE DREAM OF NEBUCHADNEZZAR AND THE CHALLENGE TO HIS WISE MEN	VERSES 1 - 9
DECREE TO DESTROY THE WISE MEN FOR THEIR FAILURE	VERSES 10 - 13
DANIEL PRAYS TO THE LORD REGARDING THE DREAM	VERSES 14 - 18
DANIEL DESCRIBES THE DREAM AS A MULTI METALLIC IMAGE	VERSES 19 - 35
DEFINITION OF FOUR WORLD EMPIRES AND THEIR DESTINIES	VERSES 36 - 43
DESTRUCTION OF THE EMPIRES AND FORMING OF A KINGDOM	VERSES 44 - 49

SECTION 4 - THE DREAM OF NEBUCHADNEZZAR AND THE CHALLENGE TO HIS WISE MEN 2:1-9

1 And in the second year of the reign of Nebuchadnezzar Nebuchadnezzar dreamed dreams, wherewith his spirit was troubled, and his sleep brake from him. **2** Then the king commanded to call the magicians, and the astrologers, and the sorcerers, and the Chaldeans, for to shew the king his dreams. So they came and stood before the king. **3** And the king said unto them, I have dreamed a dream, and my spirit was troubled to know the dream. **4** Then spake the Chaldeans to the king in Syriack/Aramaic, O king, live for ever: tell thy servants the dream, and we will shew the interpretation. **5** The king answered and said to the Chaldeans, The thing is gone from me: if ye will not make known unto me the dream, with the interpretation thereof, ye shall be cut in pieces, and your houses shall be made a dunghill. **6** But if ye shew the dream, and the interpretation thereof, ye shall receive of me gifts and rewards and great honour: therefore shew me the dream, and the interpretation thereof. **7** They answered again and said, Let the king tell his servants the dream, and we will shew the interpretation of it. **8** The king answered and said, I know of certainty that ye would gain the time, because ye see the thing is gone from me. **9** But if ye will not make known unto me the dream, there is but one decree for you: for ye have prepared lying and corrupt words to speak before me, till the time be changed: therefore tell me the dream, and I shall know that ye can shew me the interpretation thereof.

KEY WORDS

Second	Shenayim	Two, both
Reign	Malekuth	Kingdom
Dreamed	Chalam	To Dream
Dreams	Chalom	Dream
Spirit	Ruach	Spirit
Troubled	Paam	To be moved, troubled
Sleep	Shenah	Sleep
Brake	Hayah	To be , Happen
Commanded	Amar	To say, Lift up the voice
Call	Qara	To call, name
Magicians	Chartummim	Scribes, magicians
Astrologers	Ashshaphim	Enchanter
Sorcerers	Kashaph	To use witchcraft or sorcery
Shew	Nagad	To put or place before
Came	Bo	To come in
Stood	Amad	Stand, Stand Still or Fast
Know	Yada	To Know
Syriack	Aramith	Aramaic or Chaldee
Live	Chaya	To live
Forever	Alam	Hidden Time
Tell	Amar	To Say
Interpretation	Peshar	Interpretation, Explanation
Answered	Anah	To make or give an answer
Thing	Millah	A word, Speech, Matter
Known	Yeda	Know
Cut	Abad	To be made
Pieces	Haddam	A piece cut off
Houses	Bayith	House
Dunghill	Nevali	Dunghill, Heap
Receive	Qebal	Receive, Take

Gifts	Mattena	Gift
Rewards	Nebizbah	Largess, Rewards
Honour	Yeqar	Preciousness, Honour
Certainty	Yatstsib	Set up, Fixed
Gain	Zeban	Gain
Time	Iddan	An appointed time or season
Because	Kol Qebel Di	Over against this
Decree	Dath	Law, A thing given forth
Corrupt	Shechath	To corrupt
Changed	Shena	To be changed , Altered

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS (1 Peter 5:5-11)

Daniel 2 is an example of a crisis in the political career of Daniel, as shown by the end of this chapter. Every sceptic, liberal and unbeliever must try and destroy the book of Daniel because of the accuracy of the prophecy presented.

In chapter 2 verse 1 we have another apparent problem that worries the liberals. Now remember, they are "worried" because they are desperate to downgrade Daniel to "fiction"! This "problem" is that the events described occurred in the second year of Nebuchadnezzar, which seems to be in conflict with the concept that Daniel was in training for three years after Nebuchadnezzar became king. This would appear to indicate that he had been promoted before he had done his three year Magi educational training degree.

Evaluation of the customs at Babylon at that time shows that this is not a problem, as the reign of the king was dated in years in relation to the second year of his reign and not the year he actually acceded to the throne. Nebuchadnezzar became formally king in the first year of Daniel's training so his second year of reign represents his third year of training.

In 606 there was the great Battle of Carchemish, which was situated in what is now Syria. It was a flat plain, with a large city close by, but the major trade routes (both to Asia Minor and Europe) of the ancient world went through Carchemish and the battle there in that year was the greatest in the ancient world to that date.

Originally, up to about 612, the Assyrians were in control here. They were destroyed, and after defeating Pharaoh Necho, Nabopolasor the father of Nebuchadnezzar came to control the entire area. Nabopolasor died in the September of 605 and en route to assuming the crown Nebuchadnezzar took Jerusalem and Daniel and his three companions, amongst others, as hostages.

In 604 he returned and subjugated Judah totally. 2 Kings 24:1. These events started the Gentile domination of the Jews. This was further demonstrated by the final destruction of Jerusalem and the going into exile of the Jews in 586 BC. He then defeated the Philistines, and the following year destroyed them completely, taking their remnant into captivity also. A little later he took Egypt. He was then the dictator of the entire Middle Eastern world.

The time of the Gentiles he begins, will continue until the Lord Jesus Christ returns at his Second Advent. At this time in 2022 we have had almost 2600 years of the, "Times of the Gentiles". Nebuchadnezzar was a young man who reminds us of Alexander the Great, who three centuries later wept when he found he could not conquer any more people. He was young and brilliant, and moved incredibly quickly in all he did and expected others to "keep up".

Externally Nebuchadnezzar was self confident, he ruled the known Middle Eastern world, but he had deep insecurity within his spirit, and was desperately troubled when he slept. When you have a spiritual vacuum in your heart high positions do not satisfy, and great victories do not relax you. We see what was on his mind in verse 29 where the dreams he was having were unsettling him. Like any unbeliever with no divine viewpoint Nebuchadnezzar took his troubles to bed with him. Believers can sometimes do that as well. **1 Peter 5:5-11**.

Nebuchadnezzar was troubled by his dreams and it caused him sleeplessness. The dreams were given by God to bring into focus the interpreter of God's dreams, which in this case is Daniel. God's Plan works through believers, and when we are positioned we can be used at exactly the right time. In Genesis 40:5-8 the interpreter was Joseph, and later, at exactly the right time, God caused the cup bearer with amnesia to remember him, when the Pharaoh had a dream that troubled him.

Remember, there are three causes of dreams; material and immaterial physical stimuli, but you can also have spiritual and soulish dreaming. One area which may guide us as to our spiritual life is the proportion of our dreams which are from a divine viewpoint position, being revealed to the spirit in sleep.

The third category can be divided into two, dreams which God gives and dreams which originate from the OSN/Satanic side. In the Bible God gave dreams to both the Jew and Gentile. **Deuteronomy 13:1, Jeremiah 23:32**. The King dreamed many dreams wherewith his spirit was troubled. Nebuchadnezzar was therefore struggling with his situation.

Pre evangelism is referred to in Ecclesiastes 3:11. Here we can see how God the Holy Spirit deals with autonomous man and brings him to Himself, to see his limits in a step by step manner. Ecclesiastes 3:11 is the autonomous man's Trojan horse. Emmanuel Kant said, "give me material and I will make the world", Descartes said, "I think therefore I am". Both erred.... God made us and the space-time universe, and unless some things are revealed they cannot be known.

Nebuchadnezzar dreamed over and over. In Ecclesiastes we have a picture of his soul and that of all people without a vital relationship with God. In this dream the great edifice he sees is smashed and completely destroyed. The powerful may look down on the believer from their high position, but from time to time there will be proof given to them of their own limitations. What if you die tonight, what happens after death? Do you know, or are you guessing? These are the questions that Nebuchadnezzar faced, and he lacked both eternal security, and even the hope his empire would last.

In verse 2 Nebuchadnezzar now calls his advisors together to try and find the solution. There are several classifications of people given here. These people represent the great leaders in this first great Gentile "kingdom of man". The "wise men" of the kingdom of man say that they know better than the Word of God. "We know that there is no such thing as one culture being the best", they say. "We need to draw on all cultures". "There are many paths up the mountain". This is antagonistic to the view of the exclusivity of the divine viewpoint. Men and women can only guess, but God reveals.

Herodotus tells us that these people (Magi) taught the Egyptians and Greeks mathematics, astronomy and also astrology, as they would not distinguish between the two. These people were sought after as advisers by other kingdoms. People were sent to Babylon to learn the wisdom of the wise men. Here we see the conflict between the wisdom of man compared to the wisdom of God. We have the approved "experts" in the world-system, to prop up the kingdom of man.

The high officials were in five groups (Each group being one aspect of satanic control systems.)

[i] Magicians – "those who wrote with a stylus/pen", the scribes or legal/professorial Department.

[ii] Astrologers – "those who whispered or incanted". These people were skilled in mathematics, science and astrology. These were the intelligent - cultic type group – who were often demon possessed.

[iii] Sorcerers - these were those "skilled in handling people", they would now be the public relations group. Sorcerers were those who have the deepest involvement with the occult, such as black magic or cursing like the modern day people involved with voodoo, but it was person directed/controlling demonic power. Deuteronomy 18:10, 2 Kings 19:22.

[iv] Chaldeans - the priestly caste who were a leadership clan based group that dealt with the general culture.

[v] Soothsayers - the pagan equivalent of Biblical prophets, and they were mainly demon possessed. This group is mentioned in verse 27.

At the pinnacle of power Nebuchadnezzar had got everything, but he could not get rid of this nagging spiritual problem. He was aware he was not autonomous, and he was dependent on the wrong advisers at this point.

The attitude of Nebuchadnezzar parallels that of the Pharaoh in Exodus 7:11, who had a similar "expert group" in his court at the time that Aaron and Moses came before him.

In verse 3 he expressed his desperate need to his advisors. He said that as a young prince he had learnt everything from them, but he believed that they are deficient of wisdom, and he demanded they advise him on the dreams.

He indicates to his "experts" that he has forgotten the dream, but he cannot forget it. He was testing the value of the advisors. The reason he did not reveal his dream was that he knew his court would fabricate a story to fit it from their books, and he was wanting real answers, not the "philosophically correct", "peer reviewed" (all the accepted experts agreeing) ones. He knew this dream was like none he had ever had before. However if they could tell the content of the dream it would greatly increase his confidence in them, and their subsequent interpretation. He didn't want a "peer reviewed", "politically correct", "Pagan Magi certified", "best current practise" opinion – he needed the truth! He knew this dream was different and standard approved text interpretations were not sufficient – indeed were to be judged!

From **Daniel 2:4b to 7:28** the language of the Book of Daniel changes from Hebrew to **Aramaic** (the Gentile and diplomatic language of Babylon). This verse shows just how well Nebuchadnezzar knew his advisors. His advisors were brilliant but he was wiser than them all. Here their bluff is called as they ask for an outline of the dream before they give an interpretation, showing that their abilities were not supernatural.

The phrase "O king, live for ever", was a standard way of addressing royalty in the ancient world. It is repeated in Daniel 3:9, 5:10, 6:6, 21.

In verse 5 the king told the wise men what failure to complete the task would involve for them. Nebuchadnezzar is very serious, for he knows this dream must be explained to him! The penalty for failure was dismemberment for the wise men and their families, with their houses being turned into public toilets or rubbish dumps. It appears that things were even tougher than for us in the public service nowadays, although one is sometimes told to read the minister's mind!

In this verse many commentators believe that Nebuchadnezzar had forgotten the dream but he had remembered it in detail. The phrase that "it has gone from me" is exactly the same as that in verse 8 which is the equivalent of him giving a decree. He had said what is going to happen and that is that. He had summonsed those who had claimed they were the "wise men" for answers, and says, "As your king I have already made a decree, I want answers – now – and by the way, if you don't come up with them, I will execute you...".

The religious "civil servants" tried to hedge and stall, trying to get Nebuchadnezzar to divulge his dream but without success. In the end Nebuchadnezzar lost patience and called for the wholesale liquidation of the wise men which included Daniel and his friends in verse 13. This was a perfect example of the inherent injustice of narcissistic rulership.

This form of punishment was continued into the time of the Persians, as seen in Ezra 6:11 where Cyrus/Darius made a decree for people changing his laws. It was the ultimate disgrace to a family, or to a god to have its members exterminated and their line eliminated. This technique is shown in 2 Kings 10:27 where the temple of Baal was defiled and disgraced in this way during the reign of Jehu who exterminated the worship of Baal in Israel.

This is a symbol of a people or system which has failed completely. This attitude of the king made the advisers anxious. The autonomous man started out with building his empire. Then something came along which shattered his confidence and in response he destroyed or threatened to destroy the whole system. Nebuchadnezzar will have rationalism or irrationalism, but he will not at this point bow his knee to God, but God is working within him.

If one examines the art, literature and music in the last 50 years we see the chaos, the ugliness of autonomous man defying God. Satanic objectives always centre round insulting, mocking and encouragement of all who don't want to bow their knee to reject God. The king in effect says that, "if you are no good then your system is no good, so you will die. You people are giving trivial answers, but do not answer the hard questions."

In verse 6 the alternative is given. If the wise men did give the contents of the dream and a good interpretation they would receive gifts, rewards and honour. The wise men are evasive in verse 7 and repeat their request but in the following two verses Nebuchadnezzar remained firm on his requirements. He accused the wise men of stalling and in effect said, "what I have said, I have said". The Magi now need to pray seriously and have God answer or they will all die! God is going to work on them as well as the king and bring them all to face their need for salvation.

APPLICATION

It is not God's will to have a one world international government, but His plan calls for Gentile Imperialism at this time. There have been two good examples of this in history; the Pax Romana after the time Christ, and the British Empire of the 19th-20th century. In the latter case the conquests were accompanied by the missionaries. The concept of peace by imperialism is in stark contrast with the concepts of 21st century people who reject all reference to God.

God has put what can become a self destruct system within the very structure of our souls as human beings, if we remain without Him. We are simply not made to be autonomous men and women. God has set eternity in our heart so that in some way each of us, all made in God's image, know we are different to the animals, and know we need God.

You can communicate with animals but there is restricted dialogue through language now, for that was lost at the Fall. There is a glimpse of what it was like before the Fall with the sign language experiments with Chimps and Gorillas. Some of these animals have been taught sign language, and that is the closest we get to the very real communication between us, that was lost at the Fall, but will be restored at the Second Advent. We will fellowship with the animals again, but we need daily moment by moment fellowship with God now and forever. Sadly the majority reject this and join Satan.

You can achieve many things as an autonomous woman/man but you cannot erase this inbuilt knowledge of eternity, and the fact that when this life ends we must have certainty from somewhere, for there is a great void into which each feels they are being sucked. What is called "existential angst" is in fact the God-shaped void within us all as creatures.

DOCTRINE

HEATHENISM AND GOD CONSCIOUSNESS

1. Three systems of human understanding:
 - a) Empiricism - understanding through experimentation and observation.
 - b) Rationalism - understanding through logic and reason
 - c) Faith - believes an established fact as the basis of reality.

2. Faith is the only means of understanding which does not rely on our own abilities - there is no earned merit in faith. Therefore, everybody, even a young child, is able to believe.

3. Faith is compatible with God and grace - God provides, we trust Him and accept. (Ephesians 2:8-10)

4. God Consciousness: The existence of God:
 - a) Religious
 - i) God must exist because man universally believes in his existence.
 - ii) In this case the human mind establishes faith as the criteria for reality.
 - iii) Men do seek after God. (Psalm 42:1-2, Acts 17:27)
 - b) Moral
 - i) Man possesses a conscience with the urge to choose right over wrong.
 - ii) Human recognition of virtue and truth. The ultimate virtue - God.

- c) Rational
 - i) The human mind possesses the idea of a Perfect and Absolute Being, therefore such a being must exist.
 - ii) In this case, the mind uses rationalism for reality.
 - d) Design
 - i) Structure of the universe demands a designer (Romans 1:19,20)
 - ii) In this case empiricism is the criteria for reality.
 - e) Cause and Effect
 - i) The law of cause and effect demands the existence of God.
 - ii) This is process of rationalism plus logic.
5. The reaction to God consciousness:
- a) When man becomes conscious of God he then exercises his freewill.
 - b) Acceptance - desire to know God and have fellowship with God.
 - c) Rebellion - no interest in fellowship with God.
- d) Once a person reaches God consciousness and has no desire for fellowship with God, God has no further obligation to that individual.
- e) In the case of acceptance, God is responsible to provide gospel information on which to be saved. (Jeremiah 29:13, John 7:17, Acts 17:27, Luke 11:9)
6. Heathenism: What about the people who have apparently never heard the Gospel?
- a) Application of Divine Character
 - i) Since God is perfect justice it is impossible for Him to be unfair to any member of the human race.
 - ii) God promises that every generation will be evangelised. (Isaiah 51:8b)
 - b) Application of Unlimited Atonement
 - i) Christ died for all members of the human race. (2 Corinthians 5:14,15,19, 1 Timothy 2:6. 4:10, Titus 2:11, Hebrews 2:9, 2 Peter 2:1, 1 John 2:2)
 - ii) Therefore obviously God desires salvation for everyone. (2 Peter 3:9)
 - c) Application of Divine Sovereignty
 - d) It is God's will that all members of the human race be saved. (2 Peter 3:9)
 - i) If people are not saved, it is because of their own rejection of Christ as Saviour, not because of God.
 - e) Application of the Principle of God Consciousness
 - i) Human free will is tested in the two areas in which a decision must be made.
At the point of God consciousness - Do I want a relationship with God?
At the point of gospel hearing - Do I want to be saved?
 - ii) If anyone desires relationship with God, God will reveal Himself to them (Jeremiah 29:13, John 7:17, John 4:9,10, Acts 17:27).
- Man has the ability to arrive at God consciousness through observing creation. (Romans 1:20, 21)
When a person reaches the point of God consciousness, he becomes accountable to God. This age varies with cultures, languages and circumstances.
7. From the above it is obvious that any person can come to a saving knowledge of God.

SECTION 5 - DECREE TO DESTROY THE WISE MEN FOR THEIR FAILURE 2:10-13

10 The Chaldeans answered before the king, and said, There is not a man upon the earth that can shew the king's matter: therefore there is no king, lord, nor ruler, that asked such things at any magician, or astrologer, or Chaldean. 11 And it is a rare thing that the king requireth, and there is none other that can shew it before the king, except the gods, whose dwelling is not with flesh. 12 For this cause the king was angry and very furious, and commanded to destroy all the wise men of Babylon. 13 And the decree went forth that the wise men should be slain; and they sought Daniel and his fellows to be slain.

KEY WORDS

Answered	Anah	To make or give an answer
Man	Enash	A man, mortal
Upon	Me Al	From on, From Above
Earth	Ara	Earth Land
Matter	Millah	Word, Speech, Matter
King	Malka	King, Counsellor
Ruler	Shallit	Rule, Ruling
Magician	Charton	Those who wrote with a pen, the scribes or legal Department
Astrologer	Ashshap	Those who whispered or incanted. These people were skilled in mathematics, science and astrology. These were the intelligence group.
Rare	Yaqqir	Rare, Difficult, Precious
Requireth	Sheel	To ask, Demand
Except	Lahen	Therefore, Except
Gods	Elah	An object of worship

Dwelling	Medar	Dwelling Place
Flesh	Besar	Flesh
Angry	Benas	To be angry
Furious	Qetsaph	Furious, very angry
Destroy	Abad	To destroy
Decree	Dath	Law, a thing given forth
Went forth	Nephaq	To go forth.
Slain	Qetal	To be killed. - There are two times the word "qetal" is used in this verse. In the case of the wise men the stem of qetal is niph'al which is the simple passive stem whilst the wise men's attitude to Daniel and his companions is shown in "qetal" being in the pual stem which is an intensive passive indicating that the wise men wanted to violently kill them
Fellows	Chabar	Companion

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

In verse 10 the wise men say that there is not a man on the earth who will be able to do what they have been asked. This book is thorough rebuke of human viewpoint. **Psalm 2:1-5**. They say that the only one who can tell the dream and its interpretation is the one who is Supreme God, and he does not dwell in flesh. Nebuchadnezzar is frustrated with them.

He is willing to destroy everything of their system overnight if they cannot get this basic question right, for he knows it is eternally significant. This sets Daniel up to be able to witness to the king. If the whole world has no meaning, how can individual people have meaning? The Biblical position is that the knowledge of the Word of God is the open door to the solution. The moment that Daniel has prepared for has arrived, and the time is right, so the Lord opens the door for ministry, but in a situation of fatal threat to Daniel and all the others of the Magi. Ministry is about being positioning by obedient service, walking in the filling of the Holy Spirit, and then prayerfully waiting for the Lord's guidance, and then it is about timing and prayer saturated instant obedience. Are we prepared and prayerfully ready to serve when called?

Modern education does not give answers to the deep spiritual problems that each woman and man asks, as it is grounded in evolutionary theories and humanism = human viewpoint. Every other prophecy in Scripture depends on how you handle Daniel 2, so let us keep on walking carefully here. If you come up with a wrong answer here, then you will come up with a wrong answer elsewhere in the Bible, such as in Matthew 24-25, and the Book of the Revelation.

INTERPRETATION OF ESCHATOLOGY

There are three basic interpretations of prophecy used by evangelicals. They are Amillennial, Post Millennial and Pre Millennial. There has never been a great meeting of the church on this, as there was on the person of Christ, Salvation and other areas. Good people differ here and we must advance with grace, politeness and pleasantness to others, but with very serious study, and a readiness to adopt the position that appears correct, but in humility and politeness.

The best way to define these concepts is to start by considering the relationship of the Church now, and the Kingdom, when the Messiah is going to reign over all the nations. The church is all believers in this age, and He reigns within us, but the Bible is we believe quite clear, the day is coming when Messiah will reign over all the earth.

The most popular theological viewpoint in our time is the Amillennial view, which is sadly the only viewpoint held officially by most denominations today. It argues that the Church is the Kingdom, and fulfils the prophecies of the Old Testament. It is so named because it denies that there is a literal 1000 year kingdom reign on the earth by the Lord Jesus Christ. The church is considered by Amillennialism as the spiritual kingdom of God.

The outline in this interpretation is that you have the Cross followed by the Church, and the kingdom prophecies fulfilled provided by the church, followed by the Second Advent of Christ, which is the start of eternity. The earth has no future, but before it is replaced, there are things to do and prepare for Jesus return. We all agree with this last statement.

The Post-millennial view developed out of the Amillennial view and says that the church will eventually conquer the world and produce the kingdom for Christ upon it. This is a recent development, and is not held by very many.

The third view is the premillennial view, in which the Church will be removed prior to the Tribulation period, and return for the Millennium. This view holds that Christ will return to set up a literal kingdom for a thousand years on the earth after a period of Great Tribulation, during which time Israel finds Jesus as their Messiah, and Arab and Jew unite to worship and serve him, against the greatest satanic manifestation the world has seen – the Western Anti-Christ. As we will see below, this is we believe the straight forward reading/interpretation of Daniel's revelation.

THE IDEALIST, POETIC, SPIRITUALIST OR ALLEGORICAL INTERPRETATION - AMILLENNIAL

This interpretation considers eschatology [the study of future things] as a pictorial unfolding of great principles without reference to actual events. Such an interpretation regards eschatology only as a form of spiritual encouragement and assurance of the ultimate triumph of Christianity and the glory of God in eternity.

In the case of the Book of the Revelation, Augustine of Hippo in the 5th century regarded it as presenting in a symbolic way the total conflict between Christianity and evil, or the City of God versus the City of Satan. This view put western theology, we believe at EBCWA, on the wrong path, and it remains the dominant form of theology today.

Augustine's point of view originated in the Alexandrian School of Theology, represented in Clement of Alexandria and Origen. To them the biblical prophetic passages were all allegory. The probable reason was that by their day in the 200s Israel was just a memory, as after the second great rebellion of the Jews (132-138AD) there was universal hatred for them in the eastern Roman Empire (because of the outrages the Jewish rebels had committed), and there was thought to be no hope for their restoration as a people. The land was emptied of them. The holders of this view do not believe that the 1,000 years mentioned in Revelation 20 should be read literally, and are therefore Amillennial in outlook.

THE HISTORICIST INTERPRETATION - POST MILLENNIAL

This view understands the book of Revelation as portraying a panorama of the history of the church from the days of John to the end time or the second advent. Though it had earlier proponents, Joachim of Fiore [1135-1202], a Roman Catholic scholar, is largely responsible for this, and is the originator of the first form of post-millennialism.

This method of interpretation achieved popularity during the Reformation because of its identification of the Pope and the Papacy as the beasts of chapter 13. Wycliffe, Luther and Joseph Mede were adherents of this view.

One problem with this view is that no two scholars can agree in the identification of the personnel pictured in Revelation nor of the historic interpretation of the events. The very variety of historical interpretations is its own downfall. If this is the correct method of interpretation, then it is clear that no one has found the key to explain it coherently, or understood God's revelation to man.

THE FUTURIST OR LITERAL INTERPRETATION - PRE MILLENNIAL

This view of eschatology views the book of the Revelation chronologically, with chapters 4-22 as prophecy yet to be fulfilled. This was the view held by the early church, until spiritual decline in the third century we believe corrupted her doctrine. It is the Early Church viewpoint that we hold at EBCWA; we reject the Alexandrian's viewpoint totally.

From before the time of Christ the Jewish concept was of a Messianic Kingdom on earth which would be 1000 years in length and that the King would rule universally over the earth. The 1000 year reign would be the completion of the Creation Week in Genesis 1-3, as the Sabbath rest at the end of history. What mankind lost in the Garden will be restored for 1000 years of perfect environment under the personal rulership of the Lord himself from Jerusalem. These are the concepts that we believe, John clearly enunciates in the Book of the Revelation.

Up until the Alexandrian theologians, the predominant view of the Church was this Pre Millennial one. It died out, because after the Second Jewish Revolt, 138AD, there were no Jews left in the land of Israel, and by the time of Constantine (312 onwards) the Church was no longer a persecuted minority, but was all powerful, being amalgamated with the State in the Roman Empire. It became fashionable to believe that the Empire and later the Church would "bring in the kingdom", or were indeed the physical manifestation of the kingdom upon the earth. Pre-Millennialism was laid aside as the official theology by the 6th century and the Alexandrian figurative interpretations dominated theology until the Reformation.

This literal method of hermeneutics however indicates that the Scriptures need to be accepted at face value, with the principle that when a passage makes sense, we should seek no other sense, lest we produce nonsense. We believe this literal hermeneutic is the correct one. We reject reading the Bible as the Alexandrians did, in terms of what they saw as possible, and what they thought impossible. God's Word is to be believed, whatever the "evidence" presently before us!

THREE ISSUES AND THE THREE CONCEPTS

[A] Does the Return of Christ End History?

Both amillennialism and post millennialism agree that in their views the return of Christ ends history and starts eternity.

Premillennialism says "no", for there are specific promises of God to be met before history ends, or the Lord has not kept his words to the Patriarchs. The Lord's return is the start of a final stage of history, with the 1000 year reign of the Lord Jesus Christ on earth, before time-space ends, and eternity is all in all. This present space-time universe is then "wound up", imploded and put away, possibly becoming the "Lake of Fire".

[B] Does the Kingdom of God Ever Literally Dominate this World's Culture?

Both pre and post millennialists agree that human culture is subdued by the work of the Spirit and/or Christ. The pre millennial group says that Jesus Christ fulfils this on His return, while the post millennial group say that the Church does it for Christ, on His behalf.

The amillennial group disagree. They say that there is never a time when the kingdom of God ever dominates human culture. The world is fallen and this space-time universe wound up and we all enter eternity.

[C] Does Evil Remain a Force Until Jesus Christ Returns?

Pre and Amillennial agree that evil remains a force until Jesus Christ returns, and that it requires the catastrophic intervention of Christ to eliminate it. The post millennial say "no", Jesus Christ will conquer evil through the church. It is therefore possible for the powers of evil to be rolled back. The hymn "Onward Christian Soldiers" is a post millennial hymn in this context.

EVIDENCE and LOGIC BASED ADOPTED INTERPRETATION

The adopted interpretation for all our publications is the futurist or literal interpretation - pre millennial interpretation.

In verses 10-11 up to this time the wise men had been using human knowledge with which they were very skillful. They could do amazing things by observing what was happening and arriving at a suitable explanation. They were undoubtedly proud of their brilliance and they would be the world's leading scientific minds until the Renaissance. God used the situation to show that this type of wisdom was shallow and an illusion, and that it is God alone who is really wise. The wise men relying on human wisdom now try and divert the attention of the king away from their lack of ability to solve the problem in three ways.

Firstly they say that it is humanly impossible. "There is not a man upon the earth that can shew the king's matter".

Secondly they say that Nebuchadnezzar is creating an unreasonable precedent - "therefore there is no king, lord, nor ruler, that asked such things at any magician, or astrologer, or Chaldean".

Lastly they say perhaps the gods of the Babylonians know- "there is none other that can shew it before the king, except the gods, whose dwelling is not with flesh". They are saying in effect that even their gods can't do this, but this foolish statement, in God's perfect timing, opens the door for Daniel! Believer, always be looking for God's open door. Because of the performance of Daniel at this time the wise men remember it over the years and say that he has the wisdom of the gods some 60 years later at the time of Belshazzar's Feast - Daniel 5:11. He is the man for all the crises of his time.

Rather than placating the king and making him rescind his previous order their reasoning only caused Nebuchadnezzar, who had been frightened by the dream, to become even more frustrated and angry with them, for he knows that this dream must be interpreted, as his future depends upon understanding it. He is correct 100% in this, for all mankind's history is written in advance by this dream, and all women and men need to know it and understand it.

In verses 12 and 13 Nebuchadnezzar finally loses all patience with his advisors. He had said that he would destroy the whole group including Daniel and his friends, a good example of the just suffering by association with others who have caused the problem. He now starts to act to fulfil his threat – the executions begin.

In verse 13 there are two times the word "qetal" which is translated slain is used. In the case of the wise men the stem of qetal is niphal which is the simple passive stem meaning that they would be killed. However the wise men's attitude to Daniel and his companions is shown in "qetal" being in the pual stem, which is an intensive passive indicating that the authorities wanted to violently kill them, and the slaughter may indeed be starting even in the throne room itself.

Daniel by this time has some experience in dealing with problems, having successfully negotiated the vegetable diet in the previous chapter. He now deals with this problem using God's resources by prayer – for only God can save him and his friends – and they pray – casting themselves upon the Lord. 1 Peter 5:5-9.

APPLICATION

A believer is not to rely on their own wisdom in solving problems - **Proverbs 3:5-6** – prayer saturation is to mark us out. God uses situations to show the ineffectiveness of the unbeliever in assessing problems. Isaiah 55:7-9, Jeremiah 29:11-14. Innocent people often suffer because of the sins of others who are associated with them.

Suffering assists in the development of maturity in the Christian, but only as we take it in prayer to the Lord. God will help a believer who is Holy Spirit controlled to cope with suffering. **1 Corinthians 10:13, 1 Peter 5:5-9.**

DOCTRINE

THE OSN FRUIT OF ANGER

1. The explosion of uncontrolled anger is always wrong. Titus 1:7.
2. Only a fool gives way to anger. Proverbs 29:11, Proverbs 10:19, Proverbs 15:28.
3. There are some things that we should be angry at, like injustice, evil, sin, etc. God is righteously angry at sin constantly. Psalms 7:11, John 2:17, Mark 3:5.
4. We should learn to deal with anger without sin getting hold of us. Ephesians 4:26.

SECTION 6 - DANIEL PRAYS TO THE LORD REGARDING THE DREAM 2:14-18

14 Then Daniel answered with counsel and wisdom to Arioch the captain of the king's guard, which was gone forth to slay the wise men of Babylon: **15** He answered and said to Arioch the king's captain, Why is the decree so hasty from the king? Then Arioch made the thing known to Daniel. **16** Then Daniel went in, and desired of the king that he would give him time, and that he would shew the king the interpretation. **17** Then Daniel went to his house, and made the thing known to Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, his companions: **18** That they would desire mercies of the God of heaven concerning this secret; that Daniel and his fellows should not perish with the rest of the wise men of Babylon.

KEY WORDS

Counsel	Eta	Counsel, Advice
Wisdom	Chockmah	Wisdom
Captain	Rab	Great One
Guard	Tabbach	Slaughter, Butcher
Wise	Chakkim	Wise Skilful
Answered	Anah	To make or give an answer
Decree	Dath	A thing given out
Hasty	Chatsaph	To be hasty
Desired	Beah	To enquire after
Give	Nethan	To give
Time	Zeman	Time, Season
Interpretation	Peshar	Interpretation, Explanation
House	Bayith	House
Thing	Millah	Word, Speech, Matter
Known	Yeda	To cause to know
Companions	Chabar	Companions
Mercies	Rachamin	Mercies
Heaven	Shemayin	Heavens
Secret	Raz	A secret
Perish	Abad	To be lost
Rest	Shear	Remnant, Rest

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS (Isaiah 12:1-2)

In verse 16 when he heard of the problem rather than panic Daniel applied the fact that his life was in the hand of God and if he was not meant to die, God would have a solution. He therefore talks to the "Chief of Police" who has come to search them out, to put them all to death. He asked for time - verse 16. He did not know the answer to the "king's matter", but he did know someone who did!

In verses 17 and 18 Daniel returned to his home to discuss and pray about the solution to the problem. He had three real believing friends, and together they prayed to God under the principle of **Psalms 50:15**, "Call upon me in the day of trouble: I will deliver thee, and thou shall glorify me".

Daniel's response was one of thanksgiving and did not take undue credit for himself giving the Lord glory after the king had credited him with the solution. This was a great witness to Nebuchadnezzar who not only was to understand the future of human history but his part in it and that there was a God who was greater than him. However we will see in chapter 3 that he reacts against the Divine perspective of history.

The principle of corporate prayer that is adopted by the four young men is that given in Matthew 18:19 where the Lord says, "that if two or more shall agree on earth as touching any thing that they shall ask, it shall be done for them of my Father which is in heaven".

APPLICATION

Our extremity is God's opportunity. Nebuchadnezzar's dream was the means of introducing God's Eternal Plan to Nebuchadnezzar's realm, and lifting up, at just the right time Daniel, to serve as part of that plan.

God could use Daniel to accomplish this because he was a prepared, prayerful, and obedient believer.

Human wisdom is futile when facing the divine; all the wise men could not help Nebuchadnezzar.

Divine viewpoint can always help, and overcomes the limits of human viewpoint.

A national crisis provides maximum opportunities for witnessing, but only for prepared and spiritually mature believers.

The demonstration of a believer's stability in crisis causes the unbeliever to take notice.

Fellowship with other believers is of vital importance.

Prayer is always available for the believer, the dynamics of prayer are limitless.

God who is all knowing revealed the dream that had troubled Nebuchadnezzar. It gave the outline of human history from Nebuchadnezzar to the Second Advent of Christ, and the setting up of an eternal kingdom.

How many Christian friends do we have who could come together for a prayer meeting of this type?

DOCTRINE

PRAYER

1. We may know the provision of God but we must communicate with Him in order to obtain this provision.
 - a) Prayer is the believer's means of communicating with God.
 - b) The Bible is God's way of communicating with man.

2. Promises Involving Prayer
 - a) Matthew 21:22 We should ask believing.
 - b) Matthew 18:19 The power of corporate prayer.
 - c) Psalm 116:1, 2 God is always available to hear our prayer.

 - d) Isaiah 65:24 God will answer while we are yet praying.
 - e) Matthew 7:7 We are commanded to pray.
 - f) John 14:13-14 We can ask for anything in His name.
 - g) Philippians 4:6 The prayer should be with thanksgiving.
 - h) 1 Thessalonians 5:17 We should pray without ceasing.
 - i) Hebrews 4:16 We can come boldly to the throne of Grace.

3. Prayer Divided into 4 Segments
 - a) Confession of sins (1 John 1:9)
 - b) Thanksgiving (1 Thessalonians 5:18)
 - c) Intercession for others. (Ephesians 6:18)
 - d) Petitions for one's own needs (Hebrews 4:16)

4. Power of Prayer
 - a) Individual - Elijah and the burnt offering. (1 Kings 18:36-39)
 - b) Corporate - the release of Peter from prison. (Acts 12:1-18)

5. One Prayer that could not be Answered The prayer of our Lord on the Cross. (Psalm 22:1-18)

6. To Whom are Prayers Addressed?
 - a) Directed to the Father - (Matthew 6:5-9)
 - b) In the name of the Son - (Hebrews 7:25)
 - c) In the power of the Spirit - (Romans 8:26-27)The Son (Jesus) and Spirit are interceding for us.

7. Prayers can be Divided into Petition and Desire
 - a) Petition - What you ask God for. (e.g. a new car)
 - b) Desire - The desire behind the petition. (e.g. happiness because you have a new car).

8. Four Possible Combinations
 - a) Petition answered - Desire not answered. (Psalm 106:15 - The quails of the Exodus generation. (1 Samuel 8:5) - A King to reign over Israel.
 - b) Petition not answered - Desire answered. (Genesis 18:23) The preservation of Sodom.(2 Corinthians 12:7) - Removal of the thorn in Paul's side.
 - c) Petition answered - Desire answered (1 Kings 18:36-37) -Elijah requests fire for the offering. (Luke 23:42) -The penitent thief's prayer. Type c) represents the perfect prayer.
 - d) Petition not answered -Desire not answered. Type d) unanswered prayer has 9 main reasons which are shown in paragraph 10.

9. Reasons for Unanswered Prayer
 - a) Lack of belief. (Matthew 21:22)
 - b) Selfishness (James 4:3)
 - c) Unconfessed sin (Psalm 66:18)
 - d) Lack of compassion (Proverbs 21:13)
 - e) Pride and self righteousness (Job 35:12-13)

- f) Lack of filling of the Spirit (Ephesians 6:18)
- g) Lack of obedience (1 John 3:22)
- h) Not in the Divine will (1 John 5:14)

Most of the reasons for unanswered prayer, is some form of sin in the life, which can be solved by confession of known sins as per paragraph 4 a) under the concept of 1 John 1:9. There is also the issue of timing within the plan of God.

10. Intercessory Prayer

- a) This is one of the four factors in a prayer which are:-
- b) Confession of sins.
- c) Thanksgiving
- d) Intercession
- e) Own needs.
- f) The power of intercessory prayer is taught in (1 Kings 18:42-46) the principle being found in (James 5:16-18)
- g) The power of prevailing prayer is shown in (Acts 12)
- h) The prayer for the unbeliever (Romans 10:1)
- i) Prayer for an unknown believer (Colossians 1:3-11)
- j) Prayer for the known believer (Ephesians 1:15-23)

11. The True Lord's Prayer (John 17)

- a) That Jesus might be glorified as the Son who has glorified the Father. (v 1 of Philipians 2:9-11)
- b) That He might be restored to glory which He had prior to the foundation of the world. (v 5)
- c) For safety of believers from the world and the devil. (v 11, 15)
- d) For the sanctification of believers. (v 17)

- e) For the spiritual unity of believers. (v 21)
- f) That the world might believe. (v 21)
- g) That believers may be with Him in heaven to see and share His glory. (v 24)

SECTION 7 - DANIEL DESCRIBES THE DREAM AS A MULTI METALLIC IMAGE CHAPTER 2:19-35

19 Then was the secret revealed unto Daniel in a night vision. Then Daniel blessed the God of heaven.**20** Daniel answered and said, Blessed be the name of God for ever and ever: for wisdom and might are his: **21** And he changeth the times and the seasons: he removeth kings, and setteth up kings: he giveth wisdom unto the wise, and knowledge to them that know understanding: **22** He revealeth the deep and secret things: he knoweth what is in the darkness, and the light dwelleth with him. **23** I thank thee, and praise thee, O thou God of my fathers, who hast given me wisdom and might, and hast made known unto me now what we desired of thee: for thou hast now made known unto us the king's matter. **24** Therefore Daniel went in unto Arioch, whom the king had ordained to destroy the wise men of Babylon: he went and said thus unto him; Destroy not the wise men of Babylon: bring me in before the king, and I will shew unto the king the interpretation. **25** Then Arioch brought in Daniel before the king in haste, and said thus unto him, I have found a man of the captives of Judah, that will make known unto the king the interpretation. **26** The king answered and said to Daniel, whose name was Belteshazzar, Art thou able to make known unto me the dream which I have seen, and the interpretation thereof? **27** Daniel answered in the presence of the king, and said, The secret which the king hath demanded cannot the wise men, the astrologers, the magicians, the soothsayers, shew unto the king; **28** But there is a God in heaven that revealeth secrets, and maketh known to the king Nebuchadnezzar what shall be in the latter days. Thy dream, and the visions of thy head upon thy bed, are these; **29** As for thee, O king, thy thoughts came into thy mind upon thy bed, what should come to pass hereafter: and he that revealeth secrets maketh known to thee what shall come to pass. **30** But as for me, this secret is not revealed to me for any wisdom that I have more than any living, but for their sakes that shall make known the interpretation to the king, and that thou mightest know the thoughts of thy heart. **31** Thou, O king, sawest, and behold a great image. This great image, whose brightness was excellent, stood before thee; and the form thereof was terrible. **32** This image's head was of fine gold, his breast and his arms of silver, his belly and his thighs of brass, **33** His legs of iron, his feet part of iron and part of clay. **34** Thou sawest till that a stone was cut out without hands, which smote the image upon his feet that were of iron and clay, and brake them to pieces. **35** Then was the iron, the clay, the brass, the silver, and the gold, broken to pieces together, and became like the chaff of the summer threshingfloors; and the wind carried them away, that no place was found for them: and the stone that smote the image became a great mountain, and filled the whole earth.

KEY WORDS

Secret	Raz	A secret
Revealed	Gelah	To uncover, Remove
Night	Lelya	Night
Vision	Chezev	Vision, Aspect
Blessed	Berak	To declare blessed
Heaven	Shemayin	Heavens
Answered	Anar	To make or give an answer

EVANGELICAL BIBLE COLLEGE OF WESTERN AUSTRALIA

Name	Shum	Name, Renown
Ever	Alema	From age unto age
Wisdom	Chokmah	Wisdom, Skill
Might	Geburah	Might
Changeth	Shena	To double, Alter
Times	Iddan	Refers to a succession of events
Seasons	Zeman	A time divided into epochs and is the background to dispensations which is God's timetable of history.
Removeth	Adah	To cause to pass on or by
Wise	Chakkim	Wise Skilful
Knowledge	Manda	Knowledge
Know	Yeda	To know
Deep	Amiq	Deep
Darkness	Chashok	Darkness
Light	Nehor	Light
Dwelleth	Shere	To dwell
Fathers	Abahan	Fathers, Ancestors
Desired	Beah	To enquire after
Matter	Millah	Word, Speech, Matter
Ordained	Menah	To number, Appoint
Destroy	Abad	To destroy
Said	Amar	To say, Lift up the Voice
Bring	Alal	To cause to come up or in
Haste	Behal	To be hastened
Captives	Bengalutha	Sons of exile or removal
Interpretation	Peshar	Interpretation, Explanation
Able	Kehal	To be able
Dream	Chelem	Dream
Presence	Qodam	Before
Demanded	Sheel	To ask
Soothsayers	Gezar	To decree, to cut off or down
Latter	Acharith	Last or latter end
Days	Yamim	Days
Head	Resh	Head
Bed	Mishkab	Place for lying down
Thoughts	Rayon	Thought
Come to Pass	Hava	To be
Living	Chai	Living, Alive, Lively
Sakes	Dibrah	Word, Matter
Heart	Lebab	The Heart
Great	Rab	Abundant, Much
Image	Tselem	Image
Brightness	Ziv	Clearness, Appearance
Excellent	Yattir	Excellent, Abundant
Stood	Qum	To rise up
Form	Rev	Appearance, Sight
Terrible	Dechal	To be afraid, Terrible
Fine	Tab	Good
Gold	Dehab	Gold
Breast	Chadin	Breasts
Arms	Dera	Arm
Silver	Kesaph	Silver
Belly	Meim	Bowels
Thighs	Yarekah	Thighs
Brass	Nechash	Brass, Copper
Legs	Shaq	Leg
Iron	Parzel	Iron
Feet	Regal	Foot
Part	Min	From, Out of , Some of
Clay	Chasaph	Burnt clay of the potter
Stone	Eben	Stone
Cut out	Gezar	To be cut off
Hands	Yad	Hand
Smote	Mecha	To smite
Broken Pieces	Duq	To be bruised small
Chaff	Ur	Skin, Chaff
Summer	Qayit	Summer
Threshing floor	Idderin	Threshing floor
Wind	Ruach	Wind

Carried Away	Nesa	To lift up, Bear, Carry
Place	Athar	Place
Became	Havah	To be, exist
Mountain	Tur	Round tower, Height
Filled	Mela	To fill
Whole	Kol	All, The whole, Entire
Earth	Ara	The earth

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

Here we have the illustration of the doctrinal truth behind **Psalm 50:1-6**. This verse tells the believer to call on the Lord in the day of trouble and God will deliver the believer so that they glorify the Lord. Daniel and his friends expected an answer to the prayer and God honoured their attitude by giving both the dream and its interpretation. As God is all knowing He was able to do this, and remains ever able to answer our prayers.

Daniel now blesses the Lord and shows clearly that he acknowledges the source of the prophecy which he is to reveal to the King. The principle of who gets the credit is found in the next eleven verses. Daniel never gets carried away with his own importance; he remains grounded in God's Character, grace and mercy towards him, and gives the glory to God.

This reflects Jeremiah 32:19, where God is seen as, "Great in counsel and mighty in work: as His eyes are open upon all the ways of the sons of men". As a result of this attitude Daniel has complete peace and inner happiness in the presence of a king who is threatening to kill him and all who he knows, values and respects.

In verse 21 we have the words "times and seasons". Times in the equivalent Greek is "chronos" from which we get the word chronology, indicating a sequence of events, while seasons is the word "kairos", which is a term for time being divided into eras, or periods of responsibility/stewardship (of dispensations).

Daniel knew from his study of Leviticus 26 that the northern kingdom of Samaria/Israel was in the final stage of discipline as it was in dispersion due to rejection of God. He also recognised that Judah, the southern kingdom, was moving from the penultimate stage of foreign domination [**Leviticus 26:23-26**] towards full captivity. This would occur in less than thirty years time in 586 BC.

He also knew that Israel, as the full twelve tribes, still had a future. He would read about this in the Torah, with Jacob and Moses' prophetic promises recorded by Moses in Genesis 49, and Deuteronomy 33. 20 Years later He could also read Jeremiah 25:11-12 which made it clear that the captivity in Babylon would be exactly 70 years in extent. He will later be given revelation on that time frame. Daniel 9:1-2. Paul reminds us in Romans 11 that Israel still isn't finished, and that means the full twelve tribes, for it yet has its part to play in the great Plan that is still unfolding, and finds its culmination in the Second Advent of the Lord.

He was also aware that God raises leaders and also disposes of leaders as He desires, and that our job as believers is to act as His representatives, irrespective of what political situation we find ourselves in. Both Peter and Paul urge believers to pray for political leaders, and these evil leaders of their day would murder them! **Romans 13:1-7, Titus 3:1-2, 1 Peter 2:13-17**. This is clearly stated in **Psalm 75:6-7**, where Asaph the Psalmist said, "for promotion cometh neither from the east, nor the west, nor from the south, but God is the judge: He putteth down one, and setteth up another". **1 Peter 5:5-11**.

Daniel continues with the statement that God gives, "wisdom to the wise and knowledge to those that know understanding". Obviously Daniel has been brought up by godly parents to be able to apply the truths of the Scriptures to his situation as a teenager. In this he is like Timothy, of whom Paul said in 2 Timothy 3:15, "And that from a child thou hast known the Holy Scriptures which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus".

In verses 22-23 we see that the Lord always reveals additional information to the prayerful and obedient believer. The darkness we read of here is the mind of the unbeliever. **Ephesians 5:8-11, 1 Peter 2:9, Jude 13**. Nebuchadnezzar knew his dream, but only the called one from God could interpret it, because the interpretation came from God. The fact that God reveals the secrets required by his servants is also given in Psalm 25:14.

It is clear from the context that while the vision was given to Daniel alone all the other young men understood the dream. Their minds were filled with this knowledge, and Daniel was now ready to go before Nebuchadnezzar. In verses 24 and 25 we see Daniel approaching Arioch, a very high official in the court whom Nebuchadnezzar had ordered to kill the wise men, and through him volunteered to go to the king and reveal to him the dream and its interpretation.

Whilst Daniel has offered himself, it is noted that Arioch attempts to make it appear that he has discovered this person who will solve the problem. He is after the commendation of Nebuchadnezzar at anyone else's expense. Never concern yourself about such things; just do the work the Lord has given you and leave the results to him. **Jeremiah 45:1-5**.

Daniel held to his faith that Israel had a future, even though it didn't look like it at the time. Do not be like Origen and Clement and their "Replacement" theology, looking at the land in their day, trusting their eyes, not the Word of God. The Alexandrian theologians looked at the land and Israel was literally gone! But God had said they would come back in several places! These foolish men believed their eyes, not the multiple promises of the Word of God.

Immediately after Arioch had tried to take the credit for finding the person with God given interpreting skills, Nebuchadnezzar then tries to give the credit to Daniel. (verse 26). Daniel however has a perfect orientation to the truth, knowing that it is God who gives the answers and therefore God should get the glory and credit, and he then focuses the king's attention on God as the source of all wisdom and knowledge.

The structure of verse 27 seems to be in the form of a question but in fact Daniel is bluntly saying that the wise men, the court advisers, cannot tell the dream or the interpretation. A better rendering of what Daniel said would be, "The secret which the king hath demanded of the wise men, the astrologers, the magicians, the soothsayers; they cannot shew unto the king".

Daniel and his three companions are in the Magi University, the "wise men school", and Daniel sees the chance that all the senior wise men may also try and portray themselves as his mentor, and therefore deflect the glory from God. Daniel makes a preemptive strike against any such happening, as many of them are satanic. God alone will get the glory!

Having divested the wise men of potential glory, Daniel now places the glory where it should be, with God. He indicates the dream is a prophetic one, showing what is going to happen in the future, and he then starts to talk about the dream and when it occurred, and when it will be fulfilled – both near and far off future.

This phrase, "what will be in the latter days", had been used before at the start of the great prophecies concerning the Patriarchs which Jacob made in **Genesis 49:1**. Daniel can echo the Patriarchs, for he knows the Torah, and knows that this is what the Spirit has shown him – this dream is as prophetic about the future as Jacob's blessing was.

The captivity of Judah and destruction of the temple of Solomon and the city of Jerusalem in 586 BC end the forty year period of grace that Judah had received. They had forty years of ministry from Jeremiah, from 625 – 586 BC grace was offered, and consistently rejected. The "times of the Gentiles" commenced in 605 BC, but the destruction of the temple is the final word to Israel – their days as an independent nation are over until Messiah rules. In fact the first king of the Times of the Gentiles was Nebuchadnezzar himself. From Jesus ministry, beginning 30 AD until the destruction of the second temple, was also forty years, ending 70 AD.

The Times of the Gentiles will terminate at the Second Advent of Christ, when the Lord Jesus Christ returns to set up the Kingdom of God on earth, a kingdom ruled over by Jesus Christ, the King of the Jews, but also King of all kings.

C I Scofield also talks about the "Fullness of the Gentiles" which he contrasts with the "Times of the Gentiles". The Fullness is the completion of the purposes of God in the Church Age, which relates to the out calling from among the Gentiles of a people for Christ's name, "the church which is His body", [**Romans 11:25, Ephesians 1:22-23 cf Acts 15:14, Ephesians 4:11-13, 1 Corinthians 12:12,13**], and relates to the Church Age only, while the Times of the Gentiles begins with Nebuchadnezzar and terminates at the Second Advent of Christ. [**Luke 21:24**]

In this dream we find not only future events, but we are introduced to the person of Christ as Messiah, and see how He will end world history. If Nebuchadnezzar had any doubt about the ability of Daniel to bring an interpretation it was short lived, because in verses 31-35 Daniel describes in detail the dream that the king had constantly dreamed over recent weeks. God is able to do this, and through history has done it many times, when needed, to accredit his prophets.

The dream was related to future world history and was linked with the Plan of God. It is noted that the statue is in a human form and relates to the domination of large sections of the world, or the world completely, by the kingdom of man.

This reminds us of the Lord's statement in Mark 8:36, "For what shall it profit a man if he shall gain the whole world and lose his own soul". Nebuchadnezzar is faced here with the Creator, with future history, and his destiny as a mortal man. It shows that irrespective of how powerful a person is in this life it does not guarantee eternal life. He must bow before his God as Lord of all. His earthly dignity does not give him any eternal dignity.

In verse 31 we have two contrasts. The image is bright and excellent, indicating that the world empires can be highly glamorous. It is also seen as terrible which not only shows the strength of the empires but also their ability to control and enslave.

In verses 32-35 a study of the multi metalled image shows that from head to foot the metal becomes less valuable indicating that things deteriorate over history, over the "Times of the Gentiles". It has been found in history that all these metals have been used in trade, with even iron ingots recovered from one wreck.

As the size of the military increased in any empire the value of the money decreased, until in the end the demise of the Roman Empire was more to do with the bankruptcy of the Empire than by lack of fighting skill. The same thing happened to the Soviet Empire.... The USSR fell into pieces because of bankruptcy rather than direct warfare.

Also seen in the dream is the destruction of the whole edifice of man's kingdoms through time by a stone which crushes the image and becomes a great mountain. Here we are introduced to the return of the Lord Jesus Christ – He will return to crush all of mankind's power lust and eliminate all who stand arrogantly against God's rule and God's people.

APPLICATION

When a person becomes a believer the first reaction is, "What can God do for me?" As the Christian grows the attitude changes to, "What can I do for God?" Finally the Christian realises that the correct attitude is, "What can God do through me?" We no longer look at things happening around us and despair, rather we ask, "Lord what are you doing here?"

Our attitude should comply with **Psalm 113:2** which says, "blessed be the name of the Lord from this time forth and for evermore".

When we rely on the Lord we can have peace and joy even in the face of disaster or potential death. "Man-made" empires tend to elevate individuals to a place of self glorification, whilst all glory should go to God. We see that all Empires are part of a divine plan, and each believer, in faith seeks God's path for us within the eternal plan, and when we find it and obey our task God gets the glory and we get the fruit of the Holy Spirit.

Jesus Christ controls history. He knows the beginning from the end and is in ultimate control to ensure that the Plan of God is followed right the way through to eternity. The unbeliever is in the dark regarding future events, but we know what will happen because God is in control, and has revealed all we need to know to fulfil our place in the eternal plan.

People in high places will often try and portray that they are the source of all benefit to their superiors even when it is the subordinate who has done all the work and taken the initiative.

"For what shall it profit a man if he shall gain the whole world and lose his own soul". God promotes nations and judges internationalism and the Lord acts, within the plan, to judge the narcissists pushing their satanic agendas. They will fail in time and be losers for all eternity.

The world believes that through evolution things always improve, while the Bible clearly states that things start off well and become more and more decadent as time progresses. The only things that "get better" are viruses...

DOCTRINES

GOD: CHARACTER OF GOD - THE BELIEVER'S FIRST AID

1. Whilst God is three persons all three persons have exactly the same essence or character:

a) **SOVEREIGNTY**

The Father (Ephesians 1:11 , cf Isaiah 40:8, Matthew 6:10, Hebrews 10:7, 9)

The Son (John 5:21, Revelation 19:16)

The Spirit (1 Corinthians 12:11 , cf Hebrews 2:4)

b) **RIGHTEOUSNESS**

The Father (John 17:25)

The Son (Luke 1:35, Hebrews 7:26, 2 Corinthians 5:21)

The Spirit The Holy Spirit

c) **JUSTICE**

The Father (Job 37:23, cf 8:3)

The Son (Acts 3:14, John 5:22, Revelation 19:11)

The Spirit (Nehemiah 9:20)

d) **LOVE**

The Father (John 3:16)

The Son (Ephesians 5:25, 1 John 3:16)

The Spirit (John 16:7-11, 1 Corinthians 2:10)

e) **ETERNAL LIFE**

The Father (John 5:26)

The Son (Micah 5:2, cf John 1:1-2, 1 John 5:11)

The Spirit (Isaiah 48:16)

f) **ALL-KNOWING**

The Father (Hebrews 4:13, cf Matthew 11:27, 1 Peter 1:2)

The Son (John 18:4, cf Matthew 9:4, John 2:25, 1 Cor 4:5)

The Spirit (Isaiah 11:2, cf 1 Corinthians 2:11)

g) **EVERYWHERE**

The Father (2 Chronicles 2:6)

The Son (Matthew 28:20, cf Ephesians 1:23)

The Spirit (Psalm 139:7)

h) **ALL-POWERFUL**

The Father (Mark 14:36, cf 1 Peter 1:5)
 The Son (Hebrews 1:3, cf Matthew 24:30, 2 Corinthians 12:9, Philippians 3:21)
 The Spirit (Romans 15:19)

i) UNCHANGEABLE

The Father (Hebrews 6:17, Psalm 33:11)
 The Son (Hebrews 13:8)
 The Spirit (John 14:16)

j) TRUTH

The Father (John 7:28, John 17:3)
 The Son (1 John 5:20, cf John 1:14, 14:6, Revelation 19:11)
 The Spirit (1 John 5:6, cf John 14:17, 15:26, 16:13)

MERCY

1. The Hebrew and Greek words for mercy carry the meanings of, gentleness, tenderness, and compassion towards others.
2. It is not a passive concern but an active one that works out to help the one in need of love and concern.
3. God is merciful towards us all. Exodus 33:19, Romans 9:15, Isaiah 13:18, Jeremiah 6:23, 21:7, Cf, 1 Kings 8:50, Jeremiah 3:13, 42:12
4. God is rich in mercy towards us. Ephesians 2:4, James 5:11, 1 Timothy 1:2, 2 Timothy 1:2, Titus 3:5, 1 Peter 1:3.
5. People appealed to the Lord on the basis of his mercy towards the weak and needy. Matthew 9:27, 15:22, 17:15, 20:30, Mark 10:47, 48, Luke 17:13, 18:38, 39.
6. The good Samaritan's acts were praised by the Lord as acts of mercy. Luke 10:37
7. When the rich man appealed to Abraham in the story of Dives, he appealed on the basis of mercy. Luke 16:24.
8. As we are recipients of mercy so we must be merciful to others. Zechariah 7:9, 10, Luke 1:50.
9. Grace gives us that (blessing) which we don't deserve; mercy withholds that (judgment) which we do deserve.

SECTION 8 - DEFINITION OF FOUR WORLD EMPIRES AND THEIR DESTINIES Chapter 2:36-43

36 This is the dream; and we will tell the interpretation thereof before the king. 37 Thou, O king, art a king of kings: for the God of heaven hath given thee a kingdom, power, and strength, and glory. 38 And wheresoever the children of men dwell, the beasts of the field and the fowls of the heaven hath he given into thine hand, and hath made thee ruler over them all. Thou art this head of gold. 39 And after thee shall arise another kingdom inferior to thee, and another third kingdom of brass, which shall bear rule over all the earth. 40 And the fourth kingdom shall be strong as iron: forasmuch as iron breaketh in pieces and subdueth all things: and as iron that breaketh all these, shall it break in pieces and bruise. 41 And whereas thou sawest the feet and toes, part of potters' clay, and part of iron, the kingdom shall be divided; but there shall be in it of the strength of the iron, forasmuch as thou sawest the iron mixed with miry clay. 42 And as the toes of the feet were part of iron, and part of clay, so the kingdom shall be partly strong, and partly broken. 43 And whereas thou sawest iron mixed with miry clay, they shall mingle themselves with the seed of men: but they shall not cleave one to another, even as iron is not mixed with clay.

KEY WORDS

Dream	Chelem	Dream
Interpretation	Peshar	Interpretation, Explanation
King	Maleku	Kingdom
Heaven	Shemayin	Heavens
Power	Chesen	Strength
Strength	Teqoph	Strength, Might
Glory	Yequar	Preciousness, Rarity
Children	Be	Son
Men	Enash	A man, Mortal
Dwell	Dur	To dwell
Beasts	Chaiyah, Cheva	A living creature
Field	Bar	Field, Open country
Fowls	Oph	Fowl

Hand	Yad	Hand
Ruler	Shelet	To rule
Head	Resh	Head
Gold	Dehab	Gold
Another	Ochori	Another
Inferior	Ara	Low, Lower
Third	Telithai	Third
Brass	Nechash	Brass, Copper
Earth	Ara	Earth
Fourth	Rebii	Fourth
Strong	Nitsbah	Standing, Strength
Iron	Parzel	Iron
Subdueth	Chashal	To make feeble
Breaketh	Deqaq	To beat small
Bruise	Rea	To break
Feet	Regal	Foot
Toes	Etsbean	Toes, Fingers
Part	Min	From, Out of, Some of
Potters	Pechar	Potter
Clay	Chasaph	Burnt clay of the potter
Divided	Pelag	To be divided
Broken	Tebar	To shiver, shatter
Sawest	Chazar	To see [in vision]
Mixed With	Arab	To mingle self
Miry	Tin	Mire, Mud
Mingle	Arab	To mingle self
Seed	Zera	Seed, Progeny
Cleave	Debaq	To cleave, Adhere

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

In these verses we have a pictorial layout of successive empires from the time of the Babylonian captivity to the Second Advent of Christ. Daniel sees history unfold, just as Nebuchadnezzar has in the dream, and so when he speaks to the king, the king recognizes the truth of his words and knows he is indeed a man from the One True God.

Verses 37 – 38

The Head of Gold represents the Chaldean Empire under Nebuchadnezzar who brought the southern kingdom of Judea into final captivity in 586 BC. The last king was Nabonidus, whose co regent Belshazzar was killed the night of the writing on the wall occurred.

The Chaldeans originated in the mountainous plateau in southern Persia or Iran and extended down towards the Arabian Gulf. In the sixth century BC they moved more and more often out of their highland home into the lower areas. They became very well organised and conquered many other tribes. They were greatly attracted to the Fertile Crescent with the lush vegetation in the Tigris and Euphrates Valley.

From time to time they actually ruled as the kings of Babylon. One example is given in Isaiah 39:1, "At that time Merodach-baladan, the son of Baladan, king of Babylon, sent letters and a present to Hezekiah: for he had heard that he had been sick, and was recovered". This king had a Chaldean name and may be related to Nebuchadnezzar who comes 100 years later from the same group of noble families that this man was a member of.

In verse 37 we see that Daniel tells Nebuchadnezzar that the God of heaven has placed him in the position as the most powerful ruler of the world. He was not king due to his own merit, but God's choice, and that means he had a part to play in the eternal plan. God did this in a rather unusual way.

Nabopolassar the father of Nebuchadnezzar was hired by the powerful Assyrians to defend Babylon against the invasion of the Sea People, and he cunningly married his son to a Median Princess to secure his eastern flank, ready to defeat Assyria when he could. He entered Babylon in the name of the Assyrians and made himself King of Babylon. Having secured the city he then plotted and revolted against the Assyrians and forming an alliance with the Medes and the Scythians, and so the Assyrians were crushed and totally defeated. The city of Nineveh fell by act of God however....

In regard to this event, it is of note that in predicting the demise of Assyria, the prophet Isaiah used a passive stem rather than a reflexive stem to describe their fall. Unlike others, the Assyrians had not decayed from within, which would have required a reflexive verb stem but had received destruction whilst still vigorous. This shows clearly once again that God knows history in the most intimate detail.

The Scythians returned to the Steppes of Russia with booty and a woman each, and Nabopolassar became the ruler of the area surrounding Babylon. Nebuchadnezzar his son made an expedition ending in the area near Jerusalem, and defeated Pharaoh Necho at the battle of Carchemish on the way.

He had to return with haste when he heard of the death of his father, and so Nebuchadnezzar now became the greatest ruler of his age, the head of Gold. It was Nebuchadnezzar who eventually returned to Jerusalem, destroyed it and took the children of Israel into captivity starting their 70 year sojourn in Babylon. He would also later defeat Egypt totally.

After the death of Nebuchadnezzar there was a time of instability. His son Evil-Merodach was a very poor ruler. Evil Merodach was assassinated by his brother in law Neriglissar or Nergalsharezer of **Jeremiah 39:3**, who assumed the kingship but survived only four years, then to be succeeded by his son Labashi-Marduk who himself was killed in a revolution only a few months after his accession.

The Chaldean Empire now entered its final phase with the election of an older man, Nabonidus, by the clan leaders, to the throne in 556 BC. As a man in his sixties who was more interested in astronomy and religion, he made his son Belshazzar co-ruler, who we will meet in Daniel chapter 5, and left him as his regent in Babylon. In chapter 5 we will see the last day of the Chaldean Empire with the famous writing on the wall incident. We will see more below.

Verse 39 a

The Shoulders of Silver introduces us to the second great Gentile Empire; the Medio-Persian Empire initially under Cyrus the Persian (also called Darius the Mede – as his mother was a Median Princess) who having conquered the Chaldean Empire in 538 BC, set up an Empire that dominated the Middle East for the next 200 years until 331 BC.

During the rise and fall of the Chaldean Empire, the Head of Gold, two other groups were striving for ascendancy in the area; the Medes and the Persians, which represent the shoulders and arms in the image.

The Medes and the Persians were related to one another and often fought each other, but when an outside threat came they used to combine to fight against the common enemy. This habit still is common in places like Iran and Afghanistan even to this day. Warfare was like sport to these people, and they could change sides without concern for the dead.

During the reign of Nabonidus, Cyrus the Great, the Persian leader, conquered the Medes, and by his dignity and incorporation of the Median aristocracy into his government and army, he finally united the two people groups. He was assisted in this as his mother was a Median Princess, daughter of Cyaxares, the last great Median King. In 546 BC he conquered Croesus the fabulously wealthy king of Lydia, and some 7 years later took Babylon, almost without resistance, as seen in Daniel chapter 5.

Cyrus had the distinction of being named in the Bible some 150 years before he was born. In Isaiah 44:28 he is noted as a shepherd for God who would institute the laying of the foundation of the Temple in Jerusalem. The description of his work continues into **Isaiah 45:1-5**. Cyrus was obviously a very important person for God, as he is also mentioned in the books of Ezra, 2 Chronicles, and of course Daniel. He is named with his Persian name, as he rules with this, but Daniel will give us his Median name (Darius the Mede) as Daniel is strongly associated with the Medes all through his life, and we suspect was a Median-Persian “agent” from earliest days.

Cyrus fulfilled God’s plan in his life, as Nebuchadnezzar had before him. The Chaldean Empire had been used to remove the children of Israel from the Land. Now Cyrus and the Medio Persian Empire was used to restore them to the Land and to rebuild the Temple and resettle the city of Jerusalem. The walls and gates would be re-made under the edict of Artaxerxes Longimanus, through his “Satrap” Nehemiah in 445-444BC.

The kings of the Medio – Persian Empire were

Cyrus [538 – 530], known as Cyrus the Great, Darius the Mede, King of Anshan, and King of Persia.

Cambyses [530 – 522] – He was the son of Cyrus and succeeded his father.

Pseudo – Smerdis [Gaumata] who was an usurper and reigned from 522 to 521.

Darius I [521-486] known as Darius Hystaspes, or Darius the Great.

The books of Ezra, Nehemiah, Haggai and Zechariah all mention Darius. It was during his reign that the second period of 70 years of the Babylonian Captivity starting in 586 BC terminated. The first period ran 605-535 BC and ends with the edict of Cyrus for the Jews to return. The second 70 year period runs 586-516 and is the 70 years that the temple lays desolate, ending with the final result of Darius’ edict to complete the rebuild of the temple. The temple of Zerubbabel and Joshua is completed in 516, and it will be rebuilt by Herod, and is the temple the Lord comes to.

Xerxes I [486-465] the Ahasuerus of the book of Esther. He is the one who invaded Greece with a massive army.

Artaxerxes I [465-424] known as Artaxerxes Longimanus whose edict to rebuild Jerusalem’s walls in 445 BC commenced the period of 490 years promised to the Jewish nation in Daniel 9:24-27. He is named in Ezra 7:1-8 and Nehemiah 2:1. He is the friend of Ezra and Nehemiah, appointing both as Satraps.

Xerxes II [424]

Darius II [423-404]

Artaxerxes II [404-359]

Artaxerxes III [350-338]

Darius III [338-331] the last Persian King, who was defeated by Alexander the Great finally in 331 BC. This event is outlined prophetically in Daniel 11:2-3 and will be dealt with there.

Far from being primitive people the Persians were some of the great scientists of the ancient world. Alexander the Great was so impressed by them that he wrongly ordered his Generals to divorce their Greek wives and marry Persian princesses in an attempt to create a master race. His generals did as they were ordered, but within a very short time of this order, they had poisoned Alexander, and he died in Babylon. The Bible records Daniel's prophetic word that Alexander the Great would be murdered. This was worked out by an Otago University toxicologist only a few years ago, and findings published in a Medical Toxicology Journal.

Verse 39 b

The Belly of Bronze represents the Greek Empire under Alexander the Great who conquered the known world in less than 13 years.

Alexander died after an alcoholic binge, as a result of specific poison in Babylon, as he was trying to set up a super race of half Greek and half Persian as outlined above. His Hellenistic empire lasted however until the first century BC, through his generals, with Cleopatra being the last of the Greek rulers of Egypt before the next Empire (Rome) takes control.

The prophecies of Daniel 11:3-39 deal with the detailed history of the fall of Alexander, his succession by four generals of which two, the King of the North based in Damascus, and the King of the South based in Egypt, takes us down to the time of Pompey the Great and Gaius Julius Caesar.

Perhaps the greatest legacy of Alexander was the provision of the Koine Greek language of the New Testament, the most accurate language for clear communication of all time. This was spread throughout the known world by the time of Christ and was used as the language of the New Testament.

From around 280 BC the Greek language was used by the Jews of Egypt to translate the Jewish Scriptures and this became the Septuagint (LXX), and was 300 years later the bible of the early churches, and the means of evangelism amongst Greek speaking peoples. Refer to Book 290 – the Use of the Greek Perfect Tenses in the Bible. Refer below to page 229 – Aristotle and Alexander the Great, and the Koine Greek.

Verse 40 - 43

The Legs of Iron introduces the Roman Empire with its two parts, the eastern and western based on Constantinople and Rome. The Western Empire fell to the Vandals in the fifth century whilst the Eastern Empire lasted for another thousand years.

The shepherds on the banks of the Tiber moved onto one of the hills and the foundation of the city of Rome came into being. Eventually Rome moved out and conquered parts of northern and southern Italy. Rome then seized Sicily and Spain in the Punic Wars. Next came Macedonia, the home territory of Alexander the Great, as well as Asia Minor, Egypt, Gaul, North Africa, and Syria. The Mediterranean became known as a Roman lake.

There were however civil wars, corruption, and decadence which looked as if the Roman Republic and its power would decline and possibly could not survive. Many of their subject peoples hoped so, but it was not to be, for the Lord had a purpose that this violent empire was to fulfil. Study these times and you will see that God had key people in each period.

At the crucial point the right woman or man emerged and shook the Republic into order and acted as the transition agent to bring in the Empire. That man was Gaius Julius Caesar who entered into the picture as the final dictator who gave Rome a system of law and government which extended its life for five hundred years. Julius Caesar was assassinated in 44 BC and after more unrest and civil wars his nephew Augustus became Emperor, and implemented the administrative policy that his uncle had formed in the SPQR system.

As a result there was a period of relative peace, the Pax Romana, which set the scene for the Lord Jesus Christ to enter into this world and subsequently for the gospel to be spread across the known world. As part of the safe environment pirates were swept from the sea, and in Israel the robber bands were controlled by the Romans, giving greater security in the Promised Land for the gospel spread.

Subsequently however the vigorous empire gave way to decadence and depravity in the frantic search for happiness that men fall into when they lose sight of eternal realities. In August of AD 70 the Romans under Titus destroyed Jerusalem. The church there remembered the warnings of the Lord, as recorded in Matthew 24-25 and fled the city when the siege was lifted for a few months.

They headed across Jordan to Pella, and from there dispersed to continue their service. John headed for Ephesus to take over that church after the death of Timothy. John will be the only apostle who will die of old age, but by the end of the century, after great personal suffering, he is led by the Holy Spirit in the writing of the Revelation, Gospel, and the First Letter as the Commentary on the Gospel of John, and so the Bible was completed. Refer to the, "Last Words Commentaries", that cover these last words to the churches for application in our darkening days.

The period of the Antonine Caesars which followed, and lasted for almost the whole of the second century, was the Golden Age of Rome. However while there was peace there was also violent persecution of the believers by a number of the best of the Caesars, but the infrastructure of roads still allowed for evangelism throughout the Empire and increasing numbers of translations were made to reach the tribes on the frontiers.

Eventually in 476 AD the German chieftain Odovacar conquered the last of the Roman emperors, Romulus Augustulus, and the Western Roman Empire ceased to exist, but from it came European Imperialism that would continue the heritage of the Iron Beast that was ancient Rome.

The legs of iron therefore represent western dominated imperialism. This culminates in the ten toes of clay and iron. The word clay should be better translated ceramic clay. It is baked hard but does not adhere to the iron. It probably represents the multicultural world we live in nowadays. It ends up as a world wide empire as seen in the parallel passage in Daniel 7:23-24.

In verse 41 we see that they are divided. The Aramaic word for divided is Pelag. It has its Hebrew equivalent in Peleg the name of one of the great grandsons of Shem in Genesis 10:25 where it says, "in his days was the earth divided". This talks about the division of the earth by language at the Tower of Babel. Our modern day societies are divided by language barriers.

APPLICATION

God promotes and demotes leaders of nations. They are placed there by God and He will use them for his glory. This is seen not only in Nebuchadnezzar, but also in people like the Exodus Pharaoh of Egypt. Leaders are free to act, but the Plan of God will still work out to God's glory. When we look on our only question should be, "What is God doing?"

God knows all of history in absolute detail before it happens. We can therefore be assured that what the Bible says about the future whether it is reporting incidents as the great historian Luke did or prophesying future events as Isaiah did it will be absolutely accurate.

The Lord is coming back and will return to judge the world and thoroughly destroy the man made empire of the Antichrist and will then set up his kingdom which will be a world wide kingdom. Let us not be attached to the things here and now.

Nations can be used by God as sources of blessing as well as judgment for believers. It is of interest that in Revelation 17:10 it mentions seven kings or empires, five of which have been, one is and one is to come.

Remembering that the Apostle John wrote this in 96 AD, "that which is", was the Roman Empire, those that had been were the Egyptian, Assyrian, Chaldean, Medio - Persian and Greek, and that which was to come was the Revived Roman Empire or the culmination of Roman originated Anti-Semitic (also anti-believer) Imperialism.

DOCTRINES

GOVERNMENT: NATIONAL

1. God has delegated authority to mankind to judge evil.
2. In Genesis, the rule of law was by God (Genesis 4:7). Here Cain murdered Abel. God declared the punishment upon Cain.
3. After the Flood, God delegated responsibility for judgment to human governments. This expressly includes the command to execute capital punishment for murder, so that evil can be removed from the earth (Genesis 9:4-6) This has not changed throughout the Old Testament or the Church Age (Romans 13:4-6)
4. During the Millennium, Christ Himself will be King and Judge on earth.
5. Two limitations are put on government
 - a) The government shall be national with linguistic, geographical and racial differences.
 - i) God had to disperse the human race after the Tower of Babel. (Genesis 11:1-9).
 - ii) Satan attempts to unite the world during the Tribulation (Revelation 13:16-18, 19:19-21).
 - iii) Only the Lord Jesus Christ can truly rule the world as King (Revelation 20:1-6)
 - b) They must make laws consistent with the Word of God. (Romans 13:1-7) God will ultimately judge all unrighteousness.

6. Three classic objections are raised to the question of capital punishment.

a) Capital punishment does not deter crime - Two fallacies :-

i) Capital punishment was never created to deter crime, but it is the retributive justice of God against evil.

ii) Also if it were properly administered it would deter. In the Old Testament capital punishment was never given unless there had been two eyewitnesses to the crime and was only the punishment for certain crimes. Conviction was not possible through circumstantial evidence as it had to be by direct witness. After the trial the executioners were the witnesses. The execution was public and the body had to be displayed until sundown indicating the wrath of God on guilty man.

b) The retributive justice theory which states that a society which has capital punishment is exacting its vengeance on the guilty. Two fallacies:-

i) Who is the one who owes the debt? There are three parties involved, the criminal, the victim and the State. If the criminal kills the victim he has broken the law of the State and therefore the crime is against the State, not the victim. Capital punishment therefore comes out of God's vengeance.

ii) Retributive justice would have a redemptive element if it were carried out correctly as it was in Israel.

c) It cannot be justly administered as the poor cannot engage as good a lawyer as the rich and are therefore more likely to get convicted. God knew that capital punishment could not be justly administered when He set it up, Jesus Christ being a prime example.

7. Although God has delegated the authority, He has not defined the form of government (e.g. monarchy, democracy)

8. Government is based on the fair balance between law and power. (Deuteronomy 16:18 -18:22) Power is exercised internally by police and externally by the military.

9. Law comes from one of four sources.

a) verbally from God as to the nation Israel (theocracy)

b) those nations based on Christian principles draw their law from the Bible.

c) there are nations who base their law on what the people demand (democracy).

d) the law can be based on what an individual desires such as a dictator.

10. Governments should

a) safeguard the rights and freedoms of the individual (Deuteronomy 22:1-3)

b) defend marriage and the family, including guarding against adultery and rape. (Deuteronomy 24:5)

c) encourage patriotism (Deuteronomy 19:13)

11. Christians should pray for governments (1 Timothy 2:1-3)

12. Rebellion is never condoned. However, Christians do have the right to passively disobey laws where they are obviously contradictory to the Word of God (Acts 5:29)

CYRUS – PERSIAN SHEPHERD

1. SCRIPTURE - Ezra 1:1 - 6:14.

2. BIOGRAPHY - Cyrus II The Great was the son of Cambyses I, King of Anshan, and Mandane, a daughter of the King of Media. On the death of Cambyses in 559 BC he unified the Persians before attacking Media and welding the Medes and the Persians into an empire.

He proceeded to defeat Croesus the fabulously rich King of Lydia in 546 BC before commencing an assault on Babylon itself. Cyrus eventually took Babylon, slaying the last King of the Chaldean empire, Belshazzar.

On entering Babylon Cyrus proved to be a merciful conqueror allowing enslaved peoples to return to their own lands. This included the Jews, who were encouraged by Cyrus to return to Palestine and rebuild the temple (2 Chronicles 36:22,23; Ezra 1:1-5). He returned the sacred vessels plundered by Nebuchadnezzar from Solomon's temple (Ezra 6:5).

About 50,000 Jews returned to Palestine under the leadership of Joshua and Zerubbabel (Ezra 2:64,65). The famous Cyrus Cylinder found by Hormuzd Rassam in the 19th Century confirms Cyrus' noble nature. The foundation stone of the second temple was laid in 536 BC (Ezra 3:8) exactly 70 years after the captivity, the time of desolations. In the autumn of 530 BC Cyrus died in battle. He was buried in Pasargadae where his small tomb is still visible.

3. EVALUATION

a) Cyrus was named by Isaiah in 712 BC (Isaiah 44:28).

b) It was prophesied that he would issue an edict ordering the rebuilding of the temple.

- c) The Jews were warned by Jeremiah of a period of 70 years of desolations (Jeremiah 25:11,12).
- d) The prophecy states that the Chaldean empire will be destroyed as a result.
- e) Daniel recognised the 70 year desolation period in Daniel 9:2 and that the Jews would return to Israel.
- f) The foundation stone for the temple was laid by Zerubbabel in 536 BC (Ezra 3:8), being 70 years from the original desolation commencing in 606 BC.
- g) Cyrus therefore fulfilled the prophecy of Isaiah some 200 years after it was given.

4. PRINCIPLES

- a) God is in control of every circumstance in history. He knows our problems (Psalm 93:1; Matthew 6:8).
- b) God is aware of what role we will play in His plan but does not coerce our free will (Esther 4:14-16).
- c) Cyrus as a gentile had a central position in the history of the Jews. Race or origin are no barrier in the plan of God (Psalm 87:4; Colossians 3:11).
- d) There is a common author of scripture, the Holy Spirit (2 Timothy 3:16).
- e) God will provide a means of release from times of trouble for His chosen ones (1 Corinthians 10:13).
- f) Oppression of the Jews brings disaster but a pro-Jewish policy brings national prosperity (Genesis 12:1-3).
- g) A great leader should be both strong and merciful (Proverbs 11:17; Matthew 5:5).
- h) We should place God first in our lives (Exodus 20:3).
- i) Knowledge and application of the scriptures is a source of comfort in times of adversity (Joshua 1:8).
- j) God's timing is perfect (Acts 1:7).

SECTION 9 - DESTRUCTION OF THE EMPIRES AND FORMING OF A KINGDOM Chapter 2:44-49

44 And in the days of these kings shall the God of heaven set up a kingdom, which shall never be destroyed: and the kingdom shall not be left to other people, but it shall break in pieces and consume all these kingdoms, and it shall stand for ever. **45** Forasmuch as thou sawest that the stone was cut out of the mountain without hands, and that it brake in pieces the iron, the brass, the clay, the silver, and the gold; the great God hath made known to the king what shall come to pass hereafter: and the dream is certain, and the interpretation thereof sure. **46** Then the king Nebuchadnezzar fell upon his face, and worshipped Daniel, and commanded that they should offer an oblation and sweet odours unto him. **47** The king answered unto Daniel, and said, Of a truth it is, that your God is a God of gods, and a Lord of kings, and a revealer of secrets, seeing thou couldst reveal this secret. **48** Then the king made Daniel a great man, and gave him many great gifts, and made him ruler over the whole province of Babylon, and chief of the governors over all the wise men of Babylon. **49** Then Daniel requested of the king, and he set Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, over the affairs of the province of Babylon: but Daniel sat in the gate of the king.

KEY WORDS

Kingdom	Maleku	Kingdom
Never	La Le-alemin	Not to the ages
Destroyed	Chabal	To be marred or corrupted
Left	Shebaq	To be left
Other	Ochoran	Other, Another
People	Am	People
Break	Deqaq	To beat small
Consume	Suph	To end, Consume
Stand	Qum	To rise up
Forever	Alam	Hidden time
Stone	Eben	Stone
Cut	Gezar	To be cut off
Mountain	Tur	Round tower, Height
Hands	Yad	Hand
Dream	Chelem	Dream
Certain	Yatstsib	Set up, Fixed
Interpretation	Peshar	Interpretation, Explanation
Sure	Aman	To remain faithful, Steadfast,
Fell	Nephal	To fall
Face	Anpin	Face
Worshipped	Segad	To bow down
Commanded	Amar	To say, To lift up the voice
Offer	Nesak	To pour out
Oblation	Minchah	Offering, Present
Sweet Odours	Nichoach	Rest, Sweetness, Sweet thing
Truth	Qeshut	Truth
Revealer	Gelah	To remove, Uncover, Reveal
Secrets	Raz	A secret
Great	Rabrab	Abundant, Very great.
Gifts	Mattena	Gift
Ruler	Shelet	To cause to rule

Whole	Kol	All, The whole, Entire
Province	Medinah	Jurisdiction
Governors	Sigenin	Prefects
Wise Men	Chakkim	Wise, Skilful
Requested	Bea	To seek, Pray
Affairs	Obidah	Service
Gate	Tera	Gate

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

For some 2500 years individuals and groups have tried to set up empires ruled by their own wisdom in defiance of God. Now the Lord comes back to set up His world wide kingdom which will last for a thousand years. Satan's great political lie with Hitler was that he could set up a "thousand year reich", and Anti-Christ will argue that he can do this again and be successful, but he will be eliminated 3 ½ years after he sets up his statue in the temple, by the Lord's Return.

Verses 44 – 45

These verses show the final act in God's plan for mankind's kingdoms, with the arrival of the rock. This represents the return of the Lord Jesus Christ at the Second Advent to overthrow the world empires and reign as well as fulfil the unconditional covenants that God has made especially the Davidic and Palestinian, and it also fulfils the Spring and Autumn Feasts of Israel in correct sequence. The rock takes up the whole earth.

The God of Heaven will set up a kingdom that will never end, for when time winds up, the rulership over all continues forever into eternity. This is in fulfillment of the Davidic Covenant which in 2 Samuel 7:16 is said to last forever. 2 Samuel 7:16. "And thine house and thy kingdom shall be established for ever before thee: thy throne shall be established for ever".

The setting up of the kingdom occurs at the end of the Tribulation which is in the time of the "kings" (rulers or regions) represented by the ten toes. That there are ten rulers is given in **Revelation 17:12-14**, *"And the ten horns which thou sawest are ten kings, which have received no kingdom as yet; but receive power as kings one hour with the beast. 13 These have one mind, and shall give their power and strength unto the beast. 14 These shall make war with the Lamb, and the Lamb shall overcome them: for he is Lord of lords, and King of kings: and they that are with him are called, and chosen, and faithful."*

Daniel confirms that what Nebuchadnezzar has dreamed and what has now been accurately interpreted is an outline of all future history from the time of Nebuchadnezzar to the Millennial reign of the Lord Jesus Christ. He says that God has made this known to the king by means of the dream, and that the repetition of the dream means it is certain to happen. Genesis 41:14ff.

Verse 46

Nebuchadnezzar's reaction is to worship Daniel. Here we have the ruler of the Kingdom of man, the most powerful man in the world bowing down in front of a Jewish captive. He commands the assembled people to make an offering and burn incense to him as a "god" amongst them.

We are not told of Daniel's specific reaction, but it is assumed that on the basis of consistency that he took no credit to himself as had been demonstrated before, when he told the king what dream he had dreamt in Daniel 2:30. "But as for me, this secret is not revealed to me for any wisdom that I have more than any (other person) living".

Verse 47

Here Nebuchadnezzar recognised Daniel's God as the greatest of the gods. He was probably quite pleased with himself (arrogant-narcisism which God will eliminate by the mental illness later) hearing that he was the head of gold. This is the type of news that a great king would like to hear. He also said that the God of Daniel was clearly "Lord of lords/kings" and he was very accurate with this interpretation.

He became proud again, and so still did not at this point consider the personal claim of God on his life. This had to wait for at least seven years until Nebuchadnezzar had been brought down to the lowest point in his life before he bows to the Lord as God. We see this in chapter 4 where Daniel records the Court Document that is in effect Nebuchadnezzar's testimony.

Verses 48-49

Daniel was made Satrap/Governor of the central province of Babylon, based in the capital city of the vast empire, the head of the wise men as well as receiving great riches. His three friends Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego were also made governors of other provinces at Daniel's request. They are all positioned by God's Grace to be able to help the next groups of captive Israelites who arrive in 597 and 586 BC, and they play the political role to prepare for Ezekiel's revival. God weaves all these things together in his timing, so all is ready exactly when required.

EVANGELICAL BIBLE COLLEGE OF WESTERN AUSTRALIA

Daniel was also promoted to head up the legal system in Babylon, which is what is meant by him, "sitting in the gate of the king". This is the position which Lot held in Sodom where in Genesis 19:1 Lot is said to have, "sat in the gate of Sodom". Lot compromised and lost all, but Daniel and his friends do not fail the Lord, but walk with Him into blessing.

APPLICATION

The Millennial reign of Christ is a fulfillment of the Davidic Covenant where God promised that a king would rule over the Jews forever; fulfilled until the end of time, and then in the new heavens and earth also. He has also promised them land in the Palestinian covenant. What God promises he will do. God keeps His promises in intimate detail.

At the Second Advent the Lord Jesus Christ will destroy the Kingdoms of Man, not take them over, or attempt to sanctify the "world unity" under evil. The removal of all unbelievers from the earth sets the scene for the Millennium which will begin with believers only. God knows the whole of history in advance in detail, so He is able to tell us before time what is going to occur, but more importantly is able to allow for perfectly meeting all our needs to enable us to serve in the plan.

Belief in the greatness of God is not salvation faith, for it simply recognizes reality, it doesn't worship. In the book of James it is said that the demons believe in one God, yet it does not help them, because they tremble due to the certainty of future judgment, but they do not acknowledge God as their Lord, nor will they ever worship Him. **James 2:18-26.**

Salvation is personal faith in the work of the Lord Jesus Christ on the Cross not just belief in God's real existence.

The Lord will promote or demote. We need to be content in whatever state we find ourselves in. Let us heed the words of the Lord to Baruch, as he wondered about his own path in life; found eternal blessing in obedience. **Jeremiah 45:1-5.**

DOCTRINES

ROCK

1. Christ is the rock of salvation. (Deuteronomy 32:15, Exodus 17:1-7, 1 Corinthians 10:4)
2. Christ is the rock of judgment. (Isaiah 8:14, 1 Peter 2:8)
3. Christ is the rock of provision. (Isaiah 26:3, 4) Thou wilt keep him in perfect peace whose mind is stayed on thee because he trusteth thee. Trust ye in the Lord forever for in the Lord is the rock of ages.
4. Christ is the foundation rock for Israel. (Isaiah 28:16, Psalm 118:22)
5. Christ is the foundation rock of the Church. (Matthew 16:16, 18, 1 Corinthians 3:11, Ephesians 2:20-22)
6. Christ is the destroying rock of the Second Advent. (Daniel 2:35, 45)
7. Christ is the stone with seven eyes, the perfect rock, therefore God [Zechariah 3:9]

BIBLE: INERRANCY

1. The Scriptures are quoted as the absolute standard of truth.(Daniel 10:21, John 10:35)
2. The source of the Scriptures is God, there is no imperfection or error permissible with God. (2 Timothy 3:16, 2 Peter 1:20-21, 1 John 1:5, James 1:17)
3. The Scriptures therefore becomes the final authority in the resolution of disputes. (Romans 4:3, 11:2, Galatians 4:30)
4. The Scriptures are seen as authoritative. (Matthew 26:31, Mark 14:27, Luke 4:8, Acts 23:5 Romans 11:8)
5. The person who does not know the Scriptures is in error. (Mark 12:24)
6. The Lord believed the Scriptures:-
 - a) He implied there was only one Isaiah. (Isaiah 61:1,2 cf Luke 4:16-21, Isaiah 53:1, and Isaiah 6:1-4, 9-10 cf John 12:38-41)
 - b) Jonah was a prophet not a myth. (Matthew 12:39, Luke 11:29)
 - c) Daniel was a prophet not an historian. (Matthew 24:15, Mark 13:14)
 - d) Adam and Eve were created. (Matthew 19:8)
7. The Bible is called God's Word (Mark 7:13, Luke 5:1, 11:28, John 10:35, Acts 6:7, 12:24, Romans 10:17)

1. The principle of inspiration is found in (2 Timothy 3:16) "All Scripture is God breathed". Gk. THEO PNEUSTOS. The Holy Spirit communicated to the human authors God's complete plan (2 Samuel 23:2, 3, Isaiah 59:21, Jeremiah 1:9, Matthew 22:42, 43, Mark 12:36, Acts 4:24, 25, 28:25) The human authors of Scripture so wrote that in spite of their personalities, they were able to communicate God's plan with perfect accuracy in the language they wrote.
2. The origin of Scripture is beyond human viewpoint. (2 Peter 1:20, 21)
3. The Bible is the mind of Christ. (1 Corinthians 2:16) Therefore it is the absolute standard for believers. (Psalm 138:2)
4. Precanon revelation from God occurred through the Holy Spirit. There was no written scripture until the time of Moses. (2 Samuel 23:2, Ezekiel 2:2, 8:3, 11:1, 24, Micah 3:8, Hebrews 3:7)
5. Four categories of Old Testament revelation:
 - a) The spoken word - thus saith the Lord. (Isaiah 6:9, 10, Acts 28:25)
 - b) Dreams. (Numbers 12:6, Genesis 15:12, 31:10-13, 31:24, Daniel 10:9) -whilst asleep.
 - c) Visions. (Isaiah 1:1, 6:1, 1 Kings 22:19) - whilst awake.
 - d) Angelic teaching. (Deuteronomy 33:2, Acts 7:53, Galatians 3:19, Psalm 68:17)
6. The extent of revelation:
 - a) The unknown past - the Bible portrays past historical details unknown to man apart from revelation. (Genesis 1-11). The accuracy of these historical facts is guaranteed by inspiration. e.g. Creation, Noah's Flood.
 - b) Ancient history - whilst the Bible is not a text book of history, all historical citations are accurate.
 - c) Objective law - the Old Testament contains many laws for both individuals and national life. These laws express perfectly the mind of God to those people to whom they are addressed.
 - d) Some portions of the Bible contain direct quotations from God. The doctrine of inspiration guarantees that such quotations are properly recorded exactly as God desired.
 - e) God uses the emotions, trials and triumphs of certain believers to declare His grace in devotional literature like the Psalms, Song of Solomon
 - f) Inspiration extends to the recording of falsehoods just as they were uttered. Satan Genesis 3:4
 - g) Inspiration guarantees the accuracy of all recorded prophecies.

PALESTINIAN COVENANT [See COVENANTS page 156]

KINGDOM - MILLENNIAL KINGDOM

1. "Thy will be done on earth, " will be fulfilled in the Millennium. (Matthew 6:10)
2. The Kingdom is the Millennium, the first 1,000 years of Jesus' eternal reign. It will be after the second advent, on the old earth. (Revelation 20:4-6)
 - a) Promised (2 Samuel 7:8-17, Psalm 89:20-33)
 - b) Prophesied (Isaiah 2:1-5, 2:11, 12, 35, 55, 56, 62:11)
 - c) Presented (Matthew, Mark, Luke) Israel, not the church)
 - d) Postponed Epistles of New Testament (for church age)
 - e) Proclaimed (Revelation 10) (Angelic herald) (Revelation 11:1-1 4) (Human heralds)
 - f) Plagiarized (Revelation 13)
 - g) Perfected (Revelation 11:15-19)
3. Issues relating to the Kingdom
 - a) The Character of God - will He keep His word to Israel? Yes. Jesus Christ will reign.
 - b) Unconditional Covenant - will He keep Covenant? Yes. Abrahamic, Palestinian, Davidic, New - all fulfilled in the Millennium.
 - c) Dispersion of Israel - will He recover them again? Yes. At the second advent.
 - d) Advent - will He return to earth at the worst period in history? Yes. At the end of the Tribulation.
 - e) Millennial - The Kingdom of Jesus Christ is eternal, why the emphasis on the first 1,000 years? Jesus will do what Satan has been trying to do for 6,000 years; He will create perfect environment in an instant, as a demonstration to prove that perfect environment is not the answer; regeneration is.
4. Principles from Micah 4:1-8
 - a) The Kingdom will be supreme. (Micah 4:1)
 - b) The Kingdom will be universal. (Micah 4:2)
 - c) The Kingdom will be peaceful. (Micah 4:3)
 - d) The Kingdom will secure universal prosperity.(Micah 4:4-5)
 - e) The nation of Israel ruled by the Lord for the Kingdom. (Micah 4:6-8)

DANIEL CHAPTER 3

DIVISION OF CHAPTER 3

Chapter three of Daniel can be divided into six sections

CONSTRUCTION OF THE IMAGE OF GOLD	VERSES 1-2
DEDICATION OF THE GOLDEN IMAGE	VERSES 3-7
THREE HEBREWS FAIL TO WORSHIP THE IMAGE	VERSES 8-12
THREE HEBREWS DECLARE THE POWER OF GOD	VERSES 13-18
THREE HEBREWS PRESERVED FROM THE FIERY FURNACE	VERSES 19-27
NEBUCHADNEZZAR'S DECREE CONCERNING GOD	VERSES 28-30

PROPHETIC ANALOGY OF DANIEL 3

[i] Nebuchadnezzar is a picture of the Beast of the Great Tribulation (a "king" of kings) who sets up an image to be worshipped - Revelation 13:14,15. He will be saved however. Daniel 4.

[ii] The image which Nebuchadnezzar set up foreshadows the abomination of desolation of the Tribulation - Daniel 11:31, 12:11, Matthew 24:15

[iii] Shadrach, Meshech and Abednego depict believing Israel in the Tribulation, believers who will also be delivered by the Word - Zechariah 14:1-9, Matthew 24:9-26

[iv] The furnace foreshadows the Tribulation itself.

[v] The fourth person in the furnace, the Son of God, represents the return of the Lord Jesus Christ at the Second Advent. Just as he came to the furnace He will come to the earth to deliver believers at the time of greatest "heat".

[vi] The worship decree of Daniel 3:29 depicts the universal worship of Christ during the Millennium.

Some Principles

God cannot be reduced to material substance; therefore, nothing made by man is worthy of worship.

Neither human pride nor the abuse of power can change the course of human history. God has this in his hands!

Interference with human free will in spiritual matters is not a legitimate function of Government.

God never honours compromise. We can stand secure in His Will – we are more than conquerors in Him.

God always protects the spiritual believer until the very moment they are to join Him in heaven.

The time of a believer's death is the prerogative of God. **Psalms 68:20, 116:15.**

Every chapter in the book is a crisis of some sort. In this chapter the believers are challenged in relation to Nebuchadnezzar's state religion.

There are many people today who are perishing in prison, because they have dared to teach their children the Word of God in contravention to their State Secret Police, who say that you will not do so, because the State has authority over their children. They therefore die in concentration camps rather than agree to it. They will be proved the winners forever.

There are more people working against Christianity today as we head towards the final culmination of history and increasingly the pagan States are trying to assume authority over children and every detail of daily life. This trend will continue until the Anti-Christ requires all trade and banking be done by his "mark". Revelation 13. Believers will survive however, and the Lord will be victorious. There is no doubt about how the events of time will end. Refer to Book 128 and the other books in the "Post-Graduate File" within the Diploma Theology File on the USB and CD.

SECTION 10 - CONSTRUCTION OF THE IMAGE OF GOLD Chapter 3:1-2

1 Nebuchadnezzar the king made an image of gold, whose height was threescore cubits, and the breadth thereof six cubits: he set it up in the plain of Dura, in the province of Babylon. **2** Then Nebuchadnezzar the king sent to gather together the princes, the governors, and the captains, the judges, the treasurers, the counsellors, the sheriffs, and all the rulers of the provinces, to come to the dedication of the image which Nebuchadnezzar the king had set up.

KEY WORDS

Image	Tselem	Image
Gold	Dehab	Gold
Height	Rum	Height, Loftiness
Threescore	Shittin	Sixty
Cubits	Ammin	Cubit [about half a metre]
Breadth	Pethai	Openness
Six	Shith	Six, Sixth
Plain	Biqah	A valley, Vale
Dura	Dura	Circle
Province	Medinah	Jurisdiction
Babylon	Babylon	Confusion, Gate of Bel
Gather	Kenash	To gather, heap up
Princes	Achashdarpenayya	Satrap
Governors	Sigenin	Prefect
Captains	Pechah	Governor
Judges	Adargazeraja	Honourable judges, Chief justice
Treasurers	Gedaberin	Treasurers
Counsellors	Dethabar	Lawyer, Judge
Sheriffs	Tiptaye	Supreme Masters, Prefects
Rulers	Shilton	Rule, Authority
Dedication	Chanukkah	A pressing in, Dedication
Set up	Qum	To cause to rise up

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

Not content with ruling the first great world Empire he attempted to superimpose his concept of total dominance on world history constructing an idol of hollow cast "solid gold" – not wooden gold leaf covered. He was in effect saying that, "God had got it wrong and that his empire would last forever". This great idol showed that he had become power mad at this point. He would sway back and forth through the years in this area of narcissism, but finally he would totally become insane, and that alone would lead to his genuine salvation and deliverance from his "cult of self". **Daniel 4:19-37.**

The hollow cast golden statue was almost 30 metres high, 3 metres wide giving a weight of gold of about 2 tonnes with a modern day value of hundreds of millions of dollars (2022 values). This gives an indication of how wealthy Nebuchadnezzar was, as well as the extent of his egomania at this point. He is truly a "work in progress" on the way to salvation. He is God's man however, and the Lord is working on him, as he does with all who seek truth, even if they are totally self deluded and narcissistic initially. Never give up on people who may be called to greatness – keep prayer for them as Daniel does. The story for any individual does not end until their death – until then we are to pray for them.

The great idol was set up in the plain of Dura, a circular plain, an area probably used for ceremonial occasions. The word Dura is Akkadian (the ancient diplomatic language that dominated the Middle East from 3000 BC through until around this time 550 BC), rather than the Aramaic which was the normal language of conversation and the language of this portion of Scripture. Aramaic will become the dominant language of the Middle East from around 600 BC until Arabic becomes dominant in the 6th Century of our era. Greek is the language of the Eastern Mediterranean from 330 BC – 600 AD, and Latin is only dominant in the West, and for trade with Rome.

The power and approbation lust of Nebuchadnezzar required constant stimulation. His enormous power and wealth is seen in this statue but he wants to show this off to all the leaders in the lands he dominates, so he calls them all together to the plain of Dura for the public dedication of the image. For the worship service all the rulers of the Chaldean Empire were summonsed together with the wise men, including Shadrach, Meshech and Abednego, to bow down before the idol. This ego-worship is satanic in its origin and indicates just how serious Satan's attack upon Nebuchadnezzar was. Satan saw that this was a key man and he launched his best assault right at this man's OSN area of weakness. If we stand for the Lord and are determined to serve in the area the Lord called us to serve in, then we can expect just such attacks on our own OSN area of weakness. Also expect the Lord's strengthening. Who will we listen to; flattery or truth?

The rulers comprised:-

Princes - "Satrapes" – these were the satraps or governors of the provinces of the Babylonian Empire – often locals who could see that the Conquerors were the way to wealth and power. Persia used the same term.

Governors - "Sigenin" - military commanders from the provinces. The power in the provinces was divided between the political and military and allowed the option for Nebuchadnezzar to play one against the other so that he could maintain his control. This was the technique used by Hitler and others through the centuries to ensure that their own men were too busy out manoeuvring each other to be able to challenge supreme power.

Captains - "Pechah" - divisional commanders of smaller area armies.

Judges - "Adargazeraja" - the chief justices of the provinces

Treasurers - "Gedaberin" - secretaries to the treasuries of each province

Counsellors - "Deth-Abar" - guardians of the law; this would be the prosecuting lawyers/district attorneys

Sheriffs - ""Tiptaye" – means to give a sentence and is the equivalent of a district court judge

All the rulers - "Shilton" – all the subordinate rulers and officers

In verses 1-12 there is no mention of Daniel here. Whilst all the leaders in the Empire that could be gathered were apparently present, Daniel, the natural leader of the four Jews was not present. It may be he was away on diplomatic business, but whatever the reason, the Lord had trained the three friends well, and this was their "test" with Daniel not there to assist them, but with the Lord there to stand by them. **1 Corinthians 10:13**.

APPLICATION

While believers can understand and accept God's guidance as to future events as shown in the Bible, the unbeliever cannot or will not accept God's Plan. The unbeliever will often react against God's message, and will do so with threats if they have power. People cannot change the Plan of God, irrespective of our position/power in society. **Psalms 2:1-4**.

We will from time to time find ourselves in that type of situation where our major human guide for our problem areas is absent, and we will have to deal with the problems ourselves, but we are never alone. God tests only for our growth, building character and strength, and opening up future opportunities.

There is often a person which others tend to congregate around in time of crisis. When God thinks they have had enough experience, problems will come on a group to test them and strengthen them, by making those people rely on the Word and doctrines of God rather than on a person.

Are we leaning on others or are we leaning on the Word of God? Often spiritual leaders can be dangerous idols for you. Eventually you will have to face a situation, where you will have to face it with the Lord alone.

Idolatry starts within each woman and man rather than externally. Dissatisfaction with what God has provided, dissatisfaction with one's job, with parents, with life. We become out of fellowship and this is where idolatry starts.

If you allow this situation to occur for a period, the darkening of the heart will occur. This is when we say "no" to our conscience which causes what the Bible calls "hardening of the heart" and out of this grows idolatry. Scripture becomes dull and we are always looking for more. We look at other things. We have to do other things because Scripture by itself is not good enough any longer. We then will fall into human viewpoint. We are deceived about doctrine, about people around us and we develop problems. We come under demonic influence and stronger and stronger control.

We can, if we do not take spiritual action and confess, get to the position where we hate God. Idolatry is replacing our God with something in creation. It can be triggered by drugs, scientism, and all sorts of other false viewpoints. We eventually arrive at the stage of final frustration. We have tried everything and nothing works. God waits for us to turn around like the Prodigal Son in the pig pen, and return to Him; the only true source of solving our problems.

DOCTRINE

RELIGION

1. Satan's religion is a humanly acceptable one: no sin, no judgment, no Saviour and no Hell. Satan appears as an angel of light. (2 Corinthians 11:13-19,26)
2. Many pastors in the churches are servants of Satan's policy, knowingly or unknowingly. (Isaiah 30:12, Jeremiah 2:8, 2 Peter 2:1-10)
3. Satan's strategy towards unbelievers is to keep them blinded to the gospel. (2 Corinthians 4:3-4, Colossians 2:8, 2 Thessalonians 2:9-10)
4. Satan's strategy towards believers is:-
 - a) to confuse by false teaching. (Matthew 7:15, Romans 16:18)

- b) to appeal to pride. (2 Corinthians 10:12)
- c) to promote idolatry. (Habakkuk 2:18,19)
- d) to promote legalism. (1 Timothy 1:7-8)

5. Satan's policy calls for counterfeit faith:-
- a) counterfeit gospel. (2 Corinthians 11:3-4)
 - b) counterfeit pastors. (2 Corinthians 11:13-15)
 - c) counterfeit communion. (1 Corinthians 10:19-21)
 - d) counterfeit doctrine. (2 Timothy 4:1)
 - e) counterfeit righteousness. (Matthew 19:16-28)

- f) counterfeit way of life. (Matthew 23)
- g) counterfeit power. (2 Thessalonians 2:8-10)
- h) counterfeit gods. (2 Thessalonians 2:3-4)

SECTION 11 - DEDICATION OF THE GOLDEN IMAGE Chapter 3:3-7

3 Then the princes, the governors, and captains, the judges, the treasurers, the counsellors, the sheriffs, and all the rulers of the provinces, were gathered together unto the dedication of the image that Nebuchadnezzar the king had set up; and they stood before the image that Nebuchadnezzar had set up. 4 Then an herald cried aloud, To you it is commanded, O people, nations, and languages, 5 That at what time ye hear the sound of the cornet, flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery, dulcimer, and all kinds of musick, ye fall down and worship the golden image that Nebuchadnezzar the king hath set up: 6 And whoso falleth not down and worshippeth shall the same hour be cast into the midst of a burning fiery furnace. 7 Therefore at that time, when all the people heard the sound of the cornet, flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery, and all kinds of musick, all the people, the nations, and the languages, fell down and worshipped the golden image that Nebuchadnezzar the king had set up.

KEY WORDS

Image	Tselem	Image
Stood	Qum	To rise up, Stand firm
Before	Qebel	Over against
Herald	Karoz	Crier, Herald
Commanded	Amar	To be set up, Receive a precept
People	Am	People
Nations	Ummah	A nation
Languages	Lishshan	Tongue
Hear	Shema	To hear
Sound	Qal	Voice
Cornet	Qeren	Horn, Cornet
Flute	Mashdoqihta	Flute, Pipe Reed
Harp	Qathros	Harp
Sackbut	Sabbeka	Harp like instrument, Sackbut
Psaltery	Pesanterin	Psaltery, Lyre, Harp
Dulcimer	Sumponayah	Bagpipe
Musick	Zemar	Singing of praise, Music
Fall down	Nephal	To fall
Worshipith	Segad	To fall bow down, To fall down in adoration
Golden	Dehab	Gold
Same hour	Shaah	Look Glance, Hour
Cast	Remah	To be cast
Midst	Gav	Back, Body, Midst
Burning	Yeqad	To burn steadily
Fiery	Nur	Fire
Furnace	Attun	Furnace, Oven

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

About 600 BC people would make life like physical images for each idol/god/demon. Did the people really think that there were people/gods like that as shown with their grotesque idols? What were they picturing? Augustine and others of the Church Fathers had a theory that the idols that the craftsmen made were representations of what the people had physically dreamed. In the dream, the unconsciousness filled with this OSN/Satanic chaos would be aided by demon powers to bring remembrance of the dreams, which would then be given to the craftsmen as a specification for the idol.

It is noted that when a composite animal "being" was part of the dream, the various animals involved in the dream were unclean animals only. This fact was always true, without the person who was dreaming knowing about the unclean

animals in the Pentateuch. The satanic wants people with physical objects to focus upon and touch – as the physicality settles the Primal Brain Stress reaction, and so enables satanic deception to be successful – tranquilization.

This is not only an ancient world phenomenon. It still goes on. Dreams like this still happen. In the modern day experiments with people recalling their terrifying dreams and explaining their content in detail to an artist has resulted in drawings that exactly match those evil idols of the ancient world. Some interesting features resulted from the dreams.

Modern unsaved people however do not tend to make the dreams into solid objects, but they still dream the dreams if they have exposure to satanic evils through their rejection of God. An example of an artist's impression of a modern dream showed Leviathan, even though the dreamer did not know what Leviathan was, or meant/signified historically. Leviathan was a seven headed monster, a symbol of Satan, and that was the way the drawing developed.

The reason that there is continuity in the symbols through millennia is that they are demonically caused. Martin Luther also attested to the fact that this phenomenon occurred in his day. Drug taking, sleep/food deprivation, and alcoholism, are significant factors in these things, and drugs especially open the door to demon possession – they always have.

In the case of Daniel 3 we have the image of gold being made here. Rather than replicating the vision from God we see here the idol is of pure hollow cast gold, not of composite metals such as silver, brass and iron. Nebuchadnezzar has obviously made an image relating to him, from his first dream, but not just the head is gold - the whole statue is of gold. It is evidence that he didn't want to accept God's verdict, that his golden "head" would be replaced by the silver shoulders/arms of the next empire. He wants to be the "whole statue" – the ultimate and lasting king – but he isn't!

The statue is 30 metres, or 90 feet high, and of hollow cast gold. Normally the structure would be wood overlaid by a thin layer of gold leaf, or gold foil, but this was made a hollow cast gold structure, probably made in segments. A brick mound has been found south east of Babylon which could well have been the base for this statue. From archaeology we have other examples of huge statues such as the stone built "Colossus of Rhodes" which was over 20 metres in height.

In his first book section 183 Heroditus stated, "In the same precinct of the city of Babylon there is a second temple in which is sitting a figure of Jupiter all of gold. Before the figure stands a large golden table and the throne on which is sits is likewise of gold. A Babylonian told me that all the gold together is 800 pounds worth. Outside the temple are two altars one is of solid gold on which it is only lawful to offer sucklings and the other the common altar where the full grown animals are sacrificed. It is also at the great altar that incense is offered to the amount of a thousand talents worth every year at the festival of the god. In the time of Cyrus there was in this temple a strange figure of a man 12 cubits high entirely of solid gold. I myself did not see this man."

Heroditus continues to tell of Darius the Great, a successor of Cyrus who took the statue away, dismantled it, and melted it down for his treasury to repay debt incurred in his defeat in Greece. The golden statue therefore is not a figment of Daniel's imagination. Daniel had explained to Nebuchadnezzar very accurately what the explanation of the dream of Daniel 2 was, but Nebuchadnezzar has not been born again yet. He, as an unbeliever at this point, has not got the ability to understand this spiritually and so like all unregenerate people he distorts the truth. He says in effect that he is not just the head of the statue, he is the whole thing, and he and his empire is going to remain. His problem – pride/arrogance....Isaiah 14, and then Ezekiel 28.....Satan's own weakness.

Nebuchadnezzar forgets that the image is smashed completely by the stone. How often do people forget their end – and not factor in their death to their plans? Satan is himself distracted from consequences and final results/destiny, and his main tool is to distort and deny truth; deceiving and distracting people from the truth. God will only allow for the empires of man to go on for a limited period of time, but Nebuchadnezzar does not see this yet. His human viewpoint pattern of thinking gets the better of him.

In those days the people recognised their king as a god on earth. The Assyrian kings and Egyptian Pharaohs were considered to be gods on earth. The king was therefore seen as a channel of blessing from the gods to the people, and by having the power of granting eternal life they had great psychological/religious power over their subjects.

Nebuchadnezzar now calls for a dedication service. He is going to gather together representatives of all his people. His decree is repeated twice, which looks monotonous when you read it, but the Holy Spirit has reason for repetition, for it underlines his determination and the power of his pride based self deception at this point.

All levels of government are called to the dedication service. As we have seen the princes are the chief regional officers, governors are the military commanders, the captains are commanders of army groups, the judges are the chief bureaucrats, the treasurers are the ministry of finance, the counsellors are the guardians of the law, the sheriff is the sentencing judge, the rulers of the provinces; so it is a mass dedication service involving tens of thousands of leaders.

The allegiance of all of the leaders of the state must be secure. The Holy Spirit mentions again that it is the image which Nebuchadnezzar had set up. This is the gathering of many people groups with different cultures in one area.

It is noted that of all the empires mentioned in the dream, this is the most successful one in merging people into a United Nations type format. The worship of the leader would become the great satanic religion of the Roman Empire later and would lead to the martyrdom of tens of thousands of Christians each century, for they could not burn their pinch of incense to the, "genius (godlike quality) of Caesar". Most went to their deaths for refusal to offer to the god-emperor.

Nebuchadnezzar had a full marketing and sales plan for his new state religion, and opened the proceedings with dramatic and beautiful music for the people. Wonderful music is a universal language. Music is the tool for communicating worship and manipulating emotion so that people “go along with” what is happening. Music is used as a manipulating device in places ranging from some churches to supermarkets.

One can imagine a vast number of people assembled looking at the huge gold statue gleaming in the sun. Then in verse 4 a herald addresses them. It is noted that the Empire comprises people, nations, and languages so his advice to the assembled horde would have to be given in various common languages.

To complement this auspicious occasion the musicians were on hand to lead in the worship service of the idol and by implication the worship of Nebuchadnezzar as their god-leader. The purpose of the music was to arouse the emotions. Music has the effect of eliminating barriers between people, while rhythm tends to mesmerize the listener, and cause a person to have a mechanical response to the various other stimuli around them, like the incense and dress/ceremonial.

In verse 6 we see governmental power used to tranquilize and also threaten residents. Here Nebuchadnezzar indicates that execution by fiery furnace is an alternative to worship. This is quite a stark contrast and is a great incentive to conform. Satanic religion has these “fruits”, and God’s truth is the opposite – let us be sure our fruit is biblical!

The furnace was a method of execution in Persia until the 1660’s. One of the most modern examples of this as a threat occurred in 1662 when the government of Persia instituted wage and price control on grain, and threatened any grain merchant with the furnace if they failed to comply with the government directive. This form of execution was generally public, so most if not all of the people assembled on the Plain of Dura were aware of the alternative to worship.

In verse 7 we see everybody complying with the exception of the three Jewish men. The rest of the population fall down in adoration of the image under the threat of Nebuchadnezzar. Nebuchadnezzar got allegiance by power and force and he now must execute these men to maintain his façade of god-like power. God must also now act to deliver.

APPLICATION

God always required allegiance from free will under grace. The gospel is preached and you can either accept it or reject it. Evangelism is never to be manipulation. Our responsibility is to teach the Word of God not enforce it.

It can be seen here that the wrong interpretation of the Word of God, by taking ego as the guide for truth, can bring in an apostate system.

Music is an aid to worship but should not be used to manipulate people. It can be used as a form of subliminal communication. Cognitive functions are always to operate in worship – we worship with the whole person!

We should not have to bend our knees under governmental power or threats.

It takes a high level of moral courage to resist overpowering governmental pressure. It is however of great importance that the believer defends the truth and does not compromise with what is clearly concepts which are anti God.

Religion always emphasizes the outward ritual while Christianity emphasizes the mental attitude of the worshipper.

Worship must be on the basis of free will and not be forced on the person by others.

God does not tamper with our free will in spiritual matters. Each person is responsible and accountable.

DOCTRINES

MUSIC

1. Music has been with creation since the start (Job 38:7).
2. The Jews sang their thanks to God for their delivery from Egypt (Exodus 15:1)
3. Sacred music provides:-
 - a) Refreshment and drives away evil spirits (1 Samuel 16:23).
 - b) Assists with the ministry of the Word (2 Kings 3:15,16).
 - c) Helps to bring man to God (Psalm 40:1-3).
 - d) Helps defeat the enemy (2 Chronicles 20:21-22).
 - e) Fills the House of God with glory (2 Chronicles 5:13,14).
4. The Jews lost their song in captivity (Psalm 137:1-6) but recovered it when they returned (Ezra 3:2,11)

5. We have the lyrics of many songs in the Bible such as the Psalms, Miriam's song but no musical notes. The lyrics which accompany the music are important as music by its effect on the emotional pattern can cause the believer to sing words which are inaccurate or heretical, yet feel good.

6. There is a song for the redeemed (Colossians 3:16) which is one of the results of the filling of the Holy Spirit (Ephesians 5:18,19).

7. There will be a new song in heaven (Revelation 5:9)

IDOLATRY

1. Idolatry is forbidden (Exodus 20:3,4,23; 23:24; Deuteronomy 4:28; 5:7; 6:14; 7:16; 8:19).

2. In the ten commandments, the first commandment prohibits mental idolatry, the second commandment prohibits overt idolatry.

3. Idolatry is spiritual adultery, an attack on the believer's love towards God (Jeremiah 3:8-10; Ezekiel 16:23-43; 23:24-30; Revelation 17:1-5).

4. Idolatry of mind precedes idolatry of practice. Mental idolatry occurs before overt idolatry (Judges 2:10-13; Ezekiel 14:7).

5. Idolatry occurs when the creation, rather than the Creator, is worshipped (Romans 1:18-25).

6. Demons function through idols and practices of idolatry (Zechariah 10:2).

7. Idolatry is the devil's communion table (1 Corinthians 10:19-21).

8. Idolatry is related to sexual sins under the phallic cult (Ezekiel 22:3-18; 23:37-49). Consequently idolatry has an adverse effect on both soul and body (1 Corinthians 6:9).

9. Idolatry causes the national judgment of destruction and enslavement (Isaiah 2:8; 2:18-20; 21:9; 36:18-20; Jeremiah 2:27-30; 3:6-11; 7:17-20; 17:1-4; Ezekiel 6:4-6).

SECTION 12 – THREE HEBREWS FAIL TO WORSHIP THE IMAGE Chapter 3:8-12

8 Wherefore at that time certain Chaldeans came near, and accused the Jews. **9** They spake and said to the king Nebuchadnezzar, O king, live for ever. **10** Thou, O king, hast made a decree, that every man that shall hear the sound of the cornet, flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery, and dulcimer, and all kinds of musick, shall fall down and worship the golden image: **11** And whoso falleth not down and worshippeth, that he should be cast into the midst of a burning fiery furnace. **12** There are certain Jews whom thou hast set over the affairs of the province of Babylon, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego; these men, O king, have not regarded thee: they serve not thy gods, nor worship the golden image which thou hast set up.

KEY WORDS

Certain	Gebar	Mighty or strong man
Come Near	Qereb	To come near
Accused	Akal Qartze-di	To eat the flesh
Live	Chaya	To live
Forever	Alam	Hidden time
Make	Sum	To set, Place
Decree	Teem	Taste, Discretion
Golden	Dehab	Gold
Set Over	Mena	To appoint
Affairs	Obidah	Service
Province	Medinah	Jurisdiction
Regarded	Sumteem	To set the taste or desire
Serve	Pelach	To cleave, Break up, Till, Serve
Gods	Elah	God, Object of worship
Worship	Segad	To worship
Man	Enash	Man, Mortal
Set Up	Qum	To cause to rise up

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

The people were told to fall down and worship the image of gold. All except the three Hebrews do and they are reported to Nebuchadnezzar. The Jews were excellent administrators and Nebuchadnezzar did not want to kill them unless he has to, as they were of value to him. He therefore asked whether they had purposely ignored his command, or was there an explanation that would avoid the necessity of execution. Nebuchadnezzar will make this very personal, but in his narcissism he is baffled that anyone would fail to follow his direct orders!!!!

They told the king that they were not frightened to answer as they were applying the first commandment to the situation. Exodus 20:3, Daniel 3:17. They testify to the fact that God is able to deliver them out of Nebuchadnezzar's hand. Here they are looking at the fact that God is all powerful, and they are in his plan and will for their lives, and so they are applying **Isaiah 41:9-14** to their predicament, rather than following their fears and obeying man rather than God.

In verse 8 we have the believer's problems. Here we see the rise of anti-Semitism in the State, and the Jewish men's identification of this. The accusers make the focus of their attack on their race rather than their individual decision. The Chaldeans in this verse are of the priestly caste who served as advisers to the king. This may be occurring also around the time of the last sieges of Jerusalem around 597, or 586 BC, and so these three Jews may be seen as traitorous also; perhaps they are standing against the king in support of the rebels back in Jerusalem? There may also be resentment of Daniel by Magi elements that hate his spiritual superiority and influence over the king.

Many locals are jealous of the Jews who came to Babylon as captives and are now leaders in their society. They therefore take the opportunity to try and rid the empire of these brilliant misfits. The Jews have always appeared to be a group which never fits into general society. They are monotheists who do not comply with the pantheists. The Jews are always seen as the misfits. It is this visible difference that Hitler and his evil crew would also use to persecute them.

The accusers say to Nebuchadnezzar that the Jews have not regarded "him", nor served "his" god, and have not worshipped the golden image which "he" has erected. Here we see the joining together of religion and politics. It is not any old idol, it is Nebuchadnezzar's idol, and it pictures him as "king of all kings", but in God's sight he is no such thing, but he remains the "head of gold". These people are jealous, and they make a vicious accusation and personalise it. What we see here will be written large in the last days under the Anti-Christ's system of world religious domination.

They start with the phrase in verse 12, "certain Jews", which indicates that they are considered by these Chaldeans to be an inferior and enemy race – possibly rebelling against the Empire at this very time back in Judea. They note that these three have been appointed to power by Nebuchadnezzar, and have not responded with the attitude of respect which they should have done. However here we see three men who are fantastic, and make the right decisions even without their leader Daniel there, by applying the Word of God to their life, and facing possible death this day with clarity of mind.

There is a gap between chapters 2 and 3 so that these men are not teenagers but possibly in their thirties. The Septuagint [the Greek translation of the Old Testament] argues that the gap is as long as 18 years. This event may be occurring in 587 BC, the very year that Jerusalem is besieged for the last time (it falls and is destroyed in 586 BC). The anti-Semitism of the Chaldeans may also be seen to be "patriotism" on their part, and the suggestion that the stand of defiance by these three Jews is a stand of solidarity with the "rebels" in Jerusalem who are opposing the Empire, insulting King Nebuchadnezzar, and actually fighting against the Babylonian Army at this very time.

Nebuchadnezzar's attitude is that, "my god has given me the ability to rule, so what god is I am". There was continuity between the king and the gods of Babylon at this time. This is often seen in paintings where the god and king in a picture are doing the same thing, one below the other on the painting/carving, indicating the king as the god's presence on earth. He is identifying Babylon with himself, and by doing that he indicates that these men are potentially standing against him, and possibly also for the rebel Jews under their vassal and traitorous king Zedekiah.

For example, in a picture of the great Assyrian king Ashurbanerpul, the frieze picture shows him in a chariot. Higher up on the fresco we see a god doing exactly the same thing as the ruler, showing the intimate relationship between the god and the ruler. This indicates that the god, State and king are in unity. This was the continuity of belief in the satanic system of "Worldliness" from Egypt – Assyria – Babylonia – Media-Persia – Greece – Rome – Anti-Christ, and it will be defeated only at the Second Advent by the Lord's destruction of the whole worldly/demonic system. Refer to the Text "Angelic Conflict" on the USB, [Post-graduate File within the Diploma Course File].

This was the understanding that Nebuchadnezzar had of the interrelation between him and God. He therefore believes that his act is an act of god. This means to Nebuchadnezzar that what he says is his god's word also. By implication respect shown for Nebuchadnezzar is respect for the gods, and if you do not respect Nebuchadnezzar you do not respect his gods. The Jews still fail to bow to the State as it is personified in this statue/idol. Nebuchadnezzar hears their words and gets furious about them. He is going insane here because of his rebellion against his God consciousness. We have an unbeliever here who is negative, but God is still working on him. **John 16:8-11**. He is also torn because he likes these men, and he values them, but he will not shrink from execution – for they have disobeyed.

God had been working on him since Jeremiah's words have been brought to him, and since he met Daniel and the three men years before. Jeremiah said to the Jews that they ought to surrender. As a result of this Nebuchadnezzar would let Jeremiah go. As a consequence he wrote the book of Lamentations and would try to get the final captives to obey the Babylonians.

EVANGELICAL BIBLE COLLEGE OF WESTERN AUSTRALIA

God has been acting on Nebuchadnezzar over a period of 20 years, through not only Jeremiah, but also Daniel, probably Ezekiel, and now through these three men who refuse to bow down before him. God is the “weaver” of our destinies, and the king’s salvation is going to be the result of the courageous testimony of all of God’s key men.

APPLICATION

Separation of religion and state is absolutely necessary, as when they combine there is slavery for all with free wills. We need to pray for our nation that this does not occur and work to hinder all satanic schemes to unite them.

You will as we approach the end days have your religious freedom legislated away from you, and you must stand against this evil. Recognize the days we now live in and see what internationally is happening – walk prayerfully, as these men.

Free Will is the basis of good in marriage, family and national government. If government legislates on your free will, it will also affect marriage, and the family, and the State will become tyranny. We would argue – this has already happened by 2022 in the Western democracies.....

Parents are to be the source of familial authority (under God’s Law) and not the State.

Human freedom and government must be in balance. Satan will always try to either undermine the State and create criminal chaos, or amplify the power of the State to undermine human freedom – both ways he attacks God’s Plan.

Amillennialism tends towards some form of Anti-Semitism, because they think that all the blessings of the Jews have now become the property of the Church. Satan is always trying to destroy all the Jews and therefore nullify prophecy.

When someone is successful there will always be someone who is jealous of them. We should not retaliate against jealous people, as they are destroying themselves. We are to be ready to give them the truth at all times – we trust God.

“Vengeance is mine I will repay says the Lord”. **Romans 12:19, Hebrews 10:31, 12:28-29.**

When we look at our circumstances, ourselves or others we can become disillusioned. We must not worry about what others say about us, we must live our life as unto the Lord. **Ephesians 5:14-21, Colossians 3:16-17.**

What God thinks about a situation and what He directs you to do is the only thing that is important eternally.

DOCTRINES

SEPARATION [see page 24 above]

ANTI-SEMITISM – Note this is also Anti-Arab as well as Israel

1. God’s promise to Abraham - whoever blesses the descendants of Abraham, God will bless; whoever curses the Jews or Arabs (both groups are “in Abraham’s loins” at this point), God will curse (Genesis 12:1-3).
2. History shows a correlation between the rise and fall of Empires and their treatment of the Jews.
 - a) Anti-Semitic - Spanish Empire 16th century, Russian Empire 19th - 20th century, Nazi Germany 20th Century.
 - b) Pro-Semitic - Britain in 19th century, United States of America in 20th.
3. The concept of Israel
 - a) Racial Jew - one who is descended from Abraham, Isaac and Jacob.
 - b) Religious Jew - one who practices Judaism.
 - c) Regenerate Jew - born again, now part of the body of Christ (Romans 9:6-8)

JEALOUSY

1. Jealousy is the strongest of the mental sins. (Prov 27:3,4)
2. Jealousy is the most cruel of all sins; it turns a person into a monster.
3. Jealousy removes all happiness from a believer; it is a mental sin by which you make your own misery.
4. Some people cannot stand the success of others; consequently jealousy destroys the basis of friendship.
5. So great was the sin of jealousy that a whole offering of the Levitical Code was prescribed for it. (Num 5:11-31). It is the only offering that was designed for one sin only.

6. Jealousy is the basis for the destruction of married love. (Song of Solomon 8:6).
7. The same jealousy which destroys love can also destroy the normal function of the soul. (Job 5:2; Prov 14:30). This is the explanation of some cases of psychoses and neuroses.
8. Jealousy motivates to revenge. (Prov 6:34)
9. Jealousy of Joseph motivated his brothers to sell him into slavery. (Acts 7:9)
10. Therefore jealousy takes real or apparent wrongs out of the Lord's hand and intrudes on divine judgment. (Deut 32:35; Rom 12:19)
11. Jealousy split the nation of Israel. (Isa 11:13 - Ephraim's jealousy of Judah).
12. Jealousy was the motivator of the religious leaders who crucified Jesus Christ. (Matt 27:18; Mark 15:10)
13. Jealousy rejects the teaching of the Bible truths. (Acts 13:45; 17:5).
14. False doctrine of apostasy produces jealousy (1 Tim 6:3,4).

SECTION 13 – THREE HEBREWS DECLARE THE POWER OF GOD Chapter 3:13-18

13 Then Nebuchadnezzar in his rage and fury commanded to bring Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. Then they brought these men before the king. **14** Nebuchadnezzar spake and said unto them, Is it true, O Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, do not ye serve my gods, nor worship the golden image which I have set up? **15** Now if ye be ready that at what time ye hear the sound of the cornet, flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery, and dulcimer, and all kinds of musick, ye fall down and worship the image which I have made; well: but if ye worship not, ye shall be cast the same hour into the midst of a burning fiery furnace; and who is that God that shall deliver you out of my hands? **16** Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, answered and said to the king, O Nebuchadnezzar, we are not careful to answer thee in this matter. **17** If it be so, our God whom we serve is able to deliver us from the burning fiery furnace, and he will deliver us out of thine hand, O king. **18** But if not, be it known unto thee, O king, that we will not serve thy gods, nor worship the golden image which thou hast set up.

KEY WORDS

Rage	Regaz	Anger
Fury	Chemah	Heat caused by wine, Fury
Commanded	Amar	To lift up the voice
Brought	Athah	To cause to come
Men	Gebar	Mighty man
Before	Qodam	The east, What is before
Spake	Anah	To answer, Respond
True	Tseda	Truth, Laid plan
Serve	Pelach	To cleave, Break up, Till, Serve
Worship	Segad	To worship
Ready	Athid	Ready, Prepared
Hear	Shema	To hear
Cast	Remah	To be cast
Hour	Shaah	Look, Glance, Hour
Midst	Gav	Back, Body, Midst
Burning	Veqad	To burn steadily
Fiery	Nur	Fire
Furnace	Attun	Furnace, Oven
Deliver	Shezab	To deliver, Rescue, Set free
Hands	Yad	Hand
Careful	Chashach	To be or think necessary
Matter	Pithgam	Sentence, Matter
Set Up	Qum	To cause to rise up
Image	Tselem	Image

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

Every time Nebuchadnezzar does something from a human point of view he gets disciplined. In chapter 2 he smashes everything, in this chapter he gets very angry. He knows the answers are in the Bible but he rejects it, and continues to try and destroy, but gets disciplined. Refer to the text "Angelic Conflict" within the Diploma Post-Graduate File.

Due to this violent rage he is going to lose a number of his best military men. He has lost control of himself. Demonic influence always causes people to “lose control of them self”. The evil thought that has been planted in his mind by the Chaldeans, that these Jews are ungrateful, really burns Nebuchadnezzar up. He assumes they are guilty without establishing the facts and makes an emotional, pride based decision that kills good men. “How dare they...!”

In verse 14 he questions the three Jews. “Is it true?” should be translated, “Is it on purpose?” The king was in no doubt of the guilt of the three Jews, but gave them another opportunity to save themselves by some acceptable explanation.

He comes to the conclusion that this lack of action by the Jews is either gross disobedience or ignorance, so he now says in verse 15 that he will be publicly fair to the Jews, and gives them a second chance to worship. He tells them that this is an image which he has made. He makes it very personal.

He adds however that if they do not he will immediately throw them into the fiery furnace. He now adds a fateful question. He asks them as to what God will be able to do to get them out of the situation. Here Nebuchadnezzar questions the Character of God, and His ability to rescue the believers. When unbelievers criticise God they are in for additional discipline, but in this case, also a dramatic answer. He has just actually encouraged the three, as he has declared war on God himself, and so the Lord’s name is at stake – He will certainly act.

We see other examples of this in the case of Goliath, and the Rabshakeh of the Assyrian army besieging Jerusalem under Senacherib and others. **1 Samuel 17:33-51, Isaiah chapters 36-37.**

Nebuchadnezzar is saying that he is in a one on one relationship with his god, and so who is going to be able to release the three Jews if he alone has such a special relationship with God. “I have been given the kingdom”, says Nebuchadnezzar. “I have been decreed the emperor of the world by god through my dream, so who are you three to stand against me?” Think Charles 1st of England also here. He has forgotten that it is not “his god”, but The Lord God who gave him the dream, and these three men serve the true and only Almighty God, the Lord and King of all.

In verse 16 they say to the king that they are leaving their problems with Almighty God. They recognise the king as a legitimate ruler. By using the words “not careful” it means that they have no need to defend themselves. This means that they are not frightened. They recognise that they will do no good dealing with a man like this king who is mentally falling apart at this point through his narcissism. The fruit of all satanic processes is internal collapse and self-destruction.

They tell him that if God is interested in getting them out of the fiery furnace He will do it, if not then he will not, but we will not worship the golden image that he has set up. This is a similar attitude to Job where he said, “Though he slay me, yet will I trust him/praise his name”. **Job 13:15.**

When they say, “Our God”, they recognize that they have a relationship with God which is far superior to anything that any man can provide. They serve the Chaldean Empire in their official capacity but do their work, “as unto the Lord”. **Ephesians 5:8-22, 6:1-8.**

It is of interest that from this time on, Israel tends to be sidelined as a nation, for within months of this very event the city, temple and state is destroyed. The Age of the Gentiles that began in 605 BC, is now formally and thoroughly proclaimed. Divine Revelation itself also ceases about 400 BC, and does not reappear again until the time of the birth and Ministry of Jesus Christ. It is at this time of the Babylonian captivity that a number of world religions also commence. As there are no divine prophets for 400 years, application of the Word of God to situations in life is called for.

These people do not know for sure what God is going to do. However they work with doctrines from the Word of God and let the Lord deal with their situation. They say that they want God’s plan for the situation. This is a real act of faith by these Jewish men, and it is where we are asked to stand also.

Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego had been brought up in the Word of God, and knew not only the promises of God but also His Holy Character. They knew **Isaiah 41:10**, “Fear not for I am with thee: be not dismayed ; for I am thy God: I will strengthen thee, yea, I will help thee; yea I will uphold thee with the right hand of my righteousness”.

In verse 18 the three make it crystal clear to the king that they will not bow down and worship the idol.

APPLICATION

The fact that Nebuchadnezzar took a number of years to be converted is a challenge to persist in witness over time to the lost, for while they live there is hope, but we need to be sensitive about the nature of our witnessing.

It is critical that we follow what God has set for us in the Bible rather than our human viewpoint if we are to experience the peace of God in our lives. These three men witness by their polite strength and their faith – unto death if needed.

It is impossible to make a good decision when one is in a rage (so called “red mist”). If unbelievers attack people as people there does not seem to be instant judgment, but when they start criticising God, and God’s servants as such, there is judgment as God’s character is being maligned.

Jesus Christ will avenge any attack upon His Holy Character. We should always be gracious in any situation where God is criticised, but firm in our defence of his character.

Sometimes we say, "Lord deliver us", and the Lord does not deliver us. We may have got ourselves into problems other than our testimony for Christ, or it may be that he will deliver us directly into his kingdom. We relax either way.

We are to trust implicitly that God is in control of all situations. We either trust in ourselves, being able to get ourselves out of a situation, or God doing it for us. **Isaiah 55:6-9, Jeremiah 10:23-24.**

The State has no right to force its religion on its subjects, nor a spiritual kingdom be forced by believers onto the State.

DOCTRINE

SPIRITUAL DYNAMIC MENTAL ATTITUDE

1. Every believer faces the inner conflict of divine versus human viewpoint (Isaiah 55:7-9)
2. Mental attitude determines both the life and character of a person - what you think is what you are (Proverbs 23:7)
3. As Christians we are commanded to have our thinking in tune with the mind of Christ. (2 Corinthians 10:4-5 Romans 12:2, Philippians 2:5, 2 Timothy 1:7)
4. Knowledge of the Bible (the mind of Christ, 1 Corinthians 2:16) and control by the Holy Spirit renews the mind of the believer, giving divine viewpoint. (Romans 12:2)
5. The right mental attitude produces joy (Philippians 2:2), confidence (2 Corinthians 5:1,6,8), stability (Isaiah 26:3-4, Philippians 4:7, 2 Thessalonians 2:2), true giving (2 Corinthians 9:7), love (1 Corinthians 13:5)
6. Human viewpoint is called worldliness. (Romans 12:2, Colossians 3:2)
7. Evil is something you think rather than something you do. Doing results from thinking. (Matthew 9:4, Galatians 6:3)
8. Mental attitude sins produce self induced misery. (Proverbs 15:13)
9. Without clear thinking there is conflict in the mind of the believer. Isaiah 55:6-9, James 1:7-8.

SECTION 14 – THREE HEBREWS PRESERVED FROM THE FIERY FURNACE Chapter 3:19-27

19 Then was Nebuchadnezzar full of fury, and the form of his visage was changed against Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego: therefore he spake, and commanded that they should heat the furnace one seven times more than it was wont to be heated. **20** And he commanded the most mighty men that were in his army to bind Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, and to cast them into the burning fiery furnace. **21** Then these men were bound in their coats, their hosen, and their hats, and their other garments, and were cast into the midst of the burning fiery furnace. **22** Therefore because the king's commandment was urgent, and the furnace exceeding hot, the flames of the fire slew those men that took up Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. **23** And these three men, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, fell down bound into the midst of the burning fiery furnace. **24** Then Nebuchadnezzar the king was astonished, and rose up in haste, and spake, and said unto his counsellors, Did not we cast three men bound into the midst of the fire? They answered and said unto the king, True, O king. **25** He answered and said, Lo, I see four men loose, walking in the midst of the fire, and they have no hurt; and the form of the fourth is like the Son of God. **26** Then Nebuchadnezzar came near to the mouth of the burning fiery furnace, and spake, and said, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, ye servants of the most high God, come forth, and come hither. Then Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, came forth of the midst of the fire. **27** And the princes, governors, and captains, and the king's counsellors, being gathered together, saw these men, upon whose bodies the fire had no power, nor was an hair of their head singed, neither were their coats changed, nor the smell of fire had passed on them.

KEY WORDS

Fury	Chama	Heat, Fury
Form	Tselem	Image, Shadow
Visage	Anpin	Face
Changed	Shena	To be changed, Altered.
Commanded	Amar	To lift up the voice

Heat	Aza	To heat
Furnace	Attun	Furnace, Oven
Seven	Shibah	Seven
Most	Chayil	Strength, Power
Mighty	Gibbar	Might
Men	Gebar	Mighty man
Army	Chayil	Strength, Might, Force
Bind	Kephath	To bind, Fetter
Cast	Rema	To cast
Coats	Sarbalin	Mantles, Upper garments
Hosen	Petesh	Fine upper garments
Hats	Karbela	Turban
Garments	Lebush	Clothing
Midst	Gav	Back, Body, Midst
Urgent	Chatsaph	To be urgent
Exceeding	Yattir	Excellent, Abundant
Hot	Asar	To heat
Flames	Shebib	Spark, Flames
Slew	Qetal	To kill
Fell down	Nephal	To fall
Bound	Kephath	Bowed Down, Bent, Bending
Astonied	Tevah	To be vexed
Rose	Qum	To raise oneself up
Haste	Behal	To be hastened
Spake	Anah	To respond, Answer
Counsellors	Haddaberrin	Viceroy, Counsellor
Three	Telath	Three
True	Yatstsib	Certainty
Form	Rev	Appearance, Sight
Fourth	Rebii	Fourth
Loose	Shere	To loose
Walking	Halak	To cause to go on
Came Near	Qereb	To come near
Mouth	Tera	Gate
Servants	Abad	Servant, Tiller, Slave
Princes	Achashdarpnayya	Satraps
Governors	Sigenin	Prefects
Captains	Pechah	Governor
Bodies	Geshem	What is material
Power	Shelet	To rule
Hair	Sear	Hair
Head	Resh	Head
Singed	Charak	To be singed
Coats	Sarbalin	Mantles, Upper garments
Changed	Shena	To be changed, Altered
Smell	Reach	Smell, Savour, Fragrance
Fire	Nur	Fire
Passed	Adar	To pass by or on

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

The response of Nebuchadnezzar to the outright refusal of the three Jewish men to comply with his instructions is another fit of rage. This may be accentuated by the quiet demeanour of the Jews who even though they have signed their own death warrant are happy and relaxed, something that cannot be said of the king at this point.

The king, who is a genius in a number of fields, is the ruler of the greatest empire of his time, is fabulously rich, wants for nothing except happiness and peace of mind. He is so controlled by his rage that his normal good looks are distorted and he makes another decision to heat up the furnace even more. He ruled an empire but he could not rule his emotions at this point. Remember, "lust of any kind makes fools of us all", and narcissistic self-worship is pride lust!

The best soldiers in Nebuchadnezzar's army are now instructed to put the three Jewish men in the fiery furnace. These men are the heroes of the Empire who have served the king with distinction on the battlefield, but because of the king's decision, they will be sacrificed at this execution. The furnace is super heated which killed a number of the army personnel, but did not affect Shadrach, Meshech and Abednego. Nebuchadnezzar arranges that the furnace would be seven times hotter than it normally was. The giant furnace is quite high and there is a ladder/platform. The victims are put into the top of the furnace from a platform. All on the platform die with the blast of heat, but not the three Hebrews, who fall into the furnace, but only their rope bonds are burned, not even their clothes – it is a miracle sign to the king.

In verse 20 we see that the toughest men in the army are used. Nebuchadnezzar thinks, "Who is the god who is going to deliver you?" "I am going to put my strongest people on this", to ensure only a true god can save them. The guard there is to prevent God showing up on the scene to rescue the three, but God will turn up and the guards will all die. Acts 12 The three believers were bound with their clothes on.

In the fiery furnace the three are met by a fourth, the Angel of Jehovah, the pre incarnate Lord Jesus Christ, and they walked and talked together in the furnace. The only things the flames had consumed were their bonds. If you wanted to torture people you burnt them slowly. You do not torture them by increasing the temperature seven times. He is going to wreck his furnace and to kill the best men of his army. Normally people were stripped and dumped naked into the fire.

The flames of the fire slew all the men who took them up the ladder to the platform and the three fell down bound into the furnace. Nebuchadnezzar is astonished because he saw that the ropes were burnt as they fell, but not their clothing, and that they were in effect freed by the flames that he had intended to kill them. They continued to walk in the fire and had no hurt. In the Aramaic it is, "No hurt, No hurt". This is the constant cry of the baffled king.

The fourth person was "like the son of the gods", a direct translation of the Chaldean Bar Elahin, equivalent in the Hebrew to Ben Elohim. This phrase is also used for angels in general. It probably was, we believe, the Son of God, the Lord Jesus Christ, in his pre-incarnate form as the "Angel of Jehovah".

In verse 26 Nebuchadnezzar came as near as he could get to the furnace without expiring himself, possibly even desiring to join the four in there and have that experience. He had got his best men to protect him from divine interference, but now he is drawn towards God's "interference". Satanically controlled people's mistakes, flowing from their arrogance and pride, always brings Satanic downfall and defeat. Between verses 25 and 26 there was a long time period for the furnace to cool down so that the king could come close enough to the furnace.

Several hours pass and Nebuchadnezzar approaches the furnace opening at the base which has now cooled down and he calls the three men out. It is noted that the fourth person did not come out, but through these hours the three friends have enjoyed the fellowship of the Lord, and all the Chaldeans have seen his figure in the flames and know that there is indeed a true God behind these Jews. This is a very important event as it occurs before the final fall of Jerusalem which would normally mean the God of Jerusalem is judged and found inferior to the gods of Babylon.

Even though the Jewish nation falls, and its temple is burned, all the officials of the Babylonian Empire see on this day that the God of Israel is indeed superior to their gods and is the one who delivers. This means that the Jews who die and are captured in Jerusalem are judged by their God, not the Babylonian gods. This is in fact said directly by the Babylonian commander to Jeremiah. **Jeremiah 40:1-4**. It may be that this man, Nebuzaradan, was on this plain at this very day and witnessed these things.

Nebuchadnezzar had been ministered to by Jeremiah, Daniel, and perhaps Ezekiel, and now these three believers. He is still unconverted at this point, but God is seriously working in his life, and the Lord has brought blessing from cursing by his deliverance of these three men in the eyes of all the officials of the Empire.

This was not only a witness to the king, but also to all the assembled leaders of the Empire who are said in verse 27 to see that the tremendous fire which had just killed the best of the army had not even singed the hairs on the head of the three Jews. The only thing that had been burnt were the bonds put on by the State. It is a visible reminder that God will deliver his people, just as Jeremiah has prophesied. **Jeremiah 25:11-14, 29:10-14, Daniel 9:1ff**.

APPLICATION

Doctrine in the soul, applied into daily life, is the difference between happiness and misery in time and eternity.

The time and method of our departure from this life is already known to God. Precious in God's sight is the death of his saints, **Psalms 68:20, 116:15**. We will not see death, we will see Jesus. **John 8:51, Acts 7:51ff**. It is his prerogative to take you home as and when He decides. He knows the optimum time.

In time of great testing God will help you. "Yea though I walk through the valley of the shadow of death thou art with me". People who try to eliminate believers often are eliminated themselves. E.g. Daniel and the Lions Den, Esther and Haman. At the time of extremity the Lord will undertake. God has designed suffering for blessing for the believer. This is exemplified in **1 Peter 1:7-8**. He will not allow you to be tested above what you are able to bear. **1 Corinthians 10:13**.

God may permit suffering but you are able to remain at peace and happy during the testing by means of his provision.

Evangelising is a team effort and can take a long time to bear fruit. We need patience when working with people under conviction, as those the Holy Spirit works upon may be very resistant, and we must just plod forward and trust God's work upon them, no matter what the "fiery furnace" experience we go through.

Often it is the life rather than the lips which speaks louder to the unbeliever.

DOCTRINE

1. The Angel of Jehovah is identified as Jehovah (Genesis 16:7-13, 22:11-18, 31:11-13, Exodus 13:21 of 14:19, Judges 6:11-23).
2. The Angel of Jehovah is distinguished from Jehovah (Genesis 24:7, Exodus 23:20, 1 Chronicles 21:15-18, Zechariah 1:12-13).
3. The Angel of Jehovah is therefore a member of the Trinity - the same as Jehovah, but distinct from Jehovah.
4. God the Father and Holy Spirit cannot be seen by man face to face (Exodus 33:18-23; John 14:17).
5. Therefore, the Angel of Jehovah is the second Person of the Trinity: the pre-incarnate Lord Jesus Christ.
 - a) Jesus Christ identifies Himself as Jehovah (I AM) (John 8:58)
 - b) The Lord Jesus Christ is the visible/manifest member of the Trinity (John 1:18, 6:46, 1 Timothy 6:15-16).
 - c) The Angel of Jehovah never appears after the Incarnation (John 1:18, 6:46, 1 Timothy 6:15, 16, 1 John 4:12)
 - d) Both the Angel of Jehovah and Jesus Christ are sent by Jehovah (the Father).
6. The Angel of Jehovah appeared only in the Old Testament.
 - a) He wrestled with Jacob. (Genesis 32:24-30)
 - b) He redeemed Jacob from all evil. (Genesis 48:16)
 - c) He spoke to Moses from the burning bush. (Exodus 3:2)
 - d) He protected Israel at the Red Sea (Exodus 14:19)
 - e) He prepared Israel for the Promised Land. (Exodus 23:20-23)
 - f) He reassured Joshua (Joshua 5:13-15)
 - g) He commissioned Gideon (Judges 6:11-23)
 - h) He ministered to Elijah. (1 Kings 19:5-7)
 - i) He saved Jerusalem from Sennacherib. (Isaiah 37:36)
 - j) He preserved Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego in the furnace. (Daniel 3:25)

SECTION 15 – NEBUCHADNEZZAR'S DECREE CONCERNING GOD Chapter 3:28-30

28 Then Nebuchadnezzar spake, and said, Blessed be the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, who hath sent his angel, and delivered his servants that trusted in him, and have changed the king's word, and yielded their bodies, that they might not serve nor worship any god, except their own God. 29 Therefore I make a decree, That every people, nation, and language, which speak any thing amiss against the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, shall be cut in pieces, and their houses shall be made a dunghill: because there is no other God that can deliver after this sort. 30 Then the king promoted Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, in the province of Babylon.

KEY WORDS

Spake	Anah	To respond, Answer
Blessed	Berak	To bless
Angel	Malak	Messenger, Agent
Delivered	Shezab	To deliver, Set free
Servants	Abad	Servant, Tiller, Slave
Trusted	Rechats	To trust oneself on
Changed	Shena	Double, Alter
Yielded	Yehab	To give
Bodies	Geshem	That which is material
Serve	Pelach	To cleave, Break up, Till, Serve
Worship	Segad	To worship
God	Elah	God, An object of worship
Make	Sum	To set, Place
Decree	Teem	Taste, Discretion
People	Am	People
Nation	Ummah	A nation
Language	Lishshan	Tongue
Speak	Amar	To say
Amis	Shalah	Error, Rashness
Against	Al	On, Upon, Concerning
Cut	Abad	To be made
Pieces	Haddam	A piece cut off
Houses	Bayith	House
Dunghill	Nevali	Dunghill, Heap

Other	Ochoran	Other, Another
Deliver	Netsal	To snatch away, Deliver
Promoted	Tselach	To cause to prosper
Province	Medinah	Jurisdiction

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

Unfortunately this demonstration of the power of God did not give Nebuchadnezzar the message, even though he saw the miracle. He was greatly impressed by the miracle but still did not think about the source of power, and calmly reflect on the right course of action. He is still unstable in his thinking and emotional in his responses. It is a reminder to us that miracles are no guarantee of positive response to the truth. Jesus' generation saw more miracles than ever in history over 3 ½ years of his ministry, and yet only just over 120 people are gathered in the Upper Room for Pentecost! When the church leaves Jerusalem in 67 AD they were a few hundred, leaving over a million unbelievers behind!

Rather than forcing the people to worship his idol Nebuchadnezzar was now trying to force them to worship God. Both are improper actions, as true worship must be a reflection of free will. Coercion is always a satanic indicator!

He calls on the three who he considers to have a relationship with the highest of the gods to come out of the furnace. He is still a pagan at this point himself, but recognises God as the highest among the gods. The rest of the group then saw the men, and noted that their clothes were not burnt; the ropes are gone but the clothes are not, and they don't even smell of the fire. Rather than preaching to the king and crowd **before** being condemned, they had demonstrated their unshakeable faith by their quiet calm attitude and actions. No preaching was needed here; just acting out the truth in faith, and absolute trust in the Character, Power, and Plan of God.

In verse 29 Nebuchadnezzar made a decree pronouncing the same penalty for failure as in chapter 2 in the sense that he would turn their home into a public toilet if they did not worship the God who alone could deliver people out of the furnace. This probably occurs just the year just before the Burning of the Temple in 586 BC.

APPLICATION

Principles from chapter three.

When God works on a person it may take years before anything happens that we can see. We should therefore always pray about our friends and loved ones who do not know the Lord, for while they live there is hope for them. John 16:8-11

When you are in a separation issue, make the Character/Plan of God the issue, not yourself.

The most powerful witness in those situations is often an act of faith, accompanied by an explanation. You just explain why you are doing things, and leave the conclusions with the Holy Spirit's work in the lives of the witnesses.

During times of the silence of God, when the canon is closed, you will not know which way to go and you will have to define it based on the Word of God. Give space for the Lord to honour His Word – He always will.

Some of the worst trials will come when you are isolated from the believers who help you the most. This is deliberately designed for you to use and evaluate the right applications of the Word of God. **Ephesians 5:14-21.**

God can save you out of any situation through the use of angelic agency, which still operates in the universe today.

If you put the Lord first you will get promoted. In the last verse of this chapter the three men were promoted. They put their faith in the Lord Jesus Christ first and their job second. They left their jobs in the hands of the Lord. They are not going to abandon their faith in the Lord Jesus Christ. **1 Peter 5:5-10.**

DOCTRINE

WORSHIP AND PRAISE

1. The Hebrew word used in worship is "Shoko" - to bow down.
2. The Greek words are as follows:-
 - a) proskueo - prostrate yourself. (1 Corinthians 14:5)
 - b) sebomai - lack of arrogance. (Matthew 15:9)
 - c) sebazomai - stand in awe. (Romans 1:25)
 - d) eusebeo - act with devotion. (Acts 17:23)

3. Worship is the attitude of the believer when he approaches God in awe, fear and respect. (1 Chronicles 29:20, Matthew 22:21, Romans 13:17)
4. We should never be casual or flippant with God. (John 13:13, Hebrew 10:19-21)
5. Worship is an expression of bible doctrine that a believer has in him and is applying. All expression of doctrine is worship. (Nehemiah 8:6-10, 9:3)
6. We must worship the Lord in spirit, controlled by the Spirit, and in truth, reflecting doctrine accurately. (John 4:23-24)
7. It is therefore of critical importance that we worship in accordance with biblical doctrines. This is especially important in singing as because of pleasant music it is easy to forget or ignore the meaning of the words being sung.
8. People worshipped the Lord Jesus Christ. (Matthew 2:11, 9:38)
9. People who do not worship God will worship demons. (Deuteronomy 8:19-20, 11:16, 30:17-20, Romans 1:25)
10. All will eventually bow before Jesus Christ and acknowledge Him as Lord, either for blessing or before they are judged eternally. (Isaiah 45:23, Romans 14:11, Philippians 2:10)
11. In eternity there will be perfect worship as there will be perfect knowledge of doctrine. (Revelation 4:8-11)
12. Worship begins at salvation. (Mark 5:1-10, 18-20)
13. Worship expresses a believers concentration on his Lord. (Psalms 29, 66, 96 , John 12:1-11)
14. The song of worship. (1 Chronicles 16:7-36)
15. We worship through:-
 - a) Reading God's Word. (Colossians 4:16, 1 Thessalonians 5:27, 1 Timothy 4:13)
 - b) Studying God's Word. (2 Timothy 2:15, 3:15)
 - c) Teaching God's Word. (Acts 2:42, 6:7, 12:24, 18:28, 1 Timothy 4:6, 2 Timothy 1:13, 2:2)
 - d) Preaching God's Word. (2 Timothy 4:2)
 - e) The sacrifice of our praise. (Hebrews 13:15)
 - f) The sacrifice of our good works. (Hebrews 13:16)
 - g) The sacrifice of our bodies. (Romans 12:1)
 - h) The sacrifice of our substance. (Philippians 4:18)
 - i) The receiving of His Son. (John 1:11-12)
 - j) The keeping of the Ordinances. (1 Corinthians 11:2)
 - k) Through the singing of Psalms, Hymns and Spiritual Songs. (Ephesians 5:19, Colossians 3:16, James 5:13)
 - l) Prayers, Intercessions, Supplications and Thanksgiving. (Acts 2:42, Ephesians 6:18, Philippians 4:6, Colossians 4:2, 1 Thessalonians 5:17, 1 Timothy 2:1-2, 8)

CHAPTER 4

DIVISION OF CHAPTER 4

Chapter four of Daniel can be divided into five sections

TESTIMONY OF NEBUCHADNEZZAR	VERSES 1-3
DREAM OF NEBUCHADNEZZAR	VERSES 4-18
THE DREAM INTERPRETED BY DANIEL	VERSES 19-27
THE MENTAL ILLNESS OF NEBUCHADNEZZAR	VERSES 28-33
DREAM FULFILLED AND NEBUCHADNEZZAR RESTORED	VERSES 34-37

INTRODUCTION

Chapter 4 is the crisis leading to Nebuchadnezzar's conversion. By examining chapters 1 to 4 we see how God the Holy Spirit works within a culture which is not saturated with the Word of God, where society is totally pagan.

If the most powerful person, the king of the "head" of all the Empires of men, can be brought to the Lord Jesus Christ anybody can. Also remember he is responsible for the deaths of possibly over 90% of the Jewish population! It should be noted that Jesus Christ works slowly, but incredibly graciously. It is from 20 - 25 years in time from Daniel 1 to Daniel 4. It is important that we know what to say, but the Holy Spirit often uses many people in the conversion of an individual. We should pray for opportunities to share the gospel and to do it in obedience to the guidance of the Holy Spirit.

We can see that there is a complete change in the person of Nebuchadnezzar in the start of chapter 4. Chapter 4 is a "tract" as to how Nebuchadnezzar was converted and how he had trusted Jesus Christ over time. It is his testimonial and reads like a formal Aramaic court document – that he sent out to all his satraps – we suspect it is exactly that.

SECTION 16 - TESTIMONY OF NEBUCHADNEZZAR 4:1-3

1 Nebuchadnezzar the king, unto all people, nations, and languages, that dwell in all the earth; Peace be multiplied unto you. 2 I thought it good to shew the signs and wonders that the high God hath wrought toward me. 3 How great are his signs! and how mighty are his wonders! his kingdom is an everlasting kingdom, and his dominion is from generation to generation.

KEY WORDS

People	Am	People
Nations	Ummah	A Nation
Languages	Lishshan	Tongue
Dwell	Dur	To dwell
Earth	Ara	Earth
Peace	Shelam	Completeness, Peace
Multiplied	Sega	To become great or many
Great	Rabrab	Abundant, Very great
Signs	Athin	Signs
Wonders	Temah	Miracle, Wonder
Kingdom	Maleku	Kingdom
Everlasting	Alam	Age, Age lasting
Dominion	Sholtan	Rule, Dominion
Generation	Dar	Circle, Generation

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

The start of the chapter is in the form of a formal government decree. Precise time unknown. Through this tract and decree the whole of the known world of the day would have heard the gospel. Every individual in the Babylonian Empire and beyond, all in diplomatic relationship with the Empire, had a chance to hear these words, and given that it is at least seven years since the destruction of the Jewish State and Temple it is an important affirmation of the power of the God of Israel, even though Israel as a nation doesn't exist, except in slavery. It is a major encouragement to the captives by the rivers of Babylon, and may have been significant for the work of Ezekiel amongst the captives, and may even have opened the door for the revival he leads, with Daniel's support, after the arrival of the book of "Jeremiah" from Egypt. There is a divinely appointed sequence of events here, but we are not 100% sure of their order.

Here God the Holy Spirit had worked on Nebuchadnezzar through the witness of a few people. It had taken a long time for Nebuchadnezzar to become a believer. At the end of Chapter 3 Nebuchadnezzar has become aware of the existence of God, but has not accepted salvation yet, however he moves steadily towards the testimony we see in this chapter.

After the point of becoming aware that God exists all normal members of the human race have an opportunity to become a child of God through faith "In Jesus Christ". Some come to the Lord easily, but others under much harder circumstances. Nebuchadnezzar is in the latter category, for pride and self centeredness stand in his way.

The Holy Spirit was able to spread the word throughout the world due to the conversion of Nebuchadnezzar. In the empire that will follow, Cyrus and some other Persian kings spread the word, but by the time that Greece and Rome came along this method was not used, for their leadership were determinedly pagan. Alexander The Great will accept the testimony of God's Word about his greatness, but his own narcissistic sense of greatness will hinder any desire to bow before God on his part. He becomes the first of the real Anti-Christ figures, and dies a pagan trying to bring unity between the demonic forces behind the various demon inspired religions. The final "anti-christ" figure will succeed for a time in this, but like all satanic figures, he also will have success "for a limited time only", and then eternity to regret.

In the case of the Greek and especially the Roman Empire the Koine Greek language was used in the New Testament and the Pax Romana assisted in the spreading of the gospel, but the empires will resist the truth and persecute the followers of the truth until the 320s AD, when Christianity becomes the official religion of the Roman Empire.

Alexander the Great was a great conqueror and subjugated all cities on his way, and he was the subject of several of Daniel's prophecies. When he went up to Jerusalem he was met by the High Priest who showed him that he was the subject of prophecy in the book of Daniel. He therefore left Jerusalem as their friend, and was not Anti-Semitic in his attitude, encouraging the Jews to follow his army, and many thousands did. The Jewish population of Egypt and Babylon both welcomed him and their support won his approval of them, but later general's descendents would persecute them, especially the Seleucids of Syria. In all other places Alexander forced the people to learn his Koine Greek, thus assisting in the future spread of the gospel, for very quickly a Koine Greek translation of the Old Testament was made in Egypt and it's spread prepared the world for the Gospel message that would come 300 years later.

The language in verse 2 shows a changed person from the arrogant king in the previous chapter. It shows how regeneration and doctrine will change a person's vocabulary. "Signs and wonders" are the words used for the historic revelation of God. Redemption, reconciliation and other vocabulary is required in order to think fully in a biblical manner, and requires salvation, as only spiritual relationship opens each person to the ministries of the Holy Spirit. God reveals himself to us, but unless we receive it, what we understand will always be severely limited.

In chapter 3 the vocabulary is centred on Nebuchadnezzar, here the vocabulary is focused on God. He was previously concerned with his own works whereas in this chapter he is more concerned with God's works. Nebuchadnezzar was one of the greatest administrators of the ancient world. He had a great system of logistics and inspection. He would enter these believer's lives as he was running his empire, with efficiency and thoroughness. He would testify to God for all of his Empire to hear that the Jewish God was supreme, even though the Jews as a people were under judgment.

"Peace be multiplied unto you" is a new phrase for Nebuchadnezzar, probably taken from Daniel and the Jewish people. He is obviously now really enjoying his regenerate life and he wants others to enjoy it. "Peace be multiplied unto you" is much stronger than a simple greeting "Shalom". It represents a stable inner peace under all circumstances, the peace of God which passes all understanding. **Ephesians 3:19, Philippians 4:7.**

Unsaved people have the concept that God and mankind share the cosmos. God is here, we are here, but behind it all is the cosmos. This is the type of philosophy which promotes the Big Bang theory without any reference to the Creator, who starts the universe of space-time and will wind it up and pack it away. This is wrong, for there is no inanimate force behind this temporary space-time universe; God is behind it all. They are right that space and time began, but wrong in leaving out the creator. There is an eternal and infinite mind behind this present temporary space-time universe!

Every time you do not accept a promise or direction of God you are reverting to the time-space limited cosmos thinking of Satan's system of what the Bible calls "worldliness". You are looking for another insurance policy in case God fails. This is the battle that the Holy Spirit has to cut through as we go on and spiritually grow as believers. Our daily challenge is trusting God's Word, not our eyes, and it is played out before all who have gone before us. **Hebrews 11:1-3, 12:1-3.**

In verse 2 Nebuchadnezzar recognises that it is God who has revealed many great truths to him and he has a great desire to share this with the inhabitants of the First Great Gentile Empire of the, "Times of the Gentiles".

In verse 3 he acknowledges that the God of heaven has an everlasting kingdom, thus refuting his earlier attitude when he constructed the gold statue in complete rejection of his dream in Daniel 2. Previously he had been concentrating on an earthly kingdom. Now he concentrates on an eternal heavenly kingdom. He will swing to and fro through the years, just like us all, but he has, through the Old Testament ministry of the Holy Spirit, broken through to salvation at this point.

APPLICATION

We have to be patient with evangelism. It took over 20+ years in the case of Nebuchadnezzar. Most people nowadays are impatient and would try and accomplish this in 20 minutes, or 20 months, rather than the 20+ years it took here.

The Holy Spirit works in a variety of ways using men like Nebuchadnezzar, a linguistic genius like Alexander the Great and even a Roman military machine to spread the good news. The Holy Spirit therefore uses different methods under different circumstances at different times. Our role is to be obedient to God's Plan, not any dodgy schemes of our own.

You can only have the peace of God after you have made peace with God at the Cross.

The hardest concept to get across is that God is sovereign of all. God does not choose the options he makes the options. Everything in the Plan of God is initiated by God and received by man. This is grace. God's plan is in three parts; salvation, the Christian life and our worship, work and witness here and now, and then eternity.

We are to commit our daily problems to the Lord, **1 Peter 5:5-10**. God's grace depends on who He is, and what the Plan calls for, and not on who/where we are at this moment. We can be faithless and foolish, but HE remains faithful at all times to us – we are His own family members. **Numbers 23:19, 2 Timothy 1:7-9, 2:11-13, 1 Peter 2:9-11**.

We are here to do the work of the Lord. We should remain focussed on the eternal future and measure what we are doing on earth on the basis of its eternal worth rather than its temporal implications.

DOCTRINES

EVANGELISM

1. All believers are ambassadors for Christ, and are obliged to give the gospel to unbelievers. (Acts 1:8, 2 Timothy 4:5)
2. Two forms of witnessing - with the lips (2 Corinthians 5:18-21 and by the life (2 Corinthians 3:3)
3. The gospel is "good news".
4. Sin is not an issue. Jesus died for all sin on the cross. The penalty has been paid. The issue now is "Do you trust that Jesus Christ has died for your sins, and was raised from the dead to give life to all who believe on Him?" People choose to either rely upon Jesus Christ, or upon their own good works, to be saved. (Romans 8:1, 9-30-33)
5. What about the heathen who haven't heard?
 - a) God is totally fair, and everyone has the chance to be saved
 - b) Unlimited Atonement (Colossians 2:14,15)
 - c) God's will - none should perish (2 Peter 3:9)
 - d) Man's negative will - God consciousness - Gospel hearing.
6. Witnessing is impossible except through the power of the Holy Spirit. (John 16:8-13) The Holy Spirit convicts of
 - a) Sin because of unbelief.
 - b) Righteousness.
 - c) Judgment because of Satan being judged (Matthew 25:41)
7. The natural man needs the Holy Spirit to understand the gospel (1 Corinthians 2:14)
8. The Bible is the weapon of witnessing. (1 Corinthians 15:3, 4)
9. Biblical Pattern of Witnessing. (1 Thessalonians 2:1-12)
 - a) Effective contact (v.1)
 - b) The gospel must be given even under opposition. (v.2)
 - c) The gospel must never be compromised or watered down - (v.3)
 - d) The believer in whom the gospel is deposited is tested by God and should not be for the praise of man. (v.4)
 - e) Flattery should never be part of the gospel. (v.5-6)
 - f) Whilst the gospel should not be given to get praise from men it should be given in love without cost (v9)
 - g) The gospel must be followed up (v 10) with discipleship and teaching (v11) so that the new believer can become spiritually self reliant. (v.10-12)
10. Your obligation to witness (Romans 1:14-16): you are a debtor (v14), you are ready (v15), you are not ashamed (v16)
11. Win souls, not arguments. Stay on the gospel, don't get side-tracked.
12. We are fishers of men Matthew 4:19
 - a) Fishermen need to be equipped to fish. You need to be walking in the Spirit and you need to know the gospel.
 - b) Fishermen go to where the fish are. You must be in contact with unbelievers so that you can witness to them.
 - c) Fishermen are patient. Allow for the conviction and preparation of the Holy Spirit in the life of the unbeliever.
 - d) Fishermen know what bait to use for different fish. You have to be flexible and know how to approach different personalities.
 - e) Fishermen concentrate on fish and not the fishpond. Our primary concern is saving people - the evil in the world will continue to exist.

EVANGELISM - NEW TESTAMENT PATTERN

1. The pastor of the local church must practice a Bible saturated, spirit controlled life. By his systematic teaching of the Word he must encourage people to apply it in their life. The vessels that the Lord uses must be clean.
2. You must have a co-ordinated prayer life in the Church. This consists of the mid week prayer meeting and organising your prayer warriors. You need specific weekly prayer sheets.
3. You need to have weekly prayer meetings with your deacons and elders to hear God's strategies for the church. You need to have a prayed through plan for the week. It is good to have this on Sunday morning over breakfast so that the prayer points can be noted down and duplicated by the pastor for the morning service. This gives current material. You plan your visitations, your speakers and how it can be co-ordinated in with the overall preaching plan. There also needs to be a home fellowship strategy and a God given strategy for the Bible class and Sunday School.
4. In the preaching everything must tie into the evangelistic, witness function of the church. He must emphasise that they are ambassadors and evangelists.
5. The minister encourages the people to find the fish. Every week they should be reminded of their work in this area.
6. Every believer should have his own list of people who he is praying constantly for. He should have a list of ten unbelievers and as one is converted a new name should be emplaced on the list.
7. The church contacts should be followed up as part of the strategy. This is the importance of a Sunday School. The Sunday School should be well known in the area. The unbelieving parents who send their children to Sunday School should be followed up by the minister to show friendliness towards them. You may be their only Christian contact.
8. There needs to be a church service follow up. Every visitor should be made to feel welcome but not embarrassed. Never ask a visitor to stand up. After the service have a coffee time and a special room set aside for visitors. It is an advantage to have a service which finishes a bit earlier. The minister follows up the visitors and lets an elder go on the door.
9. Organise visitation and be visible with walking through districts and greeting those you meet. This is far better than driving and parking. The morning should be in the study. Have a meal at home to have time with your wife or family, after lunch visitation. With walking you get exercise and are away from the phone. Plan to visit three or four locations only. Drive to a central location and walk. If you are seen on the street people get to know. You have raised the profile of the church. You are swimming in the sea with the fish. Sit down with street kids, help an old lady. The church needs to draw on the local area. You need to be decently dressed but not suit and tie.

SIGNS

1. A sign is something which stands for, or looks forward to something else.
 - a) Things such as- The Temple, Regalia, Stars and Uniforms.
 - b) Festivals such as the Jewish Feasts which spoke of the Plan of God.
 - c) Sacrifices such as Levitical Offerings which spoke of the work of Jesus Christ.
 - d) Customs such as Circumcision.
 - e) Names including the names of People and Places.
 - f) Supernatural Acts such as Miracles.
2. Signs were given by God to individuals as a proof of their authority. (Deuteronomy 13:1-4, Judges 6:17, Ezekiel 12:6,11, Hebrews 2:4)
3. Signs were for unbelieving Israel as a warning of coming judgment. (Isaiah 20:3, 28:11, Jeremiah 6:1, Ezekiel 4:3)
4. Signs for believers were for reminders of God's Grace (Exodus 13:9) such as the Covenant, (Exodus 31:13,17) and His Holiness. (Ezekiel 14:8)
5. The life of the Lord was a sign. (Matthew 12:38-42, Luke 2:34-35, John 6:30-35)
6. His death and resurrection were also signs. (Matthew 12:39, 24:30, John 2:18-22, 3:14-15)
7. The Apostles had temporary sign gifts to prove their authority from God.(Act 14:8-28, 1 Corinthians 1:22, Acts 19:11-12 cf 1 Timothy 5:23, Philipians 2:25)
8. Asking for signs is not a sign of spirituality. (Matthew 12:38-39, John 6:30-35, 12:32-34)
9. Signs of the First Advent in Luke.

EVANGELICAL BIBLE COLLEGE OF WESTERN AUSTRALIA

- a) The virgin birth itself, in fulfillment of Old Testament prophecy; the visitation of the angels both to Mary and Elizabeth, were all miraculous events. (Luke 1:26-38)
- b) The attendant birth of John the Baptist is also described with its associated signs, and the recognition by the baby in the womb of Elizabeth was a sign of things to come. (Luke 1:5-25, 43-45 cf Psalm 110:1)
- c) Mary's prophecy of her son's role as Saviour and Sacrifice. (Luke 1:54-56)
- d) The signs associated with John's birth. (Luke 1:65-66)
- e) The prophetic song of Zachariah. (Luke 1:67-80)
- f) The angelic visit to the shepherds. (Luke 2:10-11)
- g) The song of Simeon. (Luke 2:25-35)
- h) The song of Anna. (Luke 2:36-38)
- i) The sign of the prophet Isaiah in the preaching of John the Baptist. (Luke 3:3-18)

10. Seven signs in John.

- a) Wedding at Cana at Galilee. 2:1-11
- b) Healing of the Nobleman's son. 4:46-54
- c) The Cripple by the Pool of Siloam. 5:1-16
- d) The feeding of the Five Thousand. 6:1-14
- e) The healing of the Blind Man. 9:1-38
- f) The raising of Lazarus. 11:1-46
- g) The resurrection of the Lord. 20,21

HOLY SPIRIT OPERATION

This contrasts the different ways in which the Holy Spirit works in different circumstances and location. The locations under examination are Antioch and Iconium. It clearly shows that the outworking of the Holy Spirit varies from place to place. (Acts 15:22-35) (Antioch) (Acts 14.1-7) (Iconium)

1. In Antioch there was preaching only. At Iconium there was preaching and miracles.
2. Believers cannot base a system of procedures on one successful operation.
3. Because the Holy Spirit permitted miracles in Iconium it does not follow that there will be miracles everywhere.
4. The same success was obtained at Antioch by the preaching and teaching of the word without miracles.
5. The ministry of the believer must be related to the Holy Spirit. Such a ministry may be communicated by doctrine or verbally and may or may not contain accompanying supernatural phenomena.
6. The believer cannot compel the Holy Spirit to a type of procedure as at Iconium such as the tongues and healing that was used in the ancient world. Because God permitted these things in the past it does not follow that they will be used in the present.
7. The demand for healing miracles and tongues is tantamount to dictating to God and this places the believer in opposition to the plan of God.
8. Miracles were always used to focus attention on the message from the word and were never used as a sign of spirituality and power:
 - (i) The message and not the miracles was always the important factor.
 - (ii) Emphasising miracles we either detract from the message or have no message at all. The Holy Spirit always emphasises the message.
 - (iii) Today emphasis on miracles, tongues and healing obscures the issue of God's Word.

HOLY SPIRIT: MINISTRY IN THE NEW TESTAMENT

1. TO THE UNBELIEVER

a) RESTRAINING (2 Thessalonians 2:7)

If unbelievers were unrestrained in the Church Age the one world system which Satan is trying to establish would come. After the rapture of the Church it will come.

b) CONVICTING (John 16:7-11)

i) Sin - the barrier which remains in unbelief.

ii) Righteousness - God is totally righteous, man is only relatively righteous and needs God's righteousness for salvation.

iii) Judgment - Satan and all unbelievers are judged.

c) REGENERATION (John 3:5)

Man without the spirit cannot understand spiritual things. The Gospel is spiritual, the Holy Spirit makes the gospel a reality to the unbeliever when one believes and is "born again" or regenerated. (1 Corinthians 2:14)

EVANGELICAL BIBLE COLLEGE OF WESTERN AUSTRALIA

2. TO THE BELIEVER AT SALVATION

- a) Regeneration (John 3:1-16, Titus 3:5)
- b) Baptism (Acts 1:5, 1 Corinthians 12:13, Ephesians 4:5) We are baptized into union with Jesus Christ and become part of the body of Christ. This is not to be confused with the Filling of the Holy Spirit.
- c) Indwelling (Romans 8:9, 1 Corinthians 6:19, 20) From salvation on the believer is indwelt by the Spirit.
- d) Sealing (2 Corinthians 1:22, Ephesians 1:13, 4:30). This ministry relates to your future with God, the guarantee of eternal security.
- e) Distribution of spiritual gifts (1 Corinthians 12:11) Each believer receives a spiritual gift at the point of salvation in order to function in the body of Christ.

3. TO THE BELIEVER AFTER SALVATION (Spirituality)

The Ministry of the Holy Spirit after salvation is the means by which we live the Christian life ordained by God (Ephesians 2:10, 5:18)

- a) The Filling of the Holy Spirit (spirituality through confession of sin and surrender of the life). (1 John 1:9 Ephesians 5:18)
- b) The character of Jesus Christ is produced by the believer when he is filled with the Spirit. (Galatians 4:19, 5:22, 23)
- c) Glorification of Christ (John 7:39, 16:14, 1 Corinthians 6:19, 20)
- d) Fulfillment of the Law. (Romans 8:2-4)

HOLY SPIRIT: MINISTRY IN THE OLD TESTAMENT

1. In the Old Testament, the Holy Spirit did not indwell all believers, since Christ was not yet glorified (John 7:39). Instead, He only came upon some Old Testament saints to perform special functions.

- a) JOSEPH, a believer who was a prime minister. (Genesis 41:38)
- b) Believers who were artisans occupied in the construction of the Tabernacle. (Exodus 28:3, 31:3)
- c) Believers involved in administration. (Numbers 11:17, 25)
- d) A believer who was both a political and military leader - JOSHUA (Numbers 27:18)
- e) Certain Judges: OTHNIEL (Judges 3:9, 10) GIDEON (Judges 6:34) JEPHTHAH (Judges 11:29) SAMSON (Judges 13:24, 25, 14:5-6, 15:14)
- f) Kings of Israel (1 Samuel 10:9, 10, 16:13)
- g) DANIEL (Daniel 4:8, 5:11, 6:3)
- h) Post exilic rulers (Zechariah 4:3, 12-14)

2. Believers in Israel could be disciplined by the removal of the Spirit:

- a) SAUL (1 Samuel 16:14)
- b) DAVID (Psalm 51:11)

3. A believer could obtain the Holy Spirit by request, but not as an indwelling presence. (2 Kings 2:9, 10, Luke 11:13)

4. Jesus gave the Holy Spirit without request to the disciples just before the ascension. Purpose: To sustain them for the ten day interim before the Church Age would begin. (John 20:22)

SECTION 17 - DREAM OF NEBUCHADNEZZAR Chapter 4:4-18 (Ecclesiastes 12:1-14)

4 I Nebuchadnezzar was at rest in mine house, and flourishing in my palace: **5** I saw a dream which made me afraid, and the thoughts upon my bed and the visions of my head troubled me. **6** Therefore made I a decree to bring in all the wise men of Babylon before me, that they might make known unto me the interpretation of the dream. **7** Then came in the magicians, the astrologers, the Chaldeans, and the soothsayers: and I told the dream before them; but they did not make known unto me the interpretation thereof. **8** But at the last Daniel came in before me, whose name was Belteshazzar, according to the name of my God, and in whom is the spirit of the holy gods: and before him I told the dream, saying, **9** O Belteshazzar, master of the magicians, because I know that the spirit of the holy gods is in thee, and no secret troubleth thee, tell me the visions of my dream that I have seen, and the interpretation thereof. **10** Thus were the visions of mine head in my bed; I saw, and behold a tree in the midst of the earth, and the height thereof was great. **11** The tree grew, and was strong, and the height thereof reached unto heaven, and the sight thereof to the end of all the earth: **12** The leaves thereof were fair, and the fruit thereof much, and in it was meat for all: the beasts of the field had shadow under it, and the fowls of the heaven dwelt in the boughs thereof, and all flesh was fed of it. **13** I saw in the visions of my head upon my bed, and, behold, a watcher and an holy one came down from heaven; **14** He cried aloud, and said thus, Hew down the tree, and cut off his branches, shake off his leaves, and scatter his fruit: let the beasts get away from under it, and the fowls from his branches: **15** Nevertheless leave the stump of his roots in the earth, even with a band of iron and brass, in the tender grass of the field; and let it be wet with the dew of heaven, and let his portion be with the beasts in the grass of the earth: **16** Let his heart be changed from man's, and let a beast's heart be given unto him; and let seven times pass over him. **17** This matter is by the decree of the watchers, and the demand by the word of the holy ones: to the intent that the living may know that the most High ruleth in the kingdom of men, and giveth it to whomsoever he will, and setteth up over it the basest of men.

18 This dream I king Nebuchadnezzar have seen. Now thou, O Belteshazzar, declare the interpretation thereof, forasmuch as all the wise men of my kingdom are not able to make known unto me the interpretation: but thou art able; for the spirit of the holy gods is in thee.

KEY WORDS

Rest	Shelah	To be at rest
House	Bayith	House
Flourishing	Raan	Fresh, Flourishing
Palace	Hekal	Temple, Palace
Dream	Chelem	Dream
Afraid	Dechal	To make afraid
Thoughts	Harhor	Thought, Conception, Imagination
Bed	Mishkab	Place for lying down
Visions	Chezev	Vision, Aspect
Head	Resh	Head
Troubled	Behal	To trouble, hasten
Decree	Teem	Taste, Discretion
Bring	Alal	To cause to come up or in
Wise Men	Chakkim	Wise Skilful
Known	Yeda	To know
Interpretation	Peshar	Interpretation, Explanation
Magicians	Chartom	Scribe, Magician
Astrologers	Ashshaph	Enchanter, Magician
Soothsayers	Gezar	To decree, To cut off or down
Name	Shum	Name, Renown
Spirit	Ruach	Spirit
Holy	Qaddish	Separate, Set apart
Master	Rab	Great, Mighty, Elder
Secret	Raz	A secret
Troubleth	Anas	To trouble, Hasten
Height	Rum	Height, Loftiness
Great	Saggi	Great, Much, Many
Grew	Rebah	To become great
Strong	Teqeph	To be or become strong
Heaven	Shemayin	Heavens
Sight	Chazoth	Vision
End	Soph	End, Rear, Last
Leaves	Ophi	Leaf of a tree or flower
Fair	Shappir	Fair, Beautiful
Fruit	Eb	Fruit, Budding
Meat	Mazon	Food
Beasts	Chaiyah	A living creature
Field	Bar	Field, Open country
Shadow	Telal	To take the shade
Fowls	Tsippar	Bird, Sparrow, Fowl
Dwell	Dur	To dwell
Boughs	Anaph	Bough, Branch
Flesh	Besar	Flesh
Fed	Zun	To be fed
Watcher	Ir	A watcher
Holy One	Qaddish	One separate or set apart
Came down	Nelhath	To come down
Cried	Qera	To call
Hew Down	Gedad	To cut down
Cut off	Qetsats	To cut off or asunder
Branches	Anaph	Bough, Branch
Shake Off	Nethar	To shake off
Scatter	Bedar	To scatter
Get Away	Nud	To move off
Leave	Shebaq	To leave, Let alone
Stump	Iqqar	Root
Roots	Shoresh	A root
Earth	Ara	Earth
Band	Esur	Band, Fetter
Iron	Parzel	Iron
Brass	Nechash	Brass, Copper
Tender Grass	Dethe	Tender grass
Wet	Tseba	To be wet, moistened

Dew	Tal	Dew
Portion	Chalaq	Portion
Grass	Asab	Herb, Grass
Heart	Lebab	The heart
Seven	Shibah	Seven
Times	Iddam	An appointed time or season
Matter	Pithgam	Sentence, Matter
Demand	Sheelah	Request, Requirement
Word	Memar	A saying, Speech
Intent	Dibrah	Order, Condition, Intent
Living	Chai	Living, Alive, Lively
Most High	Illai	Most high
Ruleth	Shallit	Ruling, Ruler
Setteth	Qum	To cause to rise up
Basest	Shepal	Humble
Men	Enash	Man, Mortal
Wise	Chakkim	Wise, Skilful
Able	Behal	To be able

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

His testimony is given in verse 4 onwards. Being at rest means that he was prosperous and refers to human security. It is being in a place of “no worries”; a person who is free from external pressure. He had conquered the world and brought together the finest group of administrators the world had ever seen. He had the greatest empire of history. He built the hanging gardens of Babylon for the queen. Everything was going well, and from a purely human perspective he felt 100% secure and able to handle everything that would come to him. He is of mature age around 50-60 at this point.

The Chaldean word “Raan” means to grow green, to be covered in leaves, to flourish as a plant. However even though he had everything, none of it could keep him from the existential fear of its ending from overwhelming him at times.

Nebuchadnezzar has another fearful dream. This dream, like the one in chapter 2, is from God and it makes him fearful. He is in the position of the person in Mark 8:36. “For what shall it profit a man if he shall gain the whole world and lose his own soul?” Many deal with their fears about death by escapism, or by sublimation of their energies into addictive short term pleasures.

The challenge remains for mankind, will you prefer the tranquilizing of the devil with pleasant lies, until you join him permanently, or will you face the arresting, and the demanding truth from God, that if you are a believer, you have the secure knowledge of your eternal destiny, when you rest into being the child of God you have been called to be. Fear or Faith believer? Fear or acceptance of the gospel message unbeliever?

“Thoughts” is the word “Harhorin” which refers to imaginations and images, in this case a huge tree. His dreams bothered him, and in verse 6 he calls in all the wise men. Daniel is the chief of the wise men but he is bypassed because Nebuchadnezzar knows what type of advice Daniel gives. The king is really nervous about what this dream means.

In verse 7 there are four categories of wise men, the magicians who were the scribes who recorded the Chaldean mysteries and religion, the astrologers who predicted future events by astrology, the Chaldeans the powerful priestly group in the government and the soothsayers, who as demon inspired prophets, determined the future policy of the empire. What a great group of advisors to have! God is helping him still however – God’s Plan will work out!

Even though this group of people were the greatest (human viewpoint) advisors and had some demonic assistance they were once again unable to give any guidance on the meaning of the dream, for it is from God, and only a prophet of God can rightly interpret it. Once the wise men had failed, Daniel arrives on the scene to interpret the dream. In hindsight Nebuchadnezzar notes that Daniel has divine help and inspiration, as well as noting that he is named Belte-shazzer after one of the Chaldean gods.

He is now asked by the king to interpret the dream which has troubled Nebuchadnezzar. The phrase “by the spirit of the holy gods” should be translated “by the Spirit of the one true God”. It is what is called the “plural of magnitude”. Daniel, like many great believers such as Moses and David in the past, did not promote himself, but waited on the Lord.

In verses 10 to 18 the dream involving the tree is given. The story of the tree is not unlike the parables of the New Testament where the narrative can be understood by all and sundry, but the interpretation can only be understood by a mature believer with a good grounding in the Word of God. It is a symbol used in Psalm 1:3, and in especially Jeremiah 17:7-8, and Ezekiel 47:12. Because of its importance in the vision, Nebuchadnezzar may have read a copy of Jeremiah. It is logical that Daniel gave the king a copy of each of the scriptures he held, in order to encourage the king.

Nebuchadnezzar understood the story as such, but did not understand the full implications. What made him fear was the fact that the angel had told him that the tree represented a person, and he thought that person could well be himself. He was therefore fearful, and he is right to be fearful at this point.

Daniel both understands the dream, and its implication on the life of the king, and in the next section interprets the dream to the king, even though it is not a pleasant task. In our present day many think the gift of prophet is for spreading "good news"; but that is the evangelist. The biblical genuine prophet has the historical role of warning and challenging, and so there is often little "good news" in prophecy, until the recipient places themselves in God's path for their lives.

APPLICATION

We can come to Christ through prosperity or adversity.

Contemplating the teaching of the Word of God as an unbeliever can be a terrifying experience for the unbeliever, as they have no relationship with God at that point, and can only face God as their Judge.

There is no true happiness unless it is found in the Eternal Plan of God, and through fellowship with God within that plan, just as Solomon found in Ecclesiastes 12:1, 7-14.

Unbelievers and some believers will try and solve their problems in any way possible other than by means of obedience to the Word of God. It is only when they have totally exhausted their other resources that they may try and find out what God thinks about the problem they have. The issue since the Garden of Eden has been each person's free will!

The quality of the advice you receive on important matters is dependant on what proportion of God's viewpoint is in such advice. The unbeliever cannot understand spiritual matters because they are spiritually discerned. 1 Corinthians 2:14.

Like Daniel we should not promote ourselves and our talents but wait for the timing of the Lord when dealing with spiritual matters. The armour of the Spirit has no crow bar! God opens the door or we remain at prayer for direction.

DOCTRINE

HAPPINESS

1. This is the state of well being in the soul when the person is content in whatever situation they find themselves.
2. True happiness is unrelated to the circumstances of life. Philippians 4:11, 12, Hebrews 13:5, 6.
3. The Lord has promised to provide everything we NEED. 2 Corinthians 9:8.
4. Even in pain and persecution the truly mature believer can be happy. 1 Peter 3:14, 4:14, Psalms 146:5, Proverbs 16:20, 28:14.
5. The more we know God the more truly happy we will be in this life Psalms 43:4, 1 Timothy 6:15, 16.
6. Many consider that great wealth, position or education will ensure happiness. King Solomon searched for happiness in all of these things, and concluded that true happiness can only be found in God.
 - a) EXPERIMENT 1 - EDUCATION (Ecclesiastes 1:12-18)
 - i) Solomon introduces himself as the king and states that he undertook many educational courses. By hard study he attains a high standard in all his subjects but finds, with improved vocabulary, he is able to explain more to others how sad he is.
 - ii) Solomon's conclusion on education - "All vanity and vexation of spirit" (v 14). Education does not produce happiness.
 - b) EXPERIMENT 2 - PLEASURE (Ecclesiastes 2:1 -11)
 - i) Having spent time with study, Solomon decides to relax and pursue pleasure. He seeks pleasure in laughter (v 2), wine (v 3), great buildings (vs 4-6), servants (vs 7-9).
 - ii) Solomon's conclusion: "All vanity and vexation of spirit" (v 11). Pleasure does not produce happiness.
 - c) EXPERIMENT 3 - A POSTERITY (Ecclesiastes 2:12-26)
 - i) Solomon reflects that when his time came he would die just as the foolish man. When that day came, unless he had a number of children, he would be forgotten, together with his works. Solomon becomes depressed. He is sleepless at night and comes to the conclusion that one should eat, drink and be merry to eke out a little happiness.
 - ii) Solomon's conclusion: "all vanity and vexation of spirit" (v 26). Posterity does not produce happiness.
 - d) EXPERIMENT 4 - PHILOSOPHY (Ecclesiastes 3:1-22)
 - i) Solomon, in his philosophy, starts with facts and degenerates through rationalism to agnosticism.
 - ii) He commences with looking at man in time. God's eternal existence, provision and future judgment of the world is given. (vs 13-15). By (v 19) however, Solomon has degenerated to common origin evolution that man is just another member of the animal kingdom and his future destiny is exactly the same as the animals (v 20).
 - iii) He arrives at agnosticism (v 21) and finally humanism (v 22) where he "perceives [that there is nothing better than a man should rejoice in his own works".

iv) Solomon concludes this in (Chapter 4) with "This also is vanity and vexation of spirit." Philosophy does not produce happiness.

e) EXPERIMENT 5 - MONEY (Ecclesiastes 5:10-16)

i) Solomon who was one of the richest people who ever lived, soon concludes that money or wealth does not bring happiness. He finds that wealth does not satisfy (v 10), you support more and more people (v 11), you do not sleep well at night (v 12). When you die you cannot take your wealth with you (v 15).

ii) Solomon concluded money does not produce happiness.

f) EXPERIMENT 6 - A GOOD REPUTATION (Ecclesiastes 7:1-15)

i) With the forming of a good reputation over a long period of time, it is necessary to act in a sober, serious way (vs 2-5) rather than in a light-hearted, flippant way. By (v 15) however, Solomon has found that a good reputation does not ensure success or happiness.

ii) Solomon concluded a good reputation does not produce happiness.

g) EXPERIMENT 7 - MORALITY (Ecclesiastes 8:9-15)

i) Solomon observes that whilst the wicked will be punished in life many times, the wicked succeed and prosper to the human eye whilst the moral do not. He believes this is not fair (v 14) and as a consequence, returns to his solution of eating, drinking and making merry.

ii) Solomon concludes that morality does not produce happiness.

7. THE TRUE SOURCE OF HAPPINESS (Ecclesiastes 12:13-14)

Having examined a whole range of ways which the world believes will make you happy, Solomon concludes: "Fear God and keep His commandments, for this is the whole duty of man. For God shall bring every work into judgment with every secret thing, whether it be good or whether it be evil." In this, Solomon is reflecting the principle of (Joshua 1:8).

SECTION 18 - THE DREAM INTERPRETED BY DANIEL Chapter 4:19-27

19 Then Daniel, whose name was Belteshazzar, was astonished for one hour, and his thoughts troubled him. The king spake, and said, Belteshazzar, let not the dream, or the interpretation thereof, trouble thee. Belteshazzar answered and said, My lord, the dream be to them that hate thee, and the interpretation thereof to thine enemies. **20** The tree that thou sawest, which grew, and was strong, whose height reached unto the heaven, and the sight thereof to all the earth; **21** Whose leaves were fair, and the fruit thereof much, and in it was meat for all; under which the beasts of the field dwelt, and upon whose branches the fowls of the heaven had their habitation: **22** It is thou, O king, that art grown and become strong: for thy greatness is grown, and reacheth unto heaven, and thy dominion to the end of the earth. **23** And whereas the king saw a watcher and an holy one coming down from heaven, and saying, Hew the tree down, and destroy it; yet leave the stump of the roots thereof in the earth, even with a band of iron and brass, in the tender grass of the field; and let it be wet with the dew of heaven, and let his portion be with the beasts of the field, till seven times pass over him; **24** This is the interpretation, O king, and this is the decree of the most High, which is come upon my lord the king: **25** That they shall drive thee from men, and thy dwelling shall be with the beasts of the field, and they shall make thee to eat grass as oxen, and they shall wet thee with the dew of heaven, and seven times shall pass over thee, till thou know that the most High ruleth in the kingdom of men, and giveth it to whomsoever he will. **26** And whereas they commanded to leave the stump of the tree roots; thy kingdom shall be sure unto thee, after that thou shalt have known that the heavens do rule. **27** Wherefore, O king, let my counsel be acceptable unto thee, and break off thy sins by righteousness, and thine iniquities by shewing mercy to the poor; if it may be a lengthening of thy tranquillity.

KEY WORDS

Name	Shum	Name, Renown
Astonied	Sheman	To be silent, Astonished
One	Chad	One
Hour	Shaah	Look, Gance, Hour
Thoughts	Rayon	Thought
Troubled	Behal	To trouble, Hasten
Spake	Anah	To answer, Respond
Dream	Chelem	Dream
Interpretation	Peshar	Interpretation, Explanation
Hate	Sene	To hate
Enemies	Ar	Enemy, One awake
Strong	Teqeph	To be or become strong
Height	Rum	Height, Loftiness
Reached	Metah	To reach, Come ,Arrive
Heaven	Shemayin	Heavens
Sight	Chazoth	Vision

Leaves	Ophi	Leaf of tree or flower
Fair	Shappir	Fair, Beautiful
Fruit	Eb	Fruit, Budding
Meat	Mazon	Food
Beasts	Chaiyah	Living creature
Field	Bar	Field, Open country
Dwelt	Dur	To dwell
Branches	Anaph	Branch, Bough
Fowls	Tsippar	Bird, Sparrow, Fowl
Habitation	Shekan	To settle down
Grown	Rebah	To become great
Greatness	Rebu	Greatness
Reacheth	Meta	To reach, Come, Arrive
Dominion	Sholtan	Rule, Dominion
End	Soph	End, Rear, Last
Earth	Ara	Earth
Watcher	Ir	A watcher
Holy One	Qaddish	One holy or set apart
Coming Down	Necath	To come down
Hew Down	Gedad	To cut down
Destroy	Chabal	To destroy, Act wickedly, Corrupt
Leave	Shebaq	To leave, Let alone
Stump	Iqqar	Root
Root	Shoresh	A root
Band	Esur	Band, Fetter
Iron	Parzel	Iron
Brass	Nechash	Brass, Copper
Tender Grass	Dethe	Tender grass
Lord	Mare	One high or exalted
Drive	Terad	To drive away
Dwelling	Medor	Place of dwelling
Oxen	Tor	Ox, Bull
Grass	Aseb	Herb, Grass
Wet	Tseba	To wet, Moisten
Seven	Shibah	Seven
Whomsoever	Man	Who, What
Commanded	Amar	To lift up the voice
Tree	Ilan	Tree
Rule	Shallit	Ruling, Ruler
Counsel	Melak	Counsel
Acceptable	Shepar	To be fair
Break off	Peraq	To break off of themselves
Sins	Chatai	Sin
Righteousness	Tsidqah	Rightness, Justice
Iniquities	Avayyah	Perversity
Show Mercy	Chanan	To be gracious, Inclined to
Poor	Aneh	Humble, Poor
Lengthening	Arekah	Lengthening
Tranquillity	Shelevah	Rest, Ease, Security

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

Daniel was “astonied” (KJV), he was literally shocked to the very core of his being by the dream, and was silent for an hour as the implications of the dream were fully seen and thought through. It is always a difficult thing to bring bad news especially when you have some compassion for the person concerned. Daniel had been in the service of the king for several decades when this occurred, and had built up rapport with and loving concern for him.

Prophets rarely get to bring “good news”, for the evangelist and preacher has the “good news” in the Word of God; the prophet nearly always bring words of warning. At verse 19 only Daniel is aware of the fate of the king, and wishes that the consequences would fall on the king’s enemies, but after being encouraged by the king, Daniel gives the interpretation of the dream.

While the tree does depict an individual, and that individual is Nebuchadnezzar, its height and vastness shows the might of the Chaldean Empire which had developed over previous decades under his exceptional leadership. The development has been such, and the administration so brilliant, that it gave at this point of time in Nebuchadnezzar’s reign, protection and prosperity to the population of most of the ancient Middle Eastern world. He is a truly great man – the head of gold!

The watcher and holy one are angels from the angelic court whose work is to observe mankind and reporting their activities to the Lord. Here they command that the king be removed from power and that he be sidelined and abased for a period of seven years until he becomes aware that God rules and that he is a king only because God has deemed it so.

The tree is cut down but the stump is left and bound so that while Nebuchadnezzar will lose his empire and health for a time he will not lose his life. The cutting down of a tree relates to judgment as shown in Matthew 3:10, "And now also the axe is laid unto the root of the trees: therefore every tree which bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire". In Luke 13:7 there is a similar passage in which, demand that a fig tree which is non productive be hewn down.

As God is all knowing He knows that after the seven years Nebuchadnezzar will fully believe in and mature in faith in Christ and be able to be of even more significant use in His plan, so everything except his life is taken away from Nebuchadnezzar for these seven years, but all will re-grow. God's grace kept him alive while his pride was dealt with, after which he would look at something other than himself. It is this full confrontation with the truth about himself and God that results in his conversion. No "easy believism" here, nor any "easy/false road" of the prosperity gospel to maturity.

Daniel tells the king that this is a decree from God as to his future. He says however that eventually after he recognises God as the ruler of heaven and earth he will be restored. There is good news after the judgment is over. This passage finishes with Daniel's desire that the divine interpretation of the dream be acceptable to him and that he take urgent action to change his attitude towards God, and thus avoid the divine judgment which is about to fall on him.

APPLICATION

We have to have courage to be able to tell the truth from the Bible, even though it may not be popular with the hearers. However the truth has to be given in love. Ephesians 4:15. We do not ever scream "hate speech", but in love tell truth.

God promotes and demotes. The rulership of any country is in power only as long as God agrees for it to be there.

When we have difficulties we need to remember that all things work together for good for those who love God, for those who are called according to his purpose. **Romans 8:26-39.**

God knows who will become a believer, and will preserve the individuals within the plan, so that they can accept the Lord Jesus Christ as Saviour. God is beyond space-time, so we meet our limits here as we think about this fact.

So long as you are alive God has a purpose for your life; seek it and fulfil it in the Holy Spirit's power.

DOCTRINE

TREES

There are many references to trees in the Bible but the most important is the tree on which the Lord Jesus Christ died

1. Man's fall was associated with a tree Genesis 3:6,7
2. Everyone who hangs on a tree is cursed Deuteronomy 21:23, Galatians 3:13
3. Salvation is associated with a tree Hebrews 12:2, 1 Peter 2:24
4. The tree cast into the water at Marah made the bitter waters sweet Exodus 15:23-26
5. The man who walks close to God and his Word is like a tree planted by rivers of water Psalm 1:1-3
6. The blessed man is again seen as like a tree near the river Jeremiah 17:7,8
7. The winner of souls is likened to a tree Proverbs 11:30
8. Longevity in the Millennium is likened to the years of a tree Isaiah 65:22
9. Nebuchadnezzar the King of the Chaldean empire who is brought low is the tree cut down in Daniel 4

SECTION 19 - THE MENTAL ILLNESS OF NEBUCHADNEZZAR Daniel 4:28-33

28 All this came upon the king Nebuchadnezzar. 29 At the end of twelve months he walked in the palace of the kingdom of Babylon. 30 The king spake, and said, Is not this great Babylon, that I have built for the house of the kingdom by the might of my power, and for the honour of my majesty? 31 While the word was in the king's mouth, there fell a voice from heaven, saying, O king Nebuchadnezzar, to thee it is spoken; The kingdom is departed from thee. 32 And they shall drive thee from men, and thy dwelling shall be with the beasts of the field: they shall make thee to eat grass as oxen, and seven times shall pass over thee, until thou know that the most High ruleth in the kingdom of men, and giveth it to whomsoever he will. 33 The same hour was the thing fulfilled upon Nebuchadnezzar: and he was driven from men, and did eat grass as oxen, and his body was wet with the dew of heaven, till his hairs were grown like eagles' feathers, and his nails like birds' claws.

KEY WORDS

Twelve	Asar	Two and ten
Months	Yerach	Moon, Month
Walked	Halak	To go on
Palace	Hekal	Palace, Temple
Spake	Anah	To answer, Respond
Built	Benah	To build up
House	Bayith	House
Might	Teqoph	Strength, Might
Power	Chesen	Strength
Honour	Ye qar	Honour, Preciousness
Majesty	Hadar	Majesty, Beauty
Word	Millah	Word, Speech, Matter
Mouth	Pum	Mouth
Fell	Nephali	To fall
Voice	Qal	A voice, Sound
Heaven	Shemayin	Heavens
Spoken	Amar	To say
Kingdom	Maleku	Kingdom
Departed	Adah	To pass on
Drive	Terad	To drive away
Dwelling	Medor	Place of dwelling
Beasts	Chaiyah	Living creatures
Field	Bar	Field, Open country
Eat	Akal	To eat
Grass	Asab	Grass, Herb
Oxen	Tor	Ox, Bull
Times	Iddan	An appointed time of season
Pass	Chalaph	To pass on
Know	Yeda	To know
Most High	Illai	Most high
Ruleth	Shallit	Ruling, Ruler
Whomsoever	Man	Who, What
Hour	Shaah	Look, Glance, Hour
Fulfilled	Suph	To be ended
Driven	Terad	To drive away
Men	Enash	A man, Mortal
Hairs	Sear	Hair
Grown	Rebah	To be or become great
Eagles	Neshar	An eagle
Feathers	-----	Not in the original [implied]
Nails	Tephar	Nail, Claw
Birds	Tsephar	Bird
Claws	-----	Not in the original [implied]

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

After the interpretation of the vision by Daniel, Nebuchadnezzar chooses to ignore the warning and continued in his high state of pride. He is now a believer, but his pride is hindering what God wants him to do next.

Twelve months later, as he is walking around Babylon engrossed with his own might and power and the great buildings he has erected, the Lord brings judgment on him in the form of mental illness. He says, "Is not this great Babylon that I have built for the house of the kingdom by the might of my power, and for the honour of my majesty?" He obviously has not learnt his lesson "yet". He is still full of pride in his accomplishments – at this millisecond. But this changed with the sound of a voice from heaven. He has forgotten God, but God has not forgotten him and his part in the plan.

It is of interest that all the historians of Assyriology note a gap in the reign of Nebuchadnezzar though do not propose a reason. The reason was that he lived for seven years with the beasts of the field with the psychotic condition of zoanthropy, a disease characterised by animal-like behaviour in man, before he learnt his lesson. The condition was not instantaneous, but was brought on by his own actions. In fact the increasing mental instability can be seen in the previous chapters of this book. King Saul has a similar, but more tragic and fatal slide into insanity described in Samuel.

In the ancient world it was considered to be bad luck to kill an insane person, so the disease protected him from physical injury, or any plot against his life, and the Empire maintains its cohesion through this time, possibly with Daniel's support. This is similar to David who feigned madness at Gath and was not harmed. **1 Samuel 21:10-15**. Eventually the great king ended up grazing in the fields with the cattle. How are the mighty fallen! The king was now acting like an animal.

APPLICATION

Grace always precedes judgment. Nebuchadnezzar had been warned on a number of occasions regarding future judgment but chose to ignore the prophetic words of warning. God gives him a full year after the warning to repent.

When any person tries to lift them self to the level of God they reduce them self to the level of an animal.

Unchecked mental attitude sins, especially pride and narcissistic self absorption, can produce mental illness.

There is no security in power, wealth, fame, or human success. True security can only be found in a relationship with God and within God's Plan for your life, all of which starts at the point of regeneration.

Sadly some people have to sink to the lowest level of degradation before they accept the Lord.

DOCTRINE

HOLY SPIRIT: MINISTRY IN THE OLD TESTAMENT [See page 73 above]

SECTION 20 - DREAM FULFILLED AND NEBUCHADNEZZAR RESTORED Chapter 4:34-37

34 And at the end of the days I Nebuchadnezzar lifted up mine eyes unto heaven, and mine understanding returned unto me, and I blessed the most High, and I praised and honoured him that liveth for ever, whose dominion is an everlasting dominion, and his kingdom is from generation to generation: 35 And all the inhabitants of the earth are reputed as nothing: and he doeth according to his will in the army of heaven, and among the inhabitants of the earth: and none can stay his hand, or say unto him, What doest thou? 36 At the same time my reason returned unto me; and for the glory of my kingdom, mine honour and brightness returned unto me; and my counsellors and my lords sought unto me; and I was established in my kingdom, and excellent majesty was added unto me. 37 Now I Nebuchadnezzar praise and extol and honour the King of heaven, all whose works are truth, and his ways judgment: and those that walk in pride he is able to abase.

KEY WORDS

End	Qetsath	End, Extremity
Days	Yamim	Days
Lifted	Netal	To lift up
Eyes	Ayin	Eye
Heaven	Shemayin	Heavens
Understanding	Manda	Knowledge
Returned	Tub	To turn back
Blessed	Berak	To declare blessed
Most High	Illai	Most high
Praised	Shebach	To give praise
Honoured	Hadar	Honour, Beauty, Majesty
Liveth	Chai	Living, Alive
Forever	Alam	Hidden time
Dominion	Sholtan	Rule, Dominion
Everlasting	Alam	Age, Age lasting
Generation	Dar	Generations
Inhabitants	Dur	To dwell
Earth	Ara	Earth
Reputed	Chashab	To think, Reckon, Advise
Nothing	Lah	No, Nothing
Will	Tseba	To will or wish
Army	Chayil	Might, Strength, Force
None	La	No

EVANGELICAL BIBLE COLLEGE OF WESTERN AUSTRALIA

Stay	Mecha	To smite, Clap
Hand	Yad	Hand
Reason	Manda	Knowledge, Understanding
Glory	Ye qar	Preciousness, Rarity
Kingdom	Maleku	Kingdom
Brightness	Ziv	Clearness, Appearance
Counsellors	Haddaberran	Viceroy, Counsellor
Lords	Rabreban	Great Men
Sought	Bea	To seek, Pray
Established	Teqan	To make straight or right
Excellent	Yattir	Excellent, Abundant
Majesty	Rebu	Greatness
Extol	Rum	To lift up, Exalt
Works	Mabad	Deed, Act, Doing
Truth	Qeshot	Truth
Judgement	Din	Judgment
Walk	Halk	To cause to go on
Pride	Gevah	Pride, Lifting up
Abase.	Shepal	To make low

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

Nebuchadnezzar eventually realised that it was God who promoted and demoted, and so became a mature believer in the Lord Jesus Christ, raising his eyes to heaven in humility. The act is not unlike the man with the unclean spirit who fell down and silently worshipped the Lord in **Mark 5:2-6**. Luke the "Prodigal Son" he will return to his heavenly Father and be restored.

He was now restored as attested to by history and experienced a four fold restoration:-

- [i] His health was fully restored and his disease cured.
- [ii] His empire was restored to him after a seven year absence.
- [iii] The king was a handsome man and his physical restoration was complete.
- [iv] His popularity was restored. As a believer in the Lord Jesus Christ Nebuchadnezzar gained favour with both God and his people, and his executive branch do not despise him because of his previous mental illness.

APPLICATION

There is nothing you can do for salvation; it is your attitude towards Christ that counts. Response of any sort that indicates positive volition alone is required of us. Nebuchadnezzar lifted his eyes, the thief on the Cross made a verbal request, the demoniac bowed before the Lord Jesus Christ, the son said in the pig pen, "I will return to my father"....

The Lord promotes believers on the basis of His Mercy, love and grace - **Joshua 3:7, 1 Peter 5:5-10**. No-one despised the king after his recovery for having had severe mental illness. He was 100% restored to his roles and status. A lesson for us all.

It is critical to keep our eyes on the Lord Jesus Christ, first for salvation **Isaiah 45:22, Daniel 4:34**, and secondly in space-time for spiritual growth. **Hebrews 12:1-3, 2 Peter 3:18**.

We should learn from these great people such as Nebuchadnezzar and Solomon, and come to the Lord and walk with him in the Spirit's power and direction, rather than doing it the "hard way". Let us also learn from Nebuchadnezzar's people, for they didn't look down on him because of his previous mental illness. When people are restored, they are to be accepted 100% again. Be it sin or mental illness, when healed by God, we are healed! **Psalms 103:8-17**.

DOCTRINE

BLESSING

1. Scripture views blessing as a sense of "peace and happiness".
2. Peace means contentment, tranquility and spiritual prosperity in life. Paul uses this prayer as a greeting in many of his letters. (Galatians 1:3). It is similar to the Hebrew greeting, Shalom, which implies peace and prosperity.
3. Blessing comes by giving God and His righteousness first place (Matthew 6:31-34)
4. Having eyes on material possessions is a foolish thing. (Matthew 6:21 cf James 5:1-6)
5. Godliness and contentment are God's will for your life, irrespective of wealth or possessions (1 Timothy 6:6-12)

6. Our intimate relationship with Jesus Christ is our treasure (2 Corinthians 4:6-7).
7. We have been blessed with every spiritual blessing in Christ - we share everything that He is (Ephesians 1:3)
8. God often uses material blessings to accompany spiritual blessing (3 John 2). However, we are to be content in all circumstances (Philippians 4:11-13)
9. Blessings from God include such things as:
 - a) Peace (Psa 29:11)
 - b) Comfort (Matt 5:4)
 - c) Riches (Prov 10:22)
 - d) Rain (Ezek 34:26)
10. The believers who enjoy God's blessings are:
 - a) Righteous (Psa 5:12)
 - b) Just (Prov 3:33)
 - c) Faithful (Prov 28:20)
 - d) Pure in heart (Psa 24:4,5)
11. God's blessings are secured by:
 - a) Delighting in His Word (Josh 1:8; Ps 1:1 -3)
 - b) Obeying the Word (Deut 28:1,2; James 1:25)
 - c) Teaching from the Word (Psalm 94:12; Heb 12:5-11)
 - d) Kindness to Jews (Gen 12:3; Psa 122:6).
 - e) Generosity (Prov 11:26; Mal 3:10)
 - f) Walking in God's way (Psa 128:1-4)
 - g) Prayer (James 5:16).
12. There are blessings in the book of the Revelation for those who
 - a) those who heed the words of the book - 1:3, 22:7
 - b) those who die in the Lord - 14:13
 - c) those who are alert in the Tribulation regarding the Second Advent 16:15
 - d) those who attend the marriage supper of the Lamb - 19:9
 - e) those who are part of the first resurrection - 20:6
 - f) those who as believers will have eternal blessings in heaven. - 22:14

CHAPTER 5

DIVISION OF CHAPTER 5

Chapter five of Daniel can be divided into six sections

FEAST OF BELSHAZZER	VERSES 1-4
THE WRITING ON THE WALL	VERSES 5-7
FAILURE OF THE WISE MEN TO EXPLAIN THE HANDWRITING	VERSES 8-12
DANIEL SPURNS THE KING'S GIFTS	VERSES 13-24
DANIEL INTERPRETS THE HANDWRITING ON THE WALL	VERSES 25-29
FALL OF BABYLON	VERSES 30-31

INTRODUCTION

The time is October 12 in the year 539 BC. We have not been told anything about Nebuchadnezzar's last years as king, nor the chaos that did follow his reign – ask Daniel in heaven.....there will be an amazing story of his work in this time. The chapter opens with the army of the Medes and Persians surrounding Babylon. The city is under siege. Nabonidus had lost his great general Gobryas, who had defected to the Persians and the people of the city itself do not support Nabonidus' regent Belshazzar. Cyrus will personally chase after Nabonidus in the north, leaving his second army to deal with Babylon.

Josephus tells us that in the seventeenth year of his reign, Cyrus advanced from Persia with a large army and having subjugated the rest of the kingdom marched on Babylonia. Hearing of Cyrus' coming Nabonidus led out an army to meet

him in the north and was defeated, leaving the second ruler of the kingdom, his son, in the south with his second army locked up securely within the city of Babylon with supplies to last for many years. He had left his son in charge of Babylon. His name was Belshazzar, and he was “co-regent”. Nitocris, the queen mentioned in this chapter, was the mother of Belshazzar (various spellings – all OK) and had been married to Nabonidus, but they were separated.

The Chaldeans were very confident regarding the safety of Babylon and the strength of their forces in the city, and were having a party in the city. Heroditus tells us that the Babylonians shut themselves up and made light of Cyrus' siege. They had laid in store provisions for many years, in preparations against any attack. The city of Babylon had massive walls around it. The tops of the walls were so wide that two horse drawn chariots abreast could ride around it. They had a system of draw bridges and means by which various areas of the city were able to be cut off. They therefore had every reason to be confident that they could have this party, but the soldiers didn't “see” the enemy march in under the gates!!!! In their pride based over-confidence, no correct orders were given for adequate defence by means of vigilant guarding this night, but every order was given to secure the city for Cyrus! Insiders lead to the city's fall – one was we think Daniel.

God had other plans for the Chaldean Empire on this fateful night than for them to celebrate victory. He had decided to terminate the first Gentile Empire this very night. In this chapter we see the fall of the Babylonian Empire and yet the survival of its greatest believer Daniel. Daniel is careful about what he says here, as he writes in the reign of Cyrus, but when we remember Herodotus' words, that “Babylon fell betrayed from within”, we must ask, how much were Queen Nitocris and Daniel involved in this betrayal. We believe they were – up to the maximum level – as Median agents!

Both will prosper under the Median-Persian King, Cyrus the Great. Daniel has had close connections with the Median power-brokers at Babylon (Nebuchadnezzar's queen, and her daughter Nitocris are both Median princesses) and his diplomatic missions to Media, where he has visions, make me think he is an active plotter for Cyrus. Cyrus the Great was half Median, half Persian, and the clue Daniel gives, is he nearly always uses his Median name - “Darius the Mede”. He has Isaiah's words from the Lord to encourage this otherwise “traitorous action” also, just as Jeremiah had supported Nebuchadnezzar from within besieged Jerusalem. **Isaiah 44:28, 45:1-4, Jeremiah 36-39.**

SECTION 21 - FEAST OF BELSHAZZER

Chapter 5:1-4

1 Belshazzar the king made a great feast to a thousand of his lords, and drank wine before the thousand. 2 Belshazzar, while he tasted the wine, commanded to bring the golden and silver vessels which his father Nebuchadnezzar had taken out of the temple which was in Jerusalem; that the king, and his princes, his wives, and his concubines, might drink therein. 3 Then they brought the golden vessels that were taken out of the temple of the house of God which was at Jerusalem; and the king, and his princes, his wives, and his concubines, drank in them. 4 They drank wine, and praised the gods of gold, and of silver, of brass, of iron, of wood, and of stone.

KEY WORDS

Belshazzar	Belshazzar	The Lord's leader
Great	Rab	Abundant, Much
Feast	Lechem	Bread, Eating
Before	Qebel	Over, Against
Thousand	Eleph	A thousand
Lords	Rabreban	Great Ones
Drank	Shethah	To drink, Banquet
Wine	Chamar	A thick sticky syrup
Tasted	Teem	To taste
Commanded	Amar	To lift up the voice
Bring	Athah	To cause to come
Golden	Dehab	Golden
Silver	Kesaph	Silver
Vessels	Man	A vessel, Utensil
Father	Ab	Father, Ancestor
Temple	Hekal	Palace, Temple
Princes	Rabreban	Very great
Wives	Shegal	A wife, Queen
Concubines	Lechenah	Concubine, Singing damsel
Brought	Altah	To cause to come
Praised	Shebach	To give praise
Brass	Nechash	Brass, Copper
Gold	Dehab	Gold
Iron	Parzel	Iron
Wood	A	Wood, A tree
Stone	Eben	Stone

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

Nabonidus was the most competent ruler of the Chaldean Empire after Nebuchadnezzar, his father in law. Of a priestly lineage himself, he was devoted to the Moon God rather than the main god of the Babylonians, Marduk. Because of his alienation of the priests of Marduk in Babylon, the priests sought deliverance from their own king, who they believed had brought trouble upon them by his change of worship. They found what they believed was deliverance in the form of Cyrus the Persian, who defeated the Babylonian army at Opis on the Tigris, before taking Babylon without a real fight. Cyrus had more supporters in the city than Belshazzar had, but the foolish Babylonian king didn't realise this.

We now move to the party on the night of the fall of the Chaldean Empire. Belshazzar, the grandson of Nebuchadnezzar through his second daughter Nitocris was involved in an orgy of drinking and carousing. He had come to the throne with his father Nabonidus in 556 BC who, soon after assuming power, left his wife and Babylon, to pursue religious activities in the oasis of Ternam/Timna in Arabia for many years, leaving his son as co-regent and direct ruler in Babylon.

For centuries the very existence of Belshazzar was vigorously doubted by historians. It was used as a way by many historians to try to discredit the validity of the Bible. However solving the existence of Belshazzar reinforced the reliability of the Bible. In fact the argument about the dating of the book of Daniel is answered in large measure by historical proof as to the existence of this king in Babylon. As later people had forgotten him, only a writer at the time would know of him.

Excavations at Ur in 1854 by J E Taylor resulted in Sir Henry Rawlinson translating cuneiform inscriptions which named Belshazzar as the eldest son of Nabonidus. The inscription was in the form of Nabonidus offering a prayer, first for himself, then for his firstborn son Bel-shar-usur. [Belshazzar – various spellings are acceptable]. Such prayers were offered only for the reigning monarch. Still other cuneiform documents record how Belshazzar presented sheep and oxen at the temples of Sippar as an offering of the king. Kings and their regents were seen as equals; the son being equal to the father in their kingship and authority.

Since Belshazzar was not mentioned by such reputable Greek historians as Xenophon [born 430 BC], Herodotus [died 425 BC], Berosus and Abydenus, it was assumed that he was a mythical figure. The Ptolemy canon from Alexandria in Egypt said that the last king of Babylon was Nabonidus who reigned for 17 years. It was quite correct of course, for Belshazzar was, as the Bible correctly records the "second ruler" – equal/regent based in Babylon, his father in the north.

As Belshazzar himself in fact reigned in Babylon, it is clear that the writer of the book of Daniel had lived long before the great Greek historian Herodotus, active in the days of Ezra and Nehemiah. This gives clear proof of the early dating of the book of Daniel, and again shows the veracity of the Scriptures. In addition to identifying Belshazzar, the author correctly sees Belshazzar as the second ruler of the Empire, as he is only able to offer Daniel third rulership in the Empire [see verse 29]. It is a small detail, but one that was only known if the writer was there in Babylon at the time.

Belshazzar lived in a world of escapism, self indulgence and sublimation, thinking he was invincible behind the great walls of Babylon. He was having an orgy with his nobles, out of touch with reality – Satanic deception/distraction = successful. During this orgy he called for the vessels that Nebuchadnezzar had plundered from the Temple in order to drink toasts to the pagan gods of Chaldea. This would be designed to impress the pagan priesthood of Babylon, but he didn't understand that they hated him anyway, and no toasts to their gods would change their plans to support Cyrus the Great, so he didn't understand theology, or the political reality he faced that night. He erroneously assumed that as the Jews were captive, their God was of lesser power than his, and he had conveniently put Daniel out of his mind, possibly as a possible "traitor". Daniel has been "side-lined" from politics, with Nitocris, for a very real reason.....

He made exactly the same error as his grandfather Nebuchadnezzar had done in the fiery furnace episode with belittling God, maligning His character and under-estimating His power to deal with the Empire. He had failed to learn from his grand-father's conversion experience and be saved himself. God has no grandsons. **Matthew 7:13-23, John 8:42-44, 1 John 3:7-10.** Our "fruit" shows our family likeness. **Galatians 5:13-26.**

Because he was aware that the Babylonian Empire was in a precarious situation, he was using vessels which represented God to invoke blessings from his pagan gods, but without the common sense to call upon the "wise men" of whom Daniel was chief, to take their advice beforehand and ensure all was done "properly". His arrogance robs him of the advice, the prophetic words, and the prayers he needs. Arrogance is a satanic "fruit", and refusal to seek godly advice a consequence, and disaster the result. The "fruit" of such attitudes is then the sex, drugs and alcohol party.

Belshazzar was arrogant and proud. Ancient histories record that on one hunting trip one of Belshazzar's nobles was the first to bag his limit. This so enraged the king that he drew his sword and dispatched the noble. This resulted in the level of marksmanship amongst the nobles being greatly reduced in consequent hunting trips! This man's arrogance meant he had to be killed by Cyrus, for Cyrus understood human psychology, and he knew that arrogant narcissism very rarely changes, it simply morphs into different threats later if left to recover. A narcissist cannot be reasoned with, only eliminated from power, and often life itself (safest). Belshazzar's father Nabonidus was given honorable retirement in the Oasis of Timna by Cyrus, but Belshazzar and his corrupt group of sycophants were of no use to Cyrus. They were killed!

APPLICATION

While the Bible is not an history text book, where all historical events are recorded, the events that are recorded are noted with total accuracy.

The dating of this book is of critical importance, as if it is prophetic, the accuracy of the prophecy in the second half of the book and especially in chapter 11 is a totally convincing proof of the omniscience of God and the inspired nature of His book the Bible.

Escapism solves nothing, and allows Satan an easy victory. Distraction and escapism is the main satanic ploy to negate the influence of key people. Every problem in life must be faced and resolved. Human pleasure is never a satisfactory substitute for fellowship with God and walking God's path. Escapism is always finally fatal – only bowing before God and walking within the Eternal Plan gives any safety and security.

Gold in the Scriptures represents the deity of Christ. You do not blaspheme the Character of God and get away with it.

DOCTRINE

BELSHAZZAR - DECADENCE

1. SCRIPTURE - Daniel 5.

2. BIOGRAPHY

For many years Belshazzar was considered a mythical character. His existence was, however, confirmed in 1854 when archaeologist J. E. Taylor uncovered in Ur of the Chaldees clay cylinders containing a prayer to the Moon god for Belshazzar from Nabonidus his co-ruler. This confirms the statement in Daniel 5:29 where Daniel was made the third ruler in the nation. Belshazzar, the grandson of Nebuchadnezzar through Queen Nitocris, was co-ruler of the Chaldean Empire from 556 BC until its destruction by the Medes and Persians in 539 BC. Daniel 5 presents the last night of the Chaldean Empire which had been the greatest empire of the ancient world, being represented by the head of gold (Daniel 2:32,38) and the winged lion (Daniel 7:4). Apparently secure within the walled city of Babylon, Belshazzar gave a party for 1000 nobles (Daniel 5:1). The party was decadent with much drinking, using holy vessels ransacked from the Temple in Jerusalem (Daniel 5:3). The party was uneventful until God intervened, writing on the wall. In the ancient world great deeds of kings were written on the walls, and here the judgment on the king is given.

3. EVALUATION

a) Wine, women and idols. Belshazzar by his lifestyle demonstrates many negative traits.

i) He drank excessively as a leader (Proverbs 31:4-5, Titus 1:7).

ii) He was a self-centred egoist which causes national disaster.

iii) He lived in a world of self indulgence.

iv) By using the vessels from the Temple to drink to his gods he was placing them above the God of Israel. God will not tolerate this (Exodus 20:3).

b) The warnings. The destruction of the Chaldean (Babylonian) Empire had been prophesied in other Old Testament books (Jeremiah 50:10; Isaiah 47:1-3). In Daniel 5:5,6 the warning of the imminent fall of the empire is given by the writing on the wall.

c) His reaction.

i) Panic (Daniel 5:7).

ii) Consulting the wise men (Daniel 5:8).

iii) Fear (Daniel 5:9).

d) Sound advice.

i) From Queen Nitocris (Daniel 5:10-12).

ii) From Daniel (Daniel 5:13-28).

e) Belshazzar's reaction.

i) He rewards Daniel (Daniel 5:29)

ii) He is killed and the empire ends (Daniel 5:30).

4. PRINCIPLES

a) Belshazzar should have known of the Old Testament prophecies (Daniel 2:48).

b) Righteousness preserves a nation; sin destroys it (Proverbs 14:34).

c) Prepared people can give accurate information in catastrophes (2 Kings 6:17; Daniel 5:11).

d) God uses your apparently bad circumstances to assist others (Genesis 40:3,8).

e) Escapism solves nothing as problems must be faced (Genesis 3:8,9).

f) Pleasure is never a substitute for fellowship with God (Ecclesiastes 2:1).

g) Drunkenness is a sign of degeneracy (Proverbs 23:21).

h) God will not tolerate blasphemy and irreverence to Himself (Leviticus 24:16).

i) God's Word judges those who ignore it (Psalm 1:6).

j) Man never knows the day or hour of his death (Luke 12:20).

k) The fall of a nation is preceded by decadence of leadership (Isaiah 9:16-17).

l) God is in control of history (Proverbs 8:15-16).

SECTION 22 - THE WRITING ON THE WALL

Chapter 5:5-7

5 In the same hour came forth fingers of a man's hand, and wrote over against the candlestick upon the plaster of the wall of the king's palace: and the king saw the part of the hand that wrote. **6** Then the king's countenance was changed, and his thoughts troubled him, so that the joints of his loins were loosed, and his knees smote one against another. **7** The king cried aloud to bring in the astrologers, the Chaldeans, and the soothsayers. And the king spake, and said to the wise men of Babylon, Whosoever shall read this writing, and shew me the interpretation thereof, shall be clothed with scarlet, and have a chain of gold about his neck, and shall be the third ruler in the kingdom.

KEY WORDS

Hour	Shaah	Hour, Look, Glance
Came forth	Nephaq	To come forth
Fingers	Estbean	Fingers
Man's	Enash	A man, Mortal
Hand	Yad	Hand
Wrote	Kethab	To write
Candlestick	Nebrashrta	Candlestick
Plaster	Gheer	Plaster
Wall	Kethal	A wall
Palace	Hekal	Temple, Palace
King	Malka	King, Counsellor
Saw	Chaza	To see in a vision
Part	Pas	End, Extremity
Countenance	Ziv	Brightness, Countenance
Changed	Shena	To be changed, Altered
Thoughts	Rayon	Thought
Troubled	Behal	To trouble, Hasten
Joints	Qetar	A joint, Knot
Loins	Charats	Loin
Loosed	Shere	To be loosed
Knees	Arkubah	The knee
Smote	Neqash	To smite
Cried	Qera	To call, Read
Aloud	Chayil	With might
Bring	Alah	To cause to come up or in
Astrologer	Ashshaph	Enchanter, Magician
Soothsayers	Gezar	To decree, To cut off or down
Wise Men	Chakkim	Wise, Skillful
Read	Qera	To call, Read
Writing	Kethab	To write
Shew	Chava	To show, Indicate
Interpretation	Peshar	Interpretation, Explanation
Clothed	Lebash	To be clothed
Scarlet	Argevan	Purple
Chain	Hamnik	Chain for arm or neck
Neck	Tsavvar	Neck
Third	Talti	Third
Ruler	Shelet	To rule, Have power
Kingdom	Maleku	Kingdom

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

Heathenism and blasphemy had now reached a maximum level and the First great Gentile Empire was ripe for judgment. By drinking from the golden Temple vessels they had elevated the pagan gods of Babylonia above the living true God. Belshazzar should have remembered how Daniel and his Jewish friends had served the empire for the last 50 years and how the God of Israel had cured his grandfather from zoanthropy, rescued the three from the fiery furnace and had been seen to be Almighty God in many different ways.

The visions of Chapter 7 should also have been available to him, but people who are determined to be independent of God have "selective memory", and in this case it was a fatal error on the narcissistic king's part.

Archeologists have uncovered the banqueting hall which is about 60 metres long and 20 metres wide. It was close to the likely site of the Hanging Gardens. They found the main entrance and elevated area, and the wall behind it and even some of the plaster of the wall when it was excavated. Google earth "Babylon" and see the ruins left still there.

In verse 5 only part of the hand was seen, up to the wrist. In Aramaic what was seen was the palm of the hand. The hand now proceeded to write on the plaster wall. This method of advising an apostate and debauched empire of its imminent termination was quite appropriate, as it was customary in the ancient world to inscribe the great deeds of kings on palace walls. Many examples of these have been found by archeologists.

It is probable that Belshazzar's walls were adorned with testimony of his exploits, both real and imaginary, yet over near the candlestick where all could see, the hand of God was writing his epilogue.

Verse 6 shows Belshazzar's reaction to this. The king's countenance was changed and his thoughts constantly alarmed him. In this case Belshazzar's knees knocked together. The table was open and Daniel was later able to watch the knees knocking. Belshazzar and his faction/nobles sobered up quickly from their party, although they would return to their drinking and most in this room would die drunk when the Medio-Persian soldiers burst in later that night. Daniel would live, only because (we believe) he and Nitocris were Cyrus insiders, and so knew where to position themselves.

King Belshazzar is greatly alarmed. He has run out of gimmicks. It is a picture of everyone who is facing judgment before God at the Great White Throne Judgment. Revelation 20:10-15. God's judgment will greatly trouble and terrify the unbeliever. It is the most powerful thing that man will ever face, and there is no escape from your Creator and Judge. cf **1 John 4:17-18**. In grace he has the opportunity to repent, but he returns to escapism and carnality, and dies drunk.

Belshazzar is fearful because he has rejected God. He is on his own, the autonomous man, and he sees then that his arrogance has been wrongly placed in his own power, for he has none to stand against the God over all. God alone has said how and in which way the universe will run. The criterion that the empire is run on is his criteria not God's. This type of person always has this problem when the truth of their space-time limits is confronted.

His nobles are in a sustained state of panic also, as they too have run out of ideas. The exception is Queen Nitocris who heard the commotion and has entered the hall to see what has occurred. When you see the great women in the Bible you find that they are often facing stupid men who are falling apart. Belshazzar should have learnt, what Nebuchadnezzar had come to realize, that his empire had been used by God to discipline Israel, and so he needed to know God.

However Belshazzar had foolishly oppressed the Jews and become anti-Semitic. Daniel has not been a senior ruler for some time at this point due to Belshazzar's attitude to him and the Jews. The seventy years exile is nearly up, and he has been trying to do Satan's work – a foolish man supporting the loser – as Satan is always finally the loser.

They had also become decadent and were ripe for discipline. They had been destroyed by their own decadence; "Whoredom and wine and new wine take away the heart". **Hosea 4:11**.

In verse 7 we see history repeating itself with a troubled king now calling for the wise men, and the court advisers, to give an interpretation of the writing on the wall. Interesting that they are not at the party either – probably already supporting Cyrus' takeover.... They had also failed before, and they would fail the interpretation test again. Had he just called for advice before the party from Daniel he might have been led to salvation and safety. Arrogance only leads to death.

Belshazzar offers great gifts and honour to those who are able to interpret the writing. It is clear however that as unbelievers the "wise men" cannot understand spiritual phenomena [**1 Corinthians 2:14**], and so "prizes" are an inappropriate offer here, and just illustrate how spiritually bankrupt and "Space-Time limited viewpoint" this man is.

He stands without excuse, for his grand-father's testimony was before him in the archives. It will be the queen, the half Median princess Nitocris, who saves the day and reminds her foolish son of Daniel. There is a back-story here, with Daniel and the Queen Mother likely being in active communication with Cyrus, but we will only know details in heaven.

APPLICATION

The opposite of fear is not courage, but great love. The antidote to fear is love. Perfect or mature love casts out all forms of fear. **1 John 4:17-19**. Fear asks, "what is going to happen to me?", while love looks to solutions in the context of their powerful relationships. An example is when a child is in great danger the mother will look outwards and try to prevent the incident occurring. It is love for others that makes us forget fear and do what is right. It is knowing God's love for us that in gratitude drives our desire to do what is godly!!!

God withholds judgment because of his graciousness. He does not answer the prayer of the Jews for immediate deliverance, he moves slowly in accordance with his plan for a full 70 year captivity, thus maximising the time to allow all the Jewish people to repent. God however will judge/deliver when the time is precisely right.

The God of Israel is the God of the Universe. God can work through us but does not have to. If someone wants to have gospel information God will provide gospel information. If you are sidelined from service it does not mean that God's plan is sidelined. The Plan is bigger than us, and is for God's glory; benefits to us come as we focus on that also.

This is true for every believer out of fellowship, or the unbeliever, when you are in a state of disobedience to God. It does not matter how skilful you are, your conscience cannot be not blotted out. The conviction is down in the subconscious and requires only a trigger to activate it. Very little of our mind is conscious, most of it is subconscious.

Some great catastrophe occurs and can give us God consciousness as we are open to the Holy Spirit. We are then aware of our circumstances, and we then look at the Lord. If you are affected physically this can affect you mentally as well, and vice versa.

All the organs of the body can be affected by the mental attitude. As we think so we become over time. You can have a will to live, and you will survive events which would ordinarily kill people. Walking with God is powerful.

The dramatic method by which God advised the Chaldeans of the end of their empire has come down into the colloquial statement, "The writing is on the wall", indicating the termination of group or procedure is imminent and sure.

Security and confidence come from the power of God never from human position or accomplishments.

DOCTRINE

APOSTASY

1. Apostasy means falling away.
2. Apostasy differs from backsliding. A true Christian can backslide, an apostate is never born again. eg. Judas Iscariot.
3. The backslidden Christian breaks fellowship, but doesn't lose his salvation. (John 5:24)
4. The apostate is declared in (2 Timothy 4:3-4) and (1 John 2:19)
5. Apostates may do good works calling themselves Christians but they should not be accepted as such. (2 John 9-11, John 10:12-13).
6. There will be a great apostasy prior to the Rapture (2 Thessalonians 2:3)

SECTION 23 - FAILURE OF THE WISE MEN TO EXPLAIN THE HANDWRITING - Daniel Chapter 5:8-12

8 Then came in all the king's wise men: but they could not read the writing, nor make known to the king the interpretation thereof. 9 Then was king Belshazzar greatly troubled, and his countenance was changed in him, and his lords were astonished. 10 Now the queen by reason of the words of the king and his lords came into the banquet house: and the queen spake and said, O king, live for ever: let not thy thoughts trouble thee, nor let thy countenance be changed: 11 There is a man in thy kingdom, in whom is the spirit of the holy gods; and in the days of thy father light and understanding and wisdom, like the wisdom of the gods, was found in him; whom the king Nebuchadnezzar thy father, the king, I say, thy father, made master of the magicians, astrologers, Chaldeans, and soothsayers; 12 Forasmuch as an excellent spirit, and knowledge, and understanding, interpreting of dreams, and shewing of hard sentences, and dissolving of doubts, were found in the same Daniel, whom the king named Belteshazzar: now let Daniel be called, and he will shew the interpretation.

KEY WORDS

Came	Alal	To come up or in
Kings	Malka	A king, Counsellor
Wise	Chakkim	Wise, Skilful
Read	Qera	To call, Read
Known	Yeda	To cause to know
Interpretation	Peshar	Interpretation, Explanation
Troubled	Behal	To be troubled, Hastened
Countenance	Ziv	Brightness, Countenance
Changed	Shena	Changed, Altered
Lords	Rabreban	Great Ones
Astonied	Shebash	To be perplexed
Queen	Malkah	Queen
Reason	Qebel	Before, In the presence of
Words	Millah	Word, Speech, Matter
Banquet	Mishteh	A drinking
House	Bayith	House
Spoke	Anah	To answer, Respond
Live for Ever	Chaya Alam	Live hidden time
Thoughts	Bayon	Thought
Man	Gebar	Mighty man

Kingdom	Maleku	Kingdom
Spirit	Ruach	Spirit
Holy	Qaddish	Separate, Set apart
Father	Ab	Father, Ancestor
Light	Nahiru	Light
Understanding	Soklethanu	Understanding
Wisdom	Chokmah	Wisdom, Skill
Found	Shekach	To be found
Master	Rab	Great, Mighty, Elder
Magicians	Chartom	Scribe, Magician
Astrologers	Ashshaph	Enchanter, Magician
Soothsayers	Gezar	To decree, To cut off or down
Excellent	Yattir	Excellent, Abundant
Knowledge	Manda	Knowledge
Dreams	Chelem	Dream
Showing	Achavayah	A showing, Indication
Hard Sentences	Achidah	A hidden thing, Obscure saying
Dissolving	Shere	To solve, Loose
Doubts	Qetar	Doubt, Joint, Knot
Named	Sim Shun	To give a name as
Called	Qera	To be called

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

The Queen Mother, Nitocris, is able to give the King God's viewpoint at the time of crisis. We have a number of women such as Esther, Deborah, Abigail and even Pilate's wife, all of whom gave good advice. At many times in the ancient and modern world women are able to take authority over the men, because the men have not faced truth, but the women have. This woman is a close confidant of Daniel, and would appear to be a great believer, as her father Nebuchadnezzar eventually was.

On the other hand you have women who did not assist. Examples include Eve at the Fall who offered fruit to Adam and Job's wife who suggested to him that he curse God and die. The woman has a great input into the home, family and marriage, and a godly and doctrine filled woman may find the Lord's call to fulfill her destiny in a way that will win eternal reward and renown well above the men of her day, as Nitocris does here.

Nitocris the Queen was not only a wise woman, but history records she had a great sense of humour as well. Nitocris at the end of her life played a delayed joke on the leaders of Babylon. Heroditus says that it was she that planned a remarkable deception. She had her tomb constructed in the upper part of one of the major gates to the city, high above the heads of everyone in the city, so no-one walked over her, all still "looked up to her", and walked "under her grave".

On the site of the tomb she placed this inscription. "If there be one among my successors on the throne of Babylon who is in want of treasure let him open my tomb and take as much as he chooses, not however unless he be truly in want for it will not be for good". A later ruler decided to open the tomb and found nothing but her body and a note which said "Had thou not been lustful for the treasure and careless how you got it you would not have broken open the tomb of the dead".

From Roman and Greek sources it is clear that feasts such as the one held this night were very decadent, with the only women present being non-royal members of the king's harem, entertainers and prostitutes. It was a debauched party made up of those who lived for escapist pleasure, not God, righteousness or goodness.

Nitocris suddenly heard a change from the noise of the party, that people were now shouting in fear, and she went to see what was happening. She had not been involved in the party because it was decadent and she appears to have been a believer, and in close and regular contact with Daniel. The queen had retired to her rooms, but after hearing a commotion Nitocris suddenly walked into the hall uninvited. She immediately gives strong advice to Belshazzar.

She recommended that Daniel be called as he had interpreted this type of occurrence before. She says that in him "is the spirit of the holy gods" - "Ruach Elohin" - the Holy Spirit. She calls Daniel by his Babylonian Court name of Belteshazzar. She has adopted the courtly role of "Queen Mother" in order to speak into the crisis with authority. Here the men of Babylon have an orgy, and bring out the vessels of the God of Israel and desecrate them. Desecration is considered to be a very serious sin. In 1 Samuel we see the desecration of the Ark in the temple of Dagon. Each time the Ark was placed in the temple of Dagon the statue of Dagon fell on its face. **1 Samuel 5:1-6:21.**

Nitocris was prepared for this situation, as she knew God, God's man, and she had learned doctrine. She has stability in the face of chaos. Her son is in a degenerate orgy, but now is in fear, and yet remains unregenerate, and will party on until killed. Whatever occurred after the interchange between the queen and her son, all the holy items used in the feast were returned to the treasury, from where they would be given by Cyrus to the returning Exiles. **Ezra 1:7-11.**

APPLICATION

While calling on one's fellow man in times of need is logical from an unbeliever's point of view, the believer must remember that solutions for his problems rest with the Lord. "It is better to trust in the Lord than to put confidence in princes". **Psalm 118:8,9.**

The fall of a nation or empire is always preceded by the deterioration of the morals and mental attitude of the leadership. The solution to the problem is to turn to the Word of God where accuracy and stability is found.

In a difficult situation a believer is often called to minister only after all other avenues have been exhausted by the unbeliever. Advice from a believer may not be sought if there seems to be the possibility of solving the problem using current human wisdom, for the determined unsaved people do not want to give credit to God, or God's servants.

People observe believers, and while they may not have a close relationship with them, they can recommend them on the basis of their previous performance.

The believer should always have poise and not push themselves into any situation, as God's timing for intervention is perfect, and when the Lord provides the opportunity there is blessing in the service. We are to position ourselves to be of use, but not feel we need to "lift ourselves up". **1 Peter 5:5-11.**

DOCTRINES

WOMEN – Not as simple as "thick religious men" often think!

1. The woman's primary role is a "keeper at home". (Titus 2:5). She may be involved in employment and interests, but family comes first. (Proverbs 31:10-31)

2. Attitude of women

- a) Women should be adorned in "modest apparel" that is not outlandish, but fitting to occasions and witness (1 Timothy 2:9)
- b) She should act with modesty and with humility, thinking of the effect that her appearance and behaviour will have on others, as should men.
- c) She should not put emphasis on the external appearance and adornment, but on the inner character and beauty of her soul. (1 Timothy 2:10, 1 Peter 3:3-4)
- d) She should have a meek and quiet spirit, but that does not mean weakness. (1 Peter 3:4)

3. Ministry of women in the church

- a) Prayer (Acts 12:5).
- b) Praise and worship (Psalm 148:12,13; 150:6).
- c) Servant (Romans 16:1).
- d) Teacher (Titus 2:3,4) Older women to instruct younger women, but also Priscilla teaches Apollos. Acts 18:24-28.
- e) Labour in the Lord (Romans 16:6,12).
- f) Prophetic gifting. Acts 21:8-9. Daughters, with prophetic gifting operating under the pastor, their father.

4. Limitations of ministry – Holy Spirit directed only.

- a) The woman is not inferior to man, but she has a different role or purpose. (Galatians 3:26-28)
- b) Adam was created first, indicating authority/rulership over the woman (1 Timothy 2:13, 1 Corinthians 11:2,8-10)
- c) Eve was created as a helper to man, not to rule over him (Genesis 2:18, 3:16, Ephesians 5:23)
- d) the woman was deceived, indicating greater susceptibility (1 Timothy 2:14, 1 Peter 3:7)
- e) Therefore a woman is not to exert authority over a man without the Holy Spirit's specific direction, just as men also are under the same orders. (1 Timothy 2:12)
- f) By implication, this suggests that
 - i) women should not teach men in a church assembly (1 Corinthians 14, 1 Timothy 2)
 - ii) women and men, were to "remain silent" in church, not disrupt the service with questions. 1 Corinthians 14:34-35.
 - iii) women do not appear to have the gift of pastor-teacher, the apostles ordained men, never women, as pastors/elders (1 Timothy 3:1-7; Titus 1:5-9). (All the tenses of the "authority/teaching" gifts in the Greek language are masculine – yet...refer to point 5, for all these women are exceptional and your situation may also be so...)

5. Exceptions to ministry. Situations where women taught or ruled over men:

- a) Priscilla instructed Apollos (Acts 18:26) - women may instruct men when clearly led to by the Holy Spirit.
- b) Eunice (mother) and Lois (grandmother) taught young Timothy (2 Timothy 1:5) - women may teach children (and other women).
- c) Women prophetesses and judges: Deborah (Judges 4:4,5), Miriam (Exodus 15:20), Huldah (2 Kings 22:14), Anna (Luke 2:36-38), Philip's daughters as prophets, Acts 21:8-9 - God may use women in all these roles, as the Holy Spirit directs – who sovereignly gives all gifts. All believers are to be discerning – fruit of the Spirit to be seen.

1. God is pleased with believers

- a) By asking for the right things. (1 Kings 3:9, 10)
- b) By living a separated life. (2 Timothy 2:4)
- c) By doing his will. (Hebrews 13:20, 21)
- d) Walking in fellowship with him. (Hebrews 11:5, Genesis 5:24)
- e) By praising God. (Psalm 69:30, 31)
- f) By resting by faith in God's provision. (Hebrews 11:6)

2. The Christian life involves walking.

- a) in the Truth (2 John 4)
- b) by means of faith in wisdom. (2 Corinthians 5:7, Colossians 4:5)
- c) in the Spirit (Galatians 5:16, 25)
- d) in Love. (Ephesians 5:2)
- e) in newness of Life. (Romans 6:4)
- f) worthy of our vocation. (Ephesians 4:1)
- g) worthy of the Lord. (Colossians 1:10, 1 Thessalonians 2:12)
- h) honestly as in the day. (Romans 13:13)
- i) in good works. (Ephesians 2:10)
- j) in light. (Ephesians 5:8, 1 John 1:7)
- k) in Christ Jesus. (Colossians 2:6)
- l) circumspectly. (Ephesians 5:15,16)
- m) as ye ought. (1 Thessalonians 4:1)

3. The Christian life demands honourable conduct:

- a) Believers have freedom in Christ (Gal 5:1), but our conduct must not
 - i) harm the weak. (1 Cor 8:9);
 - ii) be hypocritical (1 Peter 2:16);
 - iii) does not edify (1 Cor 10:23);
 - iv) lead to habits which enslave (1 Cor 6:12);
 - v) lead to self-indulgence (Gal 5:13);
 - vi) offend personal conscience (Rom 14:5).
- b) Our conduct towards God.
 - i) Done in His Name. (1 Tim 6:1)
 - ii) As unto Him. (Col 3:23)
 - iii) For His glory. (1 Cor 10:31)
 - iv) To be worthy of Him. (1 Thess 2:12; 2 Thess 1:5)
- c) Our conduct towards others.
 - i) Be a good example. (Rom 14:7; 1 Tim 4:12)
 - ii) Worthy of our calling. (Eph 4:1)
 - iii) Honest. (2 Cor 8:21)
 - iv) Free from the appearance of evil. (1 Thess 5:22)
 - v) Helpful to a neighbour. (Rom 12:18; 15:2)
 - vi) Not a cause of stumbling. (Rom 14:13)
 - vii) Honouring one's parents. (Col 3:20)
 - viii) Honouring to the government. (Titus 3:1)
 - ix) Must not entail unequal yoking. (2 Cor 6:14)
 - x) Not to judge others (Rom 14:10-13)
 - xi) Not to cause others to stumble by our actions (Rom 14:15,21-23)
- d) Our conduct towards self.
 - i) Pure and not lustful. (1 Tim 5:22; 1 Peter 2:11)
 - ii) Must not defile. (1 Cor 3:17; Titus 1:15)
 - iii) Must not condemn. (Rom 14:22)
 - iv) Must do good works. (Titus 3:8)
- e) This conduct is only obtainable under the filling of the Holy Spirit. (Eph 5:18; 1 John 1:9).

4. The Christian life demands diligence:

- a) Love towards others. (Galatians 2:10, 2 Corinthians 8:8). We should be eager to help those who are less fortunate than ourselves especially by giving them the gospel.
- b) We should be keen to take care of the saints (other believers) (Hebrews 6:11, 2 Corinthians 7:12, 2 Corinthians 8:16,17, 2 Timothy 1:17)
- c) We should be eager to rest in the promises and principles of God. Happiness comes from this. An example of not resting in the promises is the Exodus generation.(Hebrews 4:11)
- d) Confirmation of our calling (2 Peter 1:5, 2 Peter 1:10) We should witness for Christ eagerly, zealously.
- e) Unity of the body. (Ephesians 4:3) We should be zealous in maintaining the unity of the body.
- f) For the commendation of God. (2 Timothy 2:15). Be eager to show yourself approved by God.
- g) To have a life without spot or blemish. (2 Peter 3:14) We should walk close to the Lord and not expose ourselves to unnecessary areas of temptation.

5. Priorities in the Christian life:

- a) The First Person - Jesus Christ has ultimate priority - Colossians 1:16-18
- b) The First Possessions - The kingdom of God, the greatest gift - Matthew 6:33
- c) The First Offering - the giving of oneself - 2 Corinthians 8:5
- d) The First Denial - the denial of self - Matthew 7:5
- e) The First Discipline - the discipline of prayer - 1 Timothy 2:1-4
- f) The First Commandment - to love God supremely - Matthew 22:37-38
- g) The First Excuse - too busy to have time for God - Matthew 8:21-22

6. The Christian life has a number of deposits:

- a) First Deposit - at salvation the believer entrusts his life with the Lord. (2 Timothy 1:12)
- b) Second Deposit - the Lord deposits the Word of God with the believer - teaching and study. (2 Timothy 1:14)
- c) Third Deposit - the believer deposits his fears, problems, pressures, (1 Peter 4:19, 5:7, Psalm 55:22)
- d) Fourth Deposit - the believer deposits the gospel with the unbeliever. (Romans 1:14)

SECTION 24 - DANIEL SPURNS THE KING'S GIFTS Chapter 5:13-24

13 Then was Daniel brought in before the king. And the king spake and said unto Daniel, Art thou that Daniel, which art of the children of the captivity of Judah, whom the king my father brought out of Jewry? 14 I have even heard of thee, that the spirit of the gods is in thee, and that light and understanding and excellent wisdom is found in thee. 15 And now the wise men, the astrologers, have been brought in before me, that they should read this writing, and make known unto me the interpretation thereof: but they could not shew the interpretation of the thing: 16 And I have heard of thee, that thou canst make interpretations, and dissolve doubts: now if thou canst read the writing, and make known to me the interpretation thereof, thou shalt be clothed with scarlet, and have a chain of gold about thy neck, and shalt be the third ruler in the kingdom. 17 Then Daniel answered and said before the king, Let thy gifts be to thyself, and give thy rewards to another; yet I will read the writing unto the king, and make known to him the interpretation. 18 O thou king, the most high God gave Nebuchadnezzar thy father a kingdom, and majesty, and glory, and honour: 19 And for the majesty that he gave him, all people, nations, and languages, trembled and feared before him: whom he would he slew; and whom he would he kept alive; and whom he would he set up; and whom he would he put down. 20 But when his heart was lifted up, and his mind hardened in pride, he was deposed from his kingly throne, and they took his glory from him: 21 And he was driven from the sons of men; and his heart was made like the beasts, and his dwelling was with the wild asses: they fed him with grass like oxen, and his body was wet with the dew of heaven; till he knew that the most high God ruled in the kingdom of men, and that he appointeth over it whomsoever he will. 22 And thou his son, O Belshazzar, hast not humbled thine heart, though thou knewest all this; 23 But hast lifted up thyself against the Lord of heaven; and they have brought the vessels of his house before thee, and thou, and thy lords, thy wives, and thy concubines, have drunk wine in them; and thou hast praised the gods of silver, and gold, of brass, iron, wood, and stone, which see not, nor hear, nor know: and the God in whose hand thy breath is, and whose are all thy ways, hast thou not glorified: 24 Then was the part of the hand sent from him; and this writing was written.

KEY WORDS

Brought	Athah	To cause to bring
King	Melek	A king, Counsellor
Children	Ben	Son
Captivity	Galuth	Exile, Removal
Father	Ab	Father, Ancestor
Heard	Shema	To hear
Spirit	Ruach	Spirit
Light	Nahiru	Light
Understanding	Sokethanu	Understanding
Excellent	Yattir	Excellent, Abundant
Wisdom	Chokmah	Wisdom, Skill
Wise	Chakkim	Wise, Skillful
Astrologers	Ashshaph	Enchanter, Magician
Read	Qera	To call, Read
Known	Veda	To cause to know
Shew	Chava	To shew, Indicate
Interpretation	Peshar	Interpreting, Explanation
Thing	Millah	A word, Speech, Matter
Dissolve	Shere	To solve, Loose
Doubts	Qetar	Doubt, Joint, Knot
Known	Yeda	To know
Clothed	Lebash	To be clothed

EVANGELICAL BIBLE COLLEGE OF WESTERN AUSTRALIA

Scarlet	Argevan	Purple
Chains	Hamnik	Chain for arm or neck
Gold	Dehab	Gold
Neck	Tsavvar	Neck
Third	Telath	Three
Ruler	Shelet	To rule, Have power
Kingdom	Maleku	Kingdom
Gifts	Mattena	Gift
Give	Yehab	To give
Rewards	Nebizbuh	Largesse, Gift
Most High	Illai	Most high
Majesty	Rebu	Greatness
Glory	Yeqar	Preciousness, Rarity
Honour	Hadar	Honour, Beauty, Majesty
People	Am	People
Nations	Ummah	A nation
Languages	Lishshan	Tongue
Trembled	Zua	To tremble, Move
Feared	Dechal	To be afraid
Slew	Qetal	To kill
Alive	Chayah	To keep living
Set Up	Rum	To cause to rise, to raise up
Put down	Shepal	To make low or humble
Heart	Lebab	Heart
Mind	Ruach	Spirit
Hardened	Teqeph	To be or become strong
Pride	Zud	To act proudly, Presume
Deposed	Nechath	To be put down
Throne	Korse	Seat, Throne
Driven	Terad	To be driven or forced away
Sons	Ben	Son
Men	Enash	A man, Mortal
Beast	Chaiyah	Living creature
Dwelling	Medor	Place of dwelling
Wild	Shegal	Wild
Asses	Arad	A wild or free ass
Fed	Team	To taste
Grass	Asab	Herb, Grass
Oxen	Tor	Ox, Bull
Wet	Tseba	To be wet, Moistened
Dew	Tal	Dew
Heaven	Shemayin	Heavens
Humbled	Shepal	To make low or humble
Knewest	Yeda	To know
Lifted	Rum	To lift up or exalt self
Against	Al	On, Upon, Concerning
Lord	Mare	One high or exalted
Brought	Athah	To cause to come
Vessels	Man	A vessel, Utensil
House	Bayith	House
Lords	Rabreban	Great ones
Wives	Shegal	Wife, Queen
Concubines	Lechenah	Concubine, Singing damsel
Drank	Shethah	To drink, Banquet
Wine	Chamar	A thick sticky syrup
Praised	Shebach	To give praise
Silver	Kesaph	Silver
Gold	Dehab	Gold
Brass	Nechash	Brass, Copper
Iron	Parzel	Iron
Wood	A	A tree, Wood
Stone	Eben	Stone
See	Chaza	To see in vision
Hear	Shema	To hear
Know	Yeda	To know
Hand	Yad	Hand
Breath	Nishma	Breath
Ways	Orcha	Customary path, Way
Glorified	Hadar	To honour, Adore

Part
Written

Pas
Resham

End, Extremity
To note down, sign

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

Daniel is now brought before the king and makes it quite clear that the God of Israel is actually the supreme and Only One True God of the universe. This is the lesson that we learn from Daniel 5. God is not like the other gods where you can desecrate their temples and sacred items. The God of Israel is the universal God, Creator of the Universe.

Daniel's biography is outlined by Belshazzar discussing his performance in Babylon over the previous fifty years, so by this point he has been briefed, or had known Daniel all along, and had just ignored him. In verse 15 Belshazzar confirms that the wise men have been unable to interpret the writing on the wall. It would appear that he doesn't want to use Daniel, perhaps this is an indication of his negativity towards God, and the Word that Daniel always speaks. Does he not want to recognize his grand-father's dream as being real, and that the transfer of empires is occurring tonight!!!

In the banquet hall the announcement is made by God that everything has gone beyond the point of no return. Belshazzar's knees knocked together as he saw and contemplated the writing on the wall. He still seems to be rather uncertain of Daniel's ability to interpret the writing using the phrase, "If thou canst read the writing", even though the Queen has commended Daniel in glowing terms, and he clearly knows of Daniel's previous work with Nebuchadnezzar.

In verse 17 Daniel rejects the generous offer from Belshazzar making it clear that the interpretation will be a free service to the king. In this he is very similar to the words and actions of Abraham before the King of Sodom, for Abraham would receive nothing from a decadent unbeliever. In his interpretation Daniel is well aware of the writings of Jeremiah, Ezekiel (both of whom have died by this point) and Isaiah, all of which reinforced his wisdom from above and helped him in advising Belshazzar.

Daniel says that it is God's prerogative who reigns and who is given charge of nations. He "first of all" in verse 18 and 19 cites Nebuchadnezzar, whom God gave a kingdom, majesty, glory and honour and absolute power, but he became arrogant and proud. As a result God took his empire from him and sent him out to graze like the animals in the field until he realised that God was in charge and appoints who he wills to rulership.

Daniel says in verse 22 and 23 that Belshazzar has not humbled himself, even though he knew these things, but has become arrogant, and over-confident in his own power and his army's strength, and so he has not bowed before and worshipped the true God. In fact he has desecrated the emblems of the temple of Almighty God. He has made himself God's enemy.

Daniel notes that the very life of Belshazzar is in the hand of God as well as the future plan for his life. And God has been ignored, and so the Plan will still work out, but rather than being "onboard" the plan, he will be dust under the Plan.

Verse 24 starts with the word "then", or because of this negative attitude of Belshazzar, the hand was sent from God to tell him of the judgment on the empire.

APPLICATION

Each of the four divine institutions, free will, marriage, family and nations have latent authority over the other. For instance the parents have latent authority over the children, but if you do not use it either positively too far, or negatively you are failing as parents.

However the authority is not unlimited. In overall control of the divine institutions is God, and if one does not perform in a satisfactory manner God can and sometimes does become involved. In this case Belshazzar became power hungry and expanded his authority above what he was legitimately allowed to do as a good ruler.

In the case of Nebuchadnezzar he had to get straight on this idea and it caused him to become like an animal for seven years as clearly shown in Chapter 4 before he got the concept.

Every unbeliever is God conscious as seen in Romans 1 and 2. A person may say that he is an atheist but he knows in his heart that God is there, that he is born in God's image and he is responsible to God. Every now and again he tries to break out he will finally stand before the one he has tried to ignore. The Word of God judges those who ignore it.

No Woman or Man ever knows the hour of their death – this is with the Lord alone – we live and die under God's Grace.

Drunkenness, like all addictions, creates its own problems and, as with all lack of control, is a sign of degeneracy.

The rise and fall of nations and empires depends on the Sovereignty of God. God can both prosper or judge a nation or individual. We should always treat others in grace, as well as making sure that we do not get tainted by too close an association with evil people.

Nitocris knew the principles of doctrine, as did Belshazzar, but he rejected it. He had a negative attitude towards the Word and he avoided facing its demands on his life until it was too late.

DOCTRINE

OBEDIENCE

1. Obedience is better than offerings. (1 Sam 15:22; Prov 21:3; 28:9). If we are not in God's will, any "worship" we offer is unacceptable.
2. Obedience is something you have to learn. The basic training in obedience has to start in childhood. As it says in (Ex 20:12 and Deut 5:16) "Honour your father and your mother. " (Prov 4:3,4; 22:6; 29:15-17; Heb 5:8).
3. Teaching your child obedience is an act of love. (Prov 3:12; 19:18; 23:13-14).
4. We have to obey those who are in authority over us. (Ex 20:12; 22:28; Lev 19:3; Deut 5:16; Rom 13:1-5; Eph 6:1-5; Col 3:18-22; Titus 3:1).
5. Those in authority have been put in that position by God. (Rom 13:1).
6. Obedience to those in authority is obedience to God. (Prov 24:21; Eph 6:7; Col 3:23-24; Rom 13:5).
7. Disobedience to those in authority is disobedience to God. (Rom 1:30; 13:2).
8. But when we are ordered to do something that is against God's Will we have to disobey. (Acts 4:19; 5:40-42).
9. The fifth commandment (Ex 20:12; Deut 5:16) is the only commandment with a promise. (Prov 10:17; Eph 6:1-3). Social life in a society is only possible when the people in it have learned to obey.
10. If this commandment is ignored, if the authority of the family is denied or not exercised, society will quickly slide into anarchy. (Isa 3:12; Prov 29:21; 30:21-23; Rom 1:30.)
11. Jesus Christ was perfect in His obedience. (Luke 2:51; Phil 2:8). Examples of the Lord's perfect obedience to the Father's will.
 - a) The Lord's temptation in the wilderness (Matthew 4:1-11), where the Lord resisted the temptation in His humanity to use His divine power outside the Father's will (Philippians 2:5-8, Hebrews 10:7)
 - b) In the Garden of Gethsemane the Lord resisted all temptation to the contrary but set His face firmly to go through with the horror of the cross (Matthew 26:38-46, Mark 14:34-42, Luke 22:41-44)
 - c) During the provocations of the trials the Lord stood firm and resolute. Although He had the power to resist arrest, as shown briefly in (John 18:6), He voluntarily went with the troops, even chiding Peter for his sword play (Luke 22:49-51). Although abused (Matthew 26:67-68), struck (John 18:22), scourged (Matthew 27:26), mocked and beaten (Matthew 27:27-31), and finally crucified the Lord calmly accepted this all as part of the Father's Plan, resisting any temptation to rebel at the injustice, cruelty and callousness of those who perpetrated this evil. Rather He prayed for them, acknowledging to Pilate that all this was part of His role as Saviour (Luke 23:34, John 18:37)
 - d) When miracles were demanded by Herod Antipas (Luke 23:8-11) the Lord resisted any temptation to instantly judge that evil man and his court but saying nothing set His face to the cross on which He would bear even the sins of Herod Antipas (1 John 2:2)
 - e) When He stumbled on the road to the cross He did not call on divine strength but Simon of Cyrene had to be pressed into service to carry the cross. (Matthew 27:32, Luke 23:26)
 - f) When reviled by the crowds as He hung on the cross, taunted to do things which He could have done, He resisted all temptation to step down from the cross but stayed there to bear the sins of all. (Matthew 27:39-44, Mark 15:29-32, Luke 23 :35-39)

SECTION 25 - DANIEL INTERPRETS THE HANDWRITING ON THE WALL Daniel Chapter 5:25-29

25 And this is the writing that was written, MENE, MENE, TEKEL, UPHARSIN. **26** This is the interpretation of the thing: MENE; God hath numbered thy kingdom, and finished it. **27** TEKEL; Thou art weighed in the balances, and art found wanting. **28** PERES; Thy kingdom is divided, and given to the Medes and Persians. **29** Then commanded Belshazzar, and they clothed Daniel with scarlet, and put a chain of gold about his neck, and made a proclamation concerning him, that he should be the third ruler in the kingdom.

KEY WORDS

Written	Resham	To note down, to sign
Mene	Menah	To number
Tekel	Tekel	Weighed
Upharsin	Upharsin	And divided
Interpretation	Peshar	Interpretation, Explanation
Numbered	Mena	To number, Count, Appoint
Kingdom	Maleku	Kingdom
Finished	Shelan	To finish, Complete
Weighed	Teqal	To weigh
Balances	Maznayim	A pair of balances
Found	Shekach	To be found
Wanting	Chassir	Lacking
Peres, Divided	Peras	To divide, Part
Given	Yehab	To give place
Commanded	Amar	To lift up the voice
Clothed	Lebash	To clothe
Scarlet	Argevan	Purple
Chain	Hamnik	Chain for arm or neck
Gold	Dehab	Gold
Neck	Tsavvar	Neck
Proclamation	Keraz	To cause to cry as a herald
Third	Telath	Three
Ruler	Shallit	Rule, Ruling

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

The writing on the wall occurred at the height of the party. God pronounced judgment on the Chaldean Empire by writing four Aramaic words on the wall. The exploits of the kings of the ancient world were often written on the walls of palaces or on the pillars of pagan temples but the sight of a detached hand inscribing "MENE, MENE, TEKEL, UPHARSIN on the wall near the candlesticks sobered the party up immediately. Sadly these escapist alcoholic-sexaholics will get back to their partying afterwards, until they are all killed or captured by the Persians as they burst in and end the party permanently.

As in the case of Nebuchadnezzar's dream in chapter 2 the wise men were called but were equally unable to discern what the message meant even though he gave them a great incentive of riches and position. In verse 9 the word translated greatly troubled "behal" should be translated absolutely terrified and "were astonished" means that they were mentally shattered. It is an old English word that is up a level from "astonished".

Daniel arrives and rejects the offer of great rewards as the gift of prophecy was not for sale. He will be made to receive the honour anyway – but it will only last for a few hours before the Persians arrive, and they will make him single ruler within hours themselves. He referred to what had happened to Belshazzar's grandfather Nebuchadnezzar due to pride and then censured him for defiling the vessels from the Temple that had been used to teach Bible doctrine. He then told the king that his empire had finished and that it would be given to the Medes and the Persians showing the passing from the head of gold to the shoulders of silver from Daniel 2.

Daniel is offered the third place in the kingdom which shows that Belshazzar is not the first ruler but Nabonidus, who delegated the rulership of Babylon to him as second ruler. This is another major indicator of the closeness of the writer to the events, as men 100 years later had forgotten that Belshazzar was regent/second ruler.

Daniel makes clear his motivation as he rejects Belshazzar's offer. He is not interested in short term goals but in the eternal. He is going to live in the presence of the Lord for all eternity. He is not going to be living with the King or at Babylon and therefore on the basis of priority he is going to live his life in conformity with the long term goal. Moses like Daniel took the long term view and departed from a great career as a leader of Egypt for the long term of serving the Lord. Both men are determined to be delivered, and be deliverers doing things God's way. Moses and Daniel knew they were going to spend eternity with the God of Israel, and in time both accepted God's path and positions.

As a contrast, Eve looked at the short term goals rather than eternal consequences, and took them by eating the fruit in the garden. Our challenge is to operate on the basis of the Plan of God and operate on long term thinking, valuing the words of God over our lives not the praises of men, or the positions that people may offer us to compromise values.

THE WRITING ON THE WALL

The writing on the wall was written as an acrostic (3 letters in 3 rows). They were having an orgy and a hand dropped down and started writing. They must have wondered if they were seeing things as a result of drinking too much.

"MNE" - means that God has measured your kingdom and finished it. Belshazzar needs to learn the lesson that God is sovereign and man is not.

“TKL” - means that he is weighed in the balance and found wanting. This is the sad end to every unbeliever. Those who have not trusted in Christ have to stand before him at the last judgment. He is either your Saviour or Judge.

“PRS” - Belshazzar’s kingdom is divided and given to the Medes and the Persians. God’s grace towards Belshazzar has finished. The golden head is no more, the next stage, the shoulders of silver are coming on the scene as prophesied by God, and they enter this very night.

Belshazzar keeps his word and gives Daniel all that he promised. He was appointed the third ruler in the land the very night that the empire would cease to exist. Daniel had come into Babylon as a young man, a captive from his people and had survived all the trauma of the first great empire, has served as governor of the city, and now has lived to be made the third ruler of the entire land, although just hours before it is 100% under Median-Persian control.

He isn’t excited by this “promotion”, for he knows what is coming, and is ready to welcome the Persians as they enter the palace. We believe that he and Nitocris were actually working with the Medio-Persians. He will serve under them also, and also suffer under them. Daniel is focused upon God’s purposes alone, and he quietly leaves the banquet hall as does Queen Nitocris, and I suspect, they move to their pre-arranged meeting places with the incoming Medes and Persians – the take over is seamless. We will only know this clearly in heaven, so don’t argue with us on this believer...

APPLICATION

The important things are the changes on the inside. You can pursue all manner of promotion, but can reap a whirlwind.

At the Great White Throne Judgment the unbeliever will stand before God and will be questioned on the creation ordinance of Genesis 1:26. As a creature made in the image of God, each will be asked, what have you produced? Christ is not going to ask about sins because all sins were paid for on the cross. The unbeliever will say that she/he has no production that even matches a little of what Christ has done for them, and yet they despised that. They will see too late that they despised the one who was their only hope for eternal life, and the unbeliever will then be delivered to join the demons, who also ignored God’s legitimate demands, in the Lake of Fire.

Is God being unfair asking for production? No he is the Creator and he can require what he wants. As believers we have production in Christ and therefore will not appear before the Great White Throne Judgment. We however will appear at the Judgment Seat of Christ to review production and non productive works. Non-productive works will be burned away and we will be left with what we have done in the filling of the Holy Spirit. **1 Corinthians 3 :11-15**. Belshazzar has been judged in public, and on the basis of his own choices and actions. He has been measured, evaluated, and found wanting.

At the Bema seat Christ will ask the believer, what have you produced? **2 Corinthians 5:9-21**. The Lord can directly ask us, “My Father has provided everything. I gave you my righteousness. That perfection is available for you. I died and rose again. What have you produced in Christ believer?”

“Every time you fell and went against the Father’s will I stood at the right hand of the Father and held your salvation for you and continued to make intercession for you. The Holy Spirit created a new nature for you. He baptised you, sealed you, gave you spiritual gifts.” What have we done with the many divine operating assets received? We are going to be evaluated at the “Bema” judgment seat – where rewards are assigned. What Holy Spirit production you have been involved in will be acknowledged, and the human works you have done will be destroyed by fire.

Grace is “for a limited time only”; it begins at a point in time and ends at judgment. God makes this clear through teaching like this in Daniel, and all the words of God are given to train us and warn us. We should not confuse the patience of God with compromise. Eventually all the old universe will be done away with, and we will enter the new heavens and earth, but will we enter with the rewards that we could have received through Holy Spirit filled living and service. **2 Peter 3:9-18**.

DOCTRINES

JUDGMENT: GREAT WHITE THRONE

1. The judgment of the Great White Throne is the last judgment. (Revelation 20:11, 15)
2. Only the unsaved are judged at the last judgment as there is no judgment for Christians. (Romans 8:1)
3. The last judgment occurs at the end of the Millennium. (Revelation 20:7-15)
4. The unsaved are judged according to their works from the Books of Works (Revelation 20:12)
5. The judgment is to show that the Human works of man cannot satisfy the justice of God. God is totally fair and shows that he is only satisfied by “The Good Work”. The death of Christ on the Cross.
6. Having shown the unsaved they have failed to satisfy the holiness of God, the condemned are cast into the Lake of Fire. (Revelation 20:15)

JUDGMENT SEAT OF CHRIST

1. There are three types of judgment for believers in the Church Age.

a) Judgment of Sins:- The Lord Jesus Christ on the cross substituted the payment of all man's sins. The penalty of sin is death. (Romans 6:23) There is therefore no judgment for those in Christ Jesus. (Romans 8:1). The substitutionary death is given in 2 Corinthians 5:19-21, Galatians 3:13.

b) Judgment of Self:- We are told that if we judge ourselves we shall not be judged. Failure to do so brings discipline. (1 Corinthians 5:1-5, 11:31, 32, 2 Corinthians 2:5-7, Hebrews 12:7, 1 John 1:9)

c) Judgment Seat of Christ:- This is the evaluation of the production of believers for the purpose of reward (2 Corinthians 5:10)

2. The Judgment Seat of Christ is a time of reward. Our human works (wood, hay, stubble) will be burned, our works in the power of the Spirit (gold, silver, precious stones) will be rewarded. (1 Corinthians 3:11-16).

3. At the Judgment Seat of Christ the believer can be denied reward but can never lose his salvation. (2 Timothy 2:12-13)

4. Backslidden believers have no reward at the Judgment Seat of Christ. (Hebrews 6:7-12)

5. The Judgment Seat of Christ is illustrated by the famous athletic games in the ancient world. (1 Corinthians 9:24-27)

6. Rewards at the Judgment Seat of Christ is based on grace. (James 2:12, 13)

7. Since we will be judged by Christ, we are not to judge each other (Matthew 7:1-2)

SECTION 26 - FALL OF BABYLON Chapter 5:30-31

30 In that night was Belshazzar the king of the Chaldeans slain. 31 And Darius the Median (also called Cyrus the Persian) took the kingdom, being about threescore and two years old.

KEY WORDS

Night	Lelya	Night
King	Melek	A king, Counsellor
Slain	Qetal	To slay
Took	Qebal	To accept, Take, Receive
Kingdom	Maleku	Kingdom
Threescore	Shittin	Sixty
Two	Teren	Two
Years	Shenah	A year, A repetition
Old	Bar	A son of

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

That night Belshazzar and his princes were slain. How did the Persians take what appeared to be a totally impregnable city? Answer - by stealth, amazing engineering, and cunning, with people on the inside, right to the top, and I suspect two of those people were Nitocris (Median mother) and Daniel! Daniel uses the Median name of Cyrus as a clue to his "side" in the take over of the city, and the result – he is ruler – tells us (we believe) he was a Cyrus/Darius' insider.

Darius the Mede (Median name of Cyrus the Great - his mother was a Median princess) had a general in charge of the capture of Babylon. Cyrus himself was with the main army group to the north ensuring the capture of Nabonidus. The southern command general stationed parts of his army at both entrances of the river Euphrates as it entered and left the city and then with his engineers to the north diverted the river into an area known as Nitocris' basin (called after her, as she was clearly involved in the plot to take the city – working hand in hand, we believe – with Daniel).

Even with the river diverted the city should still have been safe if properly guarded, and with guards alert to enemy troop movements. All the drawbridges could be withdrawn to isolate the various areas of Babylon as part of a strategic defence system. Babylon even under these abnormal situations, with surveillance by the defenders was still impregnable.

Cyrus' general activated the river diversion, and had pre-arranged with his army that when the river got down to thigh deep they were to enter the city via the main watercourse in absolute silence. They found that the system of gates and drawbridges which compartmentalised the city had not been defencively activated, so the Persian army was able to overrun the city while the orgy was going on. No action had been taken because the defenders were not active!

If the Babylonian army had been alert they would have been able to activate the defences, shot arrows down on the Persians from the fortifications and eliminated them as a threat. The entire defences of the city were not in a bad state, but there was no alertness. It appears that many local commanders went over to the Persians quickly also and may even have co-operated with them in their plan, and been co-ordinated in this, by Daniel perhaps???

Heroditus interviewed a number of people who had spoken to the survivors of this action. They said that while portions of the city were being taken those in the centre of the city were unaware of what was happening. It was done without noise being made, and that means it had to have significant numbers of well placed and pre-positioned "insiders". The entire command and control system of the Babylonian army was either corrupt and inefficient (not!), or thoroughly penetrated by the supporters of the Medes and Persians; we suspect the latter. Evidence = Cyrus will enrol the entire Babylonian Army into his own, and the Chaldeans will serve with the Persian forces for the next 200 years of the Empire.

With the end of the Babylonian Empire, Daniel was invested as the third ruler in the land, but his term in office was remarkably short, as that very night the Medes and Persians entered Babylon through the water gate under the city's water gates where the river entered, and killed Belshazzar and the nobles who supported him. How did Daniel and Nitocris survive? We will see Daniel has a vision in Persia well before this time, Daniel 8, and this is a clue to his Persian connections, and he gives us lots of clues to how he played his part in the divine plan for empire transfer.

The Persians were great imperialists and like the Babylonians, used the locals as far as possible to control areas, and so Daniel was the obvious choice to run Babylon as he knew it intimately and could keep everything running efficiently. Daniel survived the palace massacre, probably by leaving the room soon after being appointed third ruler – and heading with the queen-mother to a "safe place" to await the developments of that night, and soon was one of the rulers over the new Persian Empire. Did he and the queen mother Nitocris go to a pre-arranged place, where the Persian Army commanders knew they would find them? We believe that is the only logical explanation given all available information.

APPLICATION

When Cyrus saw the walls of Babylon, he said that he had never seen anything like them. However the walls that were erected to keep out armies, could only fail to protect when they faced God's judgment, implemented by obedient people.

God used his sovereign will to destroy Babylon, even though by human viewpoint that would have been totally impossible. This is a parallel to Joshua and Jericho, and even the fall of Assyria 100 years before. It took only three words of God to destroy Babylon.

A person does not know of the time of their death. Things may appear to be secure and prosperous but the only security is in eternal security guaranteed by God as we live and serve within His perfect and Eternal Plan for our lives.

DOCTRINES

DEATH

1. In essence, death means "separation".

2. Types of death:

- a) Physical death - is the separation of the soul from the body (Genesis 35:18).
- b) Spiritual death - is separation from God, having no relationship with God (Ephesians 2:1,12, Genesis 2:17,3:8)
- c) The second death - this is the Great White Throne judgment followed by the lake of fire for unbelievers - separation from the presence of God, punished forever (revelation 20:12-15, 21:8)
- d) Positional death - Christians are identified with Jesus Christ in His death (separation from sin) and in His resurrection (living in righteousness) Romans 6:3-14 Colossians 2:12-14
- e) Sexual death - inability to procreate (Romans 4:17-21, Hebrews 11:11-12)
- f) Operational death - faith without works is non operational (James 2:26)
- g) Temporal death - a carnal believer, out of fellowship with God (Romans 8:6-8,13, Ephesians 5:14, 1 Timothy 5:6, James 1:15, Revelation 3:1)

3. Reasons for death:

- a) The work is finished. (John 19:30 cf Luke 23:46, 2 Timothy 4:7)
- b) For the glory of God - martyrdom (John 21:19, Acts 7:55-60)
- c) The sin unto death - extreme discipline for believers with hardened hearts against God (1 John 5:16)
- d) Suicide - superimposing your will over God's will for your life (1 Samuel 31:4, Matthew 27:5)
- e) The unique death of Christ - committing His own spirit to the Father (Luke 23:46)

SIN UNTO DEATH

The sin unto death is the physical death of a believer, due to habitual unconfessed sin or rebellion against God. (1 John 5:16, 17, 1 Corinthians 11:31, 32) Examples

- a) The Corinthian Pervert - (1 Corinthians 5)
- b) The Corinthians who habitually came to the Lord's table in an unworthy manner. (1 Corinthians 11:27-32)
- c) Moses (Deuteronomy 32:48-52)
- d) Achan (Joshua 7:16-26)
- e) Ananias and Sapphira (Acts 5:1 -11)

CHAPTER 6

DIVISION OF CHAPTER 6

Chapter six of Daniel can be divided into six sections

DANIEL'S POSITION UNDER DARIUS THE MEDE	VERSES 1-3
PLOT TO DESTROY DANIEL	VERSES 4-9
PRAYER OF DANIEL	VERSES 10-15
DANIEL IN THE LIONS DEN	VERSES 16-17
DANIEL'S DELIVERANCE	VERSES 18-24
PROSPERITY OF DANIEL AND THE DECREES OF DARIUS	VERSES 25-28

INTRODUCTION

The book of Daniel can be divided into two with the first six chapters dealing with living in the kingdom of man and the last six dealing with prophecy that takes us to the Second Advent of the Messiah and beyond. The kingdoms of fallen men and women came into existence at the Fall in the Garden of Eden, at the tree of Gnosticism, and first manifested itself at the Tower of Babel, with the first use of the word kingdom in the Bible under Nimrod.

The concept of the "kingdom of man" is built on human works and denies God's sovereignty and grace. It is always trying to get to the crown without going to the Cross and relying on grace. It is seen in concepts like Communism, where an attempt is made to bring a perfect society into being apart from the Lord Jesus Christ. We have seen this satanic falsehood fall within 100 years of its rise; all the godless plans of unbelievers are brought to nothing. **Psalms 2:1-5.**

Two restraints are given to us, firstly a cultural fragmentation as seen at Babel, and secondly the higher loyalty of believers who are loving the Lord with heart, mind, and soul. This means that believers cannot give total allegiance to any State, and this thwarts the completion of the kingdom of man. The genuine believers in God worship the God of the Scripture, and not the gods of the pagan State. Nebuchadnezzar was saved, but Belshazzar is not, for he rejects the eternal realities and lives for the things of "this present world" – the trappings of lust without eternal logic.

In this chapter Daniel remains faithful to God, rather than the gods/demons behind the State. Those believers in oppressive regimes nowadays face the same problems. If the god of the State is atheism you worship the God of Heaven rather than atheism. All empires have the problem of trying to get the whole population to merge. Alexander the Great attempted to do this by having a common language of Koine Greek and he tried to get religious compromise, but his generals murdered him rather than lose their Greek identity. Immediately after Alexander's death his empire fell into four sections under his four older generals, who immediately warred against each other, and over time all lost everything.

Some restraint has kept mankind from self destruction and that restraint has been the work of God amongst us through the centuries, or else we would have destroyed ourselves. It is the work of the angels and the Holy Spirit, independently through the Father's direction, and also through obedient believers that preserves the world. The restraints during the Great Tribulation period will be held back, and the true depravity of the satanic ideal "kingdom of Man" will come into being. However in this passage we have separation between Daniel and the State, and direct control by God acting in history, and then the right role exercised by godly Daniel at exactly the right time for the transition to the next Empire.

The golden head of Chaldea has now been replaced by the silver shoulders and arms of Medio – Persia, and the new Empire is introduced by a great leader, just like Nebuchadnezzar was, and most likely a believer also. The two arms represent the two nations that made up this Great world changing Empire. It was during this period, from 538 to 331 BC that a “golden age” occurred for the Jewish people the like of which they have not known before or since.

In the new empire Daniel again is given a high position being one of the three presidents [Sarek] over the 120 governors [Satraps] in the empire. This move ensured stable management across the entire empire including a continuity that enabled all people groups to prosper under this Empire, unlike the ones to follow, that concentrated wealth with the power elite. The Persian Empire will have great Jewish believers at its heart as rulers with the Medes and Persians; Daniel, Zerubbabel, Esther, Mordecai, Ezra, and Nehemiah. The Empire prospers as they honour the Jewish people.

A lot of the leaders in the new empire were jealous of Daniel, so they come up with an Anti-Semitic scheme to enact a law which would trap him and see him killed without anyone apparently being able to be blamed. The common law of the Persians could only be changed by the king personally signing it, and it was then binding on all including the king. These jealous people lie to the king saying that everybody is agreed on making prayer to the king mandatory for the next 30 days. Persia is great only as it honours the Jewish people, and it declines and falls due to Anti-Semitism, which is driven by the satanic demonic forces there. We see this truth played out right to our own time, and the last great demonic act is the invasion of Ezekiel 38-39.

SECTION 27 - DANIEL'S POSITION UNDER CYRUS THE PERSIAN/DARIUS THE MEDE Chapter 6:1-3

1 It pleased Darius to set over the kingdom an hundred and twenty princes, which should be over the whole kingdom; 2 And over these three presidents; of whom Daniel was first: that the princes might give accounts unto them, and the king should have no damage. 3 Then this Daniel was preferred above the presidents and princes, because an excellent spirit was in him; and the king thought to set him over the whole realm.

KEY WORDS

Pleased	Shepar Qodam	To be fair before
Set	Qum	To cause to rise
Over	Al	On Upon, Over, Above
Kingdom	Maleku	Kingdom
Hundred	Meah	Hundred
Twenty	Esrin	Twenty
Princes	Achashdarpenayya	Satraps
Whole	Kol	All, The whole, Entire
Three	Telath	Three
Presidents	Sarekin	Presidents
First	Chad	One
Give	Yehab	To give
Accounts	Taam	Taste, Reason
Damage	Nezaq	To suffer loss
Preferred	Netsach	To be pre-eminent
Excellent	Yattir	Excellent, Abundant
Spirit	Ruach	Spirit
Thought to Set	Qum	To cause to rise
Realm	Maleku	Kingdom

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

“Darius the Mede” is not a recognized figure in secular history texts. This is a baffling problem to most, a proveable “error” in Daniel to the critics, but we must remember that we are dealing with something where there is a tremendous lack of historical data on which to base our statements. The critic of Scripture, and the person opposing Daniel’s historicity has the problem not us, as Daniel proves by his reference to Cyrus this way, that he was indeed an insider and there in person. The critic is trying to criticise the Bible with very flimsy historic background, and wont accept that Daniel is actually filling in the historic facts here. Darius the Mede is Cyrus the Persian, and Daniel and Nitocris, as Pro-Median party leaders, were part of the fall of the city! By referring to Cyrus this way Daniel points to his party allegiance.

We have only a minute amount of the archaeological data having been excavated and only a small fraction of that has been analysed. We have only a small proportion of artefacts that have survived erosion, human destruction and the like. Of that fraction only a small fraction has been surveyed. Of the fraction surveyed only a fraction has been excavated. In the case of Israel only 3% of known surveyed sites have been excavated and only a small part of the sites are excavated. One scholar has stated that one “Tell” or hill would take 800 years to fully excavate and analyse. The historians have not got the data to be critical of the Bible. Looking at what has been excavated we only have less than one ten thousandth of the available material as historians, on which to make a judgment or critique of the Bible.

An example of this “scholarly error” was the case of the Hittite Empire, where the historical authorities stated once that no such empire existed. However in one dig in the Middle East about 7000 tablets were unearthed dealing with the Hittite Empire, necessitating the withdrawal and reprinting of text books on that era of history. The Bible has been vindicated.

As noted above, it is logical that this person “Darius the Mede” is also Cyrus the Persian – it was common for kings of mixed descent to have two or more official names. They are both mentioned in verse 28 of this chapter. Cyrus could be classified as a Mede, as his mother was a Median Princess. He is also of the exact age - 62. The reason why Daniel calls him “Darius the Mede” may be related to the part that Nitocris and he played in Cyrus’ great victory over Babylon. Nitocris herself was of Median-Chaldean descent, and both she and Daniel are “on the outer” when Belshazzar holds his party, and it is suspected that the reason for this is that both were known for “Median sympathies”. By referring to Cyrus by his Median name, we believe it is Daniel’s way of “nailing his own colours to the mast” here.

In verse 1 we see the second of the four empires in Daniel’s vision enter history. This kingdom is more powerful but less rich than the former empire. This empire went to the Indus valley in India, and in the west stretched to Thrace in the eastern most part of the European continent.

At this very time you have Jainism, a reform movement of Hinduism in the east, together with Buddhism, and also the rise of Greek philosophy in the West. It is a pivotal point and momentous time in history. In the centre we have the influence of Daniel and the spread of truth both ways. God is working and so is the enemy here, and the enemy uses the power lust and envy of evil men and women to try to eliminate God’s man at the centre – but they fight against God, and they will lose, for all who fight God’s Plan always lose. This is Daniel’s point – not to celebrate his celebrity status.

It is noted that there are 120 provinces in the empire at this stage compared to 127 during the time of Esther. This is another indicator of the writing of this book at the time, as these details were not clear to later Greek writers. In both cases there was good governmental organisation. At the head of it was a triumvirate with Daniel being the highest one of the three which confirmed his position in the last night of the Chaldean empire as recorded in Daniel 5.

In verse 3 because of the excellent testimony of his life, and possibly his great help to the Empire and Army in taking Babylon, the conquering king picks Daniel to head up the empire as a “Chief of Staff”. Cyrus/Darius needed a person of maturity and the highest integrity to administer the centre of the Empire for him so that he was able to consolidate the fringes. The word “Yattir” means excellent or abundant and because of his excellence he was selected by the new ruler to administer. He was preferred “Netsach”, or made pre-eminent in the empire. Daniel was a/the key “insider” for Cyrus.

APPLICATION

We are challenged to express faith in the truth of Scripture. Because we cannot prove historically by extra-biblical records that something the Bible says happened, we need to recognise that God is aware of what happened, who was involved, and will report the occurrence with absolute historic accuracy through his chosen authors in Scripture.

Even when there are major changes going on where you work/live, it is still possible for the mature believer to remain unchanged and untouched by what is happening in their environment. Look up for direction, not around to others.

We need to have our priorities right, with the Word of God first, walk in its truth, and then our promotion or personal advancement is of secondary importance. Matthew 6:33, 1 Peter 5:5-11.

If something compromises your situation, and puts you at odds with the Word of God, it should be rejected.

We should always do our work “as unto the Lord”, and in whatever role we are called to act in we should aim to be the best in that role, not for self praise but as a testimony to our Christianity. Excellent service in one area opens the door to the next opportunity in God’s plan. God only uses obedient and devoted servants. Lazy people are with the enemy.

DOCTRINE

HOLY SPIRIT: MINISTRY IN THE OLD TESTAMENT [See page 73 above]

SECTION 28 - PLOT TO DESTROY DANIEL Chapter 6:4-9 (Isaiah 55:6-9)

4 Then the presidents and princes sought to find occasion against Daniel concerning the kingdom; but they could find none occasion nor fault; forasmuch as he was faithful, neither was there any error or fault found in him. 5 Then said these men, We shall not find any occasion against this Daniel, except we find it against him concerning the law of his God. 6 Then these presidents and princes assembled together to the king, and said thus unto him, King Darius, live for ever. 7 All the presidents of the kingdom, the governors, and the princes, the counsellors, and the captains, have consulted together to establish a royal statute, and to make a firm decree, that whosoever shall ask a petition of any God or man for thirty days, save of thee, O king, he shall be cast into the den of lions. 8 Now, O king, establish the decree, and sign the writing, that it be not changed, according to the law of the Medes and Persians, which altereth not. 9 Wherefore king Darius signed the writing and the decree.

KEY WORDS

EVANGELICAL BIBLE COLLEGE OF WESTERN AUSTRALIA

Presidents	Sarekin	Presidents
Princes	Achashdarpenayya	Satraps
Sought	Bea	To seek, Pray
Occasion	Illah	Opportunity, Occasion
Concerning	Tjad	Concerning, On the side of
Kingdom	Meleku	Kingdom
None	La	No
Fault	Shechath	To corrupt
Faithful	Aman	To be steady, Faithful
Error	Shalu	Error, Rashness, Mistake
Found	Shekach	To find
Men	Gebar	Mighty man
Against	Al	On, Upon, Concerning
Except	Lahen	Therefore, Except
Concerning	Tsad	Concerning, On the side of
Law	Dath	Law, Sentence
Assembled	Regash	To meet tumultuously
Live	Chaya	To live
Ever	Alam	Hidden time
Governors	Sigenin	Prefects
Counsellors	Hadaberrin	Viceroy, Counsellor
Captains	Pechah	Governor
Consulted	Yeat	To take counsel
Establish	Qum	To establish
Royal	Melek	A king
Firm	Teqeph	To make strong
Decree	Esar	A bond
Petition	Bau	Petition, Prayer
Man	Enash	A man, Mortal
Thirty	Telathin	Thirty
Days	Yammim	Days
Save	Lahen	Therefore, Except, But
Cast	Remah	To be cast
Den	Gob	Den, Pit
Lions	Aryeh	A lion
Sign	Resham	To note down, Write, Sign
Writing	Kethab	To write
Changed	Shena	To change, Alter
Altereth	Ada	To pass on or away

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

In verse 4 we see mental attitude sins driving evil men, in the form of jealousy occurring in the higher levels of the Empire organisational structure. Because of the brilliance and lack of corruption seen in Daniel, others less brilliant and more malleable to corruption become violently jealous of him and try to plot his downfall. Be aware of this satanic fruit/trait – he hates competence and excellence, and especially hates those not able to be manipulated by his inferior team.

The phrase “sought to find” is in a permanent tense, showing that these other leaders were constantly trying to find a way to eliminate Daniel, but they were frustrated because they could not. In verse 5 they see that his actions are so righteous and mature that they are not going to find any major flaws in his character sufficient to get the king to remove him from his position. Satanic leadership will reflect their origin by their “fruit”, and stupid, even suicidal jealousy and envy will drive them, when they have no reason to desire anything that others have. Satan’s people never have enough, but “by their fruits you know them” – envy, jealousy, bitter malice = satanic fruit. **Matthew 7:13-23, Galatians 5:16-26.**

There is however one area where there is a potential to eliminate him, and that is Daniel’s obedience to God. Here they may be able to find a conflict between his devotion to God and his loyalty to the king. In verse 6 they assemble together “Regash” which means that they meet together in conspiracy. They form a conspiracy to get rid of him c.f. Psalm 2. These people are power players, and like all dodgy politicians, they are going to manipulate Cyrus/Darius.

They approach the king with the phrase “O king live forever”, which is the formal way of address, but very hypocritical, and proceed to say that all the leaders have come up with a policy. This is obviously a lie, as Daniel, the head of the administration, has not been privy to the talks. These are typical of pressure groups who more often than not over represent their position, over-inflate their intelligence, and over-promise what they say they can do.

This decree is going to paralyze the administration of the empire for thirty days as all policy decisions have to be made by the king. In the Law of the Medes and Persians they had this method which, dangerously for the Empire, “replaced” God, and it proved a weakness, that this crisis will solve, but with Daniel having to suffer. One of God’s attributes is being unchangeable. This is brought over into the law, which then makes the law an idol to be worshipped, and a danger that could destroy the empire. Satanic schemes are nearly always totally and utterly self destructive!

There was within this also a strong indication of the development of Emperor worship implied in this passage, a type of feature that the Christians in the later Roman Empire, in the years 96-312 AD, had to cope with. The worship of the Law will be replaced by the worship of the King-Emperor. This provides more flexibility for the Empire, and is fine when the King is a good man, but is a step towards the Anti-Christ's preferred "kingdom structure". This king-worship was certainly the accepted custom of the Persian court shortly after Cyrus reign, where visitors to the court were clearly required to worship the king in the time of Esther, as seen in the passage below.

When a courtier was approached by a foreign dignitary the person seeking audience with the king was addressed as follows:-

"O stranger the laws of men are different and it is required by all to honour their own laws. It is the habit of the Greeks we are told to honour all things on the basis of liberty and equality but amongst our many excellent laws we account this the most excellent, to honour the king and to worship him as the image of Great Preserver of the Universe. If then ye shall consent to our laws and fall down before the king and worship him ye may come, see him and talk to him. But if your mind is otherwise you must make use of others to intercede for you for it is not the national custom here for the king to give audience to anyone who will not worship him."

Darius/Cyrus, now on the basis of enhanced prestige for himself, and with the apparent unanimous agreement of his leaders, signs the decree which will remain unchanged for thirty days. This has been "a set up" and the king has fallen for it on the same basis that Nebuchadnezzar fell into evil. It is personal pride that ambushes the king, and it is pride and arrogance that always ambushes great people. This man believed he was special, and he was, but pride has dangers. Cyrus the Great shortly after this episode dies fighting a battle he does not need to fight on his northern border against a people he does not need to fight, but in pride he tries to subdue them. Led by their queen they kill him and his army is sent back defeated.

APPLICATION

If you are a successful Christian in any organisation there will be people in that group who will try and undermine you.

People who are mediocre get very concerned that those who excel will show them up as substandard or low performers. This is one of the reasons why during history the Jewish people have been hated; for they have out worked and out performed others. Expect to be targeted as Daniel was if you excel amongst lazy or incompetent people.

Everyone is not created equal, nor have they equal abilities, but people should have equal opportunity. The only place of equality is in the body of Christ as we all come to union with Christ through faith and not by our own merit.

In the Church all gifts are servanthood gifts and should be used to assist others not dominate or try and put others down.

Believers make their maximum testimony in organisations by showing their spiritual ability and working to the limit of their natural ability in all areas of life.

Leaders who are sincere but do not have a divine perspective can succumb to poor decisions. Sincerity is not a virtue, absolute devotion and obedience to the truth is the virtue. There is no benefit in being sincerely wrong – its just foolish!

DOCTRINE

LAWS IN THE NEW TESTAMENT

1. THE LAW WHICH WE ARE NOT UNDER - THE MOSAIC LAW

Christ fulfilled the requirements of the Mosaic Law (Matthew 5:17). If the Holy Spirit has control over us we automatically fulfil the righteousness of the Law.

2. THE LAW OF LIBERTY

This law is directed towards oneself. Biblically speaking you have the right to do certain things that will not cause you personally to fail the Lord in any way. (1 Corinthians 8:8)

3. THE LAW OF LOVE

This law takes other believers into consideration. In effect this law says that because of your love for the weaker brethren and in order not to offend or upset them you refrain from doing certain things which you have the liberty to do. You refrain not because they are wrong in themselves but rather you wish to help other believers rather than hinder them. (1 Corinthians 8:9)

4. THE LAW OF EXPEDIENCY

This law concerns the unbeliever. It is expedient that your life tells the world of Christ. The unbeliever has set up standards of conduct for the Christian. Therefore you refrain from or do certain legitimate things - not because they are wrong but because they may offend an unbeliever and prevent him from seeing the real issue that CHRIST DIED FOR HIS SINS (1 Corinthians 9, 20-23)

5. THE LAW OF SUPREME SACRIFICE

This law is directed towards God. It involves the believer forsaking a completely legitimate function in life in order to more perfectly serve the Lord. Missionaries often function under this law when they live in primitive conditions on the mission field. This law can also operate under Australasian conditions. (Matthew 3:1-6)

6. PRINCIPLE:

As Christians we have liberty, but total freedom for ourselves may enslave others. We have to use our liberty in such a responsible manner that it does not infringe on the liberty of others. As Christians we must act responsibly. (Ephesians 5:15)

SECTION 29 - PRAYER OF DANIEL Daniel Chapter 6:10-15

10 Now when Daniel knew that the writing was signed, he went into his house; and his windows being open in his chamber toward Jerusalem, he kneeled upon his knees three times a day, and prayed, and gave thanks before his God, as he did aforetime. **11** Then these men assembled, and found Daniel praying and making supplication before his God. **12** Then they came near, and spake before the king concerning the king's decree; Hast thou not signed a decree, that every man that shall ask a petition of any God or man within thirty days, save of thee, O king, shall be cast into the den of lions? The king answered and said, The thing is true, according to the law of the Medes and Persians, which altereth not. **13** Then answered they and said before the king, That Daniel, which is of the children of the captivity of Judah, regardeth not thee, O king, nor the decree that thou hast signed, but maketh his petition three times a day. **14** Then the king, when he heard these words, was sore displeased with himself, and set his heart on Daniel to deliver him: and he laboured till the going down of the sun to deliver him. **15** Then these men assembled unto the king, and said unto the king, Know, O king, that the law of the Medes and Persians is, That no decree nor statute which the king establisheth may be changed.

KEY WORDS

Knew	Yeda	To know
Writing	Kethab	To write
Signed	Resham	To note down, Write, Sign
House	Bayith	House
Windows	Kavvin	Windows
Open	Pethach	To open
Chamber	Illith	Loft, Upper room
Kneeled	Berak	To kneel, Bow, Bend
Three	Telath	Three
Times	Zeman	Times. Seasons
Day	Yom	Day
Prayed	Beah	To pray, Petition
Thanks	Yeda	To confess, Thanks, Praise
Men	Anash	A man, Mortal
Assembled	Regash	To meet tumultuously
Found	Shekach	To find
Supplication	Chanan	To be gracious, Favour
Came Near	Qereb	To come near
Spoke	Amar	To say
Decree	Esar	A bond
Petition	Bau	Petition, Prayer
Thirty	Telathin	Thirty
Cast	Remah	To be cast
Den	Gob	Pit, Den
Lions	Aryeh	A lion
True	Yatstsib	Certainty
Answered	Anah	To make or give an answer
Children	Ben	Son
Captivity	Galuth	Exile, Removal
Regardeth	Teem	To set the taste or desire
Heard	Shema	To hear
Words	Millah	Word, Speech, Matter
Sore	Saggi	Great, Much, Many
Displeased	Beesh	To be or become stinking
Set	Sun	To put, Set, Place
Heart	Bal	The heart
Deliver – 1	Shezab	To deliver, Set free
Deliver - 2	Netsal	To snatch away

Laboured	Shedar	To endeavour
Going Down	Meal	Going in or down
Men	Gebar	A mighty man
King	Maleku	Kingdom
Statute	Geyam	Stand rule or custom
Law	Dath	Law, Sentence
Established	Qum	To raise up
Changed	Shena	To change, Alter

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

Daniel opened his windows so that they could actually see him praying. He was clearly not making supplication to the King and his focus on the Lord meant he was not changing his daily habits in any way. In the past the attitude of believers to worship had varied. King Saul was very concerned about his reputation and compromised all the way, whereas David sinned, but did not compromise on worship, but sadly many of his descendants did compromise.

Daniel, as soon as he knew the papers had been signed, kneeled upon his knees three times a day and facing Jerusalem prayed and gave thanks before his God as he did before. He was spiritually consistent and so made the foolish law a matter of disobedience for himself. The only safe path is God's. **Isaiah 55:6-9, Luke 12:22-34.**

He puts his whole reputation and life on the line by this one act. All he had to do was to close the window and that would have removed the controversy. But he laid his career on the line because he was loyal to the Word. He trusted the Lord in his situation, and he knew what was happening was to be for the glory of God, just as his three friends had earlier.

Why did Daniel open his windows? The answer is given in **Jeremiah 29:10-13**. *"For thus saith the LORD, That after seventy years be accomplished at Babylon I will visit you, and perform my good word toward you, in causing you to return to this place. 11 For I know the thoughts that I think toward you, saith the LORD, thoughts of peace, and not of evil, to give you an expected end. 12 Then shall ye call upon me, and ye shall go and pray unto me, and I will hearken unto you. 13 And ye shall seek me, and find me, when ye shall search for me with all your heart."*

Verse 10 of this passage shows that the captivity of the southern kingdom, unlike that of the northern kingdom some 120 years before, will be of a temporary nature and will last seventy years. He has previously meditated and claimed this promise after the fall of the Chaldean Empire, as will be recounted in Daniel 9.

As God's timing draws close for the great event, Daniel expected the enemy to attack in all ways, and so he increases prayer to be sure to be positioned to see the victory in the angelic conflict that is going on behind this stupid law. By this point Daniel has Jeremiah's book before him and knows that the captivity is 70 years only! He knows that this is within months, not years or decades. We are in the same place regarding the Lord's return, and also need to increase prayer.

In verses 11-13 we see promises of God which Daniel now claims rather than be intimidated by the king's decree as this time is close to the release of Israel from its captivity, which is far more important than his own safety. Daniel is applying the Word of God as he had it at the time to the situation he found himself in. He knows that the days for the Exile's return is near and that prayer must increase and be more focused, not be lessened and more secretive.

In **1 Kings 8:28 – 29** Daniel saw the need for his window to be open and that he be looking toward Jerusalem which was the dwelling place of God. This is the reason he was praying towards Jerusalem, even though it is presently in ruins, praying towards the ruined temple affirms his faith that it will be rebuilt, and that God has his seal upon that hill.

1 Kings 8:28 - 29 says, *"Yet have thou respect unto the prayer of thy servant, and to his supplication, O LORD my God, to hearken unto the cry and to the prayer, which thy servant prayeth before thee to day: 29 That thine eyes may be open toward this house night and day, even toward the place of which thou hast said, My name shall be there: that thou mayest hearken unto the prayer which thy servant shall make toward this place."*

We remember that when Jesus met the woman at the well in **John 4:20-24** he told her that while at that time it was in Jerusalem that men worshipped that in the future the worship will be in spirit and in truth. This occurred as they approached the change of dispensation at Pentecost, with the birth of the Church and the setting aside of Israel for a time. At this time of Daniel, while Israel has been set aside in Exile for 70 years, it is about to return to centre stage to be ready for Messiah to come, and so prayer is to be increased, just as in the Tribulation prayer is to be increased also. Daniel has now complied with the God of Israel, but he is now going to get a request from the king of Medio Persia.

In **Psalms 55:17** we see how many times he was to pray. "Evening and morning and at noon will I pray and cry aloud and he shall hear my voice". It was said that David was a man after God's own heart. Daniel had David's Psalms in his Bible. From this Daniel was clear that he was to pray out loud facing towards Jerusalem three times a day. This is precisely what he did in verse 10. This pattern of life had taken time to adjust to. Daniel at this time is an old man around 90 years of age.

In verse 11 the men conspire together and are full of mental attitude sins. There are times when the believer is not wanted in the "world system" and jealous people will try and remove you. Satanic malice will always surprise you. Why

didn't these men just wait, as at Daniel's age he hasn't long to live, so why not just wait for his death? Satanically inspired women/men cannot wait; for lust drives them and self defeating impatience is a sign/fruit of satanic malice.

In verses 12 and 13 they approach the king and remind him that he has signed a decree. They try and manipulate the king by saying that Daniel, who is a foreigner, has not accepted the decree of the king and has been seen praying to God openly three times a day. Cyrus now sees that he has been caught by his own pride that, as we saw, will later kill him.

They say, "Daniel does not regard thee O king, nor thy decree which thou hast signed". They make it personal in order that the king might respond to it emotionally. They appeal to the pride of Darius. He is a great friend of Daniel but the thinking of those captured by the philosophy of the "kingdom of man" will crush even those who are sincere. The sincere person is on the other side because they have compromised themselves with the kingdom of man.

In verse 14 it is recorded that Darius/Cyrus now realises that he has been caught by evil advice and hasty decision making on his part, and he is very frustrated with himself. The greatest person in his administration has been sentenced to death by a combination of evil conspiracy and his own pride and carelessness. He now tries for the rest of the day to find a legal solution to his problem.

The kingdom of man now puts additional pressure on Cyrus/Darius to show that according to the laws of the Medes and Persians once the law has been decreed it cannot be rescinded. The satanic conspiracy looks as if it has succeeded, but prayer has done its work, and now that the king sees his foolishness his rage will be turned against the evil plotters. Satan's men are not that smart long term! Narcissism always blinds people to their own weaknesses, and that is how every con artist operates – they target pride controlled people, but are in the end unhinged by their own pride.

APPLICATION

Daniel heard about the decree and maintained his prayer life for all to see.

He applied the following principles to his life, as we need to into the daily fabric of our own in our darkening days:-

- [a] He committed his way unto the Lord - Psalm 55:22
- [b] By applying this to his life he became occupied with Christ - Psalm 37:4,5
- [c] Daniel has accepted this plot as one which the Lord allowed to transpire. - Isaiah 28:29
- [d] He thanked God for the crisis and resigned to God's will - 1 Samuel 3:18b
- [e] Consequently he remained calm and did not worry - Proverb 3:5,6
- [f] He did not faint in his mind but continued in peace - Isaiah 26:3,4
- [g] Daniel applied the Character and Plan of God to the situation - Psalm 57: 2,3

In order to do this you have to have confidence in the Lord and in the Word of God. You have to trust the promises and doctrines of God, and walk quietly in faith along your path in the plan of God for your life. Hebrews 11:1ff.

Darius sees that he has been trapped in his own pride/stupidity. Daniel goes into the lions' den as a man in his 80-90s and is not harmed, but when his accusers are judged and cast into the pit they are torn apart before hitting the bottom and are devoured. We have a clear mandate from the Word of God to walk in the filling of the Holy Spirit, and to rest in the FACT that if the law of God is compromised by the law of the land we are to disobey the state.

When a person is mature in age this should be the time of greatest spiritual production – but only if we have applied the Word. It may also be our time of greatest trial.

Some Principles

The ebb and flow of Empires does not change the plan for a believer on the earth. Its an eternal plan; all events are known.

God disciplines nations who become decadent.

In God's service age does not hinder success or opportunity- only our fitness/readiness affects our service delivery.

The sin of jealousy converts easily into mental murder and can result in overt sins.

Mental attitude sins can affect the lives of others.

If you are subject to mental attitude sins do not retaliate but leave it with the Lord.

Legislation can never solve the problems of life, only regeneration does that.

Every believer must sooner or later face their own den of lions.

DOCTRINE

STABILITY

1. Strength and stability comes from a close relationship with the Lord through faith. (Psalm 59:17, 62:7, 144:1, 2 Corinthians 1:24,)
2. God keeps us secure in His power. (John 16:33, 1 Corinthians 2:5, 1 Peter 1:5, Ephesians 3:20, Hebrews 7:25)
3. The alternative to a stable life of faith is to be tossed about by every pressure. (Ephesians 4:14, James 1:6, Revelation 3:8)
4. Believers are commanded to stand fast against Satan. (Ephesians 6:11,13). This is a war cry from the Roman army, to stand firm and defend the ground they were standing on - their firm foundation!
5. God allows testing and pressure to develop our stability. (2 Peter 1:3-16)
6. Believers are to :-
 - a) stand fast in the Word. (1 Corinthians 16:13)
 - b) stand fast in our liberty. (Galatians 5:1)
 - c) stand fast in one spirit (Philippians 1:27)
 - d) stand fast in the Lord. (Philippians 4:1)
 - e) stand fast in doctrine. (2 Thessalonians 2:15-17)

SECTION 30 - DANIEL IN THE LIONS DEN Chapter 6:16-17

16 Then the king commanded, and they brought Daniel, and cast him into the den of lions. Now the king spake and said unto Daniel, Thy God whom thou servest continually, he will deliver thee. 17 And a stone was brought, and laid upon the mouth of the den; and the king sealed it with his own signet, and with the signet of his lords; that the purpose might not be changed concerning Daniel.

KEY WORDS

Commanded	Amar	To lift up the voice
Brought	Athah	To cause to come
Cast	Rema	To cast
Den	Gob	Den, Pit
Lions	Aryeh	A lion
Spoke	Anah	To answer, Respond
Servest	Pelach	To cleave, Break up, Till, Serve
Continually	Bi-Tedira	With continuance
Deliver	Shezab	To deliver, Set free
Stone	Eben	A stone
Brought	Atha	To be caused to come
Laid	Sum	To put, Place
Mouth	Pum	Mouth
Sealed	Chatham	To seal, Seal up
Signet	Izqa	Signet
Lords	Rabreban	Great Ones
Purpose	Tsebu	Wish, Will Desire
Changed	Shena	To be changed, Altered

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

In verse 16 the sentence is carried out reluctantly by Cyrus who has not come up with any legal solutions to avoid this action. He says to Daniel that his God will have to deliver him from what appears to be an inevitable death. He recognises that Daniel is consistent by saying, "thy God whom you serve continually". Daniel is a man of the Word and his testimony is well known and strong in the eyes of all. Is our testimony this well known?

Verse 17 is a tremendous irony. Daniel is going to be safer with the lions than he is with the fellow administrators of the empire. He is going to relax in the lion's den. He would prefer to be in the company of vicious beasts than vicious people. Daniel is able to respond without bitterness as he enters the den of lions. He relaxes in the hands of God. **Deut 33:27**.

APPLICATION

The kingdom of God offers man an eternal life with God, while the kingdom of man offers man a life without the judgment of God. The kingdom of man is often based on false ethics that are designed to separate man from God, and to glorify the State and magnify human lusts.

It may be based on the universal brotherhood of man or the concept of world peace by man's efforts, which both appear desirable, but are both anti Biblical and with each person's Old Sin Nature impossible without God.

There is no such thing Biblically as the "universal brotherhood of man". The Bible tells us that there are two groups with different fathers, believers whose father is God and unbelievers whose father is the devil. **John 8:41-58.**

World peace will only occur in the Millennium. Up to that time the Lord Jesus Christ tells us in Matthew 24 that there will be wars and rumours of wars. We rest in the truth of His Second Advent, not the lies of the United Nations.

The leaders of the kingdom of man are often good people, sincere people, but they are sincerely wrong. Remember also that Daniel is openly pro-Median, and so he uses Cyrus' Median name (Darius) more often than his Persian one.

DOCTRINE

GOD CARES FOR YOU

1. God knows ...
 - a) Our sorrows. (Exodus 3:7)
 - b) Our devotions. (2 Chronicles 16:9)
 - c) Our thoughts. (Psalm 44:21)
 - d) Our foolishness. (Psalm 69:5)
 - e) Our frailties. (Psalm 103:14)
 - f) Our deeds. (Psalm 139:2)
 - g) Our words. (Psalm 139:4)
 - h) The composition of the universe. (Psalm 147:4)
 - i) All things. (Proverbs 15:3)
 - j) Our needs. (Matthew 6:32)
 - k) About animal creation. (Matthew 10:29)
 - l) Mankind. (Matthew 10:30)
 - m) What might or could have been. (Matthew 11:23)
 - n) His own. (John 10:14)
 - o) Past, present and future. (Acts 15:18)

2. God is able to ...
 - a) Save forever those who believe in the Lord Jesus Christ - Hebrews 7:25
 - b) Supply every need - 2 Corinthians 9:8
 - c) Deliver all who are tempted - Hebrews 2:18
 - d) Sustain the weak believer and make him stand - Romans 14:4
 - e) Keep us from falling and make us blameless - Jude 24,25
 - f) Surpass all that we could ask or think - Ephesians 3:20
 - g) Raise us up in resurrection in the likeness of His Son - Hebrews 11:19

3. With God, all things are possible - Matthew 19:26

4. God is in control. Nothing will ever happen to you that you are not able to deal with. (1 Corinthians 10:13)

5. God's character is stable.
 - a) if God is for you who can be against you. (Romans 8:31-34)
 - b) no matter what happens God's love is stable. (Romans 8:35-39)

6. God's promises are secure for he is always with us. (Matthew 28:19-20, Jeremiah 1:19)

7. God's power is always the same:-
 - a) He will always keep us. (John 10:29, 2 Timothy 1:12,)
 - b) God does not forget us or lose His power to keep. (Jude 24)
 - c) Even if we fall away from fellowship we still are saved. (2 Timothy 2:13)

8. God knew before time what we would need in time and has provided for the supply of all our needs. (Philippians 4:19, Hebrews 4:16, Ephesians 3:12,)

9. God has the power to bless us. (2 Corinthians 9:8)

10. God is able to make all grace abound towards us. (Ephesians 3:20)

SECTION 31 - DANIEL'S DELIVERANCE Chapter 6:18-24

18 Then the king went to his palace, and passed the night fasting: neither were instruments of musick brought before him: and his sleep went from him. 19 Then the king arose very early in the morning, and went in haste unto the den of lions. 20 And when he came to the den, he cried with a lamentable voice unto Daniel: and the king spake and said to Daniel, O Daniel, servant of the living God, is thy God, whom thou servest continually, able to deliver thee from the lions? 21 Then said Daniel unto the king, O king, live for ever. 22 My God hath sent his angel, and hath shut the lions' mouths, that they have not hurt me: forasmuch as before him innocency was found in me; and also before thee, O king, have I done no hurt. 23 Then was the king exceedingly glad for him, and commanded that they should take Daniel up out of the den. So Daniel was taken up out of the den, and no manner of hurt was found upon him, because he believed in his God. 24 And the king commanded, and they brought those men which had accused Daniel, and they cast them into the den of lions, them, their children, and their wives; and the lions had the mastery of them, and brake all their bones in pieces or ever they came at the bottom of the den.

KEY WORDS

Palace	Hekal	Temple, Palace
Passed the Night	Buth	Pass the night
Fasting	Tevath	Fasting
Instruments	Dachavan	Meaning uncertain
Brought	Alal	To cause to go up or in
Sleep	Shemah	Sleep
Very Early	Shepharpara	Very early
Morning	Nogah	Shin9ing, Brightness
Haste	Behal	To be hastened
Den	Gob	Den, Pit
Lions	Aryeh	A lion
Cried	Zeiq	To cry out
Lamentable	Atsab	To be grievous
Voice	Qal	Voice, Sound
Spoke	Anah	To answer, Respond
Servant	Abad	Servant, Tiller, Slave
Living	Chai	Living, Alive, Lively
Serve	Pelach	To cleave, Break up, Till, Serve
Continually	Bi-Tedira	With continuance
Deliver	Shezab	To deliver, Set free
Live for Ever	Chaya Alam	Live hidden time
Angels	Malak	Messenger, Agent
Shut	Segar	To shut in or up
Mouths	Pum	Mouth
Hurt	Chabulah	Injury
Innocency	Zaku	Purity
Hurt	Chabal	Hurt
Exceeding	Saggi	Great
Glad	Teeb	To be good
Commanded	Amar	To lift up the voice
Should Take	Nesaq	To cause to remove
Believed	Aman	To remain steadfast
Brought	Athar	To cause to come
Men	Gebar	Mighty men
Accused	Akal-Qareton	To eat pieces torn off
Cast	Rema	To cast
Children	Ben	Son
Wives	Nashin	Women, Wives
Mastery	Shelet	To rule, Have power
Broke	Deqaq	To beat small
Bones	Gerem	Skin, Bone, Body, Substance
Bottom	Arith	Lower part

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

Daniel is an example of a Jewish believer who is separated from the kingdom of man, just as all believers should be.

Here we find Daniel in the den. The ruler in Persia at this time had elevated a human law to the level of a divine decree. The stone was brought and sealed with the signet ring of the king so that Daniel was secure in the lion's den and none could rescue him without breaking the seal. The king has also ensured that the guilty officials are also required to set

their seal on the stone. Daniel was actually now “safe” from human intervention. The first miracle has occurred, in that he has been dropped into the den, a fall of at least 3 metres, designed to “soften up” and break the person so cast into the den, ready for the lions to be aroused to frenzy. Daniel has landed in a way, where a lion(s) has clearly broken his fall, and so he spends the night sleeping quietly amongst them.

The king went to the palace and spent the night fasting, and he had insomnia. This is an excellent illustration of one person with absolute faith in the Word, and another without the Word. The den of lions was a cesspool. It was a shocking environment which included human remains from previous executions. This is where Daniel spent the night. Daniel is in his 80-90s at this point but he is going to survive the much younger people who put him there in the den of lions. Like Peter in **Acts 12:4-17** he can relax in God’s arms and sleep through what could be his last night alive.

While Daniel is relaxed Darius is surrounded by the world of power and fame, and cannot relax, for he fears. This shows that your environment does not regulate your happiness. As Paul says, “In whatever state I find myself in, I am content”. **Philippians 4:10-14**. He recognises that there is no situation where the Lord has not only foreknown but also made provision. The king however spends his night fasting. This is not fasting for spiritual reasons. He is so sick with worry he cannot eat. I wonder what the nobles thought, for their seals are also upon that door – ready as evidence of their evil.

In the concordance the word translated “instruments” is said to have uncertain origin. It is however in the female plural and probably relates to women who the king would sleep with. It is the case of no wine, no women, or no music/song. He does not have a party. He has rejected the party girls, his food, and has no peace of mind. **2 Timothy 1:7**.

In verse 19 the morning cannot come quickly enough for Darius and he goes quickly to the den of lions. All his sublimation which he had used in the past has been of no avail. The gimmicks have been stripped away. He looked down and cried with a lamenting voice, a very frightened voice. He did not have complete trust in God’s Word, but he hopes. He asks Daniel whether God has delivered him. Psychologically Cyrus is an interesting study, for he believes, he trusts Daniel, and he does what the Lord calls him to do in the return of the Exiles, but his pride remains his weakness and he holds onto the “dignity of the kingship”, and so he never knows the peace of mind of Paul and Peter as “douloi” (slaves) of the King of kings and Lord of all lords.

He is relieved to hear the old man’s voice from the pit greeting Darius with the salutation “O king, live forever”. Daniel tell Darius that an angel from God came and shut the mouths of the lions and he is safe. He is able to give testimony to God’s grace. In verse 22 Daniel says that he is innocent before God and innocent before the king. God has therefore made it clear to the king that Daniel is not guilty of any crime, but that is not true of those who cast Daniel into the pit.

In verse 23 the king who had been depressed, is now exceedingly glad. He is emotionally unstable after a night without sleep, and with his anger at being conned and manipulated by his other counselors. He orders that Daniel be released from the den. He was spared death at this point and delivered miraculously, because he believed in his God and rested into the plan of God for his life, even though it took a worrying and apparently awful turn.

By contrast if he had not relaxed into the plan he would have died in the lion’s den. He would still have gone direct to Abraham’s bosom, or Paradise, but his work for the Lord was not as yet finished. We will not die one second before the Lord calls us to be forever with Him. **Psalms 68:20, 72:14, 116:15**. Until that unique moment that God has appointed for our death, we pour our hearts and last breath out in the Lord’s service. **2 Timothy 4:1-8**.

Darius the Mede now orders the accusers to be thrown into the lion’s den and they are torn apart as they fall to the ground, showing that the lions were ravenously hungry, and making clear to the king the miracle that has occurred overnight. Here again Darius over reacts throwing in the families of the accusers into the den with those responsible for the plot against Daniel. In a later generation Haman and his family will be likewise judged for their Anti-Semitism.

Daniel has now to watch these people die. This is to us an excessive application of the law, although in the grace of God we can be assured that these people in some way were also guilty of malice towards God’s man Daniel and God’s Plan for the Jewish people, and to discourage other plotters it was clearly vital that they know the price of their failure is the death of their posterity. Don’t mess with God’s prophets or God’s People Israel is God’s message – dramatic and really needed just before they return to the land after 70 years! This message will be critical for the rebuilding of the temple later, as the Northern Satraps know that the Jewish Satrap has the ear of the king, and its fatal to attack God of his man.

APPLICATION

While one is alive a believer has a job to do for the Lord. You never retire from the Christian life of worship/service.

You are responsible for your own sins, and should not judge individuals for sins that others in the family have committed without their participation.

When should we react and resist the law? If it is in direct defiance of the law or doctrines of God the believer needs to disobey. **Acts 4:12-30**.

If one sees any law being passed which is an aberration of the divine institution of nations then that believer should try and change it in accordance with the limit of her/his authority.

As a voting citizen you have limited opportunities to change national life. As a high governmental officer your opportunities as a believer are greater, but where-ever we find ourselves we are to be ready to serve the Lord in any way directed. Each of us have a unique and a called path, and we are to play our part fully, each and every day.

DOCTRINE

FASTING

1. The true purpose of fasting is to spend time ordinarily spent in things such as eating and sleeping to prayer and Bible study.
2. Fasting is not only the denial of food, although it often involves it.
3. The Jews fasted on the Day of Atonement (Leviticus 16:29-31; Numbers 29:7). Fasting in these passages is covered by the words, "afflict their souls".
4. Fasting with the wrong attitude, becomes human works, and therefore is unacceptable to God. (Isaiah 58:3-4, Jeremiah 14:12).
5. Fasting should always reflect an attitude of humbleness toward God. (Psalm 69:10).
6. Jesus fasted forty days and forty nights during his temptation. (Matthew 4:2).
7. When Christians fast it should be a matter between the individual and God. (Matthew 6:16-18). The fasting Christian should not make a public spectacle.
8. Fasting in the form of extra time in prayer and bible study is beneficial:
 - a) for major decisions in the Christians' or church's life (Acts 13:2,3),
 - b) to remove certain types of demons (Matthew 17:21; Mark 9:29),
 - c) in revival (e.g. the post-war revival in South Korea).

SECTION 32 - PROSPERITY OF DANIEL AND THE DECREES OF DARIUS Chapter 6:25-28

25 Then king Darius wrote unto all people, nations, and languages, that dwell in all the earth; Peace be multiplied unto you. **26** I make a decree, That in every dominion of my kingdom men tremble and fear before the God of Daniel: for he is the living God, and stedfast for ever, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed, and his dominion shall be even unto the end. **27** He delivereth and rescueth, and he worketh signs and wonders in heaven and in earth, who hath delivered Daniel from the power of the lions. **:28** So this Daniel prospered in the reign of Darius, and in the reign of Cyrus the Persian.

KEY WORDS

Wrote	Kethab	To write
People	Am	People
Nations	Ummah	A nation
Languages	Lishshan	Tongue
Dwell	Dur	To dwell
Earth	Ara	Earth
Peace	Shelam	Completeness, Peace
Multiplied	Sega	To become great or many
Decree	Teem	Taste , Discretion
Dominion	Sholtan	Rule, Dominion
Tremble	Zua	To tremble, Move
Fear	Dechal	To be afraid
Living	Chai	Living, Alive, Lively
Steadfast	Qayyam	Standing, Steady, Established
For Ever	Alam	Hidden time
Kingdom	Maleku	Kingdom
Destroyed	Chabal	To be marred or corrupted
End	Soph	End, Rear, Last
Rescue	Netsal	To snatch away
Work	Abad	To do
Signs	Athin	Signs
Wonders	Temah	Miracle, Wonder
Heaven	Shemayin	Heavens

EVANGELICAL BIBLE COLLEGE OF WESTERN AUSTRALIA

Earth	Ara	Earth
Delivered	Shezab	To deliver, Set free
Power	Yad	Hand
Lions	Aryeh	A lion
Prospered	Tselach	To cause to prosper
Reign	Maleku	Kingdom

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

In verse 25 –27 Darius wrote to all the empire and decreed that all of the empire's inhabitants should worship Daniel's God. Here Darius is trying to coerce his subjects into believing in the Lord Jesus Christ, thus contradicting divine institution number one – free will. It is another indication of Darius/Cyrus' weakness in his pride – remember that it will kill him in the end.... Whilst this concept of forced evangelism was wrong, the message was right, and the whole empire had the opportunity to hear the gospel due to Daniel's experience in the lion's den. God's power is seen, and all pay attention!

Daniel prospered in the reign of Darius/Cyrus – same man remember. He did not manipulate or push, he was prospered by God. This is another great piece of evidence that Daniel is writing this close to the time, for only he, with his Median Royal family connections via Nitocris can know Cyrus' other name and use it with familiarity, for that is the name he used, with Nitocris, who also was probably related to Cyrus through their shared royal Median families.

APPLICATION

All things work together for good to those who love God, for those who are the called according to his purpose. **Romans 8:26-39**. Daniel did not programme it; God facilitated it by the circumstances. Daniel trusted in God and God did the rest.

At no time in teaching the Word of God are we to violate the free will of those that are hearing. Such methods are an invasion of the privacy of the individual. You cannot decree that everyone accept the Lord Jesus Christ as their Saviour. Some evangelists get carried away and speak of "winning the nation for Christ", but that has never happened, as each and every person has the right to reject the message. Even with the apostles present, genuine prophets active, occasional miracles occurring, the church at Jerusalem never numbered more than a few thousand, in a city of a million. At the end, when they fled the city in 67AD before the Romans returned, they numbered a few hundred!

Don't tell me the apostles got it wrong and you would have done better! They were Holy Spirit led and empowered, as was the Lord, but each unbeliever must choose salvation under the Spirit's moving, and each may reject the truth! The majority reject the truth, and will do so unto the end! Our role – like Daniel – play our part in the plan until our end point.

The kingdom of man always tries to reduce human freedom, to bring all into conformity with the leaders concepts or dogma, and the greatest of these men we will meet in the next chapters – the Anti-Christ to come. The "Angelic Conflict" is about the free will choices of each and every woman and man upon this temporary planet.

DOCTRINE

FAITHFULNESS OF GOD

1. God's faithfulness is based on his unchangeability (Hebrews 13:8)
2. God's faithfulness is renewed "every day" (Lamentations 3:21-24)
3. His promises are sure. (Hebrews 10:23)
4. The faithfulness of Christ continues even when we are unfaithful. (2 Timothy 2:13)
5. Christ is a faithful and merciful high priest - Hebrews 2:17
6. God is faithful to
 - a) forgive sins - 1 John 1:9
 - b) keep us saved - 2 Timothy 2:13
 - c) deliver us through temptation - 1 Corinthians 10:13
 - d) keep His promises to us - Hebrews 10:23
 - e) us in suffering - 1 Peter 4:19
 - f) fulfil His plan for us - 1 Thessalonians 5:24
 - g) strengthen us - 2 Thessalonians 3:3

CHAPTER 7

DIVISION OF CHAPTER 7

Chapter seven of Daniel can be divided into four sections

DANIEL'S VISION OF THE FOUR BEASTS	VERSES 1-7
VISION OF THE SON OF MAN COMING IN THE CLOUDS	VERSES 9-14
THE DEFINITION OF THE FOUR BEASTS	VERSES 15-18
EXPLANATION OF THE FOURTH BEAST	VERSES 19-28

INTRODUCTION

In the early years of the sixth century BC the Shekinah glory left the temple in Jerusalem. Ezekiel gets the vision of this, as recorded in **Ezekiel 9:3, 10:1 – 11:23**. This indicated that there was going to be a major judgment. In 605 the first and in 586 BC the last fall of Jerusalem occurred. The great temple of Solomon was an empty physical shell when the Babylonians smashed it to the ground and burned it with fire. Not only had the presence of the Lord departed from the children of Israel, they had no temple, no city, but from now on no king of the house of David was to rule over the country other than the King of Kings, the Lord Jesus Christ.

605 BC was the start of the political, "Times of the Gentiles", which will continue until the Second Advent of the Lord Jesus Christ. This was the start of Imperialism in the world system as God's way of keeping Gentile nations dominant and the Gospel message free to spread without international controls. It is of interest that Israel even now only exists because of Gentile mandates and not because of its own power. It is by treaty and agreement that Israel survives today.

From this time God postponed the fulfilment of many of the promises including the fulfilment of the Covenants, especially the Palestinian and Davidic. Israel must trust all through the centuries of their history in the promises made by God to the nation or individuals, and to be true children of Abraham by faith, they must believe that they will all be realised. The believer must have patience and hope, and that is built by Bible Doctrine as it is believed and applied through the ministries of the Holy Spirit.

It is from this time onwards that so called "apocalyptic literature" occurs, with many fakes, but also genuine "unveilings" of God's Plan through to the end of the Age, in such books as Daniel, Ezekiel, Zechariah and the Book of the Revelation. This shows that you must become proficient first in the other books of the Bible before interpreting these key prophetic books. Daniel is not to be spoken of, as the unbelieving scholars do, as "apocalyptic literature", for it is prophetic revelation for the mature believer to assist them understand this time we live in; the years before the Lord's Return.

Daniel chapter 7-11 deal with visions relating to the progress of history after the start of the "Age of the Gentiles". Each of the visions have a certain form to them, including the time and place of the vision. This is matched by the receiving of the book of the Revelation by John on the Island of Patmos.

The incident covered in this chapter occurred in 553 BC, the first year of the co-regency reign of Belshazzar. This puts chapter 7 out of chronological order, as both chapters 5 and 6 postdate it. This is because the first half of Daniel deals with his political career, and the second half deals with specific prophecies received at the different noted times.

SECTION 33 - DANIEL'S VISION OF THE FOUR BEASTS Chapter 7:1-8

1 In the first year of Belshazzar king of Babylon Daniel had a dream and visions of his head upon his bed: then he wrote the dream, and told the sum of the matters. **2** Daniel spake and said, I saw in my vision by night, and, behold, the four winds of the heaven strove upon the great sea. **3** And four great beasts came up from the sea, diverse one from another. **4** The first was like a lion, and had eagle's wings: I beheld till the wings thereof were plucked, and it was lifted up from the earth, and made stand upon the feet as a man, and a man's heart was given to it. **5** And behold another beast, a second, like to a bear, and it raised up itself on one side, and it had three ribs in the mouth of it between the teeth of it: and they said thus unto it, Arise, devour much flesh. **6** After this I beheld, and lo another, like a leopard, which had upon the back of it four wings of a fowl; the beast had also four heads; and dominion was given to it. **7** After this I saw in the night visions, and behold a fourth beast, dreadful and terrible, and strong exceedingly; and it had great iron teeth: it devoured and brake in pieces, and stamped the residue with the feet of it: and it was diverse from all the beasts that were before it; and it had ten horns. **8** I considered the horns, and, behold, there came up among them another little horn, before whom there were three of the first horns plucked up by the roots: and, behold, in this horn were eyes like the eyes of man, and a mouth speaking great things.

KEY WORDS

First	Chad	One
Year	Shenah	A year, A repetition
King	Melek	A king, Counsellor
Dream	Chelem	Dream
Visions	Chezev	Vision, Aspect
Head	Resh	Head
Bed	Mishkab	Place for lying down
Write	Kethab	To write
Sum	Resh	Head, Sum
Matters	Millah	Word, Speech, Matter
Spake	Anah	To answer, Respond
See	Chazah	To see in a vision
Night	Lelya	Night
Behold	Aru	Lo, See!
Four	Arba	Four
Winds	Ruach	Wind
Heaven	Shematin	Heavens
Stroke	Guach	To come forth with force
Great	Rabrab	Abundant, Very great
Sea	Yam	Sea, Lake, Pool
Beasts	Chaiyah	Living creature
Diverse	Shena	To be changed, Different
Lion	Aryeh	A lion
Eagles	Neshar	An eagle
Wings	Gaph	A wing
Plucked	Merat	To be peeled, Polished
Lifted	Netal	To be lifted up
Earth	Ara	Earth
Stand	Qum	To be caused to rise up
Feet	Regal	Foot
Man	Anash	A man, mortal
Heart	Lebab	Heart
Given	Yehab	To give place
Second	Tinyan	Second
Bear	Dob	A bear [hairy shaggy animal]
Raised	Qum	To cause to rise up
One	Chad	One
Side	Shetah	Side, Authority
Three	Telath	Three
Ribs	Ala	A rib
Mouth	Pum	Mouth
Teeth	Shen	Tooth
Devour	Akal	To eat, Consume, Devour
Flesh	Besar	Flesh
Leopard	Nemar	Leopard
Back	Gab	The back
Fowl	Oph	Fowl
Heads	Resh	Head
Dominion	Sholtan	Rule, Dominion
Fourth	Rebii	Fourth
Dreadful	Dechal	To be afraid, Terrible
Terrible	Emthani	Terrible, Fearful
Strong	Taqqiph	Strong, Mighty
Exceedingly	Yattir	Abundant, Excellent
Iron	Parzel	Iron
Teeth	Shen	Tooth
Devoured	Akal	To eat, Consume, Devour
Brake	Deqaq	To beat small
Stamped	Rephas	To trample
Residue	Shear	Remnant, Rest
Feet	Regal	Foot
Diverse	Shena	To change, Be different
Before	Qodam	What is before, The east
Ten	Asar	Ten
Horns	Qeren	Horn
Considered	Sekal	To consider wisely
Came Up	Seleq	To come up

Little	Zeer	Small, Little, Young
Plucked	Merat	To be plucked, Polished
Roots	Aqar	To be uprooted
Eyes	Ayin	Eyes
Mouth	Pum	Mouth
Great Things	Rabrab	Very great things

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

Belshazzar was the last of the active rulers of the Chaldean Empire in Babylon, as his father has already surrendered at this point and been granted honourable retirement at the oasis of Timna. Belshazzar was a narcissist, and his certain fall opens the door for the Lord to show Daniel more of the future history of the other gentile empires to come, building on what Daniel had received and interpreted during the reign of Nebuchadnezzar as outlined in Daniel chapter 2.

This time rather than the dream of a statue of gold, silver, brass, iron and clay, we have a series of animals.

One of the main changes that is revealed, is that while under Nebuchadnezzar the Empire was on the way up, Daniel sees under Belshazzar that the Empire is in serious decline, and the golden head is actually changing to the silver shoulders as he watches things unfold. In history there are often stabilising nations or empires which have a large effect on international affairs. The dream of the statue of Chapter 2 showed a series of such empires, which for about 1000 years, from 605 BC to the fall of the Roman Empire formed a stabilising influence into the known world. They were the Chaldean, Medio-Persian, Greek and Roman Empires. The present "Revived Roman Empire" with the baked ceramic clay and iron of the feet, still provide stability, but have inherent weakness in their fragile attachment to each other, and each nation's varying degrees of strength. They will dominate until the end, but with satanic weakness at their core.

After the fall of the Roman Empire, which marked the close of ancient history, there was an increase in chaos, which is known as the "Dark Ages", and yet God's purposes were still being worked out through Europe. In Western Europe the power vacuum was filled by the Roman Catholic Church and the barbarian nation-states, whilst in the East it was shared between the Muslims and The Greek Orthodox Church. In a manner of speaking, the Roman Empire doesn't "fall" at all, it morphs into the European nation-states that are still "baked together", and in the last days they will come under the sway of the last great/evil ruler, the Anti-Christ. It is as if these old Roman Empire Nation-States are "baked" hard and fused to each other until the end, when Messiah smashes the whole evil western empire to dust.

After the Reformation there was some trend back to a stability factor through imperialism, in the form of the British Empire, and more recently the United States of America. Both these nations and their "Empires" have been strong due to the presence of maximum numbers of strong believers within them. Spiritual revivals made Europe strong. The present financial turmoil in the world financial system flowing from the "collapses" in the years 1987-1991, 2000-2002, 2007-2012, is due to the decline in spiritual power within Western nations generally, and this is associated with the narcissistic and self defeating financial corruption at the heart of the old "Western Evil Empire". We are in 2022 at the same "shoulder-time" as Daniel was; the slide to the end has picked up momentum from 2020 especially, with centralized control measures for populations expanded, and the major pieces appear to be all on the chess board now.

Do not join the fools however who say that, "The West is finished and the Moslem world will dominate" – for the next chapters make clear that the revived Roman/Western Empire lasts in real power right to the end. In the "Times of the Gentiles" Western nations are great and good when they are mighty in the doctrines of the Word of God, and they fall into evil when they move away from God's Word as their standard. The greatest falling away is just before the Tribulation Period, but the Rapture opens the door to the greatest revival through those terrible days.

Eventually there will be a one world multicultural Gentile Empire of evil, centred in the West, controlled and ruled by the European Antichrist, as indicated in the toes of iron and ceramic of Daniel chapter 2, and restated in the form of the beast with the ten horns of Daniel 7:23-24.

The East and the Middle East are second fiddle players; the West remains dominant in finance and **evil exercise of its power** to the end! There is nothing "nice" in the Western Empire; it is evil at its core, and only Holy Spirit filled Bible saturated believers have made it any different through history. Do not fear the "Moslem threat", for it will evaporate after Ezekiel 38-39 is fulfilled, and Arab and Jew have already tied together to confront Iranian threats (in place with treaties and joint military arrangements and actions from 2017 to 9-11-2020), and in the tribulation period many are saved from both groups. (More below...) The "Evil Empire" of the last days is the West according to God's revelation to Daniel!

The four winds of heaven in verse 2 represent activities that disturb human history stirring up the nations who are portrayed as coming up from the sea. The sea is unorganised and that is how the gentile nations are seen; a mere mass or dis-organised mankind under evil's sway. The sea was always a symbol of Gentile power, as the Greeks and Romans were sea peoples, with trading and military power moving quickly by means of their naval fleets.

Daniel notes that the four beasts which emerge from the sea are diverse from one another, meaning that they are different one from another and follow one another in order, but "sea power" is the joint characteristic of the last beasts.

In verse 4 we see the first of the Gentile Empires is the Chaldean Empire. The Chaldeans originated in the mountains of Kurdistan and descended to the swamps in the valleys. These people are not yet Babylonians. They settled south of Babylon in clans which were called "bits". They consolidated their control in the southern part of the extensive valley.

Nabopolassar was their leader. Assyria at that time was dominating the world both militarily and industrially. He hired himself out as a mercenary leader with a Chaldean army, and worked for the Assyrians in order to get control of Babylon. He later joined in coalition with the Medes and Scythians and attacked and conquered Nineveh the great city of the Assyrians in 612. He started a new empire. The Scythians took the women and booty, the Medes the artisans and all the gold they could carry also, with Nabopolassar heading up the Chaldean, or as it is sometimes known, the Neo Babylonian Empire.

He had four sons, one of whom was Nebuchadnezzar, who followed him as king. At the battle of Carchemish Nebuchadnezzar defeated the Egyptians under Pharaoh Necho. He pursued them until he came to Jerusalem, where he made contact with their leaders in 606 to 605 BC and achieved Israel's submission to him. While he was there he heard of the death of his father Nabopolassar and taking some young hostages, including Daniel, headed back to claim the throne. He dealt with Egypt later, conquering it after Judah's total defeat in 586BC.

He was a great leader, a brilliant military general and administrator, and was very successful until he became mentally ill for a seven year period as outlined in chapter 4. When he recovered, having become a believer, he returned to being a great ruler; the bible records him as the greatest of all Gentile Leaders of all the great Empires of all time.

On his death things deteriorated with his son Evil-Merodach reigning in his stead. Evil in this context does not mean the king was bad. In the Chaldean it indicates that he was the crown prince. However his reign was undistinguished, terminating with his death when his brother in law poisoned him.

After two other "nobody" kings, Nabonidus, who had married Nebuchadnezzar's daughter Nitocris (her mother was the Median princess Amhya, who Nebuchadnezzar had built the "Hanging Gardens" for), was elected as ruler. He however soon moved to the oasis of Timna in Arabia to pursue astronomy, leaving Belshazzar, the dissolute king of Daniel chapter 5, as his co-regent, ruling the Empire from Babylon.

The lion is a symbol of both power and speed which is the equivalent of the head of gold in the statue in chapter 2. The strength is also seen in the eagle's wings. This speaks of their swift movement and aggression when they were mighty, for the Chaldeans would never go on the defensive, except to gather strength for a later devastatingly fatal attack.

The eagle has great power in his wings. The wings however were plucked with the destruction of the military might of the Empire. The people became slaves to the details of life, addicted to pleasure and wealth, and they lost their eternal life perspective, and their king died drunk at his orgy party with his drunken nobles.

The phrase, "lifted up from the earth", relates to the restoration of Nebuchadnezzar after his illness, and a man's heart was given to it. Salvation delivers Nebuchadnezzar, but God has no grand-children and sadly his sons didn't follow him in faith, and so the empire slides downhill. The exception is his daughter, Nitocris, who will be used with Daniel as part of the transition to the new Empire. There are some great stories behind the scenes here that we will only hear in heaven.

In verse 5 we see a lop sided bear which has great power and agility. This represents the Persians and Medes who were not only strong from a military point of view but were amongst the most focused people in the ancient world. The Persians were not interested in speculation and philosophy; they were interested in science, medicine, astronomy, chemistry and physics. As a result they became a very vigorous objective race, but their weakness was alcohol also.

The bear is lopsided. The Persian Empire was always lopsided, being an amalgamation between the Medes and the Persians with the Medes always being weaker than the Persians. The Bear had three ribs in his mouth representing the way in which Persia became the dominant power in the region.

The first rib represents the country of Media which the Persians conquered in 549 BC. The Medians, who were cousins to the Persians, therefore came into union with the Persians. The second rib is Lydia, with its fabulously rich ruler King Croesus. He is famous in the history of ancient times as the person who invented the concept of stamped coinage with the ruler's face on the coins.

Lydia was conquered in 546 BC. The third rib was the conquest of Babylonia in 539 BC, which is the subject of chapter 5. The three ribs therefore shows the way that the Bear carved out the Empire. Eventually it extended in the east to India and to the west all the way to Greece. It was an administratively heavy empire, with an excellent postal service and communications, but with difficulty in getting clear, moral, and strong direction from the centre.

The major problem with the Persian Empire was that there was a lot of indulgence in alcohol, hemp and shared sexual partners, which made it impossible for the people to have a truly moral attitude on any subject. They were great drinkers, and even got to the place where their nobles would debate subjects of policy drunk, and then later sober, and if they agreed both times they followed the decided policy. This assisted the Greeks in their defeat of the Persians, for even though drunk most of the time also, Alexander's Army was vigorous, tougher physically, and ruthless in a way the Persians were not. This is demonstrated by the fact that Alexander almost invariably defeated a vastly numerically superior enemy. The Macedonians would put out their phalanx, and their spearmen just advanced in confident courage

and focused energy, and cut swathes through the Persian Army. While they advanced with focus they were victorious: the Romans would later defeat the phalanx by crushing it in from the sides.

The leader of the Medio – Persians at the time of the Chaldean Empire was Darius the Mede/Cyrus the Persian. There was a large amount of decadence in the ancient world and God raised up a Median-Persian to remove it, but over time their weaknesses became written large through their empire, and their love of luxury weakened their will to fight and focus forward. They fell because they did not hold to the truths that men like Daniel gave them at their beginning, and men like Ezra and Nehemiah upheld at the mid-point of their power.

Cyrus was named as the “shepherd of God” in **Isaiah 44:28**, dated at around 712 BC. “That saith of Cyrus. He is my shepherd, and shall perform all my pleasure; even saying to Jerusalem. Thou shalt be built, and to the Temple, thy foundation shall be laid.” The shepherd feeds the sheep but also delivers the good from the bad. This is what Cyrus did and the Persians achieved their part in the plan, but corruption ended their role, as it ends each empire’s role through the Age of the Gentiles. We see the dominance of America slipping today through its deepening moral and financial corruption. It and the other western nations will fall into the alliance of nations that the Anti-Christ will gain control over.

With the establishment of the Medio Persian Empire there was a period of great evangelism across the known world. Cyrus was a great road builder facilitating travel at this time. He is further mentioned in **Isaiah 45:1-4** where he is called God’s anointed. He has been commissioned by God to undertake tasks for Him. God says that he is going to proceed before him and make the great cities surrender to Cyrus, opening their gates to the conqueror, who in 25 years conquered the Middle Eastern world.

The riches in secret places and treasures of darkness in Isaiah 45:3 deal with the riches of the pagan temples which Cyrus took back with him as booty. It is seen that this relates to the God of Israel, and it is for the sake of Israel that this takes place. In verse 13 of that chapter it also predicts that the Jews will be released as an act of grace by Cyrus.

The son of Cyrus, Cambyses, was murdered and is succeeded by a Magi usurper, Pseudo Smerdus, who was assassinated, most likely by his general Darius Hystaspes, who then reigned from 520 to 486 BC, and is also called “the Great”, and he loses the Battle of Marathon against the Athenians. His son Xerxes invaded Greece with an army of possibly as many as 200,000 for revenge, and lost most of them. He is the husband, after this disaster, of Esther, the Jewish Queen. Jews are at the heart of the Empire, and are a blessing to it, and Judea is blessed within the Empire.

It was during the reign of Artaxerxes Longimanus in 445 BC that the great edict was given, which started the clock ticking for the 70 weeks of Daniel’s prophecy in Daniel 9, when, as recorded in Nehemiah 2, the king told Nehemiah to go to rebuild the walls of Jerusalem. The subsequent rulers of the Empire became progressively less effective, and eventually Greece, under Alexander the Great, conquered the Persian Empire. The shoulders of silver gave way to the belly of bronze in Daniel 2.

In verse 3 Daniel deals with the rise and power of Alexander the Great. His father, Philip, King of Macedon, married an Epirian princess Olympias half-way through the 4th Century BC. In 356 BC in Pella, Macedon, a son Alexander was born. As he grew his tutor was the philosopher Aristotle, from Olympias’ birthplace Epirus.

In 340 BC Alexander acted as regent while his father was held hostage by the King of Thebes in one of the many wars that racked Greece at this time. Four years later, Philip, whose dream was to unite Greece against the common enemy, the Persians, was dead, and at the age of 20 Alexander ascended the throne of Macedon in 336 BC.

To the south, Thebes, Athens and Corinth were soon brought under his control, although Thebes revolted again while Alexander was putting down a revolt in Illyria in Thrace, near the present Turkish border. Alexander returned and levelled Thebes, leaving only one house standing, that of Pindar the poet. His message – “don’t mess with me!”

To enable him to have good control over a composite Greek army with its many separate dialects/languages, Alexander tasked Aristotle with forming a common Greek, or Koine Greek language, which then spread with his army across the world as he conquered. Koine Greek became the language of the New Testament. God, therefore, used this unbeliever to provide the means of accurately, universally communicating, and also accurately interpreting the New Testament.

Crossing into Asia with his army, Alexander went on to conquer the known world in 11 years, with the battles of Granicus (334 BC), Issus (333 BC), Gaugamela (331 BC) and Hydaspes (326 BC) being among the most famous of his 40 or so battles. The Leopard shows the speed of his conquest, which was accomplished ruthlessly.

Having conceived an idea (or heeded the satanic viewpoint going back to Babel) of a super race, he ordered his Greek generals to divorce their wives and marry Persian princesses, for he had found the Persians to be very advanced in mathematics and science. His plans were met with anger by his own generals, as they wanted to keep the east and the west apart, and that was God’s plan, and so Alexander’s mixed super-race was cast aside, after his murder.

Entering the Punjab in northern India Alexander defeated Porus, King of the Punjab; and having marched for some ten years his Greek army refused to go any further. Part of his army built a fleet of boats and sailed back to Babylon, charting the Persian Gulf and making scientific and botanical observations.

Eventually Alexander reached Babylon where, after a heavy drinking bout, he took to his bed with a “fever”. Ten days later on June 13, 323 BC Alexander died, the ruler of the world, but unsaved. It is clear that he was poisoned/murdered by his own generals, who in haste divided up the empire for themselves, and then in satanic pride, fought each other to a standstill to get more for themselves. The Biblical prophetic record from Daniel is clear, verse 8, he is “**broken**” by violence = murdered! The study of this by toxicologist Dr Leo Schep, of Otago University, Poison’s Centre, indicates that White Hellebore (Veratrum Album) is the likely toxic substance mixed into the wine he drank.

The four heads represent the four generals who inherited the Empire. They split it up and formed four empires of which two, the Selucid Empire based on Damascus, and the Ptolemaic Empire based in Egypt, survived for some two hundred years, until Rome replaced them. The prophetic account of the succession from Alexander and the details of these two empires in particular are dealt with in Chapter 11 with such precise detail that unbelieving commentators reject the entire chapter as written “after the events”. The same people are however impressed by Nostradamus!

In verse 7 we have the fourth empire emerging, that of the Romans. There is relatively little information in the English language regarding the ancient rise of Rome, although more and more is being revealed by archeology. There were four different groups which made up the Romans, the valley people who in the Iron Age were known as the Latins or Villa Novans. There were three groups of hills people including the Sabines. To the north of the Tiber were the Etruscans, and Gauls. To the south of Rome were Greeks who had settled there in colonies. It would be a dynamic fusion.

Initially only three of the seven hills of Rome were occupied with the first hill being called Palatine. The second was the Quirinal and the third the Caelian. The groups who were constantly fighting decided to stop and had a common market in the valley. This common market was known as the forum. The “power” people at the market became the Patricians and were the aristocracy of the early Roman people. They organised themselves into three hundred clans, each clan had a chieftain. They used to meet at the place called the Senatus from where we get the word Senate.

Other mixed origin people came in to share the prosperity, but were initially non-citizens. They were called plebeians. They were initially not able to marry with the Patricians. This caused problems and in about 460 BC the plebeians had gained sufficient power that they demanded written laws. These were written in 12 tables and were called the law of the twelve tables. The laws were very objective and formed the basis of Roman law. The laws were for both groups.

In 367 BC other laws relating to land and the structure of Roman society was published. By the turn of that century the Patricians and Plebeians merged to form the foundation of Rome. The unification of Italy took another 100 years.

The Romans had an unusual diet of onions, turnips, cabbage, figs, olives, apples, pears, porridge, bread, pork and beef. Their drink consisted of water and goats milk and their nation was unique in the absence of alcohol in the early days. The houses initially were one room with wooden furniture and a few cooking utensils. They had their main meal at noon.

They were the first people to have labour unions with the first union being one for carpenters followed by shoemakers and dyers and even one for flute players. There was no real poverty in Rome from its inception to the three Punic Wars; a period of almost 500 years. They valued hard manual work, tough mental attitude, and sexual morality.

They practiced the virtues of hard manual work and simple life style and they valued the simple life in their rulers, hating any sign of pomp and kingly behaviours in the early years. As they declined they became more and more in love with luxury and more addicted to alcohol. Their moral decline mirrors all the Gentile Empires to our own day, and will be written large in the last evil western empire that emerges from the old Roman Empire area.

The Romans have been used as a people by God more than another with the exception of the Jews for the promotion of His purposes in the ancient world. The story of Rome can be divided into two; the Republic, and the Empire with Gaius Julius Caesar being the dividing line. He died 15 March, murdered by his colleagues close to the Senate Hall, in 44 BC. They believed they were executing a tyrant, however they all proved equally narcissistic, but without Caesar’s genius.

The Romans provided a safe environment for the incarnation of the Lord Jesus Christ, His ministry and the spreading of Christianity in the four hundred years after the resurrection of Christ. While the background of the Old Testament is Jewish, that of the New Testament adds in Greek culture and language, with Roman power and dominance.

Looking at the description of this “Western” beast we have eight phrases, which we can interpret historically.

“**Dreadful**” – deals with the conquest of the Mediterranean area. Originally in 264 BC there were five centres of power, the Romans, Carthaginians, Macedonians and the Hellenistic Empires of Syria and Egypt. Carthage consisted of an Empire of trading bases from North Africa to Spain. It took just over a hundred years for Rome to become totally dominant. This was the times of the three Punic Wars, where they conquered and then ruthlessly eliminated the Carthaginians with the murder of every man, woman and child, and the sowing of the city with salt.

The word Punic comes from the word Phoenicians, which was what the Carthaginians were. The most famous of the leaders of Carthage was Hannibal who inflicted a massive defeat on the Romans at the battle of Cannae in 216 BC. The people of Carthage however, jealous of his power, cut off supplies to their own general Hannibal, and eventually this led to their own downfall and disappearance as a people group. Satanic self destructive forces are seen in the religion and actions of these people. Hannibal committed suicide in 182 BC just before he would have been captured by the Romans.

By 201 BC the Romans had conquered the entire eastern Mediterranean. The Greek language was the language east of the Adriatic while Latin was the language to the west. The two languages were compatible as parallel means of expression.

“Terrible” – This represents the rise of Roman mobs. The whole moral structure of society was destroyed. They were driven off their properties and congregated in Rome. In the 17 years of the second Punic War over one million people were killed, reducing drastically the able bodied free people within the Empire. There was great demoralisation.

The Roman Empire was an agricultural economy and with its destruction people headed for Rome and formed mobs, who were driven to crime due to poverty. The Romans fed the mobs with grain from Egypt and provided entertainment at government, or local tyrant, expense. The word “terrible” reflects both moral and financial decline. This ended in a violent period of many civil wars and proscriptions, where wealthy narcissists murdered each other’s families for financial gain.

Three things preserved the Romans –

The rise of Pompey the Great, and Gaius Julius Caesar.

The incarnation of the Lord Jesus Christ.

The impact of the Bible; firstly the Septuagint as it spread through the Eastern Synagogues and influenced society from around 200 BC, and then after the completion of the Canon in the First Century AD.

“Strong Exceedingly” – this represents Rome evolving from a city state to an Empire.

“Great Iron Teeth” – represents the great period of civil war from 146 - 49 BC. During this time there are a number of reformers. There were also revolts by slaves such as the Spartacus revolt of 71 BC which was crushed by Crassus and Pompey, resulting in the crucifixion of 6,000 unclaimed slaves on the major routes of Rome to Capua.

There was huge conflict also between Sulla and Marius, two military dictators between 100 and 79 BC. They used a system of proscriptions where they would murder those who were not in power and seize their property to pay their armies. It was satanic evil writ large, with all the fruits to identify the demonic origins. **Matt 7:13-23, Galatians 5:19-26.**

In 60 BC the Triumvirate of Julius Caesar, Pompey, and Crassus formed. Crassus was the richest man in the Empire. He had a million slaves working for him and had made his money out of extortion. The others were victorious generals. Crassus decided he too wanted to be known as a military genius, and full of pride (but with no real military ability – his success against Spartacus due to others, and his cruelty to his own men) he led an army into Parthia, where he was killed after a battle in 53 BC. Having incompetently destroyed his army, he arrogantly told the Parthian king he was rich and would pay any amount of gold to be released, the Parthian king poured liquid molten gold down his throat to kill him! Then there were two...

Pompey and Julius Caesar eventually clashed, with Pompey being defeated at Pharsalia in 48 BC, leaving Julius Caesar as sole Dictator of the Roman Empire.

“Devoured and Break into Pieces” – there were three areas of problems facing Caesar

The corruption of the Roman citizenry with mob rule at home.

The danger of Barbarian invasion especially from Germany.

The need for better government in the Roman provinces.

Cicero said of Caesar that, “He was great as a soldier, statesman, law giver, jurist, orator, poet, historian, grammarian, mathematician and architect”.

Caesar was an unbeliever, but one who was more gracious in his manner and attitude than any person of his day. During the conflict with Pompey one of his generals wanted to desert and go over to the opposition. Caesar not only said that it was a matter of his own free will but gave him an honour guard to Pompey’s camp and also sent his baggage over to the camp afterwards. It was his readiness to see the best in people that doomed him in the end, as evil men killed him.

When he defeated Pompey he took the aristocratic group who had apposed him and restored them to their lands and possessions. He said that the Empire would not be a great place until all were citizens and had equal rights. He refused to feed the mob, he conscripted many and sent many to Corinth and other places to undertake reconstruction and settlement of destroyed cities. By this means he eliminated the gangs and mobs. There was for a time no mob, and there was no unemployment, which alienated the criminal wealthy classes, who used the mobs for their own power.

Caesar looked at the 12 tables of laws and found them to be inadequate so he codified them in the last five years of his life. While he was doing that he fought three campaigns. He went out to Parthia and when he had defeated them he made the famous statement, “Veni, Vidi Vici” - I came, I saw, I conquered.

He found that Easter was coming in June so he researched the problem, and made a decree which changed the calendar, providing the corrected Solar "Julian" Calendar, which we still have today, with minor alterations by Pope Gregory, as our basic calendar.

He foolishly however refused to have an armed guard saying that, "a coward dies many times, a brave man but once". Eventually on the Ides of March 44 BC he was assassinated in Rome and fell dead of 23 stab wounds at the foot of the statue of his dead rival Pompey. Caesar was killed by the mental attitude sins of the plotters, and by his own pride and lack of caution at a violent time. He dies as both Cyrus and Gedaliah did, of over confidence and pride at the hands of lesser people whose malice they fatally under-estimated.

Caesar, like Churchill in our own day, had a brilliant mind, (possibly Bipolar), and was able to dictate to six secretaries at one time on a range of subjects. He also was able to survive with little sleep. He was immensely hard working. He had gone to Gaul as an administrative proconsul, but due to invasions by the Germanic races he learnt to be a great military genius. He was God's man for the crisis time, and rose up to meet the challenges of his time and played his part.

After the death of Caesar the key personnel of the eastern empire were shaken in the battle for power, and the scene that the New Testament opens with was established. Herod the Great supported Mark Anthony and Cleopatra against Octavius, who was Caesar's heir. Marc Anthony lost at the sea battle of Actium, and Herod had provided him with his fleet, but bold as brass he approached Octavian and said, "As I have been loyal to Anthony so I will be loyal to you". Octavius saw in Herod a totally power focused man who could be useful, and confirmed him as "king of the Jews" to control the eastern flank of the empire, and Herod served the Romans well in this capacity, defeating the Parthians again and again. Herod became the paranoid evil old man we meet in the Gospels, but initially he was brave and truly great.

"Stamped the Residue" – The Julian Caesars commenced in 31 BC with Octavius now renamed Augustus Caesar laying down a pattern for the Empire some 4 years later. His administrative genius ushers in a time of great peace and stability. Augustus died in 14 AD and was succeeded by Tiberius who ruled through to 37 AD. The final three Caesars in this line were Caligula, Claudius, and Nero.

In the second half of the first century the Flavian Caesars ruled. The stamping of the residue is the elimination of all the Jewish rebellion that raged from 67 AD through until Jerusalem falls in 70 AD. Masada held out for another couple of years but was also destroyed. These Caesars bring in the first great formal persecution under which John is sent to Patmos and most of the Apostles are killed. Peter and Paul died under Nero, the last Julian Caesar, and John barely outlives the last of the Flavians, Domitian.

"Diverse from all the beasts that were before it" - The Flavian Caesars were followed by the golden age of Rome. The 100 years from 96 to 192 AD was different to anything seen before. It was possible to travel from one end of the empire to the other in peace. The peace was based on a strong military and very strong financial system. Soldiers however were not seen other than on the fringes of the Empire. Rome became the banking/trading centre of the world.

The position for women was the best at any time in history. They were safe and protected. They were allowed maximum freedom. There was a fine system of charity for the poor. Slavery was not the death sentence it had been in many places (exception – the mines) with the slaves gaining recourse to Roman law in this time. The crime rate was at an all time low with fair justice dispensed with vigour, but with intermittent extensive persecution of the expanding Christian Church.

In the third century apostasy entered the church through the gnostic sects and the non-literal interpretation of the bible brought in by the church at Alexandria. In the third century there was also growing corruption in the empire, and there was a period of 90 years with 18 emperors, great instability and persecution. This remains the off/on situation until Constantine made Christianity "legal" and then the State religion. The final western "emperor" was a man named Romulus Augustus who in 476 AD was defeated and killed by the Gothic leader Odovacer, formally ending the western empire, but it becomes the united/dis-united nation-states of Europe that develops, with their Roman core of law and administration.

"and it had ten horns" – deals with the culmination of Imperialism, the one world government of the Antichrist, but Satan has had and will have a few "dry runs" with prototype "antichrists" before the last one comes. Satan has always tried to revive the Roman Empire under various rulers, without lasting success. They have included Charlemagne in 800 AD, when he was crowned the Ruler of the Holy Roman Empire which was neither holy nor Roman, Charles V who at 19 inherited most of Europe in the early 16th century, Napoleon around 1800 and others, but God ends each one of them.

In the case of Charles V a number of obstacles were put in place to thwart his power hungry attempt at total dominance. Firstly the Reformation commenced by Martin Luther in 1517. He had political enemies in the form of Francis I of France who constantly tried to break up the Empire, and Suleiman the Magnificent of Turkey. At the age of 55 Charles retired to a monastery. His son Philip II of Spain tried to attack England with the Spanish Armada but was foiled by a storm.

Napoleon's attempt at universal rule was thwarted by a disastrous campaign in Spain, the retreat from Moscow, and finally by fatal uncharacteristic errors at the battle of Waterloo, for even then he could have won. Hitler was the last and most dramatic of these evil men, and he should have won the Second World War, indeed it is baffling why he did not, until you consider the angelic conflict. At crucial times he made fatal blunders in directions given to his generals, with satanic narcissism ankle tapping his success with self destructive and finally fatal force. God's hand alone can explain the interventions that stopped Hitler winning as he should have, given his power and his armed force's ability.

In verse 8 Daniel considered the ten horns and correlated them to the ten toes of Daniel 2. The wild beasts in this chapter related to its power and speed whereas the statue dealt with its political unity. Out of the ten horns comes a little horn who is the Antichrist who destroys three of the kings. He is a genius as shown by the phrase "he has eyes like the eyes of a man". He is John later writes, Satan possessed, and is a tremendous orator who is blasphemous about God.

The background to the Antichrist is given in Revelation 13, 17, and his death in Revelation 19. It is noted in 2 Thessalonians 2 that his identity will not be fully or clearly and finally revealed until after the Christians are removed at the Rapture of the Church, after which the Holy Spirit returns to his mode of operation as it was under Israel.

APPLICATION

God causes the rise/fall of nations to deal with decadence and apostasy. Foolish people think they can defeat or avoid God's judgment, but they cannot, as the Assyrians were "swept away" with a flood, the Spanish Armada was defeated by the storm, Napoleon by the rain that delayed Waterloo, and Hitler by weather and his own arrogant miscalculations. God knew in eternity past who he would use in his plan, and what role that person will have in history. Without any violation of individual free will God rules at all points in history. Evil implodes! **Psalm 2:1ff.**

The greatest and worst form of Government is an absolute monarch or dictator. The example of the best form is Jesus Christ during his Millennial reign on earth, and in an unbelieving form that of Nebuchadnezzar or Caesar. An example of the worst would be Adolf Hitler. All evil Empires have been destroyed, and the last one will be directly destroyed by God.

Within the plan of God the free will action of unbelievers are all woven into the fabric of history. For instance the stability that Julius Caesar set up, gave protection for the Lord Jesus Christ and allowed the spread of Christianity. Alexander the Great provided the language of ultimate accuracy for the New Testament in his Koine Greek.

Unity and Peace will come, but it will be done in God's time, when it is called for under His plan, and the "Age of Gentiles" will only be over with the return of the Lord Jesus at the Second Advent.

DOCTRINES

CYRUS – PERSIAN SHEPERD [See page 46 above]

HEROD – POWER COMPLEX

1. SCRIPTURE - Matthew 2:1-19.

2. BIOGRAPHY

Herod was the greatest non-Roman of his time. Herod was an unbeliever who had a great effect on the life of Jesus Christ. Herod was the son of Antipas II who was in armed conflict with the last of the Hazmanean dynasty, a dynasty founded by Judas Macabbeas in 163 BC. Herod, from Idumea, lived in Petra, learning how to make money from the Nabateans who had discovered the way of sailing to India using the monsoons. He became very rich, When his father was assassinated by the Hazmanians, Herod ascended the Jewish throne. At 26 he was described as tall, handsome, very athletic and a great conversationalist as well as being very charming. He was a great hunter, wrestler and bowman yet never as a young man did he have a statue or coin made in his likeness as this would have offended the Jews. His concern for the Jews had been shown early in his reign in feeding them at his own expense for two years. The Jews repaid him by revolting against him. Herod was in the forefront of the political scene, backing Cassius and Brutus after the assassination of Julius Caesar in 15th March of 44 BC. They were defeated by Augustus at the battle of Philippi in 42 BC. He then backed Marc Anthony against Augustus. Marc Anthony was defeated at the battle of Actium in 31 BC. Herod, however, was confirmed as King of the Jews. After Augustus had been established on the throne of Rome, Herod was able to concentrate on pacifying his own country, including removing bandits from the caves of Galilee, thus preparing the area in which Jesus would grow up. Herod was the greatest builder of his day. He developed a standing army, the infantry being made up of Greeks and Celts with the cavalry coming from his homeland Idumea. He set up forts from Damascus to the Negev on top of the highest mountains, allowing for excellent communications across his kingdom. Four of these forts were within signalling distance of Jerusalem including one which was six kilometres from Bethlehem. In the last decade of his life, Herod became physically and mentally ill. He became paranoid about plots against his throne which culminated in his reaction when the Magi asked him where the baby born King of the Jews was to be found. Jesus was born some 18 months before the death of Herod, which occurred in the northern spring of 4 BC.

3. EVALUATION

- a) In Matthew 2 the Magi came from Babylon seeking the King of the Jews (Matthew 2:1).
- b) Herod was shocked by the Magi's question as he had not been born King of the Jews. He had, through his father, assumed power by coup d'etat (Matthew 2:2,3).
- c) The ruler shared his concern (Matthew 2:3).
- d) He called the religious leaders together (Matthew 2:4) and demanded where the Christ child should be born.
- e) His religious advisers tell him Bethlehem of Judea (Matthew 2:5,6) as this had been given in Micah 5:2. It's location was specified as there was Bethlehem of Zebulun in Galilee (Joshua 19:15,16).

- f) Herod sent them to Bethlehem asking to report back (Matthew 2:8).
- g) The Magi are given divine revelation that they should return to Babylon by a different route (Matthew 2:12).
- h) Herod's worship is seen in the systematic slaughter of the young children in Bethlehem (Matthew 2:16) aged two years and under.

4. PRINCIPLES

- a) God uses unbelievers in His plan. God rules and controls (Romans 9:17; Proverbs 8:15,16).
- b) God's history plan will continue despite the absolute opposition of the leadership of the country (Job 12:21).
- c) Herod had a tremendous opportunity to seek the Christ child and find salvation. Instead he tried to eliminate the Messiah.
- d) Physical strength, mental ability and charm in youth can degenerate in later life to create utter misery (Ecclesiastes 12:1-6).
- e) Spiritual beauty lasts forever, and should mature with age (1 Corinthians 13:13).
- f) Power and position are not a source of happiness. Power corrupts. Position can become a source of pride (Isaiah 1:23; Amos 5:12).
- g) God can miraculously protect believers even from powerful rulers. The Magi escaped even though Herod's communication system was the finest in the world (Daniel 6:23).

SECTION 34 - VISION OF THE SON OF MAN COMING IN THE CLOUDS Chapter 7:9-14

9 I beheld till the thrones were cast down, and the Ancient of days did sit, whose garment was white as snow, and the hair of his head like the pure wool: his throne was like the fiery flame, and his wheels as burning fire. 10 A fiery stream issued and came forth from before him: thousand thousands ministered unto him, and ten thousand times ten thousand stood before him: the judgment was set, and the books were opened. 11 I beheld then because of the voice of the great words which the horn spake: I beheld even till the beast was slain, and his body destroyed, and given to the burning flame. 12 As concerning the rest of the beasts, they had their dominion taken away: yet their lives were prolonged for a season and time. 13 I saw in the night visions, and, behold, one like the Son of man came with the clouds of heaven, and came to the Ancient of days, and they brought him near before him. 14 And there was given him dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all people, nations, and languages, should serve him: his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed.

KEY WORDS

Thrones	Korse	Seat, Throne
Cast Down	Remah	To cast, Throw down
Ancient	Attiq	Removed
Days	Yamim	Days
Garment	Lebush	Clothing
White	Chivvar	White
Snow	Telag	Snow
Hair	Sear	Hair
Head	Resh	Head
Pure	Neqe	Free, Innocent, Acquitted
Wool	Amar	Wool
Fiery	Nur	Fire
Flame	Shebib	Spark, Flame
Wheels	Galgal	A rolling thing, Wheel
Burning	Yequeda	Steadily burning
Stream	Nehar	A river
Issued	Negad	To go forth, To issue
Came	Nephaq	To come forth
Before	Qodam	What is before, The east
Thousand	Eleph	A thousand
Ministered	Shemash	To minister
Ten	Asar	Ten
Times	Iddam	An appointed time or season
Stood	Qum	To rise up, Stand firm
Judgment	Din	Judgment
Books	Sephar	Book, Writing
Opened	Pethach	To open
Beheld	Chazah	To see , View
Voice	Qal	Voice, Sound
Great	Rabrab	Abundant, Very great
Words	Millah	Word, Speech, Matter
Spake	Melal	To speak

Beast	Chaiyah	Living creature
Slain	Qetal	To slay
Body	Geshem	What is material
Destroyed	Abad	To be destroyed
Burning	Yeqedah	Steadily burning
Flames	Eshsha	Fire
Lives	Chayim	Life
Prolonged	Arekah	Length in lives was given
Season	Zeman	An appointed time or season
See	Chazah	To see in a vision
Night	Lelya	Night
Visions	Chezev	Vision, Aspect
Behold	Aru	Lo, See!
Son	Ben	Son
Man	Anash	A man, Mortal
Clouds	Anan	A cloud
Heaven	Shemayin	Heavens
Given	Yehab	To give place
Dominion	Sholtan	Rule, Dominion
Glory	Yeqar	Preciousness, Rarity
Kingdom	Maleku	Kingdom
People	Am	People
Nations	Ummah	A nation
Languages	Lishshan	Tongue
Serve	Pelach	To cleave, Break up, Till, Serve
Everlasting	Alam	Age, Age lasting
Pass Away	Adar	To pass by or on
Destroyed	Chabal	To be marred or corrupted.

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

In verse 9 John sees that all the thrones of men were cast down. All the empires, even the strongest ones are only temporary. Eventually God appears on His throne, a throne that appears to be on wheels and like fiery flame.

There is a similar description in **Ezekiel Chapter 1:26-27**, *“And above the firmament that was over their heads was the likeness of a throne, as the appearance of a sapphire stone: and upon the likeness of the throne was the likeness as the appearance of a man above upon it. 27 And I saw as the colour of amber, as the appearance of fire round about within it, from the appearance of his loins even upward, and from the appearance of his loins even downward, I saw as it were the appearance of fire, and it had brightness round about.”*

In that chapter it also talks about a throne with wheels which was a common feature of thrones at this time. The picture of God on the throne is similar to that of the Lord Jesus Christ in Revelation Chapter 1:13-14, *“And in the midst of the seven candlesticks one like unto the Son of man, clothed with a garment down to the foot, and girt about the paps with a golden girdle. 14 His head and his hairs were white like wool, as white as snow; and his eyes were as a flame of fire;”*

In verse 10 we see a countless throng in front of the throne from which a stream of fire or judgement issued. Many were ministering to Him, others were standing before him to be judged. These are the unbelievers being judged according to their works – they rejected Jesus’ work for them, and so quite fairly they are asked to prove that their works were superior to those of Jesus – for that is what their arrogant rejection of Jesus must have meant.....

The last judgment is given in **Revelation 20:11-15** which states, *“11. And I saw a great white throne, and him that sat on it, from whose face the earth and the heaven fled away; and there was found no place for them. 12 And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened: and another book was opened, which is the book of life: and the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works. 13 And the sea gave up the dead which were in it; and death and hell delivered up the dead which were in them: and they were judged every man according to their works. 14 And death and hell were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death. 15 And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire.”*

In verse 11 the death of the Antichrist is seen. He had spoken great blasphemies against God. On the Lord’s return to the earth at the Second Advent the Antichrist is caught, killed and thrown into the Lake of Fire as described in Revelation 19:20, *“And the beast was taken, and with him the false prophet that wrought miracles before him, with which he deceived them that had received the mark of the beast, and them that worshipped his image. These both were cast alive into a lake of fire burning with brimstone.”*

Verse 12 reviews the fate of the four empires represented by the wild animals. Daniel saw that each of the “evil empires” were overthrown and their dominant role removed, but a remnant of those societies survived. This was in contrast with the previous dominant power Assyria, which in 612 BC had been totally destroyed by the alliance under the Chaldeans, the head of gold. Many from each group will be saved, from the very midst of the evil forces, demonstrating at each point in history that the power of the Holy Spirit to convict and lead any to salvation is absolute. **John 16:8-11, 2 Peter 3:9.**

In verses 13 we now look at God putting all enemies under the foot of Christ. The clouds of heaven are often angels as seen in Acts 1:9. The fact that they are creatures is shown in the statement, "they brought him near before him". The result of the interview with the Father who is the Planner, is that the Lord Jesus Christ is given control over all people on the earth of peoples, nations and languages. These members of the human race will serve him.

Unlike the empires of verse 12 this kingdom and empire is everlasting. Its dominion is said to be everlasting and the kingdom will not be destroyed again, showing that Jesus Christ as the Son of David, the King of the Jews will fulfil the Davidic Covenant in the Millennium. God is to be victorious in the end – there is no doubt – "it is written".

APPLICATION

There is only one permanent thing in this universe and that is the Plan of God. If one is in the Plan of God you have eternal life. The whole universe will pass away, but the Word/Plan of God abides unchanged forever.

Jesus Christ is and always has been God. He is the Saviour, but He is also the Judge. Empires will rise and fall. They will have an allotted time of domination and greatness, but moral decadence and spiritual apostasy will eventually destroy them all, and dominion will be given to others in turn, until the last Gentile Empire of the Anti-Christ falls.

God keeps His promises. What He says he will do, and it will be done precisely, and in full. The Word will be fulfilled.

DOCTRINES

ANTICHRIST – WORLD RULER

1. SCRIPTURES - Daniel 7:8,21-26; 8:23-25; 9:26,27; 11:36-45; 2 Thessalonians 2:1-12; Revelation 13:1-18; 17:16,17; 19:19,20.

2. BIOGRAPHY

The Antichrist is the world ruler who will emerge as a violently anti-God despot, who will emerge after the removal of God's church. He comes from the gentile nations (the sea) in the last times. His power base will be a ten nation empire closely related to the old Roman Empire known as the Revived Roman Empire. The Antichrist is very clever and infiltrates by means of a peace campaign. He is, however, very hungry for power and once he wrests power from his subjects, he destroys the apostate religious system which has been working closely with him until then. He makes a covenant with Israel, allowing them to sacrifice in the temple, but eventually sets himself up to be worshipped as God in the temple. His reign of almost seven years duration becomes increasingly and openly anti-God, involving signs and wonders. He has a close relationship with the false prophet, the leader of Israel at that time. At the end of his empire he moves on Jerusalem, which is being held by believers. Jesus Christ returns at the second advent to deliver those in Jerusalem and capture the Antichrist and false prophet, throwing them into the lake of fire.

3. EVALUATION

- a) The Antichrist arises out of the Gentile nations with the final empire of ten nations (Revelation 13:1).
- b) The seven heads are seven mountains which speaks of Rome (Revelation 17:9).
- c) There are seven kings: five are fallen, one is, and one is to come (Revelation 17:10). These are empires - the five that are fallen are Egypt, Assyria, Chaldea, Persia and Greece. The one in existence in 96 AD (when John wrote Revelation) was Rome, and the one to come is the Revived Roman Empire.
- d) The ten horns are ten future kingdoms which receive power for a short time. (Revelation 17:12).
- e) He rules empires (Revelation 13:2; cf. Daniel 7:4-6).
- f) His power is from Satan (Revelation 13:2; cf. Revelation 20:2).
- g) Satan gives Antichrist the world empire (Revelation 13:2).
- h) Satanic worship is a key part of Antichrist's regime (Revelation 13:4,8).
- i) He is a great orator. He is anti-God and has power for 3 1/2 years (Revelation 13:5).
- j) His empire becomes a world empire (Revelation 13:7).
- k) The dictator of Palestine who is demon possessed ("the false prophet") promotes him (Revelation 13:11).
- l) Great wonders and miracles are a feature of this empire (Revelation 13:13).
- m) A statue of the Antichrist is constructed. It has the ability to speak. Worship of it is compulsory on the pain of death (Revelation 13:14,15).
- n) The Antichrist controls the world economy by marking members of the human race on the forehead or on the right hand (Revelation 13:16,17; cf. Revelation 14:9-11).
- o) His number is 666, a number which represents "perfect man" or "perfect sin" (Revelation 13:18).
- p) He will not be revealed until the restrainer is removed (2 Thessalonians 2:3-7)
- q) The Antichrist's rule features power, signs and lying wonders from Satan himself (2 Thessalonians 2:9).
- r) He deceives the unbeliever (2 Thessalonians 2:10-12).
- s) The Antichrist is destroyed and thrown into the lake of fire at the second advent (Revelation 19:19,20).

4. PRINCIPLES

- a) Satan is the ruler of this world (John 16:11).
- b) World domination and internationalism is Satanic in origin (Genesis 11:6-9).
- c) Miracles, signs and lying wonders are strategies employed by Satan to deceive (John 8:44).

- d) Economic control of the individual enslaves that individual (Proverbs 22:7).
- e) Ultimately vast power creates the delusion that the person in control is God (Genesis 3:5; Isaiah 14:13,14).
- f) The antichrist will not be revealed until after the Rapture of the Church when the Holy Spirit who restrains him (and indwells all Christians) will be removed from the world (2 Thessalonians 2:3-7)
- g) A few years of power is not worth an eternity of suffering.
- h) Eventually man must account to Jesus Christ as his judge if he does not accept Jesus Christ as Saviour (Revelation 20:12-15).
- i) At a point, people become so hardened to God that God gives them over to their own delusions (2 Thessalonians 2:11, Romans 1:28).
- j) The Antichrist is a person, not to be confused with the many antichrists of (1 John 2:18) or the "spirit of antichrist" of (1 John 4:3)

5. In the Tribulation there will be a counterfeit trinity with Satan (father), the Antichrist (son) and False Prophet (spirit).

6. Names given to the Antichrist:-

- a) The seed of Satan (Genesis 3:15)
- b) The little horn (Daniel 7:8)
- c) The king of fierce countenance (Daniel 8:23)
- d) The prince that shall come (Daniel 9:26)
- e) The desolater (Daniel 9:27)
- f) The wilful king (Daniel 11:36)
- g) The man of sin (2 Thessalonians 2:3)
- h) The son of perdition (2 Thessalonians 2:3)
- i) The lawless one (2 Thessalonians 2:8)
- j) The Antichrist (1 John 2:22)
- k) The beast (Revelation 11:7)

7. Characteristics

- a) He is called the seed of Satan (Genesis 3:15). Just as Jesus Christ had a supernatural birth being born of a virgin, it may be that there will be something supernatural about the birth of the Antichrist. It is likely that Satan will impregnate a human woman and thus be the father of the Antichrist in a similar way to the angelic infiltration of (Genesis 6:2)
- b) In (Daniel 9:26) he is said to be of the people who destroyed the Temple. The Roman Empire destroyed the Temple in 70 AD. The Antichrist may therefore be of Roman origin.
- c) The identity of the man of sin will not be clear until the start of the Tribulation, although he may be fairly prominent in politics prior to that period. He will not be revealed until after the Rapture of the Church when the Holy Spirit who restrains him (and indwells all Christians) will be removed from the world (2 Thessalonians 2:3-7). In the middle of the Tribulation, he sets himself in the Temple calling himself God (v4-8).
- d) In (Daniel 9:27) the start of the Tribulation is marked by the signing of a seven year covenant between the Antichrist and the nation of Israel. When Israel signs the covenant, God issues a decree of destruction against the whole earth (Isaiah 28:14-22) - the judgments of the book of Revelation. The Antichrist is shown as the rider on the white horse of (Revelation 6:1) who brings the promise of (false) peace.
- e) The rise of the Antichrist to power:-
 - i) In (Daniel 8:23-25) he is seen as a skilful leader, involved in the occult power (v23), will war against the Jews (v24), and will rise to power through deceit (v25).
 - ii) In (Daniel 11:36-39) he shall do what he wants, claiming to be God and exalting himself (v36), he will repudiate all religious practices from his ancestors (v37). He however will honour a god whom his ancestors did not know (v38) who assists him to power (v39), this god being Satan. He will accept the offer of the kingdoms of the world which our Lord refused in the wilderness.
 - iii) In (2 Thessalonians 2:8-9) we are told that his coming is according to the energising of Satan accompanied by miracles, signs and wonders.
 - iv) During the first half of the Tribulation, he gains political control of the ten groups that make up a One World Government. This includes the removal of three of the ten leaders (Daniel 7:23-24, Revelation 17:12-17)
 - v) He also destroys the One World Church ("Mystery Babylon") that has operated in the first half of the Tribulation (Revelation 17:5,16.) In (Revelation 11) he is able to kill the two witnesses who have been causing him major problems. They however will be resurrected much to his dismay.
 - f) The death and resurrection of the Antichrist .In (Daniel 11:40-45) he kills the Kings of the North, South and East. and in (v 45) he will come to his end and none shall help him. However in (Revelation 13:3) he receives a fatal wound but the fatal wound is healed. This suggests that the Antichrist dies and is resurrected by the power of Satan. This miracle deceives the world that the Antichrist is god and the world now worships him.
 - g)

8. The Abomination of Desolation:-

- i) This occurs in the middle of the Tribulation when the covenant with Israel is broken (Daniel 9:27)
- ii) It continues for a period of 1290 days (Daniel 12:11). (Apparently staying for 30 days after the end of the Tribulation, since the second half lasts for 1260 days). This passage also indicates that the abomination involves a statue/image being set up.
- iii) It is a warning sign for the Jews to flee to the mountains (Matthew 24:15-16). It is said to be standing in the Holy Place.
- iv) It is associated with the Gentile takeover of temple in Jerusalem (Revelation 11:1-2).

- v) The Antichrist will sit in the Temple of God claiming to be God in (2 Thessalonians 2:3-4)
 - vi) The Antichrist does not stay in the Temple but he is replaced by a living image of him by the False Prophet (Revelation 13:11-15).
 - h) The Mark of the Beast (666) is associated with the Antichrist. Just as the Holy Spirit seals the believer, the mark of the beast is the seal of the Antichrist on the unbeliever (Revelation 13:16-18). The mark permits people to buy or sell.
 - i) The number 666 has several characteristics.
 - i) It is the name of the beast.
 - ii) It is the number of his name.
 - iii) It is the number of the beast.
 - iv) It is the number 666
- The numerical name of the Antichrist should equal 666.
- j) The consequences of receiving the mark. Accepting the mark is to accept the Antichrist as God thus irrevocably rejecting the true God. Any person who accepts the mark forfeits his chance to be saved. He will be subject to a specific judgment (Revelation 16:1-2) and is destined to spend eternity in the Lake of Fire (Revelation 14:9-12).
 - k) The fall of the Antichrist will come in conjunction with the Armageddon campaign. According to (2 Thessalonians 2:8) the first casualty of this last battle will be the Antichrist. He will be cast alive into the Lake of Fire (Revelation 19:19- 21).

FOOTSTOOL

1. General Scriptures: (Psalm 110:1; Hebrews 1)
2. The footstool was set up so that the enemy of the conquering Roman general passed under it in complete submission.
3. Israel under the dispersion no longer represents Christ on this earth.
4. Israel is replaced by the Church, the Body of Christ. (Acts 2:47; 1 Corinthians 12:12-14; Ephesians 1:22,23; 2:16; 4:4,5; 5:23;24,30-32; Colossians 1:18,24; 2:19)
5. The Body of Christ is being completed by entering every believer of the Church into union with Christ. (Hebrews 2:10; Romans 11:25).
6. When the Body is completed, the Rapture of the Church occurs. (1 Thessalonians 4:13-18)
7. Then the Body becomes the Bride and is prepared for accompanying Christ to the judgment at the Second Advent by:-
 - a) the Bride receiving a resurrection body like Christ's. (1 Corinthians 15:51-57; Philippians 3:21; 1 John 3:1,2)
 - b) The Bride's sinful nature being removed. (Philippians 3:21)
 - c) The Bride cleansed from human good. (1 Corinthians 3:12-15).
8. The bride returns in triumph with Christ at the Second Advent. (1 Thessalonians 3:13; Revelation 19:6-8).
9. Then follows the Footstool:
 - a) Satan imprisoned (Revelation 20:1-3)
 - b) Demons removed from the earth (Zechariah 13:2; 1 Corinthians 15:24,25; Colossians 2:15).
10. The removal of the demons changes the environment of the earth and causes perfect conditions during the Millennium.
 - a) Religion removed. (1 Corinthians 10:20,21)
 - b) False doctrine removed. (1 Timothy 4:1)
 - c) Perfect environment restored.
11. The final footstool is at the Last Judgement when all the unbelievers are judged and cast into the lake of fire. (Revelation 20:11-15)

SECTION 35 - THE DEFINITION OF THE FOUR BEASTS Chapter 7:15-18

15 I Daniel was grieved in my spirit in the midst of my body, and the visions of my head troubled me. 16 I came near unto one of them that stood by, and asked him the truth of all this. So he told me, and made me know the interpretation of the things. 17 These great beasts, which are four, are four kings, which shall arise out of the earth. 18 But the saints of the most High shall take the kingdom, and possess the kingdom for ever, even for ever and ever.

KEY WORDS

Grieved Kera To be pierced

EVANGELICAL BIBLE COLLEGE OF WESTERN AUSTRALIA

Spirit	Ruach	Spirit
Midst	Gav	Back, Body, Midst
Body	Nidneh	Sheath
Visions	Chezev	Vision, Aspect
Head	Resh	Head
Troubled	Behal	To trouble, Hasten
Came Near	Qereb	To come near
One	Chad	One
Stood	Qum	To rise up, Stand firm
Asked	Bea	To inquire
Truth	Yetseb	To be set up, Certain, True
Told	Amar	To say
Interpretation	Peshar	Interpretation, Explanation
Great	Rabrab	Very great, Abundant
Beasts	Chaiyah	Living creatures
Four	Arba	Four
Kings	Melek	King
Arise	Qum	Arise
Earth	Ara	Earth
Saints	Qaddish	Set apart, Separate
Most High	Illai	Most high
Kingdom	Maleku	Kingdom
Take	Qebel	To accept, Take, Receive
Possess	Chasan	To strengthen, Possess
For Ever	Alema	From age even unto age

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

It is of interest that Daniel, who is very disturbed by this vision, is deeply stressed in his body, with significant physical symptoms of stress. So often people talk about "out of body experiences", but Daniel is very much in his physical body, and the prophetic truth powerfully hurts him. The vision which he sees is in his head, but every cell of his body aches at its significance. He is thinking about it and sees periods of great turmoil, carnage, and conflict ahead for mankind.

In verse 17 he came near to one of the teaching angels as to what all these visions meant and the angel told him the interpretation of the vision. The angel tells him that these gentile empires are successive kingdoms that will come out of the Kingdom of Man, but after this, those related to God will take over the kingdom, and that kingdom will be eternal.

APPLICATION

The Lord Jesus Christ said in **Matthew 24:6-8**, "There will be wars and rumours of wars until I come". Victory is certain!

In the Kingdom of man there will never be peace, until the Kingdom of God is established at the Second Advent of Christ.

The Kingdom of God alone will be eternal peace. Satan promises to bring peace, but he can only bring more carnage.

DOCTRINES

CHRIST: SECOND ADVENT

There are a number of concepts related to the Second Coming of Christ. Some of them are

- 1) Spoken of by all major Old Testament prophets. (Zechariah 14:4)
- 2) Promises to Israel fulfilled.
- 3) Great White Throne Judgment (after Millennium) - unbelievers. (Matthew 25:31, Revelation 20:12-15).
- 4) Christ the Messiah to Israel (Daniel 9:25)
- 5) Radical changes in nature. (Romans 8:19-22)
- 6) Church comes back to earth (1 Thessalonians 3:13) 4:17)
- 7) Many details of prophecy yet to be fulfilled. (Revelation Chapters 6-19)
- 8) Time of terror for unbeliever. (Revelation 6:15-17)
- 9) Christ will come back to earth (Zechariah 14:4)

- 10) Public - every eye shall see him (Revelation 1- 7)
- 11) It occurs after the tribulation.
- 12) Unbelievers taken off the earth (Matthew 24:37-42)
- 13) Removal of Satan (Revelation 20:1-3)

SECTION 36 - EXPLANATION OF THE FOURTH BEAST Chapter 7:19-28

19 Then I would know the truth of the fourth beast, which was diverse from all the others, exceeding dreadful, whose teeth were of iron, and his nails of brass; which devoured, brake in pieces, and stamped the residue with his feet; **20** And of the ten horns that were in his head, and of the other which came up, and before whom three fell; even of that horn that had eyes, and a mouth that spake very great things, whose look was more stout than his fellows. **21** I beheld, and the same horn made war with the saints, and prevailed against them; **22** Until the Ancient of days came, and judgment was given to the saints of the most High; and the time came that the saints possessed the kingdom. **23** Thus he said, The fourth beast shall be the fourth kingdom upon earth, which shall be diverse from all kingdoms, and shall devour the whole earth, and shall tread it down, and break it in pieces. **24** And the ten horns out of this kingdom are ten kings that shall arise: and another shall rise after them; and he shall be diverse from the first, and he shall subdue three kings. **25** And he shall speak great words against the most High, and shall wear out the saints of the most High, and think to change times and laws: and they shall be given into his hand until a time and times and the dividing of time. **26** But the judgment shall sit, and they shall take away his dominion, to consume and to destroy it unto the end. **27** And the kingdom and dominion, and the greatness of the kingdom under the whole heaven, shall be given to the people of the saints of the most High, whose kingdom is an everlasting kingdom, and all dominions shall serve and obey him. **28** Hitherto is the end of the matter. As for me Daniel, my cogitations much troubled me, and my countenance changed in me: but I kept the matter in my heart.

KEY WORDS

Truth	Yetseb	To be set up, Certain, True
Fourth	Rebii	Fourth
Beast	Chaiyah	Living creature
Diverse	Shena	To be changed, Different
Exceeding	Yattir	Exceeding, Abundant
Dreadful	Dechal	To be afraid, Terrible
Teeth	Shen	A tooth
Iron	Parzel	Iron
Nails	Tephar	Nails
Brass	Nechash	Brass, Copper
Devoured	Akal	To eat, Consume, Devour
Broke	Deqaq	To beat small
Stamped	Rephas	To spread out, Stamp
Residue	Shear	Remnant, Rest
Feet	Regal	Foot
Ten	Asar	Ten
Horns	Qeren	Horn
Head	Resh	Head
Come Up	Seleq	To come up
Three	Telath	Three
Fell	Nephal	To fall
Eyes	Ayin	Eye
Mouth	Pum	Mouth
Speak	Melal	To speak
Great Things	Rabrab	Very great
Stout	Rab	Many, Much, Abundant, Great
Fellows	Chabrah	Companion
Beheld	Chazah	To see, View
Same	Dikkin	This
War	Qerab	A drawing near, Conflict, War
Saints	Qaddish	Set apart, Separate, Holy
Prevailed	Yekil	To be able
Ancient	Attiq	Removed
Days	Yamim	Days
Judgement	Din	Judgment

Time	Zeman	Time, Seasons
Possessed	Chasan	To strengthen, Possess
Kingdom	Maleku	Kingdom
Fourth	Rebii	Fourth
Beast	Chaiyah	Living creature
Earth	Ara	Earth
Whole	Kol	All, Whole, Entire
Tread	Dush	To break down
Break	Deqaq	To break small
Shall Arise	Qum	To rise up
Subdue	Shephal	To make low or humble
Speak	Melal	To speak
Words	Millah	Word, Speech, Matter
Against	Tsad	Concerning
Wear	Bela	To wear out, Trouble
Most High	Illai	Most high
Saints	Qaddish	Set apart, Holy, Separate
Think	Sebar	To hope, Purpose
Change	Shena	To double, Alter
Times	Zeman	Times, Seasons
Laws	Dath	Law, Sentence
Given	Yehab	To be given
Hand	Yad	Hand
Time	Iddam	An appointed time or season
Sit	Yethib	To sit down or still
Take Away	Adah	To cause to pass away or on
Dominion	Sholtan	Rule, Dominion
Consume	Shemad	To cut off, Lay waste
Destroy	Abad	Destroy
Greatness	Rebu	Greatness
Whole	Kol	All, The whole, Entire
Serve	Pelach	To cleanse, Break up, Till, Serve
Obey	Shema	To be hearing, Harkening
End	Soph	End, Rear, Last
Matter	Millar	Matter, Speech, Word
Cogitations	Rayon	Thought, Sadness
Troubled	Behal	To hasten, To trouble
Countenance	Ziv	Brightness, Countenance
Changed	Shena	To be changed
Kept	Netar	To keep watch
Matter	Millah	Word, Speech, Matter
Heart	Leb	The Heart

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

Daniel was particularly curious regarding the fourth and final beast with its ferocity and the ten horns and the little horn.

In verse 19 Daniel notes that this beast is different from all its predecessors in its tenacious ferocity, and its effect in the longer term on believers. It is particularly ferocious and unlike any animal that Daniel had ever seen.

In verse 20 he notes the ten horns and the little horn which comes up and is impressed by the fact that the little horn is in fact stronger than the other horns. This is a fact borne out in Revelation chapter 17, where the ten rulers give allegiance to the Antichrist as their leader.

Revelation 17:12 – 14 says, *“And the ten horns which thou sawest are ten kings, which have received no kingdom as yet; but receive power as kings one hour with the beast. 13 These have one mind, and shall give their power and strength unto the beast. 14 These shall make war with the Lamb, and the Lamb shall overcome them: for he is Lord of lords, and King of kings: and they that are with him are called, and chosen, and faithful”*.

The word “stout” is the word Rab, which means great, Abundant, Much or Many, indicating controlling dominating and terror inducing power. Daniel sees the little horn as evil. He makes war against believers and overpowers them, which is what Revelation 17:14 confirms. In verse 22 the tables are turned and the rule of the Antichrist is broken by the return of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the setting up of the Millennial Kingdom.

In verses 23 and 24 we have the rise of the Antichrist. It is noted that this final fourth stage, which started with the Roman Empire actually represents unbridled Imperialism during the period up to the Second Advent of Christ. The two legs in Daniel 2 represent a split between east and west, and a balance of power which eventually will be broken, and a one world government will be formed. It is formed, but it cannot hold, due to the basis of its power, which is self centered evil on the part of all its key players. Self centered men do not combine well for long, for self interest pushes them apart.

It is noted that textually the world “falls under” a one world government, as the Bible says that it will, “devour the whole earth”. Thus the ultimate form of the fourth beast is a one world government which will be divided into ten kingdoms or regions. Even though the “entire earth” is referred to and Anti-Christ achieves this, it is only tenuous, incomplete, and falls apart quite quickly under the assault of individual sector self interest. Satan doesn't/can't do team work!

CLUB OF ROME – It is of interest that a group of a hundred men from at least 25 nations came together to form this group in the 1970's. Their leader, Dr Peccei, stated that, "The only possible way to make these decisions is to take a global approach. A New International Order will have to be established, not just in the economic sphere, but in social and political areas". The Club of Rome interestingly originally divided the world into ten sections:

- (a) North America.
- (b) Western Europe.
- (c) Japan.
- (d) Israel, South Africa and Australasia. (South Africa now to Africa, Israel to Middle East, with Pacifica for rest)
- (e) Eastern Europe, including Russia.
- [f] Latin America.
- (g) North Africa and the Middle East.
- (h) Main Africa.
- (i) South and South-East Asia.
- [j] Central Asia, including China.

The Club's solutions to global problems were:

- (a) A global approach to the problems of mankind.
- (b) Investment aid rather than commodity aid, except food.
- (c) Balanced economic development in all regions.
- (d) Effective population policies.
- (e) Worldwide diversification of industry with a global village of inter-dependancy – for ease of manipulation.

UN Agenda 21, and now “Agenda 2030”, speak of “Sustainable Development Goals”, in the same way as the Club of Rome, and are the natural inheritors of their work to unify governments under centralized economic/political control.

With the fall of the eastern block, the threat of terrorism, rogue states with nuclear weapons, pandemics, and the global financial crises, the pressure towards global solutions are increasing, and the initial ten divisions have re-ordered themselves. We can see that nations are now ready to give up sovereignty to achieve safety/stability, and that is the catch cry of the Anti-Christ, and it will soon be accepted by the vast majority. Not all however, **Daniel 11:41**. Note that it is chaos that leads to the satanic false form of unity; and yet it is the satanic forces that created the chaos....

The interpretation of the ten kings as Western Europe only, or a Revived Roman Empire in the older parts of Europe, would appear not to be fully correct, although the Antichrist will have a political and religious power base in New Rome and will come from Roman Empire stock as we will see in Daniel chapter 9. It is a world wide ten power-group network.

The rest of the chapter concludes with the Antichrist, who will have a level of rulership (rather domination) over the earth for three and a half years, and it describes his removal of three regional leaders, his severe persecution of believers, and final demise prior to the setting up of the divine kingdom by the returning Lord.

In verse 28, Daniel records that having understood the vision and the implications of it, he now wrote it down but did not tell others about it. The Aramaic ends at this point in the book, the Hebrew starting from this point linguistically indicating that God is taking up Israel again. The very language shift indicates the prophetic truth – God isn't finished with Israel – the “Times of the Gentiles” only ends with Messiah's return.

APPLICATION

At times in history the wicked will be allowed to fight and prevail for a time against believers. **Hebrews 4:14-16**.

God sometimes allows believers to become martyrs, as seen in the fifth seal of **Revelation 6:9-11**, “*And when he had opened the fifth seal, I saw under the altar the souls of them that were slain for the word of God, and for the testimony which they held: 10. And they cried with a loud voice, saying, How long, O Lord, holy and true, dost thou not judge and avenge our blood on them that dwell on the earth? 11. And white robes were given unto every one of them; and it was said unto them, that they should rest yet for a little season, until their fellow servants also and their brethren, that should be killed as they were, should be fulfilled.*”

One of the questions often asked is, “Will we in the Church Age surely know who the Antichrist is?” The answer is “no”.

A study of **2 Thessalonians 2:3-4** would appear to indicate that the church will be removed prior to the final revealing of the demonically indwelt world ruler. Let us examine this passage carefully, as it discusses things that we are starting to see unfold, but how far into the process we see is a matter of useless debate. We are to do what the Lord directs, not debate. Talking about the Tribulation period Paul in Verse 3 says, “*Let no man deceive you by any means: for that day shall not come, except there come a falling away first, and that man of sin be revealed, the son of perdition; 4. Who opposeth and exalteth himself above all that is called God, or that is worshipped; so that he as God sitteth in the temple of God, shewing himself that he is God.*”

He says that there will be a massive “falling away or apostasy” in the churches world wide prior to it, and the Antichrist will be revealed. It is noted that the technical start of the Tribulation is the signing of a treaty between Israel and the Antichrist; and so at that point it will be absolutely clear who he is, but until that treaty he may have hidden behind others in the Western “leadership team”. Israel is a militarily strong nation now, but the Antichrist is not yet revealed.

Paul then tells the Thessalonians to remember that evil is being restrained in verses 5-7, *“Remember ye not, that, when I was yet with you, I told you these things? 6 And now ye know what withholdeth that he might be revealed in his time. 7 For the mystery of iniquity doth already work: only he who now letteth will let, until he be taken out of the way.”*

It is noticed that there is a restrainer of evil operating in the world, and that it is a person. The restrainer is either the Arch-angel Michael (the divinely appointed protector of Israel) and/or the Holy Spirit. In this age all believers are permanently indwelt by the Holy Spirit [John 14:16,17, 16:8-11], so when the Church membership is withdrawn from the earth at the Rapture, the Holy Spirit withdraws back to his form of operation under the Age of Israel.

There is also evidence in other passages that Michael “stands back” through the early years of the Great Tribulation and allows Israel to be attacked, with-holding his protection from unbelieving Israel, but at the time appointed by God’s Plan, when they repent (Zechariah 12:10ff, Psalm 106), he “stands up” and fights again to protect them, and ushers in the last acts of the Great Tribulation that lead to the Lord’s Second Advent. Daniel 12:1ff.

In 2 Thessalonians Chapter 2, Paul continues in verse 8 to say, “And then shall that Wicked be revealed, whom the Lord shall consume with the spirit of his mouth, and shall destroy with the brightness of his coming”. This shows that the final clear and certain revealing of the Antichrist will only occur after the Rapture of the Church with the treaty signing.

The character of the Antichrist and his effect on the unbelievers in the Tribulation is then seen in verses 9-12, *“Even him, whose coming is after the working of Satan with all power and signs and lying wonders, 10. And with all deceivableness of unrighteousness in them that perish; because they received not the love of the truth, that they might be saved. 11. And for this cause God shall send them strong delusion, that they should believe a lie: 12. That they all might be damned who believed not the truth, but had pleasure in unrighteousness.”*

DOCTRINE

KINGDOM - MILLENNIAL KINGDOM [See page 47 above]

Notes

CHAPTER 8

DIVISION OF CHAPTER 8	Chapter eight of Daniel can be divided into two sections
VISION OF THE RAM AND GOAT	VERSES 1-14
MEANING OF THE VISION	VERSES 15-27

INTRODUCTION

The language with which Chapter 8 commences is Hebrew, rather than the Aramaic which has been used since Chapter 1. The subject matter now changes, and this is now the history of the Jews, so Hebrew is used, for they will "come back" and their language will be used again. We have literally lived through that time from 1948 - 2022.

The Gentile language, Aramaic, is used for the history of the Gentiles domination over Jerusalem and the Jews, but now as the shift moves back to Israel centre stage, Hebrew is used. From Daniel's day onwards Aramaic was the language used by most Jews, with Greek, then the various languages of their countries of dispersal. Only in the 20th century does Hebrew come back, and today it is the language of Israel. This is unprecedented, for an ancient language to be made the language of a modern State, after a gap of 2000 years in its usage, yet Daniel prophesies it by his use of it here!

The Babylonian captivity caused several important changes in Israel. Prior to the captivity the Shekinah glory was seen in the Temple, afterwards this manifestation of the presence of God was not. There is no Shekinah Glory for the entire Age of the Gentiles – the Lord will come to Zerubbabel's Temple, and he will return to the site at the Second Advent.

Prior to the captivity there were kings of David's line ruling over Israel. Afterwards there was no king over Israel. The only king who will rule over them will be the Lord Jesus Christ, when He commences His everlasting reign, starting on earth in the Millennium, Revelation 20, and continuing in the New Eternal Jerusalem, Revelation 21.

This chapter takes a segment out of history to make certain principles clear to us. Here we see the rise of the Persian Empire from 550 BC to 332 BC. We will see the ram, which is Persia, and the single horned hairy goat which is Greece. The development of the Greek empires are outlined here, including the exploits of Antiochus IV, the early prototype Antichrist, just as Hitler is the most recent. Satan has been allowed several "dry runs" at his ultimate "man of sin".

As is common in the Bible the vision is given and then the interpretation. In the last two verses of the chapter we have a personal conclusion as far as Daniel is concerned.

SECTION 37 - VISION OF THE RAM AND GOAT Chapter 8:1-14

1 In the third year of the reign of king Belshazzar a vision appeared unto me, even unto me Daniel, after that which appeared unto me at the first. **2** And I saw in a vision; and it came to pass, when I saw, that I was at Shushan in the palace, which is in the province of Elam; and I saw in a vision, and I was by the river of Ulai. **3** Then I lifted up mine eyes, and saw, and, behold, there stood before the river a ram which had two horns: and the two horns were high; but one was higher than the other, and the higher came up last. **4** I saw the ram pushing westward, and northward, and southward; so that no beasts might stand before him, neither was there any that could deliver out of his hand; but he did according to his will, and became great. **5** And as I was considering, behold, an he goat came from the west on the face of the whole earth, and touched not the ground: and the goat had a notable horn between his eyes. **6** And he came to the ram that had two horns, which I had seen standing before the river, and ran unto him in the fury of his power. **7** And I saw him come close unto the ram, and he was moved with choler against him, and smote the ram, and brake his two horns: and there was no power in the ram to stand before him, but he cast him down to the ground, and stamped upon him: and there was none that could deliver the ram out of his hand. **8** Therefore the he goat waxed very great: and when he was strong, the great horn was broken; and for it came up four notable ones toward the four winds of heaven. **9** And out of one of them came forth a little horn, which waxed exceeding great, toward the south, and toward the east, and toward the pleasant land. **10** And it waxed great, even to the host of heaven; and it cast down some of the host and of the stars to the ground, and stamped upon them. **11** Yea, he magnified himself even to the prince of the host, and by him the daily sacrifice was taken away, and the place of the sanctuary was cast down. **12** And an host was given him against the daily sacrifice by reason of transgression, and it cast down the truth to the ground; and it practised, and prospered. **13** Then I heard one saint speaking, and another saint said unto that certain saint which spake, How long shall be the vision concerning the daily sacrifice, and the transgression of desolation, to give both the sanctuary and the host to be trodden under foot? **14** And he said unto me, Unto two thousand and three hundred days; then shall the sanctuary be cleansed.

KEY WORDS

Third	Shalosh	Third
Year	Shanah	Year, A repetition

EVANGELICAL BIBLE COLLEGE OF WESTERN AUSTRALIA

Reign	Malekuth	Kingdom
King	Melek	King, Counsellor
Vision	Chazon	Vision
Appeared	Raah	To be seen
First	Techillah	Commenced, First
Saw	Raah	To be seen
Palace	Birah	Palace, Castle, Temple
Province	Medinah	Jurisdiction
Lifted	Nasa	To lift up, Bear, Carry away
Eyes	Ayin	Eye
Stood	Amad	To stand, Stand still or fast
Ram	Ayil	A ram
Two		not in original
Horns	Qeren	Horn
High, Higher	Gaboah	High, Haughty
Other	Shenith	Second, Other
Came up	Alah	To come up
Last	Acharon	Last, Later
Pushing	Nagach	To gore, Push
Westward	Yam	The sea
Northward	Tsaphon	North
Southward	Negeb	South
Beasts	Chaiyah	Living creature
Stand	Amad	Stand, Stand still or fast
Deliver	Netsal	To snatch away, Deliver
Hand	Yad	Hand
Will	Ratson	Good will, Pleasure
Considering	Bin	To cause to consider, Distinguish
Goat	Tsaphir	He goat
West	Maarab	Sun setting
Face	Panim	Face
Earth	Erets	Earth, Land
Touched	Naga	To touch, Come upon, Plague
Ground	Erets	Earth, Land
Ran	Ruts	To run
Fury	Chemah	Heat, Fury
Power	Koach	Power
Saw	Raah	To see, Consider, Behold, Look
Moved with Choler	Marar	To become bitter
Smote	Nakah	To cause to smite
Brake	Shabar	To break, Shiver
Power	Koach	Power
Cast Down	Shalak	To send, Cause to go.
Stamped	Ramas	To tread, Trample down
Deliver	Netsal	To snatch away, Deliver
Hand	Yad	Hand
Very Great	Gadol	Great
Strong	Atsam	To be substantial, Bony
Come Up	Alah	To come up
Four	Arba	Four
Winds	Ruach	Wind
Heaven	Shamayim	Heavens, Heaved up things
One	Echad	One
Little	Tsair	Little, Small
Horn	Qeren	Horn
Exceedingly	Yether	Superabundance, Excellency
East	Mizrach	Rising of the sun
Pleasant	Tsebi	Beauty, Desire
Host	Tsaba	Host, Warfare, Service
Cast Down	Naphal	To cause to fall
Stars	Kokab	A star
Magnified	Gadal	To make great
Prince	Sar	Head, Official, Captain
Daily	Tamid	Continual
Sacrifice	-	Understood, not in original
Taken Away	Rum	To be caused to go high
Sanctuary	Miqdash	Place set apart
Given	Nathan	To be given
Transgression	Pesha	Transgression, Rebellion

Truth	Emeth	Truth, Steadfastness
Practiced	Asah	To do, Make
Prospered	Tsaleach	To cause to go on prosperously
Heard	Shamea	To hear
Saint	Qadosh	Set apart, Separate, Holy
Speaking	Dabar	To speak
Certain	Palmoni	Such a one
Desolation	Shamen	To be desolate
Given	Nathan	To give
Sanctuary	Qodesh	Separation
Trodden	Mirmas	A treading
Thousand	Eleph	A thousand
Three	Shalosh	Three
Hundred	Meah	Hundred
Days	Ereb Boger	Evening and morning
Cleansed	Tsadaq	To become, Be counted righteous

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

The time of the vision is 546 BC, which was the third year of the reign of King Belshazzar. It will be remembered that the senior King, who was Nabonidus, went to the Oasis of Timna in Arabia leaving Belshazzar to run the Chaldean Empire as Co-Regent. We are, at the time of the vision, seven-ten years short of the end of the Empire, which concluded with the famous writing on the wall incident given in chapter 5.

In verse 2 we see the location where Daniel saw the vision. He was in Susa, in the province of Elam, on the banks of the river Ulai. Susa was one of the capitals of the Persian empire. Daniel must have been there on a diplomatic mission, possibly related to the attack of Cyrus upon the Lydians.

It was later the home of Nehemiah [Nehemiah 1:1] and was the place where much of the book of Esther occurred. [Esther 2:8] This mission may open up his dealings with Cyrus, and his support of him, and may lead to his and Queen Nitocris being side-lined by Belshazzar, who saw that they were "allies" of the Persians, for indeed they were, as God had made clear in the visions of both Isaiah and Daniel, that Cyrus would rule, and was indeed God's man to rule over the entire Middle East, and the land of Israel.

Susa was situated some 200 km east of Babylon. It was one of the most glamorous cities in the ancient world as portrayed by the excavations of the palace of Darius the Great there. The province of Elam was sacked by the Assyrians in 640 BC. Some of its inhabitants were transferred to Samaria. It was also the home province of Chedorlaomer one of the kings from the mountains in Genesis 14 who came and took Lot captive. So this province was already famous 1400 years prior to the time of Daniel.

The river Ulai was known by a number of names and was a major tributary of the Tigris, entering close to the Persian Gulf. The area Daniel was situated in for the vision was right in the western section of the land of the Medes and Persians, from where they will launch their assault on Lydia, and then Babylon itself. Why is he here, and why is it that the Lord gives him a vision right here? Persia has a part to play in the plan – but Daniel's part here is mysterious.

In verse 3 we see the two horned ram. It had unequal horns with the more prominent one coming up after. The two horns represent the Medes and the Persians. It is of interest that when a Persian king stood in front of his army which was going into battle it was his custom to remove his crown and replace it with a jewelled golden helmet with two horns.

The Medes and the Persians are one race. Originally the Medes were the predominant tribal group but eventually the Persians dominated through Cyrus. He firmly establishes the house of the Achaemenids. This family was not the ruling family but being strong from a military viewpoint eventually dominated the kingdom. From this house we have Cyrus. He was one of the greatest leaders of all time, with many strengths, but with the weakness of many great people - pride. Cyrus came into prominence after the Medes, hence the second horn coming up afterwards and eventually dominating.

His mother was Median, and so he was able to dominate without either group feeling he was insulting them; hence his two names also. He was very careful to ensure that no-one was persecuted for their racial or cultural background and he won the respect of all. As a military genius he won the admiration of all, including his enemies.

The Medes were originally the overlords of the Iranian plateau but about the time that Belshazzar was made ruler of Babylon, Cyrus the Persian had conquered the Medes and therefore became "higher" than the Medes. In the 540s he established alliances with the Scythians and secured his northern border, and dealt with the Lydians in the West, then in 539 BC he swept into Mesopotamia and with the taking of Babylon moved further, and conquered most of the Middle East. The ram came from the east and spread north, south, and westwards exactly as prophesied.

The ram is seen successfully pushing north, south and westwards did not push eastwards. Eventually Cyrus went east to confront the Mongolian Tribes and was killed while on that campaign. All the three groups which Cyrus conquered were deeply involved in demonism. For instance Croesus of Lydia was always consulting the mediums. In one famous case he was told by the demon possessed medium of the Oracle of Delphi, that if he crossed a certain river an empire would fall.

The oracle enigmatically said, "you will destroy a great empire". He assumed he would be successful in the battle but found, much to his frustration, that it was his empire that was destroyed. He survived and ate at Cyrus' table thereafter.

Cambridge Ancient History volume 4 says, "The Persian Empire also in the space of a single generation by a series of conquests that follow one another with a rapidity scarcely equalled except by Alexander the Great and the Arabs in the generation after Mohamed. The defeat of the Medes in 549 BC and of Croesus the Lydian in 546 BC, the capture of Babylon in 539 and the conquest of Egypt in 525 BC [this was by Cambyses not Cyrus] gave to the Persian Empire within 30 years and extent of empire in excess of the greatest monarch of Mesopotamia or Nile Valley and consequently greater than that of any earlier empire west of China."

In verse 5 we have the He Goat introduced. We have the Hebrew system of looking at a situation, where at first a summary of the story given and then the story is amplified. The "He Goat" represents the Greeks under Alexander. Alexander is the great single horn on the head of the goat.

His military achievements were very significant. He never turned down a battle nor lost one. He armed the original mixed Greek army from his own resources. The armament included artillery which could throw a 100 kg rock to 100 metres.

He started his military life by conquering the various Greek states and then uniting them in his army. He came from the west and went east. The Greeks were well known as infantry so while the Persians had good cavalry and chariots they relied on Greek mercenaries for their "shock troops" in the infantry. After the first major battle with the Persians, Alexander ordered the killing of all the Greek mercenaries as an example to others later. This had a significant affect on the strength of the Persians in future conflicts with him as the mercenaries all fled before battle and joined their Greek brethren before the first blows were struck, in order to save their own lives.

In verse 5 it says that his feet did not touch the ground. He fought 40 battles and marched over 30,000 kilometres with his troops in less than thirteen years. With never more than 40,000 crack troops he fought battles against armies in excess of 100,000 and won every time. Alexander was well versed in the classics and had memorized the Iliad and Odyssey. Near Troy he proceeded to recite from both extensive works to his troops before they crossed the Hellespont into Asia. This didn't slow them down! He had a sense of history and destiny – he knew he was "God's Man"...

About 60,000 Persians and Greek mercenaries met them and were defeated at Granicus in 334 BC. A group from his army then headed towards the Black Sea where they sacked a treasure city. Alexander now headed through the Sicilian Gates, a major pass in southern Turkey and arrived in Tarsus, later the Apostle Paul's home town, before returning to the mountains.

Darius III of Persia opposed him at Issus in 333 BC with over 100,000 men. In a couple of hours 60,000 Persians were dead and Alexander, with a numerically far inferior force, prevailed. In 331 BC he again defeated Darius III at the battle of Gaugamela, and here finally destroyed the last main army of the Persian Empire. Darius III was assassinated by Bessus, Satrap of Bactria, the following year. However Alexander attacked Bactria, executed Bessus and went on to burn Persepolis, one of the capitals of Persia, after a drunken party.

Alexander always went forward, even against the elephants of Porus, the ruler of the Punjab. In another battle in India his troops were having difficulty scaling the walls of a city so Alexander got a ladder and scaled the walls and led a successful onslaught, just as he had done at Tyre many years before. He had no fear of death, believing he was special to the gods. The great exploits of Alexander ended with his death in Babylon. [For some more details of Alexander the Great see doctrines below].

Of the 20 men he selected as his generals 18 became kings. The whole history of the world after Alexander's death relates to how these generals struggled for the empire for the next fifty years. Satanic pride characterizes them all.

In verse 8 the he goat "waxed very great" showing that Alexander became hugely powerful. It does not say that he was saved. He was great because he was a genius, and he had great moral-battle courage. He was always outnumbered but always won and went forward. When he was at the height of his strength the great horn was broken, which was the death of Alexander. The only place he had not conquered was Arabia. He was organising an attack on Arabia when the "fever" hit him and he died in 323 BC.

The Bible records however that he was "broken" by violence, indicating that he was killed/murdered, and recent evidence examined by a medical researcher indicates that he was indeed murdered by poison! Classical scholars had concluded before recent years that he died of alcoholism and fever, but the bible had said all along his death was violent murder!

For a while the object of the generals was to keep the empire together, but like all satanic men, inspired by their own lusts, they fought each other. This struggle lasted for about 20 years. The first dominant general was Antigonous the one eyed, and Demetrius his son. They almost succeeded but Lysimachus and Seluchus two other generals thwarted them by obtaining elephants from Porus the king of the Punjab in return for a chunk of the empire in the east. They defeated the father and son combination at the battle of Ipsus.

Eventually the empire was divided into four parts, Seleuchus taking Syria, Ptolomey took Egypt, Lysimichus and Cassander took Macedonia and other areas of Europe. Seleuchus was well known for his strength. One of the games they played in the field was to see how long a person was able to keep hold of a bull while others were goading it. If you

were gored by the bull you were disqualified. Seleucus was enormous and strong, and was renowned for being able to control a bull and invariably won the contests.

Ptolemy was one general who kept to the sidelines. He realised that the empire would not stay together, so he eventually went down to Egypt, stole Alexander's body and interred it in Egypt, and was the founder of the longest dynasty of the Greek empire with the last of the Greek rulers being Cleopatra who lived in the first century BC. He allowed the others to exhaust themselves and leave the money, power and fun for him to enjoy as a new Pharaoh.

From verse 9 we will follow Seleucus. He and Ptolemy, with their descendants, will be seen further in Chapter 11. Seleucus had 247 provinces to rule over. He lived until 281 BC. He was murdered by Ptolemy at a military reunion. His son Antiochus 1 had difficulties with the Gauls. Some had gone into France, Britain and Ireland but a number turned back and ended in the mountains of Asia Minor to form the Galatians, giving their name to the later Roman province to which Paul wrote one of his epistles.

The next ruler was Antiochus II. This is why we have so many Antioch's in the ancient world. In the ancient world there were 25 Antioch's and 50 Alexandria's. The king of the north was either Seleucus or Antiochus while the king of the south was always Ptolemy. They showed little imagination in naming their descendants! Pride was their weakness like all satanic power hungry men. "By their fruits you know the team they are on". **Matthew 7:13-23, Galatians 5:16-26.**

Antiochus III was very powerful and conquered all except the Romans. He would not have had problems with the Romans if he had not hired Hannibal. He died in the east. His son Seleucus IV hired a smart but self centred arrogant ruthless Greek called Heliodorus, who was a financial genius, but he murdered Seleucus to seize power for himself.

There now comes into history Antiochus IV who was a very famous general who had been trained in Rome. His lifestyle was too much for the Romans so he was moved over to Athens where he became very popular. It was here he heard that his brother had been assassinated. He resigned as a general in the Athenian empire and borrowed an army from the ruler of Pergamos, another of his group from the Rome military school. With his borrowed army he invaded Syria. When they saw him the populace welcomed him and Heliodorus left for exile, carrying a large amount of money.

Antiochus IV Epiphanes is said in this passage to have waxed strong towards the south, towards the east and towards the pleasant land. To the south is Egypt and in 169 BC the country was run by two of the least efficient generals of all time. These men planned an invasion of Syria but Antiochus made a pre-emptive strike and struck first, which no one had done in the last 160 years. He got through the northern defences and went down to Memphis.

He then headed towards Alexandria but the Romans did not want Egypt being controlled by the Seleucids. A Roman general met him in North Africa. He was another classmate from Rome and said to Antiochus not to cross the line drawn in the sand, that the Roman drew around him, and he knew he couldn't defeat Rome, and he was angry at this fact.

Antiochus now turned back and headed back home up through the land of Israel in frustrated rage. The Ptolemy's had not paid much attention to the Jews, and they were in effect autonomous. However when this Seleucid, Antiochus Epiphanes takes over he was determined to try and force upon the Jews Hellenistic culture and religion. This was contrary to their relationship with God and he hated them for their 'anti-modern' view. He is a true "Anti-Christ" figure.

v 9 - Antiochus Epiphanes went against the Parthians, to the east and fought against their king Mithradites. He reconquered most of the Persian empire with the exception of the entire Tigris Euphrates valley and southern Media which was being held by Timarchus. In 165 BC he moved east conquering as he went. He was successful in the east. He then went towards "the pleasant land", which is Israel.

He went in to Hellenize the people and undermine their loyalty to God and build instead loyalty to him. He despised the God of Israel, and he was "threatened" by worship of the true God, for he was a truly satanic man, who Satan gave great success to, but whose hatred of God was his weakness. There was a group of Jews in the land who practiced Greek culture but his relationship with them was not totally successful. He placed significant taxes on Israel. In 167 BC he made a golden statue of Zeus Olympias which in fact was a statue of himself with a beard, and he instructed it to be set up in the temple. It was called the "Abomination of Desolation". Jesus uses this term, as recorded in Matthew 24:15.

The Greeks placed it in the Holy of Holies and when the priests remonstrated with them they killed the priests. They took out the approved sacrifices and brought in a thousand pigs which they slaughtered on the altar. The blood of pigs was all over the Temple. Others complained in Jerusalem and a thousand children were slaughtered, and their blood was mixed with the pigs and priest's blood.

Under the Egyptians the Jews had had a high degree of autonomy but this outrage generated a war of independence with the most famous of the Jewish leaders being Judas Maccabaeus. The revolt commenced with a Seleucid army leader entering the village of Modin near Jerusalem. He sought out the priest, who was Judas' father, of the house of Asmonaeon, and ordered him to sacrifice a pig. The priest drew a knife and sacrificed the officer. This action was a sign for his five sons to draw weapons and dispatch the troops that had accompanied the officer.

Further forces were sent against them but were eliminated. The rebellion was violent and fraught with ups and downs, but eventually the Maccabees were successful. They reclaimed the Temple and cleansed it, offering animal sacrifices for

the first time in three and a half years. The cleansing was celebrated with processions of candles through the streets and the lighting of candles in all of the houses.

This started on what we now call Christmas Day, and went through to January 1 and became the annual Festival of Lights or Hanukkah. Thus commenced a period of independence for the Jews which lasted until they came under Roman control when Pompey the Great captured Jerusalem in 63 BC. In the next five verses these events are amplified. It is again in a typical Jewish format with the principle story told and then retuning afterwards to amplify it.

In verse 10 the word "it" relates to Antiochus IV who became powerful. The "host of heaven" were the believing Jews who were slaughtered in the Temple. Some of them were also killed in the many battles by the armies of Antiochus. In 161 BC Judas himself was killed, only to be succeeded as leader by his brother Jonathan.

The words "stamped upon" talks about suppression of Judaism under Antiochus. He banned circumcision, he banned the Sabbath. There was forced worship of the gods, including Bacchus. The satanic delights in the "worship" of money, power, food, wine and sex. Nothing changes through the ages – the enemy is at least consistent in his malice and his tactics do not need to change, for they appeal to men and women's pride. **2 Corinthians 2:11, 11:13-15.**

In verse 11 it says that he magnified himself "even to the prince of the host". This he did by installing in the Holy of Holies a statue of himself as Zeus to replace items which represented the Lord Jesus Christ who is the prince of the host. The daily sacrifice representing the death of the Lord Jesus Christ on the Cross was stopped by the little horn and the desecration of the Temple by Antiochus is also mention in this verse with the phrase, "and the place of the sanctuary was cast down".

In verse 12 the host is the army of the Seleucids. Zion was on one side with the Temple, and on the other side of the valley was a fortification. There was constant fighting in the valley in between. The phrase "against the daily sacrifice by reason of transgression" relates to the Jewish apostasy which caused a lot of the problems. The Greeks were supported by the Hellenistic Jews. Some of the believers were so lacking in the truth that they were willing to trample the truth.

The little horn "cast down the truth to the ground". This was accomplished by the banning of the Levitical sacrifices ; "and it practised, and prospered", shows the initial success of the Hellenistic subjugation policy on the Jews, just as the final Anti-Christ will be successful, and 2/3rds of the Jews will follow him to their eternal damnation... **Zechariah 13:1ff.**

In verses 13 and 14 we are told, "13. Then I heard one saint speaking, and another saint said unto that certain saint which spake, How long shall be the vision concerning the daily sacrifice, and the transgression of desolation, to give both the sanctuary and the host to be trodden under foot? 14. And he said unto me, Unto two thousand and three hundred days; then shall the sanctuary be cleansed."

The saints or set apart ones here are angels talking one to another. They ask, "How long is this oppression going to last?" The reply to that question was 2300 days = 6 years, 3 months and 20 days. The sanctuary was cleansed on December 164 BC so the time takes us back to 170 BC to when the troubles began. The temple was desecrated for 3 ½ years but the troubles begin 6 years before.

That was the year that the Hellenistic Jew Menelaus wanted to be high priest but he had to get rid of his rival, another Hellenist, Jason. He went up to Syria and offered to rob the Temple for the Syrians if they would support him. This he did and as a result he was made the High Priest. He was Hellenistic and eventually he was even willing to hand the Temple over to the Syrians. A general from Antiochus came down and received the money 2300 days before the Temple was cleansed. [For further details see Josephus, "The Antiquities of the Jews", Book 12, Chapter 5].

APPLICATION

The fact that Daniel leaves out the east in his cardinal directions again shows the absolute accuracy of the prophecy contained in this book and in the Bible as a whole.

God protects the world by destroying areas and power groups where there is a concentration of demonism.

We are to resist those who would enslave or oppress particularly where the Character of God is under persecution. Revolution is never acceptable to God, but a war of independence is.

We can see that God knows history before it occurs. Comparing Scripture with profane history demonstrates the absolute accuracy of the Bible.

DOCTRINES

ALEXANDER – ONE WORLDISM

1. SCRIPTURE Daniel 8:5-8,21-22; 11:3-4.

2. BIOGRAPHY

EVANGELICAL BIBLE COLLEGE OF WESTERN AUSTRALIA

Philip, King of Macedon, married an Epirian princess Olympias half-way through the 4th Century BC. In 356 BC in Pella, Macedon, a son Alexander was born. As he grew his tutor was the philosopher Aristotle. In 340 BC Alexander acted as regent while his father was held hostage of the King of Thebes. At the age of 20 Alexander ascended the throne of Macedon in 336 BC. To the south, Thebes, Athens and Corinth were soon brought under his control. To enable him to have good control over a composite Greek army, Alexander developed the Koine ("common") Greek language which spread with his army across the world as he conquered. Koine Greek became the language of the inhabited world, and is also the language in which the New Testament was later written and spread through the world. Crossing into Asia with his army, Alexander went on to conquer the known world in 11 years with the battles of Gramius (334 BC), Issus (333 BC), Gangarilla (331 BC) and Hydaspes (326 BC) being among the most famous of his battles. Having conceived an idea of a super race, he ordered his Greek generals to divorce their wives and marry Persian princesses for he had found the Persians to be very advanced in mathematics and science. Entering northern India he defeated Porus, King of the Punjab; and having marched for some ten years his Greek army refused to go any further. Part of his army built a fleet of boats and sailed, charting the Persian Gulf and making scientific and botanical observations. Eventually Alexander reached Babylon where, after a heavy drinking bout, he took to his bed with a fever. Ten days later on June 13, 323 BC Alexander died.

3. EVALUATION

- a) The vision in which Daniel saw the ram and rough goat was in the third year of the reign of Belshazzar (553 BC) (Daniel 8:1).
- b) The two-horned ram was the Medeo-Persian Empire (Daniel 8:3,4,20); the large horn paralleling the raised paw of the bear (Daniel 7:5) and the shoulders of silver (Daniel 2:39).
- c) The Persian empire pushed west and north (Daniel 8:4) but was met by the goat with a single horn coming at great speed from the west (Daniel 8:5). The goat is the Greek empire (Daniel 8:21), paralleling the leopard (Daniel 7:6) and the belly of bronze (Daniel 2:39; 11:2-4).
- d) The breaking of the horn is the death of Alexander (Daniel 8:8), the four minor horns being mirrored in the four heads of the leopard (Daniel 7:6) and the four winds of heaven (Daniel 11:4). These represent the four Greek generals who eventually ruled the Greek Empire in 300 BC, Ptolemy, Seluchus, Cassander and Lysimachus.
- e) The vision of the Greek empires in Daniel 11 occurred in 534 BC. The power of Alexander is shown (Daniel 11:3) but his son would not reign in his stead (Daniel 11:4).

4. PRINCIPLES

- a) The sovereign God uses some unbelievers to achieve His plan and glory (Romans 9:17).
- b) God used Alexander's genius to develop and spread the Greek language in preparation for the writing and spread of the New Testament.
- c) God is in control of history and knows the future of mankind in total accuracy (Proverbs 8:15,16).
- d) God used Alexander to remove the decadent Persian Empire.
- e) The time of the death of any member of the human race is in the hands of God (Luke 12:20).
- f) There is a trend from greatness to decadence in empires or nations.
- g) Internationalism is anti-Biblical. God's method is individual nations (Genesis 11:1-9; cf. Genesis 10:32;9:1-7; Revelation 13:15-17; cf. Revelation 19:19).

REVOLUTION

1. God has established all authority. Therefore, God does not justify revolution (Numbers 16, Isaiah 31:6).
2. Revolution usually involves mobs which run rapidly to evil (Proverbs 6:18)
3. Revolution is linked with sin eg. pride, enticement, jealousy. (Isaiah 11:13 cf 1 Kings 12:19; 2 Chronicles 10:19, Jeremiah 5:23)
4. When the Word of God is taught, it tends to stop revolution (Ezekiel 2:3-10) eg in England in the 18th and 19th centuries there were no revolutions. In Europe, however, with the lack of doctrine, many revolutions occurred.
5. When human power is monopolised by a few, the people become oppressed. (1 Kings 21:1-16; 1 Samuel 8-11-19).
6. Anything accomplished by revolution can be accomplished without revolution eg the reforms in Britain during the 19th century, elimination of slavery.

THE "ABOMINATION OF DESOLATION"

1. The abomination of desolation is a statue erected by the Antichrist in the Temple during the Tribulation.
2. Based on the pride of Antichrist who seeks to "alter times and law" by starting his false millennium. - Daniel 7:8,25.
3. This passage defines the term:- Daniel 9:26-27.

- a) He is from a revived Roman empire.
 - b) He makes a 7 year peace pact with Israel.
 - c) He breaks his covenant after 3 1/2 years.
 - d) At this point he violates the temple and begins desolating the people of the remnant
4. "Abomination of Desolation" begins with the setting up of the image of the beast Daniel 11:31, Revelation 13:14-15.
5. Daniel 12:11 says there will be 1290 days from the Abomination of Desolation to the Kingdom.
- a) 1260 days to the Second Advent.
 - b) 30 days are involved in the judgment of nations, etc.
6. Christ warned the Jews who believe in the Tribulation to flee when they see the Abomination of Desolation. Matthew 24:15.
7. The coming and working of Antichrist is declared in the fact that "the mystery of iniquity is already at work." 2 Thessalonians 2:3-12. (Vs. 7)
8. This is the opposite of the Mystery of Godliness --Christ Incarnate. 1 Timothy. 3:16)
9. The "spirit of Antichrist" which is denial that Jesus is Christ is already at work in our own day. 1 John 2:18,22, 4:3; 2 John. 7.
10. The mid-Tribulation desecration of the temple by Antichrist by the erection of the abomination of desolation is given in Revelation 13:14.
11. Two historical examples are:
- a) Antiochus Epiphanes (BC 168 June to 165 Dec.) places a statue of Zeus Olympus in the temple
 - b) Caligula (AD 37-41) attempted to set up his image in the temple.

SECTION 38 - MEANING OF THE VISION Chapter 8:15-27

15 And it came to pass, when I, even I Daniel, had seen the vision, and sought for the meaning, then, behold, there stood before me as the appearance of a man. **16** And I heard a man's voice between the banks of Ulai, which called, and said, Gabriel, make this man to understand the vision. **17** So he came near where I stood: and when he came, I was afraid, and fell upon my face: but he said unto me, Understand, O son of man: for at the time of the end shall be the vision. **18** Now as he was speaking with me, I was in a deep sleep on my face toward the ground: but he touched me, and set me upright. **19** And he said, Behold, I will make thee know what shall be in the last end of the indignation: for at the time appointed the end shall be. **20** The ram which thou sawest having two horns are the kings of Media and Persia. **21** And the rough goat is the king of Grecia: and the great horn that is between his eyes is the first king. **22** Now that being broken, whereas four stood up for it, four kingdoms shall stand up out of the nation, but not in his power. **23** And in the latter time of their kingdom, when the transgressors are come to the full, a king of fierce countenance, and understanding dark sentences, shall stand up. **24** And his power shall be mighty, but not by his own power: and he shall destroy wonderfully, and shall prosper, and practise, and shall destroy the mighty and the holy people. **25** And through his policy also he shall cause craft to prosper in his hand; and he shall magnify himself in his heart, and by peace shall destroy many: he shall also stand up against the Prince of princes; but he shall be broken without hand. **26** And the vision of the evening and the morning which was told is true: wherefore shut thou up the vision; for it shall be for many days. **27** And I Daniel fainted, and was sick certain days; afterward I rose up, and did the king's business; and I was astonished at the vision, but none understood it.

KEY WORDS

Seen	Raah	See, Behold, Consider
Vision	Chazon	Vision
Meaning	Binah	Understanding
Stood	Amad	To stand, Stand still or firm
Appearance	Mareh	Appearance
Man	Geber	A mighty man
Heard	Shamea	To hear
Voice	Qol	Voice, Sound
Gabriel	Gabriel	God is mighty
Understand	Bin	To cause to understand
Vision	Mareh	Appearance, Sight
Near	Estel	Near
Afraid	Baath	To be terrified, Afraid
Fell	Naphal	To fall
Face	Panim	Face

Understand	Bin	To cause to understand
Time	Eth	Time
End	Qets	End, Extremity
Vision	Chazon	Vision
Speaking	Dabar	To speak
Deep Sleep	Radam	To be fast asleep, In a trance
Ground	Erets	Earth
Touched	Naga	To touch, Come upon, Plague
Set Me Upright	Amad	To cause to stand
Last End	Acharith	Last or latter end
Indignation	Zaam	Indignation, Insolence
Time Appointed	Moed	Appointed time
Ram	Ayil	A ram
Sawest	Raah	See, Behold, Consider
Horns	Qeren	Horn
Kings	Melek	King, Counsellor
Rough	Sair	Hairy
Goat	Tsaphir	He Goat
Great	Gadol	Great
Horn	Qeren	Horn
Eyes	Ayin	Eye
First	Rishon	Head, First
Broken	Shabar	To be shattered, Shivered
Four	Arba	Four
Kingdoms	Malekuth	Kingdoms
Stand	Amad	To stand still
Nation	Goi	Nation, Corporate Body
Power	Koach	Power
Transgressors	Pasha	To step over, Transgress, Rebel
Full	Taman	To perfect, Finish
Fierce	Az	Strong
Countenance	Panim	Face, Countenance
Understanding	Bin	To cause to understand
Dark Sentences	Chidah	A knot, Obscure hidden saying or thing
Mighty	Atsam	To become substantial, Bony
Destroy	Shachath	To mar, Corrupt, Destroy
Wonderfully	Pala	To become wonderful
Prosper	Tsaleach	To cause to go on prosperously
Practice	Asah	To do, Make
Holy	Qadosh	Separate, Set apart
Policy	Sekel	Understanding, Skill
Craft	Mirmah	Deceit
Hand	Yad	Hand
Magnify	Gadal	To make great
Heart	Lebab	Heart
Stand	Amad	To stand still
Prince	Sar	Head, Official, Captain
Evening	Ereb	Evening
Morning	Boqer	Morning
True	Emeth	Truth, Faithfulness
Shut	Satham	To shut out, up or in
Many	Rab	Many
Fainted	Hayah	To become, Happen
Sick	Chalah	To become sick, Diseased, Weak
Rose Up	Qum	To rise up
Business	Melakah	Work
Astonished	Shemen	To make silent or astonished

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

In verses 15 and 16 Daniel now sees a person who looks like a man. The person before him is Gabriel one of the highest ranking of the angels. He is the angel that protects as well as teaches the Jews. What sounded like a man's voice from over the waters called to Gabriel, and instructed him to make Daniel understand the vision that he had received. The voice was God. Daniel has been given an excellent teacher in Gabriel.

Daniel reacts to this angelic visit, and in verse 17 and 18 he worships. He was afraid and falls at the feet of Gabriel who tells him that the vision deals with future things. Daniel fell into a deep sleep, but Gabriel awakes him and assists him to get up. He is now fully awake now and ready to be instructed by this angel.

In verse 19 the angel says that he will teach him. The “last end of the indignation” is the Great Tribulation period, as that ends the “indignation” of God against the rebellion of mankind against godliness; the false path of godless rebellion is closed fully and finally. That terrible period ends the, “Times of the Gentiles”. The explanation of the entire vision is now given. The ram with two horns is identified as the king of the Medes and Persians while the rough goat is the King of Greece. The great horn is seen as the person of Alexander the Great, who was its first king.

Gabriel continues, that after the great horn was broken, which speaks of the early death/murder of Alexander, four successors will stand up in his place. These are the four successful generals who took over the empire. Gabriel notes that these kingdoms were not “in his power”. The generals were not physically related to Alexander, with his mother, wife, and son being murdered in the conflicts which occurred after Alexander’s death.

The angel continues looking down the corridors of time, and with Antiochus as a prototype, he looks like the final satanic king, the Antichrist, who is a very strong force, understanding dark sentences, or the doctrines of demons. The final Anti-Christ figure is very powerful but the power is not his own. He is indwelt and empowered by Satan. He does mighty miracles as seen in **2 Thessalonians 2:7-12**. He accepts the kingdoms of the world from the “prince of this world”. **John 12:31, 14:30, 16:11**.

The tremendous violent power of his rule, the aggressive destruction of believers and all that is right, is also seen. For some time he has a peace policy but this is simply deception to win time and fool those who do not know the scriptures. Genuine believers cause him huge problems, and so many are killed. Revelation 6:1-8. Satanism will abound under his patronage and all religions will be destroyed to enable the one world religion – the worship of Satan to be brought in centred in the rebuilt temple in Jerusalem. He will finally directly oppose the Lord Jesus Christ himself, but will fail totally, being destroyed at the Lord’s Second Coming. [Revelation 19:19-21.]

In verses 26 and 27 Gabriel confirms that the vision that Daniel has seen is true. It is from God. It is not good news but news that believers over future generations will need to know. He is told that it is for the future. He commits it to paper. He feels physically distressed by what he has seen and is ill for some time however it becomes part of the canon of Scripture.

He continues his work for the king and does all he is ordered to do “as unto the Lord”. He had received tremendous information from God but he was unable to share it in his day with anyone, for none of his contemporaries understood or perhaps wanted to understand the implications of what Daniel had seen and been instructed in. Daniel does not have many “friends” who he can share these things with; these truths are too important, and are only for those he is directed to share with. Daniel must be a Holy Spirit guided man at all times of his life, and that can be lonely.

APPLICATION

It is seen that angels when they are seen appear as men and not animals. They are normally invisible with their bodies covered in light. Strange animal appearances, sexualized beings, or composite animal statues are always representatives of demons. God assists those who genuinely want to find out about the meaning of the Word of God.

There is seen to be a very close correlation between the relationship of Antiochus IV and the Antichrist of the Tribulation period. In both cases Israel is fighting for very life and freedom. In both cases their own corrupt leadership has sold out the Jews to the Gentiles of Western European origin, Antiochus, and later the Antichrist.

Sometimes when one studies the future as shown in the Bible, it can make one frustrated by people who you know are heading for damnation, but are not interested in the truth. Whether people hear or not, we are to preach truth, and do so with passion for their souls! **Ezekiel 2:5-7, 3:3-11, 33:1-20**.

We all have a role to play in the plan of God. If no one in your vicinity understands your role in the plan nor the legitimate doctrine from the Scriptures that you propose realise that you are in good company. Daniel had such a problem.

DOCTRINES

ANGELS

1. There are two kinds of angels:
 - a) Elect Angels (1 Timothy 5:21) - those which have chosen to remain with God.
 - b) Fallen angels - those which have rebelled against God and followed Satan:
 - i) imprisoned ones (Jude 6, 2 Peter 2:4) - apparently active on earth prior to the Flood (Genesis 6)
 - ii) demons, currently active on earth (1 Corinthians 10:20,21, Mark 5:1-20)
2. There are various orders in the angelic realm.
 - a) Cherubim (highest order) -. (Genesis 3:24, Exodus 25:19-20) Cherubs were originally the defenders of divine holiness. Lucifer (Satan) was a cherub (Ezekiel 28:14)
 - b) Seraphim - (Isaiah 6:2). Seraph means burning ones.
 - c) Rulers, Principalities and Powers - can refer to human authorities, but usually refers to angels (and generally to fallen angels). (Ephesians 3:10, 6:12, Colossians 1:16). They control certain segments of the human race, they can control the voice and the mind. (Mark 5:1-20).

d) Ministering Angels

- i) Guardian angels. (Hebrews 1:14). Protect and assist believers.
- ii) Angels of the waters. (Revelation 16:5). Water is used as a prison. Abyss (Greek), refers to an underwater prison.
- iii) Angels of the abyss. (Revelation 9:1,11). An angel which has a special responsibility for the abyss.
- iv) Angel of fire. (Revelation 14:18).
- v) Angels of judgment. (Revelation 8:2, ch 15,16) - trumpets and bowls.
- vi) Watcher angels. (Daniel 4:13).

3. Appearance of angels:

- a) Angels can appear as human beings (Genesis 18:1-2, Hebrews 13:2)
- b) Angels are described variously as having wings, many eyes, many faces (Isaiah 6:2, Ezekiel 1) and often glow with brilliant light (Matthew 28:2-3).
- c) Lucifer (Satan) was the most beautiful creature ever to come from the hand of God (Ezekiel 28:12-17)
- d) Angels are NOT pink fat babies with wings, or red skinned creatures with horns and forked tails.

4. Named angels:

- a) Lucifer, son of the morning, was the covering cherub over the Throne of God (Isaiah 14:12). His name is now Satan, the accuser/slanderer (Revelation 12:10)
- b) Gabriel a messenger angel (Daniel 8:16, 9:21, Luke 1:19,26)
- c) Michael a fighting angel (Revelation 12:7, Jude 9) and guardian angel of Israel. (Daniel 10:21, 12:1)

5. Angels and Christ's Incarnation

- a) At his birth - (Luke 2:9-15)
- b) At his temptation - (Matthew 4:11)
- c) At his resurrection - (Matthew 28:2)
- d) At his ascension - (Acts 1:10)
- e) At the Second Advent - (Matthew 13:37-39, 24:31, 25:31, 2 Thessalonians 1:7)

6. Angels and Man

- a) Angels were watching at the time of creation. (Job 38:7)
- b) Angels were present when God gave Moses the Law. (Galatians 3:19, Acts 7:53).
- c) Angels are watching us now. (1 Corinthians 4:9, Ephesians 3:10, 1 Timothy 5:21, 1 Peter 1:12.)
- d) The elect angels rejoice whenever someone is saved (Luke 15:7-10).

7. Many times revelations from God were mediated through angels -

- a) The Law of Moses -, Exodus 3:2 , Galatians 3:19, Acts 7:53, Hebrews 2:2
- b) Prophetic announcements to Daniel - Daniel 7:16, 8:16-26, 9:20-27, 10:1-12:13
- c) Prophetic announcements to Zechariah - Zechariah 1:9, 2:3, 4:1,5, 5:5, 6:4,5
- d) Announcement of the birth of John to Zacharias - Luke 1:11-20
- e) Announcement of the birth of Jesus to Mary - Luke 1:26-38, and Joseph - Matthew 1:20-21

DEMONS

1. Occult practices such as astrology, divination and spiritism are condemned by the scriptures (Leviticus 19:31; Deuteronomy 18:9-12). This was punishable by death in Israel. (Leviticus 20:27)

2. Demonism has exercised much influence in history (Ezekiel 21:21, Daniel 10:13). Evil is associated with the rule of demon possessed kings. (2 Kings 21:1-17)

3. The judgment of demons involved the destruction of demon possessed people and religious systems associated with idolatry (Isaiah 19:1-3, cf Deuteronomy 7:5)

4. Many nations have been destroyed for demon practices.

- a) Canaanites (Deuteronomy 18:9-12)
- b) Babylonians (Isaiah 46:1-7, 47:1-15)
- c) The judgment of Egypt's first born included the judgment of demons (Exodus 12:12)

5. The return of nations to the battle of Armageddon is by demon influence (Revelation 16:13-16).

6. Satan and the occult forces will be imprisoned during the Millennium (Isaiah 24:21-23; Revelation 20:1-3).

7. Demons are called "hairy ones" (Leviticus 17:7), destroyers (Deuteronomy 32:17) and demons.

8. Demons

- a) seek to possess men or animals (Mark 5:1-13).
- b) deceive man into false doctrines (1 Timothy 4:1).
- c) believe and tremble (James 2:19).

d) speak both truth and lies (2 Chronicles 18:21; Acts 16:17-18).

9. Satan rules the demon world (Matthew 12:24-28). Demons have a hierarchy (Daniel 10:12,13,20; Ephesians 6:12).

10. Sacrificing to idols is worship of demons (Deut 32:17, Psalm 106:36-38, 1 Corinthians 10:19-21).

11. The following activities can lead to demon possession (for the unbeliever) or demon influence (for the believer):

a) Submission to demons through idolatry (1 Corinthians 10:19-21) and occult practices such as mental telepathy, clairvoyance and spiritism (Deuteronomy 18:9-12).

b) Specific dedication of one's body to demons, such as the Hindu soma and shamanism.

c) Any practice in which you "lose control" of your mind and senses, such as drugs and alcohol (Galatians 5:20, the Greek word for "sorcery" is "pharmakeia"), meditation and trances, hypnotic rhythms in music and dance.

d) Sexual cults, such as the asherah (Judges 6:25-28, 2 Kings 21:3)

12. When people reject God, He may allow Satan and demons to administer discipline, even death (John 8:44, 1 Corinthians 5:5, 1 Timothy 3:6-7).

13. Demon influence can cause abnormal psychological behaviour, physical strength, sickness, etc (Mark 5:1-5, Job 2:6-8)

14. Jesus Christ has conquered all demon power (Matthew 10:8).

NOTES

CHAPTER 9

DIVISION OF CHAPTER 9

Chapter nine of Daniel can be divided into two sections

PRAYER OF DANIEL	VERSES 1-21
PROPHECY OF THE SEVENTY WEEKS	VERSES 22-27

INTRODUCTION

There are seven dates which are important when looking at this passage:

1. In 721 BC the northern kingdom of Israel went into dispersion under the Assyrians, while the southern kingdom of Judah was subject to occupation.
2. In 586 - the time that the southern kingdom went into captivity under Nebuchadnezzar of the Chaldeans.
3. In 516 BC was the date when the second Temple was completed and represented the restoration of the Jews to the land and opened up a golden age for the Jews to 323 BC when the Persian Empire ends for them.
4. In 312 – 164 BC is the rule of the Seleucids which was seen in chapter 8 and will be further seen in chapter 11. From 164 to 63 BC is the period of the independence of Judea under the Hasmonaean Dynasty.
5. From 63 BC to 70 AD the Jews are dominated by the Romans after the capture of Jerusalem by Pompey. From 70 AD the Jews are dispersed and are removed from the land. 1917 is an important year in the story, with the Balfour Declaration, the Russian Revolution, Fatima visions, and with USA's entry into WW 1, it becomes a global war.
6. 1948 Israel is reconstituted as a nation, the only time in history that a people have come back after nearly 1900 years.
7. 1967 Israel recaptures the entire city of Jerusalem, and in 1980 it is affirmed as Israel's capital city, USA moves embassy in 2017. The UN doesn't recognize this, and their claim is still "trampled" by the majority of Gentile nations.

In Leviticus 26 there are five stages of discipline for the Jews with the fourth stage being foreign domination and the fifth removal from the land. The fifth cycle begins to be lifted in 1917 with the Balfour Declaration, then again in 1967 with the recapture of Jerusalem, recognized by their super-power ally USA in 2017, but fifth cycle legacy remains until Messiah.

The five stages of national punishment of the Jews by God for disobedience are:

Stage 1 – Leviticus 26:14-17 – discipline of the Jews in psychological and economic ways

Stage 2 – Leviticus 26:18-20 – increased discipline of the Jews

Stage 3 – Leviticus 26:21-22 – further increase in the level discipline of the Jews

Stage 4 – Leviticus 26:23-26 – occupation by a foreign power

Stage 5 – Leviticus 26:27-39 – dispersion from the land

SEVEN, SEVENTY AND SEVENTY TIMES SEVEN

The Jews had been commanded to have a Sabbatical year every seventh year. For a period of 490 years from the foundation of the Kingdom of Israel under Saul to the start of the servitude of the Jews in 605 BC they had failed to obey the Lord's commandment to have the seventh year off, and leave the land fallow.

SERVITUDE – SEVENTY YEARS

God therefore enforced the 70 missing sabbatical years from 605 to 535 BC (Or 606 BC – 536 BC). These are the years of servitude. 605 BC represents the start of active subjection to the Chaldeans, (Times of Gentiles) and the time of Israel/Daniel's exile.

The end of servitude in 536 BC was marked by an edict from Cyrus for the Jews to return and rebuild the Temple, and they move out to do this in 535 BC.

DESOLATIONS – SEVENTY YEARS

There was also the two 70 year periods of desolations. The first is political 605-535 – first exiles to first return.

The second started with the final siege of Jerusalem by Nebuchadnezzar on the 10th day of Tebeth in 589 BC.

It terminated on the day prior to the laying of the foundation stone of the Temple on 24th day of the 9th month [Chisleu] in 520 BC. The City was destroyed 586 and the temple dedicated 516 BC.

When calculated these periods are each found to be not surprisingly, exactly 25,200 days or 70 biblical/lunar years of 360 days.

DEDICATION OF THE TEMPLES – SEVENTY TIMES SEVEN

On the Passover of 515 BC the second temple was dedicated. Ezra 6:15-22.

This dedication was 490 years after the dedication of Solomon's Temple in 1005 BC.

THE SEVENTY WEEKS OF YEARS IN DANIEL 9

It was also 70 years before the edict of Atarxerxes Longimanus in 445 BC which commenced a period of 490 years for the rest of the Jewish Age.

This period, dealt with in verses 24-27, will be studied in detail in that section. The period ends at the Second Advent of Christ, and still has an unfinished seven years to run before the Lord's return.

THE PERIOD OF THEOCRACY – SEVENTY TIMES SEVEN YEARS

There is a period of 490 years between the entrance into Canaan under Joshua, and the commencement of the kingdom under Saul. How precise is our God?

SECTION 39 - PRAYER OF DANIEL Chapter 9:1-21

1 In the first year of Darius the son of Ahasuerus, of the seed of the Medes, which was made king over the realm of the Chaldeans; **2** In the first year of his reign I Daniel understood by books the number of the years, whereof the word of the LORD came to Jeremiah the prophet, that he would accomplish seventy years in the desolations of Jerusalem. **3** And I set my face unto the Lord God, to seek by prayer and supplications, with fasting, and sackcloth, and ashes: **4** And I prayed unto the LORD my God, and made my confession, and said, O Lord, the great and dreadful God, keeping the covenant and mercy to them that love him, and to them that keep his commandments; **5** We have sinned, and have committed iniquity, and have done wickedly, and have rebelled, even by departing from thy precepts and from thy judgments: **6** Neither have we hearkened unto thy servants the prophets, which spake in thy name to our kings, our princes, and our fathers, and to all the people of the land. **7** O LORD, righteousness belongeth unto thee, but unto us confusion of faces, as at this day; to the men of Judah, and to the inhabitants of Jerusalem, and unto all Israel, that are near, and that are far off, through all the countries whither thou hast driven them, because of their trespass that they have trespassed against thee. **8** O Lord, to us belongeth confusion of face, to our kings, to our princes, and to our fathers, because we have sinned against thee. **9** To the Lord our God belong mercies and forgivenesses, though we have rebelled against him; **10** Neither have we obeyed the voice of the LORD our God, to walk in his laws, which he set before us by his servants the prophets. **11** Yea, all Israel have transgressed thy law, even by departing, that they might not obey thy voice; therefore the curse is poured upon us, and the oath that is written in the law of Moses the servant of God, because we have sinned against him. **12** And he hath confirmed his words, which he spake against us, and against our judges that judged us, by bringing upon us a great evil: for under the whole heaven hath not been done as hath been done upon Jerusalem. **13** As it is written in the law of Moses, all this evil is come upon us: yet made we not our prayer before the LORD our God, that we might turn from our iniquities, and understand thy truth. **14** Therefore hath the LORD watched upon the evil, and brought it upon us: for the LORD our God is righteous in all his works which he doeth: for we obeyed not his voice. **15** And now, O Lord our God, that hast brought thy people forth out of the land of Egypt with a mighty hand, and hast gotten thee renown, as at this day; we have sinned, we have done wickedly. **16** O LORD, according to all thy righteousness, I beseech thee, let thine anger and thy fury be turned away from thy city Jerusalem, thy holy mountain: because for our sins, and for the iniquities of our fathers, Jerusalem and thy people are become a reproach to all that are about us. **17** Now therefore, O our God, hear the prayer of thy servant, and his supplications, and cause thy face to shine upon thy sanctuary that is desolate, for the Lord's sake. **18** O my God, incline thine ear, and hear; open thine eyes, and behold our desolations, and the city which is called by thy name: for we do not present our supplications before thee for our righteousnesses, but for thy great mercies. **19** O Lord, hear; O Lord, forgive; O Lord, hearken and do; defer not, for thine own sake, O my God: for thy city and thy people are called by thy

name. 20 And whiles I was speaking, and praying, and confessing my sin and the sin of my people Israel, and presenting my supplication before the LORD my God for the holy mountain of my God; 21 Yea, whiles I was speaking in prayer, even the man Gabriel, whom I had seen in the vision at the beginning, being caused to fly swiftly, touched me about the time of the evening oblation.

KEY WORDS

First	Echad	One
Year	Shanah	Year, A repetition
Son	Ben	Son
Ahasuerus	Ahasuerus	King
Seed	Zera	Seed, Progeny
King	Melek	King, Counsellor
Realm	Malekuth	Kingdom
Reign	Malak	To reign, Be as a king
Understood	Bin	To understand, Consider
Books	Sepher	Book, Writing
Numbers	Mispar	Number, Narration, Reckoning
Word	Dabar	Word, Matter Thing
Lord	Yaweh	He who is
Prophet	Nabi	A prophet
Accomplish	Male	To make full, Fulfil
Seventy	Shibim	Seventy
Desolations	Chorbah	Drought, Dry, Waste place
Set	Nathan	To give
Face	Panim	Face
Seek	Baqash	To seek, Inquire, Require
Prayer	Tephillah	Prayer, Song of praise
Supplications	Tachannuim	Supplication for grace
Fasting	Tsom	Fasting
Sackcloth	Saq	A sack, Dress of sackcloth
Ashes	Epher	Dust
Confession	Yadar	To confess for oneself
Great	Gadol	Great
Dreadful	Yare	To be feared, Reverenced
Covenant	Berith	Covenant
Mercy	Chesed	Kindness, Loving kindness
Love	Aheb	To love
Keep	Shamar	To keep, Observe, Take heed
Commandments	Mitsvah	Precept
Sinned	Chata	To sin
Committed Iniquity	Avah	To do perversely
Wickedly	Rasha	To do wrong or wickedly
Rebelled	Marad	To rebel
Departing	Sur	To turn aside
Precepts	Mitsvah	Precept
Judgments	Mishpat	Judgment
Hearkened	Shamea	Judgment
Servants	Ebed	Servant, Doer, Slave
Spake	Dabar	To speak
Name	Shem	Name Renown
Princes	Sar	Head, Official, Captain
Fathers	Aboth	Fathers, Ancestors
People	Am	A people
Land	Erets	Land, Earth
Righteousness	Tsedaqah	Rightness, Justice
Confusion	Bosheth	Shame, Paleness
Inhabitants	Yashab	To sit down, Dwell, Inhabit
Near	Qarob	Near
Far Off	Rachocq	Far, Far off
Countries	Erets	Land, Earth
Driven	Nadach	To drive, Force away
Trespass	Maal	To Transgress, Trespass
Sinned	Chata	To sin
Mercies	Rachamim	Mercies
Forgiveness	Selichah	A sending away, Letting go
Rebelled	Marad	To rebel
Obeded	Shamea	To hear or hearken
Voice	Qoc	A voice, Sound

EVANGELICAL BIBLE COLLEGE OF WESTERN AUSTRALIA

Walk	Yalak	To go on
Laws	Torah	Law, Direction, Teaching
Servant	Ebed	A servant, Slave, Tiller, Doer
Transgressed	Abar	To pass over
Departing	Sur	To turn aside
Curse	Alah	Oath
Poured	Nathak	To be poured out
Oath	Shebuah	Swearing
Written	Kathab	To write
Confirmed	Qum	To establish, Confirm
Judges	Shaphat	To judge, Act as a magistrate
Bringing	Bo	To cause to come in
Evil	Ra	Bad, Evil
Heaven	Shamayin	Heavens, Heaved up things
Turn	Shub	To turn back
Understand	Sakal	To cause to act wisely
Truth	Emeth	Truth, Steadfastness
Watched	Sharad	To watch, Awake
Righteous	Tsaddiq	Righteous, Just
Brought Forth	Bo	To cause to come in
Mighty	Chazaq	Strong, Hard
Hand	Yad	Hand
Sinned	Chata	To sin
Wickedly	Rasha	To do wrong, Wickedly
Anger	Aph	Anger, Snorting
Fury	Chemah	Heat, Fury
City	Ir	A city, Enclosed place
Mountain	Har	Mount, Hill
Reproach	Cherpah	Reproach
Shine	Or	To cause to give light or shine
Incline	Natah	To stretch out, Turn aside, Away
Ear	Ozen	Ear
Hear	Shamea	To hear
Open	Paqach	To open, Open up
Eyes	Ayin	Eye
Behold	Raah	To see, Look, Consider
Desolations	Shanen	To be desolate
Called	Qara	To be called
Mercies	Rachamim	Mercies
Forgive	Salach	To send away, Let go
Hearken	Qashab	To give attention
Do	Asah	To make something out of something
Defer	Achar	To be behind, Tarry, Defer
Praying	Palal	To judge self, Pray habitually
Confessing	Yadah	To confess for oneself
Sin	Shattath	Sin, Sin offering
Presenting	Naphal	To cause to fall, Present
Supplication	Techinnah	Supplication for grace
Holy	Qodesh	Separation, Object set apart
Man	Ish	Man, Husband, Individual
Gabriel	Gabriel	God is mighty
Seen	Raah	See, Consider, Look
Beginning	Techillah	Beginning, Commencement
Fly	Yaaph	To be caused to fly
Swiftly	Yeaph	Splendour, Glitter
Touched	Naga	To touch, Come upon, Plague
Evening	Ereb	Evening
Oblation	Minchah	Supplication for grace

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

Daniel chapter 9 was written by Daniel towards the end of this first great Exile of Israel. This is the first year of Cyrus/Darius which could be 539 BC when Babylon fell, (or 546 and occur at the same time as chapter 8 – although his age given is the clue that it is the year of taking Babylon, when Cyrus was 62).

The majority of the chapter deals with Daniel's prayer of confession. Cyrus is the conqueror. He has replaced his uncle who is also his father in law in charge of the empire. He was known also as Cyaxeres II. He was the king of Media and is the last of the Median kings. Cyrus is 62 years of age. The three leading people in the empire at Babylon are Queen Nitocris, Daniel, and Gobryas the great general of Babylon who goes over to Cyrus.

The basis of the prayer is given in verse 2 where Daniel after deep study of the book of Jeremiah understood that there was going to be a finite time for the desolations of the nation Israel and its beloved city Jerusalem. Not only has he studied Jeremiah but has also meditated on a number of very specific biblical passages.

- [1] **Exodus 23:10-11.** *“And six years thou shalt sow thy land, and shalt gather in the fruits thereof: 11 But the seventh year thou shalt let it rest and lie still; that the poor of thy people may eat: and what they leave the beasts of the field shall eat. In like manner thou shalt deal with thy vineyard, and with thy oliveyard.”*

Here Daniel sees the Sabbatical year commandment by the Lord. The seventh year is one of rest. This the Jews had failed to do. The poor of the land could glean during the seventh year as could the domestic animals. The fruit of the ground in the seventh year was the fruits of fallow.

- [2] **Leviticus 25:3-4.** *“Six years thou shalt sow thy field, and six years thou shalt prune thy vineyard, and gather in the fruit thereof; 4 But in the seventh year shall be a sabbath of rest unto the land, a sabbath for the LORD: thou shalt neither sow thy field, nor prune thy vineyard.”*

- [3] **Leviticus 26:33.** *“And I will scatter you among the heathen, and will draw out a sword after you: and your land shall be desolate, and your cities waste. 34 Then shall the land enjoy her sabbaths, as long as it lieth desolate, and ye be in your enemies' land; even then shall the land rest, and enjoy her sabbaths.”*

Here the dispersion of Israel under the fifth stage of discipline is seen to enforce the Sabbath rest of the land.

- [4] **2 Chronicles 36:20-21.** *“And them that had escaped from the sword carried he away to Babylon; where they were servants to him and his sons until the reign of the kingdom of Persia: 21 To fulfil the word of the LORD by the mouth of Jeremiah, until the land had enjoyed her sabbaths: for as long as she lay desolate she kept sabbath, to fulfil threescore and ten years.”* NOTE - This was written by Ezra, 100 years later, but sums up Daniel's main Holy Spirit led deduction, that he passed on to Zechariah and Haggai, and would be part of Persian Satrap written records, and so be received by Ezra and Nehemiah – who were both Satraps of Judea.

Jeremiah preached for a period of 40 years before the last captivity in 586 BC, but his warnings were not heeded by the majority of the people. The Jews rejected God's ordinances until there was no remedy other than enforced Sabbaths to cleanse the land of their evils.

- [5] **Jeremiah 25:11-12.** *“And this whole land shall be a desolation, and an astonishment; and these nations shall serve the king of Babylon seventy years. 12 And it shall come to pass, when seventy years are accomplished, that I will punish the king of Babylon, and that nation, saith the LORD, for their iniquity, and the land of the Chaldeans, and will make it perpetual desolations”.*

From this passage it was clear that after 70 years their captors would be severely judged, and Israel would be released from bondage. 605-535 BC, and 586 – 516 BC.

- [6] **Jeremiah 29:10.** *“For thus saith the LORD, That after seventy years be accomplished at Babylon I will visit you, and perform my good word toward you, in causing you to return to this place.”*

We can see how Daniel was studying the Word of God, and so had insight into, and confidence in, the future of Israel. In verse 3 he expressed his confession by “prayer and supplications, with fasting, and sackcloth, and ashes”. The prayer is associated with a number of things. Fasting means to spend time in Bible Study and prayer which could have been used for other legitimate activities and does not necessarily mean to go without food. The ashes were those from the site of the burnt offering in the Old Testament highlighting the fact that prayer can only be effective if it comes via the Cross.

Sackcloth represents humility and orientation to grace. Sackcloth shows that one is focused on other things than oneself. In our age we wear sackcloth on the inside. This recognises that we can do nothing for cleansing and that God has to do all the work through His mercy. Daniel wore sackcloth because he is in the Age of Israel, and it was the traditional sign of repentance and humility. We act by faith today with the same mental attitude directly, without having to dress differently and adopt any specific posture. Daniel is in effect mourning for the million+ dead of Judea!

In verse 4 Daniel makes his prayer to God the Father and made his confession. There are many synonyms in the Bible for confession, which all put together indicate the path to forgiveness for the believer today.

Confess/Cite the case - 1 John 1:9

Judge self – 1 Corinthians 11:31

Yield in the aorist tense in Romans 12:1

Lay aside every weight - Hebrews 12:1

Be subject to the Father of light - Hebrews 12:9

Lift up the hands that hang down - Hebrews 12:12

Make straight paths - Matthew 3:3, Hebrews 12:13

“Arise from the dead” of carnality and spiritually “reboot” your life in Holy Spirit power - Ephesians 5:14-21

Put off the Old Man – Put on the New - Ephesians 4:22-24

“I prayed”, is a Hithpael perfect, and is a reflexive stem which shows that Daniel was doing the praying but that it was benefiting his nation Israel. Daniel is praying for the restoration of his people. The word “Lord” here is Jehovah, and his prayer is offered to God the Father.

The word “confession” is the Hithpael imperfect of Yadar meaning to name something yourself. The Piel stem of the same word would mean to judge rather than confess. The confession is made to a great and dreadful God. The word for great indicates that God is all powerful, thus one is relying on the grace of God, not upon any righteousness of your own. The word “dreadful” relates to holiness and judging.

In context it recognises that God has disciplined the nation through his holiness and justice. Daniel however acknowledges the faithfulness and mercy of God to those who love Him. Verse 4 ends with the guarding of his commandments by those that love him. The Hebrew word is Shamar which means to guard something. In the Persian Empire they are guarding the Word of God, and heeding it, and God is therefore guarding them.

Note – Persia was great while they honoured God’s people Israel, God’s prophets, and God’s Word. They are under judgment today for the opposite actions, even blaming Israel in 2020 for the origin and spread of Covid 19!

In verse 5 Daniel says, “We have sinned, and have committed iniquity, and have done wickedly, and have rebelled, even by departing from thy precepts and from thy judgments”. In this prayer we have now four facets of falling short. “We have sinned”, is the Kal perfect of Chata, which means to miss the mark set by the Word of God. This stem and the perfect tense shows that this is the past history of the Jews, and that there are permanent results. Psalm 78 also refers to these things.

“Committed iniquity”, is again a Kal perfect of Avah, which means to pervert their national status in the past, with lasting results. They had wandered from God’s way as far as the Sabbaths were concerned. “We have done wickedly”, is the Hiphil Perfect of Rasha. The hiphil stem is causative active and means to be guilty of promoting an unjust cause, to act wrongly, and to pay for it thoroughly. “We have rebelled” is the Kal perfect of Marad. This means that Israel has revolted against the statutes and judgments of God, and the results are permanent for all who do not repent.

In verse 6 Daniel prays, “Neither have we hearkened unto thy servants the prophets, which spake in thy name to our kings, our princes, and our fathers, and to all the people of the land”. Here Daniel confesses that God has given them plenty of opportunity to understand His requirements through His prophets.

People like Jonah, Amos, Hosea, Isaiah, Micah, and Jeremiah were sent by the Lord to Israel but they rejected them. He notes that it is not only to the leaders of society but to society as a whole that the prophets have ministered. There has been a complete failure by the whole of society, at all levels, to respond to God.

In the case of Isaiah his ministry to the Southern Kingdom had been successful but Jeremiah’s ministry had been a complete failure as far as response was concerned. In verse 7 Daniel acknowledges that righteousness belongs to God. In the Hebrew there is a definite article meaning that the word “righteousness”, should be translated, “the righteousness”, or absolute righteousness.

Later in this verse we have “confusion of face” which relates to confusion of bible doctrine. It is noted also that this was the case throughout not only Judah from where Daniel came but also in all the tribes of Israel so he is praying for the whole of the nation and not just the southern kingdom. It also implies that representatives of all of the tribes lived in the southern kingdom. The “believing remnant” of each northern tribe fled south before Assyria destroyed the north.

The word “driven” is the Hebrew word Nadach which is in the Hiphil stem. This is a causative active stem and shows that God had caused them to be driven out of the land. This has been done because of their rejection of God. Examination of the last seven kings of Israel and the last four kings of Judah show them as amongst the worst of the kings to rule, as they consistently ignore God’s Word and the prophets, Hosea and later Jeremiah. We are to “seek” the Lord, and “knock” on the door, not ignore reality. Matthew 7:13ff.

In verse 9 Daniel contrasts the character of God with that which he had outlined for Israel. He shows God as a merciful and forgiving God before returning to a list of failures by the nation.

The word mercies “Rachamim” is in the plural as seen by the suffix “im”. It means the whole realm of grace He provides grace and acts in grace. This is mirrored in the next word forgiveness which means to forgive and forget. Psalm 103.

In the following verses we have a further explanation of how Israel has rebelled and rejected God's guidance and provision and gone their own way. They failed to hear and guard the Word of God, which was their prime duty in the Age of the Jews. Note Ezra's words, as he looks back and reflects on all the prophetic words. **2 Chronicles 36:13-16**.

The Jews could have been the greatest of people at this time but they did not respond to the Lord over many years, so they were judged and sent into dispersion. They became legalistic and slack in following the Lord and destroyed God's grace provision.

In verse 11 we see the Jews departing from God. The Hebrew word "sur" means to turn aside from. The departure was one of a mental attitude towards God. The curse mentioned in this verse is dispersion. In verse 12 the words that God had spoken to the Jews were not new. They had started back at the time of Moses about 1000 years before the time of Daniel. There had been a general lack of faithfulness to God over all that period.

Verses 13&14 say that even though they had God's revelation all in writing, they made no attempt to confess their iniquities to the Lord to ask for national forgiveness and understand the truth that had been given to them. As a result of persistent evil God who is totally righteous brought upon them the curse of dispersion. Daniel recognises that God was totally fair in dispersing the Jews because of their persistent ignoring of truth, and unfathomable disobedience.

In verse 15-19 is the intercession for Israel. Now that Daniel has confessed the sins of the nation he is going to continue his intercession for them. This is Daniel acting on the basis of a grace principle that if forgiveness comes it is all done on the basis of grace. He expects God to act justly and he has in judgment, but he also expects God to act graciously and expects deliverance from Exile. Righteous judgment caused it, and grace will end it.

He recounts the history of the Jews and how they were brought by God out of Egypt and how he had been shown to protect and prosper them over the centuries. But the Jews had not responded. In verse 16 he appeals to God on the basis of God's righteousness and His holy perfect character. The Jewish situation was so bad that they thought that they would never be able to be restored, and they certainly didn't deserve to be, but repentance opens the door.

It is of interest that Daniel appeals to God's righteousness and not His love. In eternity past God designed a way whereby his love and righteousness could co-exist without compromising either. Righteousness had first to be satisfied. This was done by the way of grace, God's unmerited favour. This was portrayed in many ways in the Old Testament including the Tabernacle, the Priestly Uniform, the Sacrifices, and the Feasts.

Grace is the binding agent that keeps all the characteristics of God together. Without grace God would only be able to destroy or judge man. The plan of God is not based entirely on the love of God.

Daniel pleads with God that on the basis of His character the legitimate anger and fury against his people may be turned away. Here Daniel calls Jerusalem, thy city, Mt Zion, thy holy mountain and the Jews, thy people.

Daniel recognises the important function that the Jews have had in the plan of God to that point, and that even though they have failed badly, resulting in dispersion, they again will have a key function in the plan. He therefore personalizes the relationship between God and the Jews and points to God's character to solve the problem he finds them in at the moment.

Daniel calls God "our God" in verse 17. The word "hear" is in the Kal imperative which demands a hearing from the Lord. This is the prayer of an extremely mature believer. Daniel has maximum love for the Father and as an old believer now he has walked with God for many years. He again uses the imperative mood in relation to God's love again shining on the sanctuary which is a request for the return of the Shekinah glory.

In this, as the Temple was destroyed in 586 BC, Daniel is requesting, for the glory of the Lord, the rebuilding of the Temple in Jerusalem. This prayer will be fulfilled by the return of the Jews to the land in 535 BC and by the completion of the Second Temple in 516 BC. The Lord himself will come to this temple.

This was done before the reconstruction of the walls/gates of the city of Jerusalem, indicating the right priority as far as the Lord is concerned, that He be pre-eminent in everything. Daniel ends this verse with God the Son, showing the differentiation of the Trinity at this point.

In verse 18 we continue the Kal imperatives. Daniel demands that God, hears, open his eyes and does something about the situation. He demands action on the basis of long term intensive Bible study. The city which is called by thy name is Jerusalem, the city of the Prince of Peace. He again confirms on what basis he is approaching God. It is not what the Jews have done but on the basis of grace in action, the great mercies of God. James chapters 1-2.

In verse 19 we have four more imperatives, the Kal imperative of "Shamea" which means to hear, the Kal imperative of "Salach" which amplifies the concept of forgive and forget, to put it down and never pick it up again. The third imperative is the Hithpael imperative of "Qodesh" is causative and could be translated, cause to hear; in other words be caused to draw near.

The last imperative is a Kal imperative of "Asah", which means to make something out of something. He is saying "out of you grace manufacture deliverance". This is to be done on the basis that it is in the interest of God and His plan. The Jews were of course called the children of Israel; Israel is a name which means Prince of God.

In verse 20 and 21 there is a rapid response to the prayer because as he was speaking the angel Gabriel arrived Daniel was still in intensive prayer for himself, his people the Jews and presenting his pleadings for grace before the Lord.

The word man in verse 21 is the word "Ish" which means man or individual. Gabriel who is an angel appears in the form as a man. Gabriel had been away and arrived to give a face to face answer to Daniel in response to his intensive prayer. Gabriel arrives and touches Daniel at the time of the evening oblation, which is about 3 o'clock in the afternoon.

APPLICATION

It is of critical importance, that as responsible Christians, we should study and apply the Word of God to our daily lives and the life of our nation as far as we are able to influence it. We may not be able to hold back the slide into evil in our days, but we can stand for truth, and proclaim the truth. With Homosexual/Lesbian "marriage" approved, Abortion/murder of children up until, and at birth, Drug legalization, Euthanasia, and increasing "human rights" legislation that forbids open proclamation of the gospel message, we see the slide, but must maintain the proclamation of truth.

Like Jeremiah, we are not judged on the numbers who believe us, nor on our results, but upon our fidelity to the truth. God will honour and eternally reward us all, if we keep and share the truth of the Word of God.

In the case of Jeremiah, Nebuchanezzar sought out the prophet and provided for him to live. Further disobedience by other Jewish refugees destroys that provision, and Jeremiah keeps preaching to them to the very end of his life – possibly by being stoned to death as a "negative preacher". Daniel confesses all this evil.

By studying the Word of God we are able to have great confidence not only of our individual future, but that of future history. There is no doubt that the Lord will win; the Word is clear, and we cling to its truth, not the lies in the "news".

We can do nothing for cleansing except lay ourselves before God and trust that God has to do all the work through His grace, love and mercy, and he will. **Psalm 106:1-7.**

In the kingdom of man we need to guard the Word of God, and be guided by it. By knowing the events at the end we can be ready to make the right decisions on our path, and we can have the right values.

The combination of religion and state pervert the concept of nations as set out by God.

God always provides sufficient information for man to respond to Him. However more often than not man has a love of darkness rather than a love for the light.

God always acts towards us on the basis of His grace. God always gives grace before judgment. He gave the Jews forty years of warning through Jeremiah before its first dispersion, and forty years of warning through the early church, with prophetic words, miracles, and the gift of speaking in tongues (Isaiah 28) prior to the dispersion of 70 AD.

Unlike the Gentiles who are under a single curse at this time, the curse of spiritual death or separation from God the Jews are under the second curse of dispersion from the land, or separation from the land. Just started to reverse 2019.

All curses are lifted by regeneration as the Gentile becomes a member of the body of Christ as does the Jew with both of us having new spiritual life and the converted Jew a new destiny and spiritual country.

We see that the spiritual prayer of one man which reflects the Word of God in this case restored a nation.

We need to be free from unconfessed sin to be able to understand the Scriptures.

This passage shows that our failure cannot destroy our relationship or future with God. While we live we may repent and be restored, and if we are – there is something yet to be done in the Plan of God in Holy Spirit power.

The more you know about the doctrines of the word the greater is the potential for your prayer life.

You have to be very mature and on an absolute spiritual basis to demand answers and action from the Lord as Daniel did.

DOCTRINES

JEREMIAH - GOD'S MESSENGER

1. SCRIPTURE - Jeremiah.

2. BIOGRAPHY

Jeremiah, whose name means "Jehovah exalts", was born into the priestly family of Hilkiah in Anathoth, a city in Benjamin assigned to the Levites under Joshua (Jeremiah 1:1, cf. Joshua 21:18), c. 650 BC. He was called to the prophetic ministry in 627 BC (Jeremiah 1:6). He was informed by God that he had a ministry to the nations as well as Israel. Jeremiah worked under the last five kings of Judah: Josiah, Jehoahaz, Jehoiakim, Jehoiachin and Zedekiah. Late in his reign Josiah instituted reforms (621 BC) (2 Kings 23) which Jeremiah supported (Jeremiah 11:1-8). Josiah was killed at the battle of Megiddo in 608 BC (2 Kings 23:29) with Jeremiah mourning his death (Jeremiah 22:10). Jehoahaz, who succeeded Josiah, was replaced by Pharaoh Necho after three months by Jehoiachin in whose reign Nebuchadnezzar defeated the Egyptian forces at the battle of Carchemish in 606 BC (Jeremiah 44). Jeremiah, who spoke out against the kings, was persecuted (Jeremiah 12:6; 15:15-18), plotted against (Jeremiah 18:18), imprisoned (Jeremiah 20:2), declared worthy of death (Jeremiah 26:10f.), His written prophecies were destroyed (Jeremiah 36:27). Despite this, Jeremiah continued interceding for Judah, pleading with God for them. He predicted the destruction of the nation, temple and lamented over things to come (Jeremiah 14:17). Jehoiachin (or Coniah) was cursed by God (Jeremiah 22:28-30). He reigned for only three months before being replaced by his uncle, Zedekiah (2 Kings 24:17). It was to Zedekiah he sent his famous letter (Jeremiah 29:1). Jeremiah foretold an exile of 70 years and future restoration (Jeremiah 32:36-44). Nebuchadnezzar treated Jeremiah well but after the murder of the governor of Judah he fled into Egypt (Jeremiah 42:1 - 43:7), where he continued to rebuke the idolatrous Jews (Jeremiah 44:1). He eventually died in Egypt.

3. EVALUATION

Jeremiah's message can be divided into various groups:

- a) God was seen by Jeremiah as the,
 - i) Creator and sovereign Lord who governs all things (Jeremiah 27:5; 23:23f.)
 - ii) He is the supreme will in the universe.
 - iii) He is the source of eternal life (Jeremiah 2:13; 17:13).
 - iv) He loves His people tenderly (Jeremiah 2:2; 31:1-3).
- b) Idolatry is condemned in many places where Jeremiah speaks out against Baal, Molech and the queen of heaven. Idols were found in the temple (Jeremiah 32:34) and children were sacrificed to Molech and Baal (Jeremiah 7:31; 19:5; 32:35).
- c) Jeremiah emphasised the precedent of the moral law over the ceremonial law,
 - i) Reverence for the ark (Jeremiah 3:16).
 - ii) Tables of the Torah (Jeremiah 31:31f.).
 - iii) Sign of circumcision (Jeremiah 4:4; 6:10; 9:26).
 - iv) The Temple (Jeremiah 7:4; 27:16).
 - v) Sacrificial system (Jeremiah 6:20; 14:12).
- d) His hope for the future of Israel,
 - i) Her exile in Babylon would not last forever (Jeremiah 25:11; 29:10).
 - ii) As it became darker his message shines brighter (Jeremiah 23:1-8).
 - iii) His hope gave him the great act of faith in the darkest days (Jeremiah 32:1-15).
- e) His view of the end times,
 - i) Samaria will be restored (Jeremiah 3:18; 31:4-9).
 - ii) Abundance will be common-place (Jeremiah 31:12-14).
 - iii) Jerusalem will be holy to the Lord (Jeremiah 31:23).
 - iv) Gentile nations to share in the blessing (Jeremiah 16:19; 30:8,9).

4. PRINCIPLES

- a) God always provides a messenger (Matthew 9:38; John 16:23).
- b) The message never changed even with changes in kings (Psalm 117:2).
- c) In a period of decline God's message becomes of greater comfort (Psalm 43:5).
- d) A messenger from God is not normally popular (John 15:20).
- e) One has to be consistent even when under pressure (Hebrews 12:1).
- f) There is a future for Israel (Romans 11:1,26, 27).
- g) Jesus Christ will return and reign (Luke 1:33; 2 Thessalonians 2:2).
- h) God will bless a nation or individual who truly repents (Deuteronomy 30:2,3,9,10)-
- i) God is supreme and in final control (Proverbs 8:15).

CONFESSION OF SIN

1. Examine yourself for genuineness of motivation. [2 Corinthians 14:5]
2. Act on what you see [Romans 4:7-8]
3. Deal with any sin by confession. [1 John 1:9, Psalm 66:18]
4. Forget the sin which you have confessed. Do not proceed into a pattern of guilt. [Philippians 3:13-14, Psa 103:10-12]
5. Resume your active spiritual walk. Avoid areas where you might be tempted by the sin which so easily besets us. [Hebrews 12:12-13]

6. Be reconciled to others once you have been reconciled to God. [James 5:16]

7. Get moving and grow up. [2 Peter 2:17-18]

COVENANTS

1. A covenant is a contract or agreement between God and man.

2. Some covenants are unconditional - God will fulfill them, irrespective of man's obedience. Other covenants are conditional upon man's obedience.

3. Christ is central to all of the covenants in Scripture:

- a) EDENIC - Christ is the second Adam (1 Cor 15:45-47).
- b) ADAMIC - Christ is the seed of the woman (Gen 3:15).
- c) NOAHIC - Christ is the greatest son of Shem (Luke 3:36; Gen 9:23-27).
- d) ABRAHAMIC - The seed to whom the promises were made (Gen 22:18).
- e) MOSAIC - He fulfilled this covenant (Matt 5:17).
- f) PALESTINIAN - He lived as a Jew in the land and will inherit the land
- g) DAVIDIC - Christ is the King of the Jews and will rule forever (Lk 1:31-33; Jn 19:19-22).
- h) NEW - Christ's sacrifice is its foundation and focus in the Millennium (1 Cor 11:25).

EDENIC COVENANT

1. The covenant in the Garden of Eden (Gen 1:28-30; 2:8-17).

2. Main points:

- a) To be fruitful and multiply (Gen 1:28).
- b) To subdue the earth (Gen 1:28).
- c) To have dominion of the animal creation (Gen 1:28).
- d) To eat the herbs and fruit (Genesis 1:29).
- e) To till and keep the garden (Gen 2:15).
- f) Not to eat of the tree of knowledge of good and evil (Gen 2:17).

ADAMIC COVENANT

1. The Adamic covenant deals with the fall and restoration of mankind and creation. When Christ returns creation is removed from its bondage. (Rom. 8:21)

2. Satan's means of bringing sin into the world, the serpent, is cursed (Genesis 3:14) and goes from being the most beautiful of God's creatures to the most repugnant. The brazen serpent raised by Moses in the wilderness (Num. 21:5-9) becomes a picture of Christ being made sin for us (2 Cor. 5:21), the brass representing judgment; the serpent sin.

3. The promise of a redeemer (Genesis 3:15). The seed of the woman descends through Seth (Genesis 5:3-7), Noah (Genesis 6:8-10) Shem (Genesis 9:26,27) Abraham (Genesis 12:1-4) Isaac (Genesis 17:19-21) Jacob (Genesis 28:10-14) Judah (Genesis 49:10) David (2 Samuel 7:5-17), ultimately fulfilled in Jesus Christ (Isaiah 7:9-14; Matt 1:20-23).

4. The judgment on the woman (Genesis 3:16) in four areas.

- a) Increase in sorrow and pain regarding conception.
- b) Sorrow in relation to children
- c) The woman would be attracted to the man
- d) The woman would be subject to the man (1 Tim. 2:11-14, Eph. 5:22-25, 1 Cor. 11:7-9)

5. The judgment on man (Genesis 3:17-19)

- a) The ground is cursed
- b) Sorrow is inevitable in this life.
- c) Man is to work for a living rather than having it provided (Genesis 3:17-19)
- d) Man will eventually die (Genesis 3:19)

NOAHIC (EVERLASTING) COVENANT

1. The covenant with Noah never to flood the earth again (Genesis 8:20- 9:27)

2. The relation of man to the earth is confirmed (Gen 8:21).

3. Seasons, day and night and harvesting confirmed (Gen 8:22).
4. Human government introduced (Gen 9:1-6).
5. A curse is given to the Hamitic races (Gen 9:24,25).
6. The Semitic races will be the source of spiritual wealth (Gen 9:26,27).
7. The Japhetic groups will be dominant (Gen 9:27).
8. The earth will never be judged with water again (Gen 8:21; Gen 9:11).
9. The rainbow given as the sign of the promise

ABRAHAMIC COVENANT

1. Abrahamic Covenant (Genesis 12:1-3) founds the nation of Israel
2. It is confirmed with Abraham with emphasis on the land (Gen 13:14-18), the spiritual seed (Gen. 15:1-6) and its everlasting quality (Gen 17:6-8).
3. It is an unconditional covenant - God will fulfill it. (God caused Abraham to fall asleep as He ratified the covenant alone Gen 15:12-18)
4. The seven-fold covenant (Gen 12:1-3) is fulfilled as follows:-
 - a) PROMISE "And I will make of thee a great nation.
FULFILLMENT Jews (Gen. 13:16; John 8:37), Arabs (Gen. 17:20), In Christ (Rom 4:16-17, 9:7-8; Gal 3:7,29).
 - b) PROMISE "I will bless thee".
FULFILLMENT To Abraham (Gen 13:14-17, 15:18-21, 24:35), To believers in Christ (Gen 15:6; John 8:56)
 - c) PROMISE "And make thy name great.
FULFILLMENT Abraham is renowned, not only in Christianity but also in Judaism and with the Moslems.
 - d) PROMISE "And thou shalt be a blessing.
FULFILLMENT With the work of fulfillment of Abraham's seed, Jesus Christ, he was a blessing. (Gal 3:13,14).
 - e) PROMISE "And I will bless them that bless thee.
FULFILLMENT This is seen in the rise of many nations eg Britain in the 19th century, the rise of the USA.
 - f) PROMISE "And curse him that curseth thee.
FULFILLMENT The decline of nations such as the Spanish Empire after the Armada, the fall of Nazi Germany, the fall of the Czars of Russia, the decline of Egypt at the Exodus.
Scriptural examples:(Deut 30:7; Isa 14:1-2; Joel 3:1-8; Micah 5:7-9; Haggai 2:22; Zech 14. 1-3; Matt 25:40-46).
 - g) PROMISE "In thee shall all the families of the earth be blessed.
FULFILLMENT The whole world can be blessed through Jesus, the son of Abraham. (John 8:56-58; Gal 3:16).
5. It is clear that the we should support the Jew as it is a sure means of enjoying divine blessing.

PALESTINIAN COVENANT

1. The Palestinian Covenant deals with the Jews controlling an area of land in the Middle East which was unconditionally given to Abraham. It should be noted that the Jews have never possessed the land as specified, but will do so during the Millennium. (Deut 30:1-9, Isaiah 11:10-12, Jeremiah 23:3-8, Ezekiel 37:21-25).
2. The Palestinian Covenant gives:
 - a) Dispersion for disobedience (v 1) (Deut 28:63-68).
 - b) The future repentance of Israel (v 2).
 - c) The return of the Lord (v 3) (Amos 9:9-14; Acts 15:14-17).
 - d) Restoration to the land (v 5) (Isa 11:11,12; Jer 23:3-8; Ezek 37:21-25).
 - e) National conversion (v 6) (Rom 11:26-27; Joel 2:14-16).
 - f) Judgment of Israel's enemies (v 7) Joel 3:1 -8).
 - g) National prosperity (v 9) (Amos 9:11-15).
3. It is unconditional - God will fulfill it.

DAVIDIC COVENANT

1. Israel will have a king forever 2 Samuel 7:8-17.
 - a) A descendant of David in the Davidic line (v 12)
 - b) He will have a kingdom to rule over. (v 12)

- c) God will provide a throne. (v 13)
- d) The throne will be forever. (vs 13,16)
- e) The Davidic Covenant is restated in (v 16)

2. The covenant has one condition - disobedience will be rewarded with discipline but will not cause the cancellation of the covenant. (2 Sam 7:15; Psa 89:20-37)
3. Discipline came with the division of the kingdom under Rehoboam. (1 Kings 12:16-20)
4. Discipline continued with the captivity of Samaria in 721 BC and Judah in 586 BC.
5. Since then the only King of David crowned in Jerusalem has been crowned with a crown of thorns. (Matt 27:29).
6. The Davidic Covenant was confirmed to Mary. (Luke 1:31-33; Acts 2:29-31).
7. The Davidic Covenant will be fulfilled at the Second Advent of Christ when He will commence His everlasting rule with the 1,000 year reign of the Millennium. ((Luke 1:32, Acts 2:29-30, Rev 20:4-6)

MOSAIC COVENANT

1. The covenant between God and Israel, given through the Law of Moses (Exod - Deut)
2. It was a conditional covenant - it depended on man's obedience (Deut 28:1,15)
3. It had three main parts:
 - a) Section 1 - The Commandments - proves that no man can keep the Law. All men are proven sinners, and therefore need a Saviour.
 - b) Section 2 - The Tabernacle and Sacrifices - Pictures Christ as the Saviour, the only sacrifice which can pay the eternal penalty of sin.
 - c) Section 3 - Social Code - Laws to preserve the nation Israel - law, hygiene, morals, taxation, etc.

NEW COVENANT

1. The New Covenant guarantees eternal blessing under the Abrahamic Covenant (Jeremiah 31:31-37, Hebrews 8:7-9).
2. It is unconditional - God will fulfill it. "I will" (Heb 8:10,12) rather than "If ye will" (Ex 19:5).
3. The New Covenant is said to be better than the Mosaic Covenant. (Heb 7:19; Rom 8:3,4).
4. Obedience is from a willing heart (Heb 8:10) whilst that for the Mosaic Law was fear (Heb 2:2; 12:25-27).
5. In the New Covenant all shall know God, from the least to the greatest (Heb 8:11).
6. The sins are forgotten under the New Covenant (Hebrews 8:12).
7. The New Covenant relies on the completed sacrifice of Jesus Christ (Heb 9:11-12).

GOD: CHARACTER OF GOD [See page 40 above]

SHEKINAH GLORY

1. The Shekinah glory is the visible manifestation of the presence of God. The usual title used is the glory of God
2. It is from the Hebrew word "shachan" meaning dwelling.
3. It took the form of light, fire, cloud or a combination of these.
4. At times it is associated with the following, the Angel of Jehovah, the Holy Spirit, The Cherubim and the motif of thick darkness.
5. Appearances of the Shekinah Glory in the Old Testament
 - a) The Garden of Eden [Genesis 3:8]
 - b) The time of the Abrahamic Covenant [Genesis 15:12-18]
 - c) The burning bush [Exodus 3:1-5]

- d) At the Exodus [Exodus 13:21,22]
- e) At Mount Sinai [Exodus 19:16-20]
- f) The special manifestation to Moses [Exodus 33:17-23]
- g) The Tabernacle and the Ark of the Covenant [Exodus 29:42-46]
- h) The book of Leviticus [Leviticus 9:6-7, 22-24]
- i) The Book of Numbers [Numbers 13:30-14:45, 16:1-50, 20:6-13]
- j) The period of Joshua and the Judges [1 Samuel 4:21-22]
- k) Solomon's Temple [1 Kings 8:1-13, 2 Chronicles 5:2-7:3]
- l) The departure of the Shekinah Glory [Ezekiel 1:28, 3:12,23, 8:3-4, 9:3a, 10:4, 18-19, 11:22-23]
- m) The Shekinah glory was not in the second Temple Haggai 2:3,9

6. Appearance of the Shekinah Glory in the New Testament.
- a) To the Shepherds Luke 2:8-9
 - b) The Christmas star Matthew 2:1-12
 - c) It comes in a new form John 1:1-14
 - d) The transfiguration Matthew 17:1-8, Mark 9:2-8, Luke 9:288-36, 2 Peter 1:16-18
 - e) The reflection of that glory. 2 Corinthians 3:12-18
 - f) The Book of the Acts Acts 2:1-3, 9:3-8, 22:6-11, 26:13-18
 - g) The Revelation Revelation 1:12-16,
 - h) In the Tribulation Revelation 15:8
 - i) The Second Coming of Christ Matthew 16:27, 24:30, Mark 13:26, Luke 21:27
 - j) The Millennium Ezekiel 43:1-7a, 44:1-2, Zechariah 2:4-5, Isaiah 36:1-2, 58:8-9a, 60:1-3
 - k) The Eternal State Revelation 21:1-3, 21:23-24

LIGHT

1. God is light and in Him there is no darkness at all. (1 John 1:5)
2. The Lord is the visible manifestation of that light. (John 1:4, 8:12, 12:46)
3. The Lord's coming as the Light of the World was prophesied. (Isaiah 49:6)
4. The light was seen in the darkness of the world. (Matthew 4:16, Luke 2:32)
5. The Lord brought light and immortality through the gospel. (2 Timothy 1:10)
6. Believers are said to be light bearers. (Matthew 5:14-16, John 12:36)
7. We are said to be the children of the light. (John 11:9-10, Ephesians 5:8, 1 Thessalonians 5:5, 1 Peter 2:9)
8. Light is necessary for man's existence on the earth. (Ecclesiastes 11:7; Jeremiah 31:35)
9. Divine guidance of Israel was provided by God through light. (Exodus 14:20)
10. Bible doctrine in the soul is portrayed by light. (Psalm 119, 105,130)
11. The gospel is called light. (2 Corinthians 4:3,4; 2 Timothy 1:10)
12. Salvation brings the believer out of darkness into light just as the planet Earth was brought out of darkness into light by God. (Luke 1:79; 1 Peter 2:9).
13. Satan is the distorter, the angel of light. (2 Corinthians 11:14)
14. Satan's strategy is to outshine the true light with his own false gospel. (2 Corinthians 4:3-6)

TRINITY

1. There is one God. He has manifest Himself in three personalities. (2 Samuel 23:1-3, Isaiah 48:16, Isaiah 63:7-10, Matthew 28:19, Acts 2:33, 2 Corinthians 13:14)
2. The oneness of God refers to the unity or sameness of character. All three members of the Trinity are equal (Philippians 2:6, Deuteronomy 6:4, Acts 17:29, Romans 1:20, Colossians 2:9), although they have different functions/purposes in relation to man.
3. The three members are distinguished according to their function in the plan of salvation (1 Peter 1:2-3)

- a) The Father - the authority, who planned our salvation (Isaiah 14:27, John 4:34, 5:17, 12:44, 1 Corinthians 8:6a, Ephesians 3:11)
- b) The Son - the obedient son, who was born as a man, died for our sins, and rose from the dead (John 4:34, 5:17, Hebrews 10:7)
- c) The Holy Spirit - the ministering servant, who reveals the Son and sanctifies us (John 16:8-11).

4. The Son is the only visible member of the Trinity. (John 1:18, 6:46, 1 Timothy 6:16, 1 John 4:12). He was revealed in the Old Testament in Christophanies (eg the Angel of Jehovah) and became flesh in the New Testament. (Exodus 3:14 cf John 8:58; Psalm 10:16 cf Revelation 11:15; Zechariah 14 cf Revelation 19)

5. Evidences of the Trinity

- a) Affirmed by the use of the title Elohim (plural, Gods) in the Old Testament and the plural pronoun "us" in (Genesis 1:26, 3:22, 11:7).
- b) The worship of God we have repeated three times "Holy, holy, holy is the Lord God Almighty (Isa 6:3, Revelation 4)
- c) The name (singular) of the Father, Son and Holy Spirit indicates Trinity. (Matthew 28:19-20)
- d) The Lord's Baptism - the Spirit descends, the Father speaks from heaven and the Son is baptised. (Matthew 3)

6. Light is a good illustration of the Trinity. (1 John 1:5) Light is one, but has three elements.

- a) Father - actinic light - that part of light which is invisible, nor felt.
- b) Son - luminiferous - that part of light which is both seen and felt.
- c) Spirit - calorific - that part of light which is not seen but felt.

SECTION 40 - PROPHECY OF THE SEVENTY WEEKS

Chapter 9:22-27

22 And he informed me, and talked with me, and said, O Daniel, I am now come forth to give thee skill and understanding. **23** At the beginning of thy supplications the commandment came forth, and I am come to shew thee; for thou art greatly beloved: therefore understand the matter, and consider the vision. **24** Seventy weeks are determined upon thy people and upon thy holy city, to finish the transgression, and to make an end of sins, and to make reconciliation for iniquity, and to bring in everlasting righteousness, and to seal up the vision and prophecy, and to anoint the most Holy. **25** Know therefore and understand, that from the going forth of the commandment to restore and to build Jerusalem unto the Messiah the Prince shall be seven weeks, and threescore and two weeks: the street shall be built again, and the wall, even in troublous times. **26** And after threescore and two weeks shall Messiah be cut off, but not for himself: and the people of the prince that shall come shall destroy the city and the sanctuary; and the end thereof shall be with a flood, and unto the end of the war desolations are determined. **27** And he shall confirm the covenant with many for one week: and in the midst of the week he shall cause the sacrifice and the oblation to cease, and for the overspreading of abominations he shall make it desolate, even until the consummation, and that determined shall be poured upon the desolate.

KEY WORDS

Informed	Bin	To consider, Discern
Talk	Dabar	To speak
Come Forth	Yatsa	To go forth or out
Skill	Sakal	To cause to act wisely
Understanding	Binah	Understanding, Intelligence
Beginning	Techillah	Beginning, Commencement
Supplication	Tachanunim	Supplication for grace
Commandment	Dabar	A word
Show	Nagad	To put or place before
Beloved	Chamudoth	Very desirable
Understand	Bin	Understand, Consider
Matter	Dabar	Matter
Consider	Bin	Understand, Consider
Vision	Marhe	Appearance, Sight
Seventy	Shibim	Seventy
Weeks	Shabua	A seven, Week
Determined	Chathak	To be determined
People	Am	A people
Holy	Qodesh	Separation. Object set apart
City	Ir	City, Enclosed place
Finish	Kala	To finish, Shut, Restrain
Transgression	Pesha	Transgression, Rebellion
End	Qets	End, Extremity
Sins	Shattath	Sin, Sin offering
Reconciliation	Kaphar	To cover, Make atonement
Iniquity	Avon	Perversity

Bring	Bo	To cause to come in
Everlasting	Olam	Age, Age lasting
Righteousness	Tsedeq	Rightness, Justice
Seal	Chatham	To seal, Seal up, Finish
Vision	Chazon	Vision
Prophecy	Nabi	A prophet
Anoint	Mashach	To smear, Anoint
Know	Yada	To know
Understand	Sakal	To cause to act wisely
Commandment	Dabar	A word
Restore	Shub	To cause to turn back
Build	Banah	To build up
Messiah	Messiah	Anointed
Prince	Nagid	Leader
Seven	Sheba	Seven
Weeks	Shabua	A seven, A week
Threescore	Shishshim	Sixty
Two	Shenayim	Two
Street	Rechob	A broad wide place
Wall	Charuts	A rampart
Troubolous	Tsoq	Distress
Times	Eth	Time
Cut Off	Karath	To be cut down, off or asunder
People	Am	A people
Destroy	Shachath	To mar, Corrupt, Destroy
Sanctuary	Qodesh	Separation
Flood	Sheteph	Overflowing flood
End	Qets	End, Extremity
War	Milchamah	A fighting, War, Battle
Desolations	Shamen	To be desolate
Determined	Charats	To be determined
Confirm	Gabar	To be strengthened
Covenant	Berith	Covenant
Many	Rab	Many
One	Echad	One
Midst	Chatsi	Half, Middle, Midst
Sacrifice	Zebach	A slaughter, Slaughtered animal
Oblation	Minchah	Offering, Present
Cause to Cease	Shabath	To cause to cease
Overspreading	Kanaph	A wing
Abominations	Shiqquts	Abominable, Detestable thing
Desolate	Shamem	To be desolate
Consumation	Kalah	Completion, Consumation
Poured	Nathak	To be poured out

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

In verse 22 the reply to Daniel's prayer is give. Gabriel interpreted the answer and talked to Daniel face to face. The word to talk is in the Piel stem which is intensive active, so that it was an intensive teaching session. Here Gabriel gives Daniel an overview of the future history of Israel. In chapters 10, 11 and 12 we will have this given in detail. This format is in a typical Jewish format, with the summary given, then an amplification on the important features of the outline. This was the form given in Genesis chapters 1 and 2 where the overall picture is given in chapter 1 and amplified in chapter 2.

Gabriel says that he is come to give "skill and understanding". Skill is the word "Sakal" in the Hiphil infinitive. The Hiphil stem is causative active, while the infinitive shows the purpose of the task. The purpose of Gabriel's talk to Daniel is to cause to give him skill and understanding to operate in his place in history. This remains our challenge, to play our part in the plan and not seek other's roles, and remember that the saints of the past cheer us on from heaven's stands as we play our part with joy. **Hebrews 12:1-3**. As others understand these things, they will be able to operate in their time of history also. The answer is going to be given in 490 years of Jewish History. These years are the prophetic focus of the rest of prophetic words in the Scripture, right through to the Revelation that is given to the Apostle John.

In verse 23 Gabriel tells Daniel that as he started his prayer he was instructed to go and teach him. Gabriel starts with a great piece of encouragement for Daniel telling him that he is greatly beloved by God. Daniel is one of the most consistent believers of all time. He obviously sinned from time to time, because all members of the human race sin and he was confessing his sins earlier in this chapter, but we just see a magnificent mature believer in this exiled Jew in the Scriptures. He had a phenomenal capacity to love God and walk and serve patiently before God.

Gabriel tells Daniel to hear and understand the details explained and consider the full meaning of the vision. The Jews will last another 490 years as a focal point in the plan of God. It is the "Time of the Gentiles" but they will still be central

until Messiah comes, and even afterwards they have a part to play that keeps them central to the plan of God until Messiah comes again. He comes again to deliver them once they have called upon him. Zechariah Chapters 12-14.

In verse 24 we have we have 70 weeks. The seventy weeks actually relate to a period of 490 years as in the ancient world there was the concept of the week representing a period of seven years by both the Romans and Greeks.

THE SEVENTY WEEK PROPHECY OF THE FUTURE OF THE JEWS verses 24-27

Verse 24 says, **"Seventy weeks are determined upon thy people and upon thy holy city, to finish the transgression, and to make an end of sins, and to make reconciliation for iniquity and to bring in everlasting righteousness and to seal up the vision and prophecy, and to anoint the most Holy."**

What is a week? In the ancient world both Greek and Latin philosophers knew the prophetic week, as the week of years. In this system one week equals 7 years. Thus seventy weeks equal 70 x 7 years = 490 years.

What Type of Year? The year used in scripture of Daniel's time was the Jewish lunar year which Abraham had preserved from his Chaldean home. Abraham's year was the lunar year and consisted of 360 days. The period stated then is 70 x 7 x 360 days giving a total of 176,400 days.

The word "determined" is the Niphal perfect of "Chatak" which in the passive voice means to cut or cut out. In essence it means that this period of 490 years is "taken out" of history, and is the remaining time of the Jews being servants of God. Who are Involved? 'Thy people, thy holy city', refer at this time only to the Jews and Jerusalem or Judea. We therefore have a period of 490 years involving the Jews and Jerusalem. Later Covenant Theology can't change this!

The answer to the prayer is based on what is going to happen the city of Jerusalem and the Jewish nation. In answering the question Gabriel gives six things which are going to be fulfilled at the end of this period. When Does this Period End? As this whole prayer is about the Jews and Jerusalem the end of the period is the end of the Jewish Age which occurs at the Second Advent of Christ, so it hasn't ended yet. The six phrases/items (that must be kept together) are:

1. "To finish the transgression" – this marks the official end of the dispersion of the Jews. While there is a nation Israel at the moment, the formal end of the dispersion of the Jews only occurs at the Second Advent of Christ, when he as the King and Shepherd calls for all the Jews to come back into the Promised Land as part of the fulfillment of the Palestinian/Land Covenant.
2. "To make an end of sins" – refers to the Baptism of Fire, which separates the believers who enter into the Millennium from the unbelievers who are cast off. This also occurs only at the Second Advent.
3. "To make reconciliation for iniquity" – this is the regathering of Israel as a bone fide nation under God. When the Jews returned to the land after the Babylonian Captivity they returned with a high priest and a prophet but not any king. The man entitled to be was Satrap. When Jesus Christ comes back it will as Prophet, Priest and King.
4. "To bring in everlasting righteousness" - this is the resurrection of the Old Testament saints, and the start of an eternal perfect future with the Millennial reign of the Lord Jesus Christ.
5. "To seal up the vision and prophecy" - as this is the end of the Jewish Age and the prayer and answer relates to the Jews and Jerusalem the Second Advent of Christ is the final act in both the vision and prophecy regarding the Jews.
6. "To anoint the most Holy". – this deals not with the Lord Jesus Christ, but with the dedication of the Temple for ministry during the Millennium which is described in Ezekiel 40-48. This is similar to the cleansing of the Temple by the Jews after the Abomination of Desolation installed by the prototype Antichrist Antiochus IV was removed from the Temple.

The period clearly ends only at the Second Advent of Christ, so we have a 490 Jewish/Lunar years period, terminating at the Second Advent of the Lord Jesus Christ.

There is a gap within this time frame, where the Church Age fits in, but it is an insertion, the 490 years remain as one total period, and apply to Israel, Jerusalem and the Jewish people only. In the next three verses the period of 70 weeks is carefully divided into three sections.

Verse 25. **"Know therefore and understand that from the going forth of the commandment to restore and to build Jerusalem unto the Messiah the Prince shall be seven weeks (49 years) and three score and two weeks (434 years):the streets shall be built again, and the wall even in troubled times."**

In verse 25 Gabriel tells Daniel to know which is the Kal imperfect of "Yada" which is followed by the Piel imperfect of "Sakal" which means to understand. The sequence here is to know but then there is a level of concentration as the Piel stem is an intensive stem. There needs to be intense concentration to learn the truths in the Scriptures.

We have therefore three periods into which the 70 weeks is split into three sections - 7 weeks + 62 weeks leaving a balance of 1 week. Expressed in years we have 49 years + 434 years + 7 years.

What is the Starting Point?

There were three edicts issued by Persian princes dating after the time of Daniel, and relating to the Jews returning to their homeland, they were:-

- i) The edict of Cyrus in 538 BC to return and rebuild the house of the Lord (Temple) (Ezra 1:1-2).
- ii) The edict of Darius in 520 BC to recommence the rebuilding of the temple which is found in Ezra 6:3. Darius' edict was to confirm Cyrus' previous order; the temple works having been stopped after the death of Cyrus.
- iii) The edict of Artaxerxes Longimanus to rebuild the walls of Jerusalem in 445 BC (Nehemiah 2:1-8).

Inspection of Daniel 9:25 shows that the critical commandment which starts the 70 weeks clock ticking was the order to rebuild Jerusalem not the temple. The specific order then was the edict of Artaxerxes in 445 BC.

The practice of Persian Kings was to issue such orders on their New Years day, the 1st of the lunar month of Nisan.

Starting Date for Daniel's Seventy Weeks - Sir Robert Anderson, the founder/chief of New Scotland Yard and well known Christian author upon inquiry of the then Astronomer Royal, Sir George Airey, was informed on the 26th June 1877 that calculations showed that the new moon which commenced the New Year 445 B.C. - Artaxerxes 20th year occurred in Jerusalem at 7:09 a.m. on the 13th March 445 B.C. (under our calendar system). **Note** – unless you are equal in intellectual ability to these two men don't think you can better their calculations! There are some dodgy works out there!

As the date of an edict was reckoned from the first day of the New Year the date of the edict which commenced Daniel's Seventy Weeks was March 14th 445 B.C.

Start of Period - 14th March 445 BC

Length of Period - 490 years

End of Period - 2nd Advent of the Lord Jesus Christ

In verse 25 it also states that Jerusalem will be rebuilt with its walls completed after 49 years (7 weeks) in difficult circumstances. There is considerable biblical evidence that Jerusalem was rebuilt under very difficult circumstances.

The passage continues in verse 26 **“And after threescore and two weeks shall Messiah be cut off, but not for himself: and the people of the prince that shall come shall destroy the city and the sanctuary; and the end thereof shall be with a flood, and unto the end of the war desolations are determined.”**

Looking at this section by section we see that after 69 weeks of years or 483 Jewish Years, Messiah be cut off, but not for Himself. Who is the Messiah? There is only one candidate on the scene at the prophetically determined time - Jesus Christ!

In Luke's Gospel, on entry into Jerusalem on Palm Sunday, just prior to his crucifixion, the crowd welcomed Jesus Christ as the promised Messiah (Luke 19:38), this being the only time when he was so called by the mass of the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

When was He cut off? - According to Luke 3:1, Jesus Christ was baptised in the 15th year of Tiberius Caesar. As his ministry was three years in length, the entry into Jerusalem occurred in the 18th year of Tiberius.

Searches of literature from, 'The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire' by Gibbon, but many more, has shown that Tiberius became Caesar in 14 AD. Entrance into Jerusalem was therefore most likely on Palm Sunday 32 AD.

Again by computation the date of Palm Sunday 32 AD, the only time in his ministry when Jesus Christ was greeted as the King of the Jews was 10th Nisan, or 6th April AD 32.

If this is correct, we should find correlation between the 483 Jewish years to the cutting off of the Messiah and the time between 14th March 445 BC and 6th April AD 32. The time between these two dates is 476 solar years and 24 days.

Total number of days are therefore as follows:-

476 solar years x 365 days =	173,740 days
14 th March to 6 th April 32 AD	24 days
Leap years 445 BC to 32 AD	116 days

TOTAL = 173,880 days

Jewish time: 483 x 360 days 173,880 days

Not unexpectedly the correlation is absolute. Now if you have a PhD in astronomy or its equivalent, then debate with Sir George Airey's figures, but we are yet to find anyone with the intellectual power to do so. Sir Isaac Newton did work things out slightly differently 200 years before Sir George Airey reviewed the facts, but most who differ speak nonsense, for they are not intellectually as rigorous, nor the masters of astronomy and mathematics that these men were.

The timeline now shows for the first 69 weeks:- 14th March 445 BC -- 483 years -- 6th April 32 AD

The following questions now arise:

Has the second advent of Jesus Christ occurred? - No.

Is it longer than 7 years since Jesus Christ rode into Jerusalem? - Yes.

Therefore there must be a gap between the 69th week and the 70th week.

The second half of the timeline is now 32 AD -- GAP -- last 7 years -- 2nd Advent

This gap has been filled in God's view of history by the Church Age.

The 70th week which is 7 years in length therefore starts at the end of the church age after the Rapture or removal of the Church. These 7 years of the 70th week are the worst 7 years in the history of man and are called the tribulation period.

The course of the history after the death of the Messiah is given in the second half of verse 26 and verse 27.

In verse 26 it continues, **"and the people of the prince that shall come shall destroy the city and the sanctuary, and the end thereof shall be with a flood, and until the end of the war, desolations are determined.**

The general in charge of the siege of Jerusalem (future Roman Emperor) was a Roman named Vespasian, whose son and successor Titus (his prince -- soon to be Emperor himself) was eventually in charge of the legions which destroyed Jerusalem in 70 AD. They left one wall standing; the wailing wall. They destroyed the Temple. There is no temple in Jerusalem today but there is an area where the Temple could be rebuilt. Currently there are Arab mosques **adjacent** to the site. The actual site of the temple is directly due west of the sealed up "Golden or Eastern Gate" of the temple mount complex, and the probable site of the Holy of Holies is marked by the "Cupola of Moses".

The Romans thoroughly destroyed the temple and the mount, killing over 100,000 people in Jerusalem and sending over 1 million into slavery. Josephus says that they poured in like a flood, and that it was carnage of blood.

In verse 27 we have the outline of the final week. **"And he shall confirm the covenant with the many for one week and in the midst of the week he shall cause the sacrifice and the oblation to cease, and for the overspreading of abominations he shall make it desolate, even until the consummation and that determined shall be poured upon the desolate".**

The Antichrist, the world dictator in the time immediately preceding the Second Advent of Christ, will make a treaty with the Jews for a seven year period, loosely called by many the Tribulation -- Daniel's 70th week, the "time of Jacob's trouble". He will allow sacrifices and oblations to be made in the temple through that period, from the start of that treaty. This clearly indicates that another Temple will be in place and operating daily by this time; the Temple which the Lord replaces on His return. The great earthquakes just before the Lord's touch down in Jerusalem will level the entire site, so the tribulational temple will be simply rubble then, as will be the present walls and mosques. **Revelation 16:17-21.**

Half way through this seven year treaty period the Dictator will stop the sacrifices and set up an image of himself in the Temple to be worshipped [Revelation 13]. We will come back to this time in later chapters of Daniel. However on his return to the earth the Lord eliminates the Antichrist, the False Prophet and all unbelievers, as he sets up his kingdom on earth, governing from a new Millennial Temple on the reformed Mount. The great earthquakes having totally changed the topography from today's Mount.

We thus have Daniel's 70 weeks divided as shown:-

445 BC -- 483 years -- 32 AD -- Church Age [unknown time period]-- Rapture -- 7 year Tribulation -- 2nd Advent

APPLICATION

If we truly seek the Lord He will provide ways in which we may be able to both understand and be skilled in the area in which we need divine knowledge and guidance. We will be provided enough information to believe truth.

What the Lord requires is obedience and maturity so that we can ask of God what he is willing to show us. The more mature you are as a Christian the more your prayers will ask things in accordance with God's Plan and will.

The Lord now teaches us through His Word which lives and abides forever

As Christians the Lord is our life, everything else is a detail. We are not to be a slave to any of the details in our lives. Every day is a wonderful day with the Lord. No matter what happens it is the Lord who counts in our lives.

There needs to be intense concentration to learn the truths in the Scriptures. Those who are casual in their attention span achieve very little in this life, and win few rewards for the next.

Here the Messiah is shown not to die for himself but to die for the sins of the world, this prophecy was made over 500 years before the Lord came.

In verse 26 the Temple is destroyed which was fulfilled literally by Titus and the legions in AD 70.

In verse 27 however the sacrifices are again said to cease, intimating that there is a Temple again in Jerusalem.

There has been over 1900 years between verses 26 and 27. Here we are reading world history in advance.

Notes

CHAPTER 10

DIVISION OF CHAPTER 10

Chapter ten of Daniel can be divided into five sections

PREPARATION OF DANIEL FOR THE VISION	VERSES 1-10
VISION OF CHRIST GLORIFIED	VERSES 5-6
TRANSFORMING EFFECT ON DANIEL	VERSES 7-9
MESSAGE FROM AN HEAVENLY MESSENGER	VERSES 10-14
DANIEL ASSURED AND STRENGTHENED	VERSES 15-21

INTRODUCTION

The book of Daniel clearly portrays the unfolding revelation of the truth by God to successive generations of believers. New doctrines and principles are revealed as the Lord wants them to be in accordance with his plan.

Things are revealed in order, at God's direction, not our desire. The doctrine of the Church was never revealed in the Old Testament. The Ten Commandments were not given until the Jews were free. They did not need the "Ten Commandments" until they were free, as they represent the Magna Carta of human freedom.

It is interesting the way that the methods to teach Daniel changed over the years. In chapter 1 Daniel was a student who learnt the university subjects in the Chaldean court, and graduated as a "Magi". In chapter 2 God gave him an interpretation of a dream. He then has a dream himself and a vision in chapters 7 and 8 and now he is taught directly by angels. This shows the progression of methods of revelation as Daniel matures in faith and practise.

SECTION 41 - PREPARATION OF DANIEL FOR THE VISION 10:1-4

1 In the third year of Cyrus king of Persia a thing was revealed unto Daniel, whose name was called Belteshazzar; and the thing was true, but the time appointed was long: and he understood the thing, and had understanding of the vision. **2** In those days I Daniel was mourning three full weeks. **3** I ate no pleasant bread, neither came flesh nor wine in my mouth, neither did I anoint myself at all, till three whole weeks were fulfilled. **4** And in the four and twentieth day of the first month, as I was by the side of the great river, which is Hiddekel;

KEY WORDS

Third	Shalosh	Third, Three
Year	Shanah	Year, A repetition
King	Melek	King, Counsellor
Revealed	Galah	To be uncovered
Name	Shem	Name, Renown
Called	Qara	To be called
True	Emeth	Truth, Faithfulness
Appointed Time	Tsabah	Warfare
Understood	Bin	Understand, Consider
Understanding	Binah	Understanding, Intelligence
Vision	Mareh	Appearance, Sight
Mourning	Abal	To show self a mourner
Three	Shalosh	Three, Third
Full	Yamin	Days
Weeks	Shabua	A seven, A week
Eat	Akal	Eat
Pleasant	Chamudoth	Desirable objects
Bread	Lechem	Food, Bread, Sustenance
Flesh	Basar	Flesh
Wine	Yayin	What is pressed out, Grape juice
Mouth	Peh	Mouth
Anoint	Suk	To pour out
Whole	Yamim	Days, Of days
Fulfilled	Male	To be full
Four	Arba	Four
Twentieth	Esrin	Twenty
Day	Yom	Day
First	Rishon	Head, First
Month	Chodesh	New moon, Month
Side	Yad	Hand
Great	Gadol	Great
River	Nahar	A river
Hiddekel	-	Rapid

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

Cyrus was acknowledged as the king of Persia in 559 BC. He gains control of the Medes and the Persians and takes the Median Capital Ecbatana in 550 BC. He attacks the Lydians in 547 and defeats them in 546 BC. He defeats Babylon in 539 BC. The third year of Cyrus can therefore be seen in various ways. His third year from kingship is 556 BC, from taking the double throne as 546/547, and his third year as king over Babyon as 536 when he declares his edict for the Jews to return. It isn't 100% clear which year is meant here. There are two significant 3rd years; the first is the defeat of Croesus of Lydia, and the second would be the edict for the Jews to return.

The word "thing" means in this context doctrine, truths from God. It was at this time that doctrine was revealed to Daniel. What was revealed was the contents of chapter 11. It is the history of the Jews from the time of Daniel to the Second Advent of Christ without covering any detail of the Church Age.

We note Daniel being called by his Chaldean name Belteshazzar. Daniel understood everything that he wrote in chapter 11. The Hebrew word for understand is "Bin" which in the Kal perfect means that he not only understood, but applied it as well. Gabriel teaches Daniel, explains all visions seen, and in turn Daniel writes down what he has learnt for later generations. He sees that the world is heading in only one direction, and that is towards the Messiah's final victory, but there is great carnage before it. Like all people of God he is appalled by the human cost of sin and evil.

The word for understanding "Binah" is translates like a verb but in fact it is a noun. It means discernment and has the implication of both to learn and apply. Daniel is overwhelmed by the carnage caused by evil before the end comes.

Verses 2 and 3 are the occasion of the vision. In the King James Version it says that Daniel was mourning for three weeks. The word "Mourning" is the Hithpael participle of "Abal". This means to fast. For three weeks Daniel was fasting

and praying. Fasting is using time for prayer and Bible study which would otherwise be legitimately used for other good purposes. This is sacrificial self denial, focused Bible study and passionate constant prayer.

In verse 3 Daniel amplifies his period of fasting in that he, “ate no pleasant bread, neither came flesh nor wine in my mouth, neither did I anoint myself at all, till three whole weeks were fulfilled”.

The word for eat is “Akal” in the Kal present with a negative and should be translated indicating he did not eat one pleasant piece of bread, nor did he drink any wine. In the ancient world almost everybody drank wine. The water system was very poor in many places, and wine was usually mixed with the water to kill bacteria. Boiling water to kill water borne diseases was not known about for many more centuries.

It is noted that Daniel did not emphasize to others that he was fasting, because he anointed himself, which means he was well groomed during this period. The Persians took baths and anointed themselves with sweet smelling ointments.

In verse 4 we have the exact day when the fast was over. It is noted that the site of this event is on the banks of the great river Hiddekel which we know as the Tigris. The Tigris is well over 1000 kilometres in length, so we do not know exactly where he was, but most likely towards the Persian Gulf, close to a major Persian city, possibly Susa/Shushan. Google maps shows the impressive ruins of Susa, still well visible from space.

APPLICATION

We are responsible to teach others, and that means that the believer must understand the subjects that God requires us to know really well – for all God wants known is for passing on to others.

As part of your Christian testimony as a teacher you should teach all you know to your students so that they have an opportunity to mature and develop into a greater and more useful Christian than you are.

Fasting is using time for prayer and Bible study which would otherwise be legitimately used for another good purposes.

It is important to understand that spirituality is not asceticism. Religious people over the millennia have fasted and abused their bodies, but this is not spiritual fasting, it is often fake legalism, and often almost pagan like asceticism.

While there is physical benefit from abstaining from some food, and dieting if you are overweight, there is no spiritual benefit **1 Corinthians 8:8, 1 Timothy 4:3**. It is the mental/spiritual attitude that sets genuine fasting apart from pretending you are spiritual by using ascetism.

DOCTRINE

FASTING [See page 113 above]

SECTION 42 - VISION OF CHRIST GLORIFIED Chapter 10:5-6

5 Then I lifted up mine eyes, and looked, and behold a certain man clothed in linen, whose loins were girded with fine gold of Uphaz: 6 His body also was like the beryl, and his face as the appearance of lightning, and his eyes as lamps of fire, and his arms and his feet like in colour to polished brass, and the voice of his words like the voice of a multitude.

KEY WORDS

Lifted	Nasa	To lift up, Carry, Bear
Eyes	Ayin	Eye
Looked	Raah	To see, Look, Behold
Certain	Echad	One
Man	Ish	Man, Husband, Individual
Clothed	Lebash	To be clothed
Linen	Bad	Fine linen
Loins	Mothnayim	Loins
Girded	Chagar	To gird
Fine Gold	Kethem	Pure gold
Body	Geviyah	Back
Beryl	Tarshish	Beryl, Chrysolite, Topaz
Face	Panim	Face
Appearance	Mareh	Appearance
Lightning	Baraq	Lightning
Lamps	Lappid	Torch, Flame
Fire	Esh	Fire
Arms	Zeroa	Arm

Feet	Margeloth	Feet [Place of the]
Colour	Ayin	Eye, Aspect
Polished	Qalal	Bright
Brass	Nechosheth	Brass, Copper
Voice	Qol	A voice, Sound
Words	Dabar	A word, Matter, Thing
Multitude	Hamon	Multitude, Noise, Store

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

These verses deal with the contents of the vision. He lifted up his eyes and concentrated. The word involving concentration is the Hebrew word "Raah" which is in the Kal imperfect, meaning he constantly looked or beheld. Concentration and correct understanding comes with spiritual maturity.

The Bible class starts with the Lord Jesus Christ introducing the teaching angel Gabriel. The appearance of the Lord Jesus Christ here is a Christophony, which was the Lord in a physical bodily form prior to the incarnation. There were no Christophonies after the Incarnation, just the visions like John's, recorded in Revelation.

Examples of Christophonies are quite frequent in the Old Testament. The person with whom Abraham met in Genesis 18 prior to the destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah was such a manifestation, as was the man who wrestled with Jacob Genesis 32. The Lord of Hosts who appeared to Joshua in Joshua 5, the person who interviewed Gideon, and the person high over the river in this passage are all the same. The description of the Lord Jesus Christ here is very similar to that of Revelation 1.

In **Ezekiel 1:26-28** we have another description. *"And above the firmament that was over their heads was the likeness of a throne, as the appearance of a sapphire stone: and upon the likeness of the throne was the likeness as the appearance of a man above upon it. 27. And I saw as the colour of amber, as the appearance of fire round about within it, from the appearance of his loins even upward, and from the appearance of his loins even downward, I saw as it were the appearance of fire, and it had brightness round about. 1:28. As the appearance of the bow that is in the cloud in the day of rain, so was the appearance of the brightness round about. This was the appearance of the likeness of the glory of the LORD. And when I saw it, I fell upon my face, and I heard a voice of one that spake."*

Another passage indicating His glory and power is **Revelation 1:13-16**, which says, *"And in the midst of the seven candlesticks one like unto the Son of man, clothed with a garment down to the foot, and girt about the paps with a golden girdle. 14. His head and his hairs were white like wool, as white as snow; and his eyes were as a flame of fire; 15. And his feet like unto fine brass, as if they burned in a furnace; and his voice as the sound of many waters. 16. And he had in his right hand seven stars: and out of his mouth went a sharp two edged sword: and his countenance was as the sun shineth in his strength."*

The gold of Uphaz is mentioned here. We do not know where this gold was located. It is obviously of very high quality. Its location was well known in the ancient world. It also contributed significantly to the great wealth of the Persian Court.

The Christophony is above the Persian river while Gabriel is standing beside Daniel teaching him.

APPLICATION

Jesus Christ is totally consistent in His glory as well as in His ministry throughout all history.

When a person wishes to know about the Lord, God will give that person opportunity to hear the principles of God.

The Christophony is always the Lord Jesus Christ as He is the only visible member of the Godhead. No one has ever seen God the Father or the Holy Spirit. John 1:18, 6:46, 1 Timothy 6:16 1 John 4:12.

DOCTRINE

ANGEL OF JEHOVAH [See page 64 above]

SECTION 43 - TRANSFORMING EFFECT ON DANIEL Chapter 10:7-9

7 And I Daniel alone saw the vision: for the men that were with me saw not the vision; but a great quaking fell upon them, so that they fled to hide themselves. **8** Therefore I was left alone, and saw this great vision, and there remained no strength in me: for my comeliness was turned in me into corruption, and I retained no strength. **9** Yet heard I the voice of his words: and when I heard the voice of his words, then was I in a deep sleep on my face, and my face toward the ground.

KEY WORDS

Saw	Raah	Look, See, Consider
Vision	Marah	Appearance, Sight
Men	Anashim	Men
Great	Gadol	Great
Quaking	Charadah	Trembling, Fear, Trouble
Fell	Naphal	To fall
Fled	Barach	To flee
Left	Shaar	To remain, Be left
Remained	Shaar	To remain, Be left
Strength	Koach	Power
Comliness	Hod	Beauty
Turned	Haphar	To be turned, Overturned
Corruption	Mashchith	Corruption
Retained	Atsar	To shut up, Restrain
Voice	Qol	A voice, Sound
Words	Dabar	A word, Matter, Thing
Heard	Shemea	To hear
Deep Sleep	Radam	To be in a deep sleep, In a trance
Face	Panim	Face
Ground	Erets	Earth, Land

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

In verse 7 we see the reaction of the other people who were with Daniel. They did not see the vision. They saw something however, and were very fearful, and fled from the scene. The other people there were not qualified to take in this type of doctrine.

We do not know if the other people initially with Daniel were believers or unbelievers. Of course the only doctrine that the unbeliever can appreciate is the gospel. Younger believers thrive on milk, but not the solid deeper things of God.

Daniel stayed in office until after the first year of Cyrus so here we see Daniel in “retirement” is still being used by God.

The effect of the vision of Daniel is seen commencing in verse 8 where whilst not fleeing from Gabriel his facial expression shows the pressure that he is under. His face becomes strained, he lost the colour in his cheeks and his strength is sapped from him. A prophetic encounter with God is not a “happy clappy” event, it is awesome!

In verse 9 he hears and concentrates on what is being said and he fell into a deep trance flat on his face the first time he heard about the vision.

APPLICATION

Only mature Christians can cope with the advanced doctrines of the Word of God.

The effect on unbelievers and immature believers of some areas of the Bible is to bring fear and trembling. Even in the case of mature believers some revelation can cause the person to be exhausted. Prophecy is awesome – serious stuff.

You need to be qualified to absorb deeper truths from the Word. Doctrine is built upon doctrine.

Many times you may feel that you are alone, but you are never alone.

Bible prophecy in which nations fall and there are great disasters always frightens some people.

As a Christian you never retire. You know when your job is finished when you become absent from the body and face to face with the Lord.

DOCTRINES

MATURITY

CATEGORIES OF BELIEVERS

1. Standpoint of Spirituality
 - a) Spiritual believer - the Holy Spirit controls the inside of the believer (Rom 8:6b).
 - b) Carnal believer - the sinful nature controls the inside of the believer (Rom 8:6a).

2. Standpoint of Growth
 - a) Baby - one who has just received Christ as Saviour.
 - b) Adolescent - one who has learned some doctrine but is not yet in the application state.

c) Mature - one who knows and applies doctrine and spends a maximum amount of time in the filling of the Holy Spirit.

3. Relationship of Maturity and Spirituality

- a) Spirituality is an absolute. The Holy Spirit either controls or He does not. One cannot be a little bit carnal. If he is carnal he is NOT spiritual.
- b) Maturity is speeded up by spirituality, but a baby believer can be either carnal or spiritual, and a mature believer can be carnal or spiritual.

MATURITY: CROSS TO THE CROWN

1. Salvation is only the beginning of the plan for man. After salvation the believer's objective is to advance in stages of spiritual growth on the path from the Cross to the Crown.

2. At each stage the believer faces increasing intense tests that can only be passed by faith. Paul in Romans 1:17 says believers progress from faith to faith. The five Hebrew words for faith illustrate the five stages of growth described in the New Testament.

a) The Babe - 1 Peter 2:2 - AMEN - the leaning faith of Genesis 15:6

All believers enter the family of God as infants when they exercise faith in the Lord Jesus Christ. After the tremendous stress of birth, of coming from darkness into the light the infant's impulse is to nurse. The objective is nourishment but the baby also receives great comfort in feeding. God's objective for the spiritual infant is for growth, but He commences this with comfort. Not much is expected of a baby in his first few years, he cannot feed or change himself. Spiritual infants are just as helpless and need a great deal of nurturing, encouragement and patient encouragement and patient instruction.

b) The Adolescent - 1 John 2:13-14 - BATAH - the wrestling faith of Psalm 37:3

Adolescents young, strong and eager believers. This is the stage where people have grown to the point at which they understand some of the principles of truth and are beginning to apply them to their lives. But like most adolescents, they have the growing pains of arrogance and rebellion against authority; they are sometimes too eager to act on their own, and this often gets them into trouble. They have knowledge which they mistake for wisdom, but they lack the experience. Their tendency is to want to apply the truth to other people's lives. Adolescents may be troublesome, but at least they are not apathetic. They must be patiently trained and encouraged to channel their energies. No one makes it to maturity without passing through adolescence.

c) The Mature - Hebrews 5:14, 6:1 - CHASAH - the confident faith that takes refuge in the Lord - Psalm 57:1

The mature believer is able to take meat, the advance doctrine of the Word. A believer who has arrived at spiritual maturity knows enough about the Bible to take responsibility for his own life. He knows how to apply the Word of God to himself so rather than airing all his problems he knows how to solve them. He is not ready to take on every one else's problems but he can take control of his own life. He understands that God has a plan for his life and sets about fulfilling that plan. He gives himself to training and discipline, exercising himself and building spiritual muscle.

d) The Hero of Faith - Isaiah 53:12, Hebrews 11 - YACHAL - the healing faith of Job 13:15

Heroes of faith are men and women who have gone beyond maturity and have learned to fight the good fight. They have advanced beyond simply taking responsibility for their own lives to becoming responsible for the lives of other people. They are always willing to pick up fallen comrades, to treat their wounds, to encourage them and supply their needs. Heroes of the faith still make mistakes, they still fail but they always stand back up and go back into battle.

e) The Friend of God - James 2:23-25 - QAWAH - the enduring faith of Isaiah 40:31

The highest of all possible achievements in life is to become a friend of God. Every believer has the potential and the assets necessary to reach this point, but very few Christians do. It takes persistency and tenacity. The only people who make it this far are those who absolutely refuse to quit.

MATURITY – SIGNS OF MATURITY (Romans 15:1-15)

1. Helping others (v 1-3) The mature believer should bear the infirmities of the weak (v 1; cf Gal 6:2). Paul includes himself as a believer of mature strength.

a) A mature believer is characterised by:

- i) Knowing doctrine.
- ii) Knowing promises.
- iii) Spending a maximum amount of time by the filling of the Holy Spirit.

b) A weak or immature believer may be:

- i) A new believer.
 - ii) An ignorant believer who does not know the Word.
- c) A mature believer bears the infirmities of the weak believer by:

- i) Giving information about the Word (doctrine, promises, procedures). This may be in private conversation.
- ii) Giving advice based on the Word.

- iii) Exercising grace; listening to and helping others with problems.
- d) The mature believer is not to "please himself" (v 1,2).
- i) He is not to feed his ego or brag about helping others. It should never be done for self-glory or self-stimulation, but for God's glory.

ii) Christ as the supreme example (v 3).

He did not please Himself; but as a man He received more pressure than we will ever have.

The Old Testament says, "the reproaches of Israel ('them') that reproached the Father ('Thee') fell on the Son ('Me') on the cross." Paul quotes a Messianic Psalm (Psalm 69:9). Christ was under maximum pressure when He bore our sins on the cross.

2. Knowledge of the Word of God (v 4)

a) The Old Testament ("things written aforetime") was the only scripture existing at the time Romans was written. The canon is now completed.

b) the purpose of the Word:

- i) Learning - doctrine God wants us to know.
- ii) Patience - faith in the long distance race. Believing moment by moment.
- iii) Comfort - in trials and difficulties of life.
- iv) Hope - for the future. Believers know where they are going.

3. Attitudes (v 5-6)

Believers are to see others from the divine viewpoint and be "like-minded one toward another". Their one purpose in life, after salvation, is "with one mind and one mouth, glorify God" (v 6). This is only possible from the divine viewpoint.

- i) We are all saved by grace. Christ died for us when we were His enemies (Rom 5:8).
- ii) We all have the same spiritual privileges and responsibilities (except spiritual gifts).
- iii) Every believer has a sinful nature but have different ways of expressing it.
- iv) We all get spirituality the same way (filling of the Holy Spirit) and all grow the same way, by the Word.
- v) God loves each believer with the same amount of love, whether we are in or out of temporal fellowship.

4. Fellowship as the basis of grace (v 7)

- a) Believers are to receive one another as Christ received them.
- b) He received them in GRACE to the glory of God.

5. Ability to distinguish between Israel and the Church (v 8-12)

a) Christ was a minister under the Law (v 8).

i) He was born, ministered, died, arose and ascended under the dispensation of the Law.

ii) Therefore all He said (except Matt 16 and John 14-17) amplified the Mosaic Law, confirmed the four unconditional covenants to Israel and the future of Israel with Him as their King. Some principles He gave are re-stated in the Epistles as the Christian way of life.

b) Before the Law was given (v 9) the Abrahamic and Palestinian covenants promised blessing to the Jews, that the Gentiles may glorify God for His mercy.

c) Paul quotes (Psalm 18:49; Deut 32:43; Psalm 117; Isa 11:1-10). (Jesus Christ as the root of David and Jesse, is to reign over the Gentiles too.)

6. Faith that appropriates (v 13)

- a) The God of hope is to fill the believer with joy and peace in the sphere of believing. Faith is the means.
- b) Faith appropriates salvation, restoration to fellowship, filling of the Holy Spirit, doctrine, promises.

7. Knowing the operation of grace (v 14,15)

a) A mature believer realises all he has is because of God's grace and he operates his life on the basis of grace.

b) Grace is manifested in the believer in:

- i) Salvation (Eph 2:8,9)
- ii) Prayer (Heb 4:16)
- iii) Suffering (2 Cor 12:9)
- iv) Releasing power (2 Tim 2:1)
- v) Growth and stability (2 Peter 3:18)
- vi) Restoration and fellowship (Heb 12:15; 1 John 1:9)
- vii) Producing works (1 Cor 15:10; 2 Cor 6:1; 9:9)
- viii) Christian way of life (2 Cor 1:12; Heb 12:28).

SECTION 44 - MESSAGE FROM A HEAVENLY MESSENGER Chapter 10:10-14

10 And, behold, an hand touched me, which set me upon my knees and upon the palms of my hands. 11 And he said unto me, O Daniel, a man greatly beloved, understand the words that I speak unto thee, and stand upright: for unto thee am I now sent. And when he had spoken this word unto me, I stood trembling. 12 Then said he unto me, Fear not, Daniel: for from the first day that thou didst set thine heart to understand, and to chasten thyself before thy God, thy words were heard, and I am come for thy words. 13 But the prince of the

kingdom of Persia withstood me one and twenty days: but, lo, Michael, one of the chief princes, came to help me; and I remained there with the kings of Persia. 14 Now I am come to make thee understand what shall befall thy people in the latter days: for yet the vision is for many days.

KEY WORDS

Hand	Yad	Hand
Touched	Naga	To touch, Come upon, Plague
Set Me	Nua	To cause to move
Knees	Berek	The knee
Palms of Hand	Kaph	Palm of hand
Beloved	Chamudoth	Very desirable
Understand	Bin	Understand, Consider
Speak	Dabar	To speak
Stand Upright	Amad	To stand, Stand still or fast
Trembling	Raad	To cause to tremble
Fear	Yare	To fear , Reverence
First	Rishon	Head, First
Day	Yom	Day
Set	Nathan	To give
Heart	Leb	The heart
Chasten	Anah	To humble oneself
Prince	Sar	Head, Official, Captain
Kingdom	Malekuth	Kingdom
Withstood	Amad	To stand, Stand still or fast
One	Echad	One
Twenty	Esrin	Twenty
Michael	-	Who is like God?
Help	Azar	To help
Remained	Yathar	To be left
King	Melek	King, Counsellor
Understand	Bin	To cause to understand
Befall	Qarah	To meet, Chance
People	Am	A people
Latter	Acharith	Last or latter end
Vision	Chazon	Vision

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

In verse 10 Gabriel, who is Daniel's helper as well as his teacher, touches him which strengthens him. Rather than flat on his face on the ground this encouragement raises him to his hands and knees.

There are two named angels who assist him. They are Michael, who is the covering angel of Israel, and Gabriel. **Michael** the Archangel appears in **Daniel 10:13, 21, 12:1, 1 Thessalonians 4:16, Jude 9, Revelation 12:7**.

Gabriel is mentioned **Daniel 8:16, 9:21, Luke 1:19, 26-38**. These are two of three archangels that are named in Scripture. The other is Lucifer, or Satan.

In verse 11 Gabriel tells Daniel that he is a man greatly beloved. This encourages Daniel. He is told to understand the words which is a Hithpael imperative of "Bin". This means to be caused to understand and apply. It is the strongest word in the Hebrew for understanding. Gabriel says that he has been sent by God to Daniel. This now brought Daniel to his feet but in a shaky form. It is a very serious moment when angels appear – not a cause of lightness (that's fakeness).

Gabriel now tells Daniel not to be fearful, which is the Kal imperfect of Yare. Daniel had been frightened by what he had observed in connection with Israel's future history. Daniel was not the only student of this teaching Archangel, He also taught The Virgin Mary in Luke 1:26, and also Zachariah, recorded in the same chapter. Each appearance is prophetically significant for the history of Redemption. Angels do not often appear – when they do it is serious.

Gabriel now assures Daniel that from the commencement of his desire to understand and his prayers to that effect his prayers had been heard. His desire to understand the Word of God was on a daily basis. It is essential that we are in a sinless state when we pray, achieved through confession of sin. Here Daniel chastens himself, which means he judges himself to ensure that he is in fellowship with the Lord.

His prayers were heard as soon as he had made them but Gabriel had been delayed to come and teach him and satisfy his desire to know more about God's plan. Gabriel was delayed for three weeks by a very powerful demon in the court of Persia. This demon is one of the anti-semitic demons that have used Persia/Iran at times through history to try to thwart the Plan of God. This demon is a "world ruler of darkness" as seen in Ephesians 6:12, and he presently remains active in his opposition to God's Plan and God's people, but those walking in the filling of the Holy Spirit have no fears of him.

In the case of unbelievers it is possible for demons to possess them, in the case of believers, the demons can influence them through false teaching sowing doubts and fears, but if the leadership/teaching is strong and Bible based the lies can be resisted. This demon has tried to control leaders of Persia/Iran and use them for satanic purposes down the centuries, and their satanic malice towards God's people makes their advice unstable. It continues today, and this very demon's ultimately unstable advice will be to invade the Middle East, and thereby fulfill Ezekiel 38-39.

A good example of this instability historically was the rise/fall of Hitler and his exploits in the years of World War II, where he made a number of brilliant decisions, that were demonically inspired and correct, but as time went on his demonically inspired hatred of the Jewish people brings more and more instability and insanity into decision making. As the demonic and their servants are warped in their thinking by their lusts and hatreds their decisions unhinge = "Fruit" of the demonic!

In verse 14 Gabriel says that he has come to answer the prayer and to assist Daniel to understand what is going to happen to "his people" – the Jews. Also he tells Daniel that it is going to be a long period of isolation and judgment. This period as we know ends only fully and completely at the Second Advent of Christ. History is truly in God's hands.

APPLICATION

The spirit world is in the background of the physical world. A member of the spirit world assists Daniel on understanding what is going to happen in future history. Human history has as its back drop the Angelic Conflict, and those who study the Bible and see this dimension to decision making understand events more clearly.

Your prayers, if you are under the control of the Holy Spirit, are heard immediately, but the visible answer to the prayer may be delayed. We need to be patient with waiting for answers to prayers. **Isaiah 55:6-9, Jeremiah 10:23-24.**

We should keep short accounts with God. We should judge ourselves so that we will not be judged.

There are very powerful demons at the centres of political power where they try and influence political leaders to adopt Satanic policies which eliminate God from any participation in the activities of man.

The demons are geographically limited, and at all times the Holy Spirit filled believer will be superior to them.

They cannot thwart the Plan of God for your life if you walk in the Filling of the Holy Spirit, and by applying bible doctrine as you advance you will see the "devices" of the enemy. **Ephesians 5:8-21, 2 Cor 2:11, 11:12-15, 1 John 4:4.**

Satan is a great deceiver/distracter, and deceives all countries who do not have strong leadership based on Biblical principles. Revelation 20:1-3.

DOCTRINES

ANGELIC CONFLICT

1. There is a spiritual warfare between elect and fallen angels, which affects the human race. (Ephesians, 6:12, Revelation 12). God the Father's Plan will be Victorious! The demonic forces will be destroyed!

2. Angels and mankind have a number of parallels:

a) Angels began in innocence and full obedience to God (Job 38:7 Ezekiel 28:14-15)

Man began in innocence (Genesis 2:25)

b) Angels sinned - rebellion of Satan (Isaiah 14:12-14)

Man sinned - rebellion of Adam (Genesis 3:1-7)

c) Angels are divided into two categories - elect or fallen.

Man is divided into two categories - believers and unbelievers.

3. Freewill is the key to the angelic conflict.

a) In eternity past, Satan was called Lucifer, the most important angel. However, he became proud and rebelled against God (Ezekiel 28:12-17, Isaiah 14:12-14). One third of the angels chose to rebel with Satan (Revelation 12:4,9)

b) In eternity past, God sentenced Satan and the fallen angels to the lake of fire (Matthew 25:41). This sentence will be executed at the end of human history (Revelation 20:10). The delay in the execution of this sentence suggests that God created the human race to provide a clear legal witness to Satan and his angels of their sin. The whole of human history is to prove certain points to the angels.

c) It appears that God created Adam and Eve, to show Satan that mankind, created lower than angels (Hebrews 2:6-7), would choose to obey God. Mankind therefore, by a choice of freewill, would decide whether to obey God and be blessed, or to disobey God and be judged (the same choice that Satan had).

d) A test was instituted for man's freewill - obedience to God or disobedience. (Genesis 2:16-17). Adam - and therefore all mankind - sinned and thereby rebelled against God. All of mankind, therefore, is in the same condition of sinful rebellion as Satan.

e) However, God instituted another test of freewill for mankind - will they choose to return to God through Jesus Christ, or will they choose to continue in sin and rebellion (John 3:16, 2 Peter 3:9).

f) Anyone who chooses to return to God will be saved; anyone who chooses to remain in rebellion to God will be judged in the lake of fire, the same fate as Satan (Matthew 25:41)

g) Therefore, by the work of Christ on the cross, and man's freewill faith in Christ, God has vindicated His love to save and His justice to judge.

4. The result of the angelic conflict:

- a) Stage 1 - Salvation - by faith, man is saved and made positionally superior to angels (Hebrews 2:6-7)
- b) Stage 2 - Christian Walk - by faith, the believer overcomes Satan (Ephesians 6:10-17)
- c) Stage 3 - Eternity - in Christ, the believer will judge Satan and his fallen angels (Hebrews 2:8, 1 Corinthians 6:3)

5. Angels watch the human race. (1 Corinthians 4:9, Ephesians 3:10, 1 Timothy 5:21, 1 Peter 1:12). Elect angels rejoice every time someone is saved (Luke 15:10)

6. Adam was made ruler of the world (Genesis 1:27-28). When he sinned, Satan obtained control of the world (2 Corinthians 4:4, Ephesians 2:2, John 16:11). What makes it possible for man to live in Satan's world and not be under his control? By faith and obedience to God and His Word, we can resist and overcome Satan.

7. The angelic conflict answers three basic questions:-

- a) Why did God create man? Jesus Christ, as perfect man in perfect obedience to God, paid the penalty of sin. Jesus Christ is able to save mankind. The key is freewill and obedience to God. It is a matter of freewill choice whether we are saved by God or judged by God. This shows that God's judgment of Satan is totally just.
- b) Why sin? Mankind, through the fall of Adam, was reduced to the same sinful and rebellious condition as Satan and his fallen angels. However, through Jesus Christ, man is able to choose to return to God.
- c) Why does God allow suffering? Suffering, sickness and death is the result of Adam's sin. However, God still uses this for our good because suffering makes people look in faith toward God. God is therefore able to strengthen our faith. (1 Peter 5:6-10)

8. Satanic attack

- a) In the Garden of Eden, Satan attacked Adam and Eve, resulting in their sin. Satan thought he had destroyed the plan of God, because man had sinned and rebelled against God. However, God promised to send the Messiah to remove sin and defeat Satan (Genesis 3:15).
- b) In the Old Testament, Satan attacked the Jews and Jesus Christ Himself. Satan wanted to prevent and/or destroy the Messiah. (Revelation 12:1-5)
- c) Now that Jesus Christ is seated at the right hand of the Father, Satan has turned his attack on believers on earth. Satan wants to thwart and/or delay the plan of God, and his own final judgment, but the Father's Plan cannot fail. (Revelation 12:12,17, 20:11-15.)

PRAYER [See page 34 above]

SECTION 45 - DANIEL ASSURED AND STRENGTHENED Chapter 10:15-21

15 And when he had spoken such words unto me, I set my face toward the ground, and I became dumb. **16** And, behold, one like the similitude of the sons of men touched my lips: then I opened my mouth, and spake, and said unto him that stood before me, O my lord, by the vision my sorrows are turned upon me, and I have retained no strength. **17** For how can the servant of this my lord talk with this my lord? for as for me, straightway there remained no strength in me, neither is there breath left in me. **18** Then there came again and touched me one like the appearance of a man, and he strengthened me, **19** And said, O man greatly beloved, fear not: peace be unto thee, be strong, yea, be strong. And when he had spoken unto me, I was strengthened, and said, Let my lord speak; for thou hast strengthened me. **20** Then said he, Knowest thou wherefore I come unto thee? and now will I return to fight with the prince of Persia: and when I am gone forth, lo, the prince of Grecia shall come. **21** But I will shew thee that which is noted in the scripture of truth: and there is none that holdeth with me in these things, but Michael your prince.

KEY WORDS

Words	Dabar	Word, Matter, Thing
Set	Nathan	To give
Face	Panim	Face
Ground	Erets	Earth, Land
Dumb	Alam	To be dumb, Bound, Tied
Similitude	Demuth	Likeness
Sons	Ben	Son, Offspring
Men	Adam	Man, Like a human being
Touched	Naga	To touch, Come upon, Plague
Lips	Saphah	Lip, Ledge
Open	Pathach	To open
Mouth	Peh	Mouth
Spake	Dabar	To speak
Stood	Amad	To stand, Stand still or fast

Visions	Marah	Appearance, Sight
Sorrows	Tsir	Pain, Pang
Turned	Haphak	To be turned, Overturned
Retained	Atsar	To shut up, Restrain
Strength	Koach	Power
Servant	Ebed	Servant, Doer, Tiller, Slave
Straightway	Me-attah	From now, Henceforth
Remained	Amad	To stand, Stand still or fast
Breath	Nishma	Breath
Left	Shaar	To remain, Be left
Appearance	Mareh	Appearance
Strengthened	Chazaq	To strengthen, Harden
Man	Ish	Man, Husband, Individual
Beloved	Chamudoth	Very desirable
Fear	Yare	To fear , Reverence
Peace	Shalom	Completeness, Peace
Strong	Chazaq	To strengthen, Harden
Knowest	Yada	To know
Fight	Lacham	To fight, Be consumed
Prince	Sar	Head, Official, Captain
Shew	Nagad	To show or place before
Noted	Rasham	To note down, Note, Sign
Scripture	Kethab	Writing
Truth	Emeth	Steadfastness, Truth
Holdeth	Chazaq	To strengthen self

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

After Gabriel had given Daniel the contents of chapter 11, Daniel notes that he “gave his face to the ground”. This is a Hebrew idiom for concentration. He concentrated on what had been said. He is however struck dumb with the awfulness of what he has seen and what it means for so many of his people through the centuries.

Gabriel touches Daniel’s lips and he is able to talk. He is now able to tell Gabriel of the profound effect of the teaching that he has received. It has shocked him and made him very weak. He addressed Gabriel as “my lord” indicating his respect for and the authority of the teaching angel. My sorrows are upon me says Daniel. Daniel is in great distress. He is shocked and burdened for Israel as he contemplates the history of the Jews right of the way through to the end of the Tribulation. Daniel will train and encourage the young prophet Zechariah, but he will not read his work, as it will be written after his death, but Zechariah will draw on Daniel and through the Spirit build upon his revelation.

In verse 17 he continues to talk to Gabriel. He says that the teaching has taken his breath away. He has been shaken to the core. There is never anything pleasant in prophetic words, for they are warnings, and the true prophet “sees” the events of the future as if they are happening in front of him. Daniel saw everything including the holocaust and the final solution of the Anti-Christ, still to come today..... He is emotionally exhausted by all this, and understandably so.

In verse 18 we see the second ministry of Gabriel. Gabriel touches him and he is strengthened. The strengthening is seen in the Piel imperfect of “Chazaq”. He is strengthened by the message being explained in detail. There is hope in the midst of the great sadness at the suffering he sees. Real visions are warnings of things to come – no joy here...

In verse 19 Gabriel encourages Daniel to be strong and have peace. Gabriel says, “be strong, yes, be strong”. It is again the word “Chazaq” repeated with “yes” in between. The word is in the Kal imperative. The first time refers to being strong spiritually while the second time refers to being strong physically. With the spiritual strength you get from Bible doctrine you will get physical strength to minister and to write to go on with the book of Daniel. The third time “Chazaq” is used in the verse it is in the Hithpael imperfect. The Hithpael stem is reflexive, so Daniel says that he has learnt these things, and strengthened himself in the assurance that God is in control, even though terrible things will unfold.

In verse 20 Gabriel asks Daniel, “Do you know why I came to you?” Daniel says that he does. Gabriel now describes his next assignment. This is to return to the court of Persia and continue his struggles against the key demons who are trying to turn the Persians against God’s Plan. He also looks down the corridors of history to see that he is going to have similar troubles with a Kosmokrator (world ruling) demon in the court of Alexander the Great of Macedonia later.

Gabriel therefore has the responsibility of protecting not only Cyrus the Great (“My shepherd” as God called him) but also the provider of the inventor of the language of the New Testament, Alexander the Great. These assignments are two hundred years apart but God is aware in detail what is going to happen and Gabriel has his duties mapped out 200+ years in advance. God protects His plan, and we are always safe within it. Alexander the Great was certainly spoken to by God, and seriously protected, but sadly later in his life would be serving the pagan gods and the various demons behind them. Pride unhinges him and he perishes, as an “Anti-christ” type rather than be like Nebuchadnezzar and Cryus, who received God’s revelation and walked with it (although Cyrus also wastefully died later in his pride).

In verse 21 we have the Hiphil imperfect of "Nagad" which means to narrate or illustrate a story. It is now written down and Gabriel is going over it again to make sure that it is accurate as it becomes part of the canon of Scripture. The Scripture that Daniel wrote was considered Scripture well before the canon was completed.

Gabriel ends by saying that there is no one helping him except "Michael your prince". Michael is the guardian angel of Israel. These two are standing together to ensure the fate of the Jewish people is secure and it still is, and always will be, even though in very dark days to come.

APPLICATION

When dealing with Biblical matters it is important to concentrate on what has been said or written and is of critical importance to correctly and accurately understand the passage. Often one glosses over a passage, or has heard it preached upon by others where current "Christian interpretation" has been given rather than looking at a passage in detail. Sometimes this can lead to misconception. We must hear the Spirit speak, not the latest theologian!

For instance from a dispensations viewpoint it is common to hear the statement that the Rapture of the Church starts the formal seven year period of the Tribulation. Now it is true that the Tribulation does follow the Rapture of the Church. However it is the signing of the treaty between the Antichrist and the nation Israel which commences this seven year period of Daniel's 70th week. As the Antichrist will not be revealed until; after the removal of the Church [2 Thessalonians 2] there is a gap of unknown length between the Rapture of the Church and the start of the Tribulation. We have no idea of how great that gap is. The Tribulation starts with the Treaty signing, but there may be considerable time before this.

No matter how difficult the situation is, it is possible for a believer to use strength from the Bible under the power of the Holy Spirit. God says we are not going to be tested above what we are able to bear but will with the testing make a way of escape so that we may be able to bear it. God knows what is going to happen in the future and has a plan for each individual who he sees as "greatly beloved".

This passage gives some insight into the titanic battles that are being waged in the unseen realm of the angels especially in the capitals of the world. Satan delights in places where lust drives people, and politics is one of those areas. It is essential that you have God's Word in your mind. The believer can only be oriented to God's plan and cope with the apparent disasters of history through Bible doctrine. Always ask, in every baffling situation, "What is God doing here?"

The prayer life of the believer is directly connected to the angelic conflict, and with the enemy about we are to be Spirit led and doctrinally strong and protected by truth in each encounter with people or angels.

DOCTRINE

PEACE

1. Peace on Earth:- The unlimited peace when Jesus Christ establishes his millennial reign on the earth. (Isaiah 9:6, 7, Isaiah 11:1-12, Luke 2:14)
2. Peace with God:- Which comes when a believer is born again as a result of justification by faith. (2 Peter 1:1,2, Ephesians 2:14-17, Philippians 4:9). Reconciliation.
3. Peace of God:- Which is the peace of believers in their soul and spirit who have cast all their cares on the Lord. (1 Peter 5.7, Philippians 4:6,7). The Spirit filled life.

CHAPTER 11

DIVISION OF CHAPTER 11

Chapter eleven of Daniel can be divided into four sections.

PROPHECY OF THE GREEK EMPIRES	VERSES 1-20
ANTIOCHUS EPIPHANES IDENTIFIED	VERSES 21-35
THE MAN OF SIN IN ACTION	VERSES 36-39
TEMPORARY VICTORY OF THE WILFUL KING	VERSES 40-45

INTRODUCTION

This is the fourth and final vision given to Daniel. It extends from Cyrus the Great (aka Darius the Mede) to the Second Advent of Christ, with a gap between the Lord's First Advent and the Second, as the Church is not mentioned in the OT at all. This has always been a controversial chapter because of the tremendous accuracy of this prophecy. It is important to remember that we have several Dead Sea Scroll versions and fragments of Daniel from around 150 BC and they are each clearly a copy of a copy, so the manuscript evidence is of an early date for Daniel. It is not history written after events, it is history written before events; it is genuine prophetic truth, as was Daniel 9:24-27! The Dead Sea Scroll community believed Daniel to be Scripture, and the same scribe who wrote one manuscript also wrote the Isaiah scroll, and with the same care and attention to detail! They considered it prophetic truth, and so do we!

It was the heathen philosopher Porphyry of the 3rd century AD who first attacked the book of Daniel as a forgery. Porphyry established that profane history was so parallel to Daniel in his prophecy that as an unbeliever he could not conceive of anyone being that accurate with a prophecy, and therefore assumed that it had been written after the event.

This attack provoked Jerome in the following century to defend the book of Daniel, and over the next 1000 years his commentary was considered to be the standard work on it. Jerome's work has been classified as the most important commentary produced by the church fathers on any of the prophetic writings of the Old Testament.

The high degree of accuracy in Daniel relates to the fact that the book of Daniel is divinely inspired, not that it is a fake, as given the date of the earliest Manuscript it cannot be a fake!!! Daniel 11 is human history written in advance, given as prophecy with absolute accuracy. It unfolds chronologically point by point. However it is not totally comprehensive. Some areas were not emphasized because they were not necessary for the spiritual battles that were to be fought. God however did set out what he wanted us to know about His plan and His person.

The person at the historically important centre of this chapter is Antiochus IV "Epiphanes", mainly because of his relationship to Jewish history, and the one who is the next Anti-Christ figure, and the author of the "abomination of desolation". History sometimes seems to be repetitious, but that is because history does indeed repeat itself, with the satanic having many "tries" at getting his plans right, especially with world domination.

Gabriel is going to have to go to Persia and Greece to fight with major demonic forces at both locations. Gabriel has the gift of communication. Daniel has the gift of prophet, but God is the author of it all. This passage reminds us that the "Angelic Conflict" saturates history, but God weaves events and people together to achieve his purposes! Our challenge is to identify our part to play in our journey through space-time and play it fully by faith, with absolute confidence in the author of the plan.

SECTION 46 - PROPHECY OF THE GREEK EMPIRES

Chapter 11:1-20

1 Also I in the first year of Darius the Mede, even I, stood to confirm and to strengthen him. **2** And now will I shew thee the truth. Behold, there shall stand up yet three kings in Persia; and the fourth shall be far richer than they all: and by his strength through his riches he shall stir up all against the realm of Grecia. **3** And a mighty king shall stand up, that shall rule with great dominion, and do according to his will. **4** And when he shall stand up, his kingdom shall be broken, and shall be divided toward the four winds of heaven; and not to his posterity, nor according to his dominion which he ruled: for his kingdom shall be plucked up, even for others beside those. **5** And the king of the south shall be strong, and one of his princes; and he shall be strong above him, and have dominion; his dominion shall be a great dominion. **6** And in the end of years they shall join themselves together; for the king's daughter of the south shall come to the king of the north to make an agreement: but she shall not retain the power of the arm; neither shall he stand, nor his arm: but she shall be given up, and they that brought her, and he that begat her, and he that strengthened her in these times. **7** But out of a branch of her roots shall one stand up in his estate, which shall come with an army, and shall enter into the fortress of the king of the north, and shall deal against them, and shall prevail: **8** And shall also carry captives into Egypt their gods, with their princes, and with their precious vessels of silver and of gold; and he shall continue more years than the king of the north. **9** So the king of the south shall come into his kingdom,

and shall return into his own land. 10 But his sons shall be stirred up, and shall assemble a multitude of great forces: and one shall certainly come, and overflow, and pass through: then shall he return, and be stirred up, even to his fortress. 11 And the king of the south shall be moved with choler, and shall come forth and fight with him, even with the king of the north: and he shall set forth a great multitude; but the multitude shall be given into his hand. 12 And when he hath taken away the multitude, his heart shall be lifted up; and he shall cast down many ten thousands: but he shall not be strengthened by it. 13 For the king of the north shall return, and shall set forth a multitude greater than the former, and shall certainly come after certain years with a great army and with much riches. 14 And in those times there shall many stand up against the king of the south: also the robbers of thy people shall exalt themselves to establish the vision; but they shall fall. 15 So the king of the north shall come, and cast up a mount, and take the most fenced cities: and the arms of the south shall not withstand, neither his chosen people, neither shall there be any strength to withstand. 16 But he that cometh against him shall do according to his own will, and none shall stand before him: and he shall stand in the glorious land, which by his hand shall be consumed. 17 He shall also set his face to enter with the strength of his whole kingdom, and upright ones with him; thus shall he do: and he shall give him the daughter of women, corrupting her: but she shall not stand on his side, neither be for him. 18 After this shall he turn his face unto the isles, and shall take many: but a prince for his own behalf shall cause the reproach offered by him to cease; without his own reproach he shall cause it to turn upon him. 19 Then he shall turn his face toward the fort of his own land: but he shall stumble and fall, and not be found. 20 Then shall stand up in his estate a raiser of taxes in the glory of the kingdom: but within few days he shall be destroyed, neither in anger, nor in battle.

KEY WORDS

First	Echad	First
Year	Shanah	Year, A repetition
Confirm	Chazaq	To keep hold on
Strengthen	Maoz	To support, Refresh
Shew	Nagad	To show, To place before
Truth	Emeth	Steadfastness, Truth
Stand	Amad	To stand still
Three	Shalosh	Three
Kings	Melek	King, Counsellor
Fourth	Rebii	Fourth
Richer	Osher	Riches
Realm	Malekuth	Kingdom
Stir	Ur	To stir, To wake up
Mighty	Gibbor	Mighty one
Rule	Mashel	Rule
Dominion	Mimshal	Rule, Dominion
Will	Ratsun	Goodwill, Good pleasure
Four	Arba	Four
Winds	Ruach	Wind
Heaven	Shamayin	Heavens, Heaved up things
Posterity	Acharith	Latter End
Plucked	Nathash	To be plucked up
South	Negeb	South
Strong	Chazaq	To be or become strong, Hard
Princes	Sar	Head official. Captain
End	Qets	End, Extremity
Years	Shanah	Year, A repetition
Join	Chabar	To join self to
Daughter	Bath	Daughter, Child, Descendant
North	Isaphon	North
Make	Asah	To do, Make
Agreement	Mesharim	Upright things
Retain	Atsar	To shut up, Restrain
Power	Koach	Power
Arm	Zeroa	Arm
Given Up	Nathan	To be given
Brought	Bo	To cause to come in
Begat	Yalad	To beget, Bring forth
Times	Eth	Time
Branch	Nester	Shoot
Roots	Shoresh	Root
Estate	Ken	Station
Army	Geoud	Troop
Fortress	Maoz	Stronghold
Deal	Asah	To do
Prevail	Chazaq	To make strong, Take hold of
Captives	Shebi	One taken away captive

EVANGELICAL BIBLE COLLEGE OF WESTERN AUSTRALIA

Princes	Nasik	Anointed
Precious	Chemdah	Desire
Vessels	Keli	Vessel, Instrument
Silver	Keseph	Silver
Gold	Zahab	Gold
Years	Shanah	Year, A repetition
Return	Shub	To turn back, Return
Land	Erets	Land, Earth
Stirred	Garah	To stir self up
Sons	Ben	Son, Offspring
Assemble	Asaph	To gather
Multitude	Hamon	A multitude, Noise, Store
Forces	Chayil	Strength, Force, Army
Overflow	Shataph	To overflow
Pass	Abar	To go or pass over
Choler	Marar	To become bitter
Come Forth	Yatsa	To go forth or out
Set	Amad	To cause to stand
Fight	Lacham	To fight, Be consumed
Taken Away	Nasa	To be lifted up
Heart	Lebab	Heart
Lifted	Rum	To be high
Cast Down	Naphal	To cause to fall
Ten Thousands	Ribbo	A myriad, Ten thousand
Certain	Eth	Times
Great	Gadol	Great
Army	Gedud	Troop
Riches	Rekush	What is collected, Goods, Substance
Robbers	Ben Parits	Son of a burglar
People	Am	A people
Establish	Amad	To cause to stand up, Set up, Establish
Vision	Chazon	Vision
Fall	Kashal	To stumble, Be feeble
Cast	Shaphak	To shed, Pour out
Mount	Soelah	What is raised up, Mount
Take	Lakad	To capture, Take
Fenced	Mibtsar	Fenced place
Withstand	Amad	To stand against or before
Will	Ratson	Goodwill, Good pleasure
Take	Lakad	To capture, Take
Land	Erets	Land, Earth
Hand	Yad	Hand
Consumed	Kalah	To be completed, Finished, Completed
Upright	Yashar	Upright
Women	Nashim	Women
Corrupting	Shachath	To make corrupt, Act corruptly
Stand	Amad	To stand, Stand still or fast
Face	Panim	Face
Isles	I	Isle, Sea coast
Prince	Qatsin	Decider, Consul
Without	Bilti	Without, Not, Besides
Reproach	Cherpah	Reproach
Cause to Cease	Shabath	Cause to cease, Keep Sabbath
Turn	Shub	To turn back
Fort	Maoz	Stronghold
Stumble	Kashal	To be stumbled
Fall	Naphal	To fall
Found	Matsa	To be found
Raiser	Abar	One sending a collector
Glory	Heder	Honour, Adornment
Few	Achadim	Single ones
Days	Yamim	Days
Destroyed	Shabar	To be broken, Shivered
Anger	Aph	Anger, Snorting
Battle	Milchamah	Battle

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

Verse 1. **“Also I in the first year of Darius the Mede, even I, stood to confirm and to strengthen him.”**

This verse is often thought to be better located as the last verse in chapter ten. We have to remember that while chapters and verses have generally been placed in their correct positions they are not divinely inspired. They came into being after printing started in the 1530s, and the original text was divided up syntactically. Here we see Gabriel the angel standing and strengthening Darius the Mede/Cyrus the Great. This is the same Cyrus/Darius who in chapter 6 placed Daniel in the lion's den. Cyrus his Persian name, and Darius his Median name – most rulers having two or more names.

Verse 2. “And now will I shew thee the truth. Behold, there shall stand up yet three kings in Persia; and the fourth shall be far richer than they all: and by his strength through his riches he shall stir up all against the realm of Grecia.”

In verse 2 Gabriel promised to show Daniel the truth. In this verse he refers to four kings. These are not the only kings involved but are important kings in the history of the Jews and the Middle East.

Cyrus died in the north-eastern end of the Empire. He was succeeded by the first of the kings. The first king was Cambyses the son of Cyrus. He reigned from 532-522 BC. He is also known as Ahasuerus in Ezra 4:6. This however is his priestly title not his proper name. It was equivalent to the title king, but also had the concept of high priest.

The only major area not under the control of the Persians at the time of the death of Cyrus was Egypt. Cambyses now sought to bring this area under his control. Prior to leaving on an expedition to Egypt Cambyses killed his brother Smerdis who was actively involved with the revised paganism of the Magi, the wise men of Media. The removal of Smerdis was kept a secret from the general population but the Magi were well aware of it. The Magi have become plotters at this point rather than simply scientists, and as Daniel had been their ruler we cannot see him being involved in the assassination of Cambyses, nor in the other plots to control the empire through the “council of the wise” (in their own eyes at least). Daniel ends his story with his survival from the Lion's Den plot. We suspect he dies shortly before these events above, that he saw only prophetically, recording them in advance.

In 526 Cambyses conquered Egypt, winning a major battle at Pelusium. He was aided by the defection of the Greek mercenary commander of the Egyptian forces. He was crowned king, but although it is stated that he committed suicide it is thought more likely that he was either poisoned by agents of the Magi on his way back to Persia, or he was killed by his own generals due to his attitude towards them and his general arrogance that nearly lost them battles. The Magi will place a usurper (Pseudo-Smerdis) on the throne, and his generals will head back to Persia after pacifying Egypt, and one of them (Darius) will seize the throne, with the approval/support of the others. There are clues here to the collusion of the generals in Cambyses death.

The second king who succeeded Cambyses in Persia, was a magi “front man” known as Pseudo Smerdis. He was actively anti Semitic and stopped the work on the Temple which Cyrus had authorised. He was known as Pseudo Smerdis as the Magi had set him on the throne masquerading as Smerdis, the executed brother of Cambyses. He took the title of Artaxerxes (Ezra 4:23) but ruled for only eight months before being killed by Cambyses' returning general, Darius Hystaspes. This Darius had ridden back to Persia from Egypt after the murder of Cambyses with his fellow generals, and they decided on the ride who would be king and each of the three others committed they would support him. They entered the capital and killed the Magi who had seized the throne through their puppet. The Magi will survive, but we are unclear what happens to Daniel here, if he is alive at all. Daniel sees this vision and records it but, as noted above, it is likely doesn't live to see any of these events. He writes “by faith”, believing the revelation received is real.

This third king, Darius I, “The Great”, succeeds Pseudo Smerdis as king, and reigned until around 486. He was known as Darius the Great. It was during his reign that the Temple was completed and the Jews had great protection. It took him six years to quell all rebellions in the Empire.

In 515 BC he re-divided the Persian Empire containing 75 million people into twenty larger provinces or satrapies. This was based on a concept of an administration structure started by Daniel. The Jews were given self rule and allowed to exist as a separate unit within the larger province of “Beyond the River”, and this larger provincial division explains how the northern satraps got power over the Jews, and by the days of Ezra and Nehemiah (Circa 450s-440s) were using their past power to hinder the independent operation of Judea, even though by later in Darius' son's reign he went back to the larger number of more independent satrapies. Nehemiah 2:7-10, 3:7.

In 520 the rebuilding of the Temple, which had been stopped by Pseudo Smerdis, recommenced, and in 516 BC it was completed, 70 years after it's destruction. The Temple was dedicated on the Passover in the month of Nisan, 70 years before the edict to rebuild the walls of Jerusalem, which was issued under Artaxerxes Longimanus in 445 BC.

In 490 the Greeks defeated the Persians under Darius' general at the battle of Marathon. In 486 Xerxes succeeded his father Darius as king, and reigned until 465. He took five years to re-equip an army to attack Greece. It amounted to an army of possibly over 200,000 men with a Naval fleet of over 100 warships. Herodotus believed they numbered two million, but he exaggerated numbers, however it was a vast army, backed by a very large navy, but the Greeks won.

Xerxes as the fourth king was richer than his predecessors fulfilling the prophecy of Daniel 11:2. He hoped to avenge his father's defeat at Marathon. At first he was victorious capturing and burning the Acropolis at Athens, but the entire population had been shifted to the island of Salamis. Then Xerxes lost the key naval battle at the Gulf of Salamis and was finally defeated on land by the Greeks at the battle of Plataea in 479 BC, his general Mardonius was killed with most

of his troops, and his navy routed again at the battle of Mycale. The wealth captured by the Greeks from the Persian Army paid for the rebuild of Athens in Marble! Xerxes was pro-Semitic having a Jewish wife, Esther, and after the overthrow of Haman, Mordecai, a Jew, was made Prime Minister of the Empire, just as Daniel had been 50 years before.

The time covered between verses 2 and 3 involves Artaxerxes I Longimanus, who succeeded Xerxes his father as king in 465 and reigned until 425. He was the last great Persian king of note. His influence in Greece declined as he had to sign a treaty in 449 BC permitting cities in Asia Minor to be free to join in league with Athens and have their own civil magistrates. He and other Persians hoped that the Greeks in-fighting between Sparta and Athens would exhaust them, and they would be no threat, and he was half right! The mainland cities were exhausted, but all it did was produce the vacuum that opened the way for Macedonian control, and later for Rome. God's Plan was on schedule.... Empires rise and fall but God's plan advances through history for the salvation of all who seek the truth at any point.

From a Biblical view however his greatest act was the issuing of the edict of Artaxerxes Longimanus in 445 BC, which allowed the city palaces, and houses, and the walls of Jerusalem to be rebuilt. The walls were rebuilt under the guidance of his appointed satrap, Nehemiah, despite opposition from three other northern area (Old "Beyond the River" Province) satraps, Sanballat, Tobiah and Gesham - Nehemiah 1-13. The walls were dedicated and the Law read.

This important edict was the commencement signal for the prophecy of Daniel's 70 weeks - Daniel 9:24-27. God's timetable is exact and precise; once the clock starts ticking the day is set for the Lord to ride into Jerusalem, and also for his return, although none on earth know this, but it is as literally certain as was his first advent. The ticking clock for the Second Advent becomes audible, we believe, with the "beginning of sorrows", from 1917 onwards. **Matthew 24:6-8.**

This period is divided into three sections:

- [a] A 49 year period for the rebuilding of Jerusalem.
- [b] A 434 year period until Jesus Christ rode into Jerusalem which He fulfilled to the very day.
- [c] A future 7 year period, the Tribulation, which concludes with Jesus Christ coming back to rule from Jerusalem.

[For further details please go back to Chapter 9.]

Verse 3. "And a mighty king shall stand up, that shall rule with great dominion, and do according to his will."

In verse 3 we are introduced to Alexander the Great. The "mighty king" here is Alexander the Great. He was born in 356 BC to Philip, King of Macedon. As a young child his tutor was Aristotle. By the age of 20 Alexander succeeded to the throne on the death of his father. He set out to master Greece which he did in a short time period and set as his next target the defeat of the Persian Empire, which was by that time in decline, coasting along without strong leadership.

One of the major problems however was the various Greek Dialects prevalent in Greece at that time. To overcome this problem he invented a new Greek language "Koine", or common Greek, a remarkably accurate language which will become the language of the Old Testament for the Greek and Roman world, and will be used for the New Testament.

Crossing into Asia Alexander was victorious in some forty battles and he always led from the front, but although wounded nearly thirty times, he dies in mysterious circumstances in Babylon, of a fever after a heavy drinking bout in 323 BC, but the alcohol had apparently masked the poison that his own generals used to kill him (NB - his kingdom will be **broken**).

Verse 4. "And when he shall stand up, his kingdom shall be broken, and shall be divided toward the four winds of heaven; and not to his posterity, nor according to his dominion which he ruled: for his kingdom shall be plucked up, even for others beside those."

This verse focuses on the Four Winds of Heaven. "When he shall stand up" deals with Alexander being at the height of his power. When he arrived in Babylon he had conquered the whole of the known world in less than 13 years. However at the height of his power he died, and his kingdom after some years of fighting was now divided into four areas

On the death of Alexander his eleven surviving generals vied for prominence in the empire. Only four succeeded, these being known as the four winds of heaven. In the longer term however only two dynasties were formed that survived, being known in the Bible as the kings of the north and south. They were the dynasty of Seluchus based on Antioch, and that of Ptolemy who was based in Egypt.

The seven generals who failed were:-

[a] Perdikkas, who was a Macedonian aristocrat. He became the regent for Alexander's son and initially formed an alliance with Ptolemy. Perdikkas wanted to preserve the Empire which caused a split in the alliance. He was eventually murdered by Peithon and Seleuchus.

[b] Leonatas was related to the royal house of Macedonia. He was very handsome which through pride made him unstable. He wanted to be the king over all the others, but was also assassinated.

[c] Peithon was the chief of Alexander's bodyguard. Able, ambitious and overbearing, he was killed in the battle of Gaza in 313, but not before he had eliminated others.

[d] Eumenes was Alexander's chief secretary and decided to bide his time and see how events developed. He died...

[e] Antipater was very old being the last great general of Alexander's father Philip. He died...

[f] Antiginous was one-eyed, cunning, old and cruel and was the most brilliant of all of Alexander's generals – killed...

[g] Demetrius, the son of Antiginous who teamed up with his father Antiginous, and almost conquered the world only being finally defeated at the battle of Ipsus in 301 BC which ended the wars between the generals. Google these men and their battles, as their power plays were satanic to their core – the fruit of evil is present with them all.

Two of the four winds of heaven were eventual losers, they were:-

[a] Cassander who took over Macedonia. Here he found Alexander's mother Olympia, and had her murdered. In 297 BC he contracted dropsy (heart disease/paralysis) and died.

[b] Lysimachus who was rewarded by Asia Minor after the battle of Ipsus, but was eventually killed in battle in 281 BC.

This now left the two winners; those who started dynasties in the Middle East. They were **Ptolemy** and **Seleuchus**.

Ptolemy I Soter - king of the South [323-285] He captured Jerusalem in 320 making Palestine subject to Egypt until 314. He was the only one of the eleven generals who survived Alexander to die a natural death.

Seleuchus I - king of the North [312- 281] was even stronger militarily, conquering everything from Syria in the West to the Punjab in the East by 302 BC. He was eventually assassinated in a campaign in Macedonia by the brother of Ptolemy II.

THE KINGS OF THE NORTH AND SOUTH 11:5 - 11:34

Perhaps the most conclusive proof of the accuracy of Biblical prophecy is given in an evaluation of this chapter which deals with the history of the Greek kingdoms after the death of Alexander. It is so accurate all unbelievers must reject it as prophecy and claim it is faked, and actually history written after the events! The king of the north is the Seleucid line based on Syria whilst that of the south is the line of Ptolemy based on Egypt.

Let us consider the history of these kingdoms from the third to the first centuries before Christ.

Verse 5. "And the king of the south shall be strong, and one of his princes; and he shall be strong above him, and have dominion; his dominion shall be a great dominion."

Ptolemy I, the King of the South based in Egypt was a powerful nation but Seluchus I of Syria, the King of the North was even stronger. Up to 302 BC Seluchus conquered everything from Syria to the Punjab in India.

Verse 6. "And in the end of years they shall join themselves together; for the king's daughter of the south shall come to the king of the north to make an agreement: but she shall not retain the power of the arm; neither shall he stand, nor his arm: but she shall be given up, and they that brought her, and he that begat her, and he that strengthened her in these times."

Ptolemy was the only general who survived the death of Alexander who died a natural death. He died at the age of 84 to be succeeded by Ptolemy II. Ptolemy II's brother went with his uncle Seluchus on a campaign to Macedonia and assassinated him, bringing Antiochus I to the throne. Ptolemy II and Antiochus I fought for a number of years over Palestine which formed a buffer state between the two kingdoms.

After many years, Bernice, the daughter of Ptolemy married Antiochus II and had a son. Antiochus had previously been married to Laodice who then proceeded to murder Bernice, Antiochus II and their son, installing her own son Seluchus II on the throne in 246 BC. Ptolemy II was "very angry" at what happened and invaded the north but died in 245 BC.

Verse 7. "But out of a branch of her roots shall one stand up in his estate, which shall come with an army, and shall enter into the fortress of the king of the north, and shall deal against them, and shall prevail:"

The branch of the roots is Ptolemy III who was the brother of Bernice. He succeeded to the throne of Egypt invaded the north and conquered it.

Ptolemy III represents the zenith of power of the southern kingdom. He entered Antioch the capital and fortress of the northern kingdom using Elephants.

Verse 8. "And shall also carry captives into Egypt their gods, with their princes, and with their precious vessels of silver and of gold; and he shall continue more years than the king of the north."

Ptolemy III conquered many people. He returned to Egypt with many captives and retrieved 2,400 gold and silver plated idols which had been taken some 300 years before by Cambyses and came back with great riches. Ptolemy III outlived the King of the North by five years.

Verse 9. "So the king of the south shall come into his kingdom, and shall return into his own land."

Ptolemy III returned to Egypt in triumph. Eventually Seluchus II retrieved most of his kingdom but the eastern part of the empire is taken over by the Parthians out of northern Iran, commencing in 220 BC.

Verse 10. "But his sons shall be stirred up, and shall assemble a multitude of great forces: and one shall certainly come, and overflow, and pass through: then shall he return, and be stirred up, even to his fortress."

His sons are the sons of Seluchus II, they are Seluchus III and Antiochus III. Seluchus III tried to regain the kingdom of the north but the king of Pergamum prevented him and on his way back to Antioch, Seluchus III was assassinated in Phrygia.

Antiochus III then became king, reigning from 223-187 BC and was known as Antiochus the Great. With strong military training and discipline he was able to mould the army of the north into a major force. He attacked the southern kingdom and won back a balance of power.

Verse 11. "And the king of the south shall be moved with choler, and shall come forth and fight with him, even with the king of the north: and he shall set forth a great multitude; but the multitude shall be given into his hand."

This deals with the battle of Raphia in 217 BC fought between Antiochus III and Ptolemy IV. The south had degenerated to such an extent that the force under Antiochus III had supremacy. Ptolemy IV however was given a year in which to train his army. He gave up his drinking bouts and changed his lifestyle in order to lead the army.

Using Egyptians in battle for the first time in the history of the Greek kingdoms Ptolemy IV won the battle of Raphia and put the king of the north to flight. He married his sister, their child becoming Ptolemy V.

Verse 12. "And when he hath taken away the multitude, his heart shall be lifted up; and he shall cast down many ten thousands: but he shall not be strengthened by it."

Ptolemy IV returned to Egypt and had a chance at that point of consolidating the nation by permanently incorporating the native Egyptians into the army, but instead returned to heavy drinking and a feudal system. This caused a number of riots which cost a number of lives. Ptolemy IV died in 203 BC.

Verse 13. "For the king of the north shall return, and shall set forth a multitude greater than the former, and shall certainly come after certain years with a great army and with much riches."

Antiochus III failed to take his defeat as final. The phrase "after certain years" means that it took him 14 years to return to do battle with the king of the south. He trained his army on the eastern front and became very rich through plunder.

Verse 14. "And in those times there shall many stand up against the king of the south: also the robbers of thy people shall exalt themselves to establish the vision; but they shall fall."

Antiochus III now attacks Ptolemy V, a child of seven. He is assisted by the "robbers of the people" who were Hellenistic Jews that assisted Antiochus to take Palestine in 199 BC. Antiochus defeated an Egyptian army under Scopos as well as three other armies sent against him. The vision the Jews had was that this battle would set them free. In fact it brought the terror of Antiochus IV to them. However God's Plan was still working out.

Verse 15. "So the king of the north shall come, and cast up a mount, and take the most fenced cities: and the arms of the south shall not withstand, neither his chosen people, neither shall there be any strength to withstand." 16. "But he that cometh against him shall do according to his own will, and none shall stand before him: and he shall stand in the glorious land, which by his hand shall be consumed."

With the defeat of the Egyptian armies Antiochus invaded Egypt without any real resistance, and subdued Palestine.

Verse 17. "He shall also set his face to enter with the strength of his whole kingdom, and upright ones with him; thus shall he do: and he shall give him the daughter of women, corrupting her: but she shall not stand on his side, neither be for him."

With the defeat of Ptolemy V, Antiochus III decides to implant a spy right at the heart of the Egyptian kingdom. This he did by marrying his daughter Cleopatra to the nine year old king. His plan backfired however as this girl, who had been brought up by the even more ruthless women in the family, fell in love with her young husband and refused to betray him.

Verse 18. “After this shall he turn his face unto the isles, and shall take many: but a prince for his own behalf shall cause the reproach offered by him to cease; without his own reproach he shall cause it to turn upon him.”

As part of the settlement with Ptolemy V areas in Asia Minor and Thrace, controlled by Ptolemy V, were ceded to Antiochus III. This allowed Antiochus access into Greece, but he meets an aggressive Roman General. The expanding Roman presence clashed with him at the battles of Magnesium and Thermopylae where he was defeated. The "prince" was Scipio Asiaticus, a Roman general. Always keep asking, "What is God doing here?" Daniel had seen that the Greek Empire would fall and become the Iron of Rome.

Verse 19. “Then he shall turn his face toward the fort of his own land: but he shall stumble and fall, and not be found.”

After the battle of Magnesium, Antiochus returned to Antioch. Reparations to the Romans were so great that the northern kingdom became bankrupt. Antiochus remembered rich temples in Bactria and headed east in order to replenish his treasury by plunder. As he attacks one of the temples he is assassinated.

Verse 20. “Then shall stand up in his estate a raiser of taxes in the glory of the kingdom: but within few days he shall be destroyed, neither in anger, nor in battle.”

As a result of the death of Antiochus III, Seluchus IV becomes king. He decides to replenish the treasury by mean of heavy taxation. His reign was relatively short as a result. It was terminated by his chief minister Heliodorus who assassinated him and set himself up as leader for a brief time and then decamped with the treasury. Thus he died not in anger or battle. Satan's men and women always kill each other. Satan, as the ultimate narcissist, recruits narcissists, and they do not do "team work" in any shape or form, except to deceive and destroy each other.

APPLICATION

God knows history before it happens and never makes errors in prophecy. God got **Daniel 9:23-27** right, so why cannot this chapter be "right" also? Select your company in your opinions here very carefully – do you believe God or not?

We believe that we can therefore implicitly trust the Scriptures not only to tell us about the future but also for our needs in our daily walk with Him.

God has a purpose in the life of every believer. Every believer is a part of history right now – the only question to ask is, "What is God doing?", then face the next issue - will we play our assigned part?

Pro Semitism is God's thinking and policy. God will discipline the Jews as he requires, but woe to the people that assault the Jews – they will never prosper, even though they are superior in numbers. The Arab nations have seen this in recent years and now have joined with Israel to face off the threat from Iran. As we move into 2022 in the Middle Eastern Spring, Ezekiel 38-39 may be just about to be fulfilled...Iran promised to "end Israel" in 2022...., but God's Word is more reliable than Iranian leadership. We rest in God's timetable, not that of satanic men.

DOCTRINE

NATIONS AND RACES

1. God has set the geographical and historical boundaries for nations. (Acts 17:26, Genesis 10:25; Deuteronomy 32:8)
2. All nations and races are descended from Noah's three sons Ham, Shem and Japheth. (Genesis 9:19)
3. The nations were dispersed after the Tower of Babel (Genesis 11:9)
4. Internationalism and one-worldism is therefore against the will of God. (cf Genesis 11:4,9) Satan is attempting to unite the world as a counterfeit to the Millennium, when Christ will reign as King.
5. Nations are established by God to protect the freedoms and rights of people so that they may serve God peacefully. (1 Timothy 2:1-2)
6. The importance of free will - a government should not force people to accept or reject Christianity.
7. Freedoms in a nation are to be protected
 - a) Externally by military forces
 - b) Internally by police forces and courts (Romans 13:4) Capital punishment is an integral part of law enforcement. (Genesis 9:6)
8. The effectiveness of believers within a nation determines its blessing or cursing (Deuteronomy 11:26-28, Genesis 18:17-33, Matthew 5:13)

9. When nations become evil, God must destroy them. Examples include
 a) Amorites (Genesis 15:16, Deuteronomy 7:2)
 b) Chaldea (Daniel 5)
10. Jews were forbidden to intermarry with other nations, so that the Jewish religion would not be defiled by heathen practices. (Deuteronomy 7:1-3, Ezra 10:2,14)
 a) Solomon's union with foreign women was evil. (Nehemiah 13:23-27)
 b) Abraham forbade Isaac to marry outside his people. (Genesis 28:1)
 c) Esau's marriage to Hittites brought grief (Genesis 26:34,35)
 d) Moses' marriage to an Ethiopian caused trouble. (Numbers 12:1)
11. The threefold split of humanity appears in the book of Acts as examples of salvation.
 a) An Ethiopian (Hamitic) is saved in (Acts 10:1 -48)
 b) Saul (Semitic) is saved in (Acts 9:1-16)
 c) Cornelius (Japhetic) is saved in (Acts 10:1-48)

SECTION 47 - ANTIOCHUS EPIPHANES IDENTIFIED Daniel Chapter 11:21-35

21 And in his estate shall stand up a vile person, to whom they shall not give the honour of the kingdom: but he shall come in peaceably, and obtain the kingdom by flatteries. 22 And with the arms of a flood shall they be overflowed from before him, and shall be broken; yea, also the prince of the covenant. 23 And after the league made with him he shall work deceitfully: for he shall come up, and shall become strong with a small people. 24 He shall enter peaceably even upon the fattest places of the province; and he shall do that which his fathers have not done, nor his fathers' fathers; he shall scatter among them the prey, and spoil, and riches: yea, and he shall forecast his devices against the strong holds, even for a time. 25 And he shall stir up his power and his courage against the king of the south with a great army; and the king of the south shall be stirred up to battle with a very great and mighty army; but he shall not stand: for they shall forecast devices against him. 26 Yea, they that feed of the portion of his meat shall destroy him, and his army shall overflow: and many shall fall down slain. 27 And both of these kings' hearts shall be to do mischief, and they shall speak lies at one table; but it shall not prosper: for yet the end shall be at the time appointed. 28 Then shall he return into his land with great riches; and his heart shall be against the holy covenant; and he shall do exploits, and return to his own land. 29 At the time appointed he shall return, and come toward the south; but it shall not be as the former, or as the latter. 30 For the ships of Chittim shall come against him: therefore he shall be grieved, and return, and have indignation against the holy covenant: so shall he do; he shall even return, and have intelligence with them that forsake the holy covenant. 31 And arms shall stand on his part, and they shall pollute the sanctuary of strength, and shall take away the daily sacrifice, and they shall place the abomination that maketh desolate. 32 And such as do wickedly against the covenant shall he corrupt by flatteries: but the people that do know their God shall be strong, and do exploits. 33 And they that understand among the people shall instruct many: yet they shall fall by the sword, and by flame, by captivity, and by spoil, many days. 34 Now when they shall fall, they shall be holpen with a little help: but many shall cleave to them with flatteries. 35 And some of them of understanding shall fall, to try them, and to purge, and to make them white, even to the time of the end: because it is yet for a time appointed.

KEY WORDS

Estate	Ken	Station
Vile Person	Bazah	To be despised, Despicable
Give	Nathan	To give
Honour	Hod	Honour, Beauty, Brilliance
Kingdom	Malekuth	Kingdom
Peaceably	Be-Shalvah	In security or Peace
Flatteries	Chalaqlaqqoth	Smoothness, Flatteries
Arms	Zeroa	Arm
Flood	Sheteph	Overflowing, Flood
Overflowed	Shataph	To overflow
Prince	Nagid	Leader
Covenant	Berith	Covenant
League	Chabar	To join selves together
Shall Work Deceitfully	Le-Mirmah	With deceit
Come up	Alah	To come up
Strong	Atsam	To be substantial, Bony
Small	Meat	A little, Few
People	Goi	Nation, Corporate body
Fattest	Mishman	Fatness, Fat ones
Province	Medinah	Jurisdiction
Fathers	Aboth	Fathers, Ancestors
Scatter	Bazar	To scatter

EVANGELICAL BIBLE COLLEGE OF WESTERN AUSTRALIA

Prey	Bizzah	Prey
Spoil	Shalal	Spoil
Riches	Rekush	What is collected, Goods, Substance
Forecast	Chashab	To think, Devise, Design
Devices	Machashebeth	Thought, Device
Strongholds	Mibtsar	Cut off or fenced place
Power	Koach	Power
Courage	Lebab	Heart
King	Melek	King, Counsellor
South	Negeb	South
Great	Gadol	Great
Mighty	Atsum	Bony, Substantial
Army	Gedud	Troop
Stirred Up	Garah	To stir self up
Battle	Milchamar	Battle, Conflict, Eating up
Feed	Akal	To eat
Portion of his Meat	Pathbag	A portion of food
Destroy	Shabar	To break, Shiver, Destroy
Shall Fall Down	Naphal	To fall
Slain	Chalal	Pierced, Wounded, Slain
Hearts	Lebab	Heart
Mischief	Ra	Evil, Wrong
Lies	Kazab	Lie, Deceit
Table	Shulchan	A table
Prosper	Tsaleach	To go on prosperously
End	Qets	End, Extremity
Time Appointed	Moed	Appointed time
Land	Erets	Land, Earth
Holy	Qodesh	Separation, Object set apart
Covenant	Berith	Covenant
Return	Shub	To turn back, Return
Former	Rishon	First, Former, Foremost
Latter	Acharon	Last, Latter
Ships	Tsi	A ship
Chittim		Cyprus
Grieved	Kaah	To be pained
Indignation	Zaam	To be indignant, Insolent
Intelligence	Bin	To cause to understand
Forsake	Azab	To forsake, Leave, Leave off
Arms	Zeroa	Army
Pollute	Chalal	To pierce, Pollute
Sanctuary	Miqdash	Place set apart
Daily	Tamid	Continual
Sacrifice	-	Understood from the passage
Abomination	Shiqquts	Abominable, Detestable thing
Desolate	Shamem	To desolate
Wickedly	Rasha	To do wrong, Wickedly
Corrupt	Chaneph	To profane
Flatteries	Chalaqlaqqoth	Smoothness, Flatteries
Know	Yada	To know
Understand	Sakal	To cause to act wisely
People	Am	A people
Instruct	Bin	To consider, Discern
Sword	Chereb	A sword, Destroying weapon
Flame	Lahebeth	Flame
Captivity	Shebi	Captivity, Captive
Spoil	Bizzah	Prey, Spoil
Days	Yamim	Days
Help	Ezer	Help
Cleave	Lavah	To be joined to
Try	Tsaraph	To refine, Try, Purify
Purge	Barar	To clear, Cleanse
White	Laban	To make white
Time	Eth	Time
End	Qets	End
Appointed	Moed	Appointed place or time

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

Verse 21. “And in his estate shall stand up a vile person, to whom they shall not give the honour of the kingdom: but he shall come in peaceably, and obtain the kingdom by flatteries.”

This verse introduces Antiochus IV Epiphanies king of the North [175-163 BC] who has previously been identified as the “little horn” of chapter 8.

He reigned in the days of the decline of the power of the Greek empires and the rise of Rome. However this rather obscure ruler has a prime position in this chapter because of his relationship with the Jews, the Temple, and as a significant prototype of the future Antichrist.

Epiphanies, meaning “glorious”, was a name given to Antiochus by himself which was in line with his desire to be worshipped as a god. The Jews modified his title and called him Antiochus Epimmanes, Antiochus the madman.

God classifies him as a vile/evil person in this verse and is seen not to obtain the kingdom honourably but by other means. There were several candidates for succeeding Seluchus IV including his younger brother Demetrius. He however was a hostage in Rome. There was also a younger son who was also named Antiochus but he was still a baby.

At the time of the assassination of Seluchus IV we find Antiochus IV, a general who had been trained in Rome, as a general in the Greek army in Athens. Here he heard of the death of the king at the hand of Heliodorus. Posing as a guardian for baby Antiochus he got to Syria by means of a number of intrigues and secured the throne. The throne was then made secure by the murder of young baby Antiochus and any who might support his or any other’s claims.

Having taken over the kingdom of the North, he initially demonstrated that he was a competent ruler, (although satanically ruthless) projecting himself well in the media of the day with flatteries to all who felt they were important.

Verse 22. “And with the arms of a flood shall they be overflowed from before him, and shall be broken; yea, also the prince of the covenant.”

This verse speaks of military activity including several expeditions to Egypt. He has formed a formidable military machine. He defeats the army of Heliodorus and hearing that Egypt is about to attack him in 170 BC he makes a pre-emptive strike against his southern neighbour. He defeated the Egyptians at the battle of Ras Baron.

The “prince of the covenant” is the high priest in Jerusalem, Onias, who was murdered on Antiochus’ orders in 172 BC. As head of a nominal theocracy Onias had the title “prince of the covenant”. It is noted in verses 28 and 32 below that the “covenant” is used for the Jewish state.

Verse 23. “And after the league made with him he shall work deceitfully: for he shall come up, and shall become strong with a small people.”

True to form Antiochus now makes arrangements with various nations, including Egypt. These all involved great intrigue and deceit. At this time there are two Ptolemy rulers in Egypt; Ptolemy Philometor and Ptolemy Euergetes. Antiochus supported the first and as a result became stronger and a major power in the region.

Verse 24. “He shall enter peaceably even upon the fattest places of the province; and he shall do that which his fathers have not done, nor his fathers’ fathers; he shall scatter among them the prey, and spoil, and riches: yea, and he shall forecast his devices against the strong holds, even for a time.”

Again using intrigue, attacking countries which were at peace and not expecting to be attacked, he obtained huge riches in spoil. He did not hoard the money however as his forebears had so often done, but used it to bribe others to his will. By this means he was able to buy co-operation with others. He built power by deceit, corruption and intrigue. He becomes the archetypal picture of the evil politician, and the type of the final Anti-Christ.

Verses 25-26. “And he shall stir up his power and his courage against the king of the south with a great army; and the king of the south shall be stirred up to battle with a very great and mighty army; but he shall not stand: for they shall forecast devices against him. 26. Yea, they that feed of the portion of his meat shall destroy him, and his army shall overflow: and many shall fall down slain.”

Antiochus spent a lot of time heading south into Egypt and fighting with them as indicated in this verse. Ptolemy responds with a very large army but is defeated by the King of the North. Again it is seen that Antiochus had used deceit in the fact that there were many traitors in the King of the South’s army. As a result there is great loss of life in the battle and Antiochus was victorious over the Egyptians. Remember Satan’s malice, for he hates mankind and delights in the slaughter of his own supporters when they have outlived their purposes, and can be seen and mocked as “losers”.

verses 27-28. “And both of these kings’ hearts shall be to do mischief, and they shall speak lies at one table; but it shall not prosper: for yet the end shall be at the time appointed. 28. Then shall he return into his land with great riches; and his heart shall be against the holy covenant; and he shall do exploits, and return to his own land.”

Both of the leaders were deceivers and manipulators. They met and negotiated at a conference. They were both lying to each other. No advantage came from these fruitless and perverse talks. In any case the plan of God was working through the situation to confirm His plan. The Lord knew the end point and time marched steadily and surely towards the fulfilment of prophecy.

In verse 28 Antiochus returns home with great spoil. He had become immensely rich from his conquest of Egypt. He however started to manifest hatred towards the Jews and lust after their riches. His addiction to power and now wealth is the fruit/sign of his satanic weakness. Evil always develops in the soul of those who select Satan's path, and they flow steadily downhill into more and more addictive and destructive choices.

Verses 29-31. "At the time appointed he shall return, and come toward the south; but it shall not be as the former, or as the latter. 30. For the ships of Chittim shall come against him: therefore he shall be grieved, and return, and have indignation against the holy covenant: so shall he do; he shall even return, and have intelligence with them that forsake the holy covenant. 31. And arms shall stand on his part, and they shall pollute the sanctuary of strength, and shall take away the daily sacrifice, and they shall place the abomination that maketh desolate."

At a time in accordance with God's will, Antiochus again heads south. But this time there is a difference, another player comes on the scene. It is not just Syria versus Egypt. The Romans now appear and make their claim to control the area.

It was now about 168 BC and Antiochus is about to enter Alexandria when he is stopped by a Roman officer from the fleet moored in the bay. The presence of Rome is indicated by the phrase "ships of Chittim". Chittim is an old name for Cyprus which is to the north west. The Roman Naval Battle Fleet had sailed to Egypt after the Roman victory over Perseus of Macedon, south of Thessalonica in June 168 BC. For the first time Antiochus was directly threatened by serious Roman power projection.

That spring of 168 BC the Roman officer in charge of the fleet was an old colleague from military training in Rome, Gaius Popilius Laenas, who gave him the order from the Roman Senate to retire from Egypt under the threat of the might of Rome. The Roman general marked a line in the sand around him with his sword, and told Antiochus to not cross the line before making a decision. Though greatly displeased he left Egypt to become an area under the power of Rome as their client kingdom, not his.

He therefore retired with great riches, however Memphis, whose city authorities had been supplying much of the food provisions for him, cut off supplies after this altercation with Rome, causing many of his troops to starve to death on their way out of Egypt. He again showed his negative attitude towards the Jews and started negotiating with Jews who were Hellenistic in outlook and had forsaken Judaism. He wanted to divide and rule them, and so obtain their riches.

In the process of opposition to the Jews he returned to Syria through Israel a very frustrated person, and so he stopped the daily sacrifice, polluting the Temple with the blood of pigs and priests. He also directly ordered that the daily sacrifices should cease, and on the 25th of the month Chislev (the 16th of December) 167 BC the Greeks placed in the Temple a statue of Zeus Olympus, and demanded it be worshipped (a statue of Antiochus IV with a beard).

In Matthew 24:15 where the Lord Jesus Christ is describing the Antichrist and his actions in the yet future Tribulation, He relates the setting up of the Anti-Christ's statue to the desecration of the Temple by Antiochus, being something similar in kind. Antiochus is therefore a prototype of the Antichrist; and it is as though Satan uses him as a "dry run" for later.

Verses 32-35. "And such as do wickedly against the covenant shall he corrupt by flatteries: but the people that do know their God shall be strong, and do exploits. 33. And they that understand among the people shall instruct many: yet they shall fall by the sword, and by flame, by captivity, and by spoil, many days. 34. Now when they shall fall, they shall be holpen with a little help: but many shall cleave to them with flatteries. 35. And some of them of understanding shall fall, to try them, and to purge, and to make them white, even to the time of the end: because it is yet for a time appointed."

The persecution was so severe against the Jews that a group of believers instigated a revolt against the Greek Empire. This was led by a family group called the Maccabees/Hasmonaeanes. It began in the village of Modein/Modin 17 miles north west of Jerusalem.

The campaign for Jewish freedom begins with the execution of the Syrian envoys to the village, but great reverses occurred, including the massacres of thousands of Jews at various places. It is a very brutal and savage conflict with no mercy shown by either side in the battles or after them.

In 166 BC Mattathias Maccabeus dies in active resistance against the king of the North as the leader of the group, and leadership falls to his son Judas, who waged a successful guerilla war, and then when powerful enough a formal battlefield conflict. They struggled until 164 when Judas Maccabeus through armed resistance won Jewish freedom from the king of the North in open battle. These events occur within a decade or so of the Qumran copy of Daniel, and so the scribe would have known if this had been written in recent years – he records it as prophetic words, not recent history!

There were many who were killed in the war, by slavery and execution, but in the end the Temple was cleansed and sacrifices resumed on 25th Chislev (14 December 164 BC). This cleansing of the temple is celebrated today as the feast

of Hannukah. The persecutions of the Jews are seen to be long term, with Daniel saying that they will be continuing until the time of the end. Anti-semitism will therefore be rife until the Second Advent of Christ ends it altogether.

APPLICATION

Often in Scripture there is a prototype fulfilment of a prophecy or concept before the final full fulfilment. This is the case with Antiochus IV who desecrated the Temple and set up an image of himself in the Holy of Holies to be worshipped. This is paralleled by the Antichrist's actions, yet future, described in Revelation 13.

Another example would be the pouring out of the Holy Spirit on 120 Jewish believers at Pentecost being a prototype of the universal pouring out of the Holy Spirit on all flesh at the beginning of the Millennium.

The contrast here is that the Spirit came upon an isolated group of believers at Pentecost, but this same phenomenon will occur with the whole population of the earth at the start of the Millennium, as they will be, after the separation of the sheep from the goats, believers only.

The Lord uses unbelievers from time to time as participants in his Plan. He is aware of what everybody will do and how the whole will work together in accordance with both individual and corporate history in the future.

In order to be resistant to the flatteries of political "power players" one has to have a solid knowledge of the Word of God.

Political negotiations often involve compromise, deceit, telling lies to each other across a table.

DOCTRINE

REVIVAL

Twenty four Biblical revivals and Reforms are examined.

1. Jacob - On his return from Bethel he ordered his whole household to put away their false gods and to wash and change their garments. The false gods were buried. Jacob then built an altar to the Lord. (Genesis 35:1-4)
2. Moses - This occurred when the Israelites saw the parting of the Red Sea as a mighty act of God. Moses led the Israelites with the Song of Moses whilst his sister Miriam provided the music. (Exodus 14:31-15:21)
3. Samuel - He exhorted the nation to put away false gods and prepare to worship the one true God. (1 Samuel 7:3-6)
4. David - When the Ark of the Covenant was brought into Jerusalem for the first time. (1 Chronicles 15:25-28, 16:1-43, 29:10-25)
5. David - At the dedication of the materials for the future Temple. (1 Chronicles 29)
6. Solomon - At the dedication of the Temple. (2 Chronicles 7:1-3)
7. Asa - Who removed the idols and Sodomites out of the land. (1 Kings 15:11-15)
8. Jehosaphat - Who led a revival when he cleansed the Temple and ordered the sanctification of the Levitical priesthood. (2 Chronicles 19)
9. Elijah - After the contest with the prophets of Baal at Mount Carmel. (1 Kings 18:21-40)
10. Jehu - When he exterminated all worshipers of Baal and their temples. (2 Kings 10:15-28)
11. Jehoida - As High Priest he led the people in a covenant to turn from their idols and worship God. (2 Kings 11:17-20)
12. Hezekiah - He cleansed the Temple resulting in a revival. (2 Chronicles 29-31)
13. Manassah - When this wicked king became a believer he ordered the destruction of all idols. (2 Chronicles 33:11-20)
14. Josiah - When in cleaning up the Temple the Book of the Law was accidentally discovered. Its public reading before the king and nation had a profound effect. (2 Kings 22-23)
15. Ezra - When as a result of his preaching on separation the nation Israel turned from their practice of marriage alliances with the heathen in the land. (Ezra 9-10)
16. Nehemiah - After he had rebuilt the walls of Jerusalem, Ezra publicly read and taught from the Word of God, causing a great revival. (Nehemiah 13)
17. Jonah - Despite a negative attitude, his preaching caused a mass conversion of the Assyrians at Nineveh. (Jonah 3)

18. Esther - Following the repentance of the Jews with the overthrow of Haman. (Esther 9:17-22)
19. John the Baptist - Who preached of the coming Messiah, warning them to repent. (Luke 3:2-18)
20. Jesus - When, after speaking to the Samaritan woman there was a revival in Samaria. (John 4:28-42)
21. Philip - Whose preaching regarding the kingdom of God produced a great revival in Samaria. (Acts 8:5-12)
22. Peter - At Pentecost after his great sermon. (Acts 2)
23. Peter - At Lydda after he had healed Aeneas. (Acts 9)
24. Paul - At Ephesus during his third missionary journey. (Acts 19:11-20)

SECTION 48 - THE MAN OF SIN IN ACTION Chapter 11:36-39

36 And the king shall do according to his will; and he shall exalt himself, and magnify himself above every god, and shall speak marvellous things against the God of gods, and shall prosper till the indignation be accomplished: for that that is determined shall be done. 37 Neither shall he regard the God of his fathers, nor the desire of women, nor regard any god: for he shall magnify himself above all. 38 But in his estate shall he honour the God of forces: and a god whom his fathers knew not shall he honour with gold, and silver, and with precious stones, and pleasant things. 39 Thus shall he do in the most strong holds with a strange god, whom he shall acknowledge and increase with glory: and he shall cause them to rule over many, and shall divide the land for gain.

KEY WORDS

King	Melek	King, Counsellor
Will	Ratson	Goodwill, Good pleasure
Exalt	Rum	To lift up on or against
Magnify	Gadal	To make self great
God	Elohim	God, Gods, Objects of worship
Marvellous	Pala	To be wonderful
Prosper	Tsaleach	To cause to go on prosperously
Indignation	Zaam	Indignation, Insolence
Accomplished	Kalah	To be completed, Finished
Determined	Charats	To be determined
Regard	Bin	To understand, Consider
Fathers	Aboth	Fathers, Ancestors
Desire	Chemdah	Desire, Desirableness
Women	Nashim	Women
Estate	Ken	Station
Honour	Kabed	To make heavy, Honoured
Forces	Maoz	Stronghold, Strength
Know	Yada	To know
Gold	Zahab	Gold
Silver	Keseeph	Silver
Precious Stones	Yaqar Eben	Precious stone
Pleasant Things	Chamudoth	Desirable objects
Most Strong	Maoz	Stronghold, Strength
Strange	Nekar	A stranger, One marked, A foreigner
Acknowledge	Nakar	To make known, Discern
Increase	Rabah	To cause to multiply, Make abound
Glory	Kabod	Weight, Heaviness, Honour
Rule	Mashal	To cause to rule
Many	Rab	Many
Divide	Chalaq	To apportion, Split up
Land	Adamah	Land Earth, Ground, Firm soil
Gain	Mechir	Price, Hire

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

The detailed prophecies of the first 35 verses of this chapter contain over 130 prophetic statements all of which have been fulfilled in history. However from verse 36 onwards no commentator has been able to coincide both prophecy and history. This is because the statement in verse 35, "the time of the end", indicates a complete break in the sequence.

The great figures of the past considered this to be future with Calvin relating it to the Roman Catholic Church and Luther and Jerome identifying their enemies with the Antichrist. Jerome in his commentary on Daniel said that not only did he believe this was a reference to the Antichrist but also the Jews of his day also considered this to be so. Earlier he had pointed out that Antiochus was merely a fore-shadow of the Antichrist.

Verse 36. “And the king shall do according to his will; and he shall exalt himself, and magnify himself above every god, and shall speak marvellous things against the God of gods, and shall prosper till the indignation be accomplished: for that that is determined shall be done.”

This is a king who does his own will who sets himself up as God. This is paralleled in **Revelation 13:14-15**, *“And deceiveth them that dwell on the earth by the means of those miracles which he had power to do in the sight of the beast; saying to them that dwell on the earth, that they should make an image to the beast, which had the wound by a sword, and did live. 15. And he had power to give life unto the image of the beast, that the image of the beast should both speak, and cause that as many as would not worship the image of the beast should be killed.”*

Verse 37-39. “Neither shall he regard the God of his fathers, nor the desire of women, nor regard any god: for he shall magnify himself above all. 38. But in his estate shall he honour the God of forces: and a god whom his fathers knew not shall he honour with gold, and silver, and with precious stones, and pleasant things. 39. Thus shall he do in the most strong holds with a strange god, whom he shall acknowledge and increase with glory: and he shall cause them to rule over many, and shall divide the land for gain.”

It should be noted that the word translated God here is Elohim which is a word translated for both the true and false gods. If the word had been Jehovah then the identity of the person would have clearly been a Jew. It would therefore be legitimate to translate, “God of his fathers”, as the “gods of his fathers” – ie, paganism.

The “desire of women” as understood in a Jewish context of the 5th century BC related to Jewish women desiring to be the one to bring forth the Messiah. With the Hebrew construction the noun after the word desire is subjective not objective, so it is better translated “desired by women”, or the Messiah. He rejects the very concept of God’s Saviour – he is determined to be Satan’s man, and that means he replaces the “Bible God” with himself (Satan’s Pride sin).

In context this means that the Antichrist considers himself God, and therefore has no regard for his nation’s traditional gods, nor for the Messiah of Israel, the Lord Jesus Christ, nor any other god. He considers himself superior to all the demons behind the pagan gods, and he is right in this, for Satan indwells him. It is of interest that Antiochus IV, while he became very proud, never got to this stage in his obsession of being a leader amongst the “gods” (demons).

In verses 38 and 39 this ruler however does acknowledge the “God of Forces” and a strange god. It is clear that the Antichrist is in direct league with, and John will record, is actually possessed by Satan. We see him referred to as using Satan’s power in 2 Thessalonians 2, and Revelation 13.

It appears from John’s words in Revelation 13, that he likely is actually demon indwelt, as well as being empowered by Satan himself, thus worshipping the Antichrist, which occurs in the Tribulation, actually is tantamount to worshipping Satan and the demons. This is a fatal and eternally significant unforgiveable sin!

Again there is no evidence historically that Antiochus divided the land of Israel for gain, even though the history of his reign is well documented.

APPLICATION

Those who accept these Scriptures as being inspired see this as prophecy, but prophecy that has yet to be fulfilled.

It is concluded that this refers to the future Antichrist who is indwelt by Satan. He is a person who apart from his relationship to Satan relates and respects no gods.

He appears therefore to be ultimately materialistic using the religions of the time as a stepping stone to ultimate world power and destroying all religions once their usefulness has been exhausted. He serves power alone and genuinely deceives himself into believing that he can defeat God. He is apparently as surprised as Hitler was to be losing and die.

DOCTRINE

PROPHECY: FULFILLED PROPHECY PROOF OF INSPIRATION

All scripture is inspired by God (2 Peter 1:19-21) Therefore, all Biblical prophecies must come true. This is demonstrated in prophecies already fulfilled.

1. Reuben would be unstable and lose his rights as firstborn. Prophecy (Genesis 49:3-4) - Fulfilment (Numbers 26:5-11)
2. Simeon would not have land allotted in the Promised Land. Prophecy (Genesis 49:5-7) - Fulfilment (Joshua 19:1-9)

3. Levi would not have land allotted in the Promised Land. Prophecy (Genesis 49:5-7) - Fulfilment (Joshua 21:4-7)
4. Judah would become the ruler over the nation of Israel. Prophecy (Genesis 49:8-12) - Fulfilment (Numbers 10:14, Joshua 15:1 Revelation 5:5)
5. Zebulon would receive an allotment of land on the coast and it would reach down to Sidon. Prophecy (Genesis 49:13) - Fulfilment (Joshua 19:10-16) as well as history when they took the land to the south of their area previously allocated to Asher and their influence reached right down to Sidon.
6. Issachar would be given a fertile area between two mountains and would be a servant. Prophecy (Genesis 49:14-15) - Fulfilment (Joshua 19:17-22)
7. Dan would be a full member of Israel but would lead the nation away in idolatry. Prophecy (Genesis 49:16-18) - Fulfilment (Joshua 19:40-48) and the fact that idolatry in the nation was led by this tribe. It is also of interest that his tribe is not mentioned as having any part in the 144,000 witnesses in (Revelation 7).
8. Gad would be a warrior tribe. Prophecy (Genesis 49:19) - Fulfilment (1 Chronicles 5:18-20, 12:8)
9. Asher would have a rich and fertile land. Prophecy (Genesis 49:20, Deuteronomy 33:24-25) - Fulfilment - History - Asher enjoyed a rich and fertile area together in more recent times successful oil exploration.
10. Naphtali would be quick to spread good news Prophecy (Genesis 49:21) - Fulfilment (Matthew 4:13-15) as Jesus began his ministry in Naphtali and most of the disciples who gave the good news came from that region.
11. Joseph would receive great blessing. Prophecy (Genesis 49:22-26) - Fulfilment (Deut 33:13-17)
12. Benjamin would be a ferocious group Prophecy. (Genesis 49:27) - Fulfilment (Judges 19, 20:21-47)
13. Joshua and Caleb to enter into the Promised Land after 40 years wandering. Prophecy (Numbers 14:24, 30) - Fulfilment (Joshua 3:7,17 14:6-12)
14. Sisera would be defeated by a woman. Prophecy (Judges 4:9) - Fulfilment (Judges 4:21)
15. Hophni and Phineas would die on the same day. Prophecy (1 Samuel 2:34) - Fulfilment (1 Samuel 4:11)
16. The priesthood would be removed from the family of Eli. Prophecy (1 Samuel 2:27-36, 3:11-14) - Fulfilment (1 Kings 2:26-27)
17. Saul was to be the first king of Israel and would save the nation from the Philistines. Prophecy (1 Samuel 9:15-16) - Fulfilment (1 Samuel 11:14)
18. Saul's kingdom would not continue. Prophecy (1 Samuel 13:14, 15:28, 24:20) - Fulfilment (2 Samuel 3:1, 5:1-3)
19. Saul to die in battle on a certain day. Prophecy (1 Samuel 28:19) - Fulfilment (1 Samuel 31:1-6)
20. Solomon to build the Temple not David. Prophecy (1 Chronicles 17:1-12) - Fulfilment (1 Kings 7:51)
21. The sword not to depart from David's house because of sin. Prophecy (2 Samuel 12:10-12) - Fulfilment (2 Samuel 13:28-29, 16:21-22)
22. The bones of Jeroboam's pagan priests to be burnt upon the false altar that Jeroboam had constructed. Prophecy (1 Kings 13:1-3) - Fulfilment (2 Kings 23:4-6)
23. Jeroboam's dynasty to be destroyed. Prophecy (1 Kings 14:10-11) - Fulfilment (1 Kings 15:27-28)
24. Ahab to be victorious over the Syrians. Prophecy (1 Kings 20:28) - Fulfilment (1 Kings 20:29-30)
25. Ahab to die in battle for killing Naboth. Prophecy (1 Kings 21:19, 22:17) - Fulfilment (1 Kings 22:37)
26. The dogs would then lick his blood from his chariot. Prophecy (1 Kings 21:19) - Fulfilment (1 Kings 22:38)
27. Jezebel to be eaten by wild dogs. Prophecy (1 Kings 21:23, 2 Kings 9:10) - Fulfilment (2 Kings 9:30-37)
28. Elisha to receive a double portion of Elijah's spirit. Prophecy (2 Kings 2:9) - Fulfilment demonstrated by the fact that the Bible records that Elisha performed twice as many miracles as Elijah.
29. Naaman to recover from his leprosy. Prophecy (2 Kings 5:3,8,10) - Fulfilment (2 Kings 5:14)

30. The starving inhabitants of Samaria to receive an abundance of food in twenty four hours. Prophecy (2 Kings 7:1) - Fulfilment (2 Kings 7:16-17)
31. An arrogant aide to the king to see the miracle but not to eat of the food. Prophecy (2 Kings 7:2,19) - Fulfilment (2 Kings 7:17,20)
32. Beb-Hadad, a Syrian king to recover from his sickness, but die anyway.. Prophecy (2 Kings 8:10) - Fulfilment (2 Kings 8:15)
33. Jehu to have four generations on the throne of northern kingdom. Prophecy (2 Kings 10:30) - Fulfilment (2 Kings 15:12)
34. Jehu's dynasty to then be destroyed. Prophecy (Hosea 1:4) - Fulfilment (2 Kings 15:8-12)
35. Joash to defeat the Syrians on three occasions. Prophecy (2 Kings 13:18-19) - Fulfilment (2 Kings 13:25)
36. Jehoram to suffer with a disease because of sin. Prophecy (2 Chronicles 21:15) - Fulfilment (2 Chronicles 21:18-19)
37. Amaziah to die because of his idolatry. Prophecy (2 Chronicles 25:16) - Fulfilment (2 Chronicles 25:20-27)
38. Sennacherib to be assassinated in his own land. Prophecy (Isaiah 37:7) - Fulfilment (Isaiah 37:37-38)
39. Sennacherib's attempt to invade Jerusalem not to be successful. Prophecy (Isaiah 37::33-35) - Fulfilment (Isaiah 37:36-37)
40. Hezekiah to be healed of a terminal disease. Prophecy (Isaiah 38:5) - Fulfilment (Isaiah 38:9)
41. Cyrus to allow the Jews to go back to Jerusalem. Prophecy (Isaiah 44:28) - Fulfilment (Ezra 1:1-2)
42. Zedekiah to be captured by Nebuchadnezzar. Prophecy (Jeremiah 21:7) - Fulfilment (Jeremiah 52:8-11)
43. Jehoahaz to die in Egyptian captivity and not return to Judah. Prophecy (Jeremiah 22:10-12) - Fulfilment (2 Kings 23:33-34)
44. Jehoiachin to be captured by Nebuchadnezzar. Prophecy (Jeremiah 22:25) - Fulfilment (2 Kings 24:15)
45. Coniah was told that no seed of his would sit on the throne of David. Prophecy (Jeremiah 22:28-30) - Fulfilment - historical. This prophecy is in apparent contradiction to the Davidic Covenant of (2 Samuel 7:8-16) where David was promised a "son" who would reign forever on his throne. This apparent contradiction is solved by the virgin birth of the Lord Jesus Christ as Mary was descended from David via Nathan. (Luke 3:23-31)
46. Hananiah, a false prophet to die within a year. Prophecy (Jeremiah 28:15-16) - Fulfilment (Jeremiah 28:17)
47. Nebuchadnezzar to invade Egypt. Prophecy (Jeremiah 43:9-13) - Fulfilment - history
48. Nebuchadnezzar to defeat the Egyptians at Carchemish. Prophecy (Jeremiah 46) - Fulfilment - history.
49. Nebuchadnezzar to be given the mind of an animal because of pride. Prophecy (Daniel 4:19-27) - Fulfilment (Daniel 4:28-37)
50. Belshazzar to have his kingdom removed from him. Prophecy (Daniel 5:5, 25-28) - Fulfilment (Daniel 5:30)
51. Alexander the Great to establish a world empire in a very short time. Prophecy (Daniel 2:32-39, 7:6, 8:5-8, 21, 11:3) - Fulfilment - history.
52. Alexander to defeat the Persians - Prophecy (Daniel 8:5-8) - Fulfilment - history
53. Alexander to die at the height of his power and his kingdom to be divided into four parts. Prophecy (Daniel 8:8, 22, 11:4) - Fulfilment - history tells us that at the height of his power Alexander died of a fever in Babylon at the age of 33. After a period of some twenty years of internal struggle and fighting the eleven generals of the Greek army who had survived Alexander were reduced to four called in Scripture the four winds of heaven, Ptolemy, Seluchus, Cassander and Lysimachus.
54. Antiochus Epiphanies to persecute the Jews and desecrate their Temple. Prophecy (Daniel 8:11-25) - Fulfilment - history. The whole of (Daniel 11) represents historical prophecies of the Greek dynasties based on Ptolemy and Seluchus which lasted until the time of Julius Caesar with Cleopatra being the last Greek ruler of Egypt. This area is covered in some detail in Bible Topic Book volume 2, topic 291.
55. Zacharias would be mute until the birth of John the Baptist. Prophecy (Luke 1:20) - Fulfilment (Luke 1:57-64)

56. John the Baptist to be the herald for the Lord Jesus Christ. Prophecy (Luke 1:76-77) - Fulfilment (Matthew 3:1-11, Luke 3:2-6)
57. Simeon to live until he had seen the Messiah. Prophecy (Luke 2:25-26) - Fulfilment (Luke 2:28-30)
58. Peter would deny Jesus Christ. Prophecy (John 13:38) - Fulfilment (John 18:24-27)
59. Peter to die as a martyr. Prophecy (John 21:18-19, 2 Peter 1 :12-14) - Fulfilment - history
60. Judas to give himself over to Satan. Prophecy (John 6:70) - Fulfilment (John 13:27)
61. Judas to betray Jesus. Prophecy (John 13:21) - Fulfilment (John 18:2-5)
62. Paul would suffer a lot for the Lord Jesus Christ. Prophecy (Acts 9:16) - Fulfilment (2 Corinthians 11:23-28, 12:7-10, Philippians 1:29-30)
63. Paul would be a minister to the Gentiles. Prophecy (Acts 9:15) - Fulfilment (Romans 11:13, Ephesians 3:1)
64. Paul would preach before kings. Prophecy (Acts 9:15) - Fulfilment (Acts 24-26)
65. Paul would go to Rome. Prophecy (Acts 23:11) - Fulfilment (Acts 28:16)

SECTION 49 – THE VERY TEMPORARY VICTORY OF THE WILFUL KING Chapter 11:40-45

40 And at the time of the end shall the king of the south push at him: and the king of the north shall come against him like a whirlwind, with chariots, and with horsemen, and with many ships; and he shall enter into the countries, and shall overflow and pass over. 41 He shall enter also into the glorious land, and many countries shall be overthrown: but these shall escape out of his hand, even Edom, and Moab, and the chief of the children of Ammon. 42 He shall stretch forth his hand also upon the countries: and the land of Egypt shall not escape. 43 But he shall have power over the treasures of gold and of silver, and over all the precious things of Egypt: and the Libyans and the Ethiopians shall be at his steps. 44 But tidings out of the east and out of the north shall trouble him: therefore he shall go forth with great fury to destroy, and utterly to make away many. :45 And he shall plant the tabernacles of his palace between the seas in the glorious holy mountain; yet he shall come to his end, and none shall help him.

KEY WORDS

Time	Eth	Time
End	Qets	End, Extremity
King	Melek	King, Counsellor
South	Negeb	South
Push	Nagach	To push oneself on or forward.
North	Tsaphon	North
Whirlwind	Saar	To show self tempestuous
Chariots	Rekeb	Chariot
Horsemen	Parash	Horseman
Many	Rab	Many
Ships	Oniyyah	A ship
Enter	Bo	To go in , Enter
Countries	Erets	Land, Country
Overflow	Shataph	To overflow
Pass Over	Abar	To go or pass over
Glorious	Tsebi	Beauty, Desire
Land	Erets	Land, Earth
Overthrown	Kashal	To be feeble, Stumbled
Escape	Peletah	Escape
Hand	Yad	Hand
Chief	Reshith	Beginning
Children	Ben	Son
Stretch	Shalach	To send
Power	Mashal	To rule
Treasures	Mikmannim	Treasures
Gold	Zahab	Gold
Silver	Keseph	Silver
Precious Things	Chamudoth	Desired or Desirable objects

Steps	Mitsad	A step, Tread
Tidings	Shemuah	What is heard, Report, Tidings
East	Mizrach	Rising of the sun
Trouble	Bahel	To trouble, Hasten
Shall Go	Yatsa	To go forth or out
Great	Gadol	Great,
Fury	Chema	Heat, Fury
Destroy	Shamad	To cut off, Destroy, Waste
Make Away	Charam	To devote to god by destruction
Many	Rab	Many
Plant	Nata	To plant
Tabernacles	Ohel	A tent
Palace	Appeden	Palace, Ornament, Idol
Seas	Yam	Sea, Lake, Pool
Holy	Qodesh	Separation, Object set apart
Mountain	Har	Mount, Hill
End	Qets	End, Extremity
Help	Azar	To help

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

v 40-43 And at the time of the end shall the king of the south push at him: and the king of the north shall come against him like a whirlwind, with chariots, and with horsemen, and with many ships; and he shall enter into the countries, and shall overflow and pass over. **41** He shall enter also into the glorious land, and many countries shall be overthrown: but these shall escape out of his hand, even Edom, and Moab, and the chief of the children of Ammon. **42** He shall stretch forth his hand also upon the countries: and the land of Egypt shall not escape. **43** But he shall have power over the treasures of gold and of silver, and over all the precious things of Egypt: and the Libyans and the Ethiopians shall be at his steps.

Verse 40 It is noted that the “time of the end” is again mentioned in the start of the last section of chapter 11, and shows that extremely violent military struggle will be a major feature of this final period of the history of mankind.

Again the Kings of the North and South are mentioned. In the second and third centuries BC these related to Syria in the north and Egypt in the south.

Many have compared this battle to the King of the North’s invasion of Israel which is given in Ezekiel 38, 39. However the battle in that passage does not include the king of the south.

There are a number of possible timings for the Ezekiel passage but a date for it in the Tribulation is not considered likely due to the clean up period required. Ezekiel 38-39 would appear to occur well before the Great Tribulation period, possibly setting the stage for it through its re-organization of alliances. The present passage however is clearly in the Great Tribulation, as it was not fulfilled in the Maccabean, or in any subsequent period.

Another question to be posed is who is “he” in verse 40? Looking in context it appears to be the Antichrist of verses 36 and following. Here the Antichrist repels both the north and south; he approaches and overpowers them.

He enters Egypt and North Africa as well as the Promised land but does not take southern Jordan. This is the area of Edom, Moab and Ammon where believing Jews flee when the statue of the Antichrist is erected in the middle of the Tribulation period. Even though he can read this and try to oppose it, he is distracted and follows the route described...

This is also seen in **Matthew 24:15-16**, “*When ye therefore shall see the abomination of desolation, spoken of by Daniel the prophet, stand in the holy place, (whoso readeth, let him understand:)* 16. *Then let them which be in Judaea flee into the mountains”.*

In addition the remnant is seen fleeing to the mountains of southern Jordan from the dragon or Satan in Revelation 12.

It is of interest in this regard that during the siege of Jerusalem which ended in its destruction in 70 AD the siege was lifted for a short time, and believing Jews headed for the mountains across the Jordan River. There are events at the exact needed time in the Great Tribulation also, that will facilitate the movement of the people from Jerusalem south and east to safety. Matthew 24:15-16. All believers can know the time is right to flee. They have the 3 ½ year timetable from the signing of the treaty, and days from the arrival of the Western Forces on the sea coast, all before the statue is set up!

It is perhaps not a coincidence that the Jordanian government in recent years has completed a major road upgrade from the area of Jerusalem to these very mountains.

By this conquering sweep through the Middle East the riches of the Antichrist are greatly increased, but God’s people have escaped his clutches, and he is distracted by wealth, world power, and tectonic events until too late to kill them all.

Verses 44-45. “But tidings out of the east and out of the north shall trouble him: therefore he shall go forth with great fury to destroy, and utterly to make away many. 45. And he shall plant the tabernacles of his palace between the seas in the glorious holy mountain; yet he shall come to his end, and none shall help him.”

Here we have the culmination of the military conflict with the Armageddon campaign which terminates with the return of the Lord Jesus Christ back at His Second Advent.

The Antichrist is busy in the Middle East and hears of the armies of the “Kings of the sun rising” arriving, as well as another attack from the north. He responds with great fury. To “make away” means wholesale slaughter. He is immensely strong and malice filled towards those who have rebelled against his “control” over them, and in his rage doesn't eliminate the believers – the very satanic rebels work to protect God's people even though they hate them.

The general battle headquarters of the Antichrist is set up between the Mediterranean and Dead Seas outside Jerusalem. Jerusalem is attacked and partly taken, but the Lord Jesus Christ intervenes to deliver his people.

In Revelation 13-19 we see that the Antichrist and False prophet are caught and thrown into the Lake of Fire. The Lord Jesus Christ completes the slaughter of the heathen armies. The “times of the Gentiles” has come to the end with the arrival of the King of the Jews (“King of all kings”) to set up His kingdom on earth.

APPLICATION

Man made solutions are no solutions. A man or woman can gain the whole world yet lose their own soul forever; the Anti-Christ and his Jewish False Prophet “side-kick” both lose all eternally. A person or group may appear to be ultimately powerful but God promotes and demotes. He causes empires to rise and fall, and HE judges eternally.

The end of the “times of the Gentiles” occurs at the Second Advent of Christ.

The Lord Jesus Christ will call all the Jews from the four corners of the earth to set up the kingdom which was promised to the Jews by God.

DOCTRINES

TRIBULATION: SIGNS

1. One World
 - a) One World Government (Revelation 13:7, 16-18)
 - b) One World Church (1 Timothy 4:1, Revelation 17)
 - c) One World Economy (1 Timothy 6:10, Revelation 13:16, 17)

2. Political Signs
 - a) Israel (Luke 21:29-32)
 - b) King of the North (Daniel 11:40)
 - c) King of the East (Revelation 16:12, 9:16)
 - d) King of the West (Daniel 11:40-45)
 - e) King of the South (Daniel 11:40-45)

3. Natural Signs
 - a) Earthquakes (Luke 21:11)
 - b) Famines (Matthew 24:7)
 - c) Weather (Luke 21:25)
 - d) Diseases (Luke 21:11a)

4. Man made Signs
 - a) Wars Hot and Cold (Matthew 24:6, 7)
 - b) Preparation for War (Joel 3:9, 10)
 - c) Knowledge and Technology (Daniel 12:4)
 - d) Travel (Daniel 12:4)
 - e) Pollution (Revelation 8:10-11)
 - f) Moral Decline (Luke 17:26, 2 Tim 3:3)
 - g) Homosexuality (Luke 17:28-30)
 - h) Apostasy and False Prophets (Matthew 24:5, 24)
 - i) Witchcraft and Occultism (1 Timothy 4:1, 2)
 - j) Drugs (Revelation 9:21)

TRIBULATION IN MATTHEW 24

The second half of the Tribulation or Great Tribulation is portrayed in (Matthew 24)

1. It commences with the erection of the abomination of desolation, the statue of the Antichrist being erected in the Temple in Jerusalem. (v 15)
2. Believers in Jerusalem are told to flee to the mountains of Ammon, Edom and Moab (v 16-20)
3. It will be a time of maximum terror and pressure with many false Christs, signs and wonders. They are not to be led astray as believers as they know that when the Lord returns He will be seen by all. (v 21-26)
4. The next item seen is the smiting of the armies by the Lord Jesus Christ as He returns. (v 27-28)
5. The glorious appearing of the Lord Jesus Christ, visible to all, and the gathering of Israel from the four corners of the earth to the land now occurs. (v 29-31)
6. The fig tree prophecy shows that with the emergence of Israel and many other nations we are the generation that will see the Second Coming of Christ. (v 32-35)
7. The passage concludes with a warning to be prepared for the return of the Lord in glory. (v 36-51)

NOTES

CHAPTER 12

DIVISION OF CHAPTER 12

Chapter twelve of Daniel can be divided into five sections – but the first two belong with Chapter Eleven.

THE GREAT TRIBULATION	VERSE 1
RESURRECTION OF OLD TESTAMENT SAINTS	VERSES 2-3
SEALING OF THE PROPHECY UNTIL THE END	VERSES 4-9
THE ABOMINATION OF DESOLATION	VERSES 10-11
CONCLUSION	VERSES 12-13

INTRODUCTION

There is again an unfortunate chapter break here as all commentators agree that the first three verses of chapter 12 continue the narrative of chapter 11 and clearly deal with future things. 1. *“And at that time shall Michael stand up, the great prince which standeth for the children of thy people: and there shall be a time of trouble, such as never was since there was a nation even to that same time: and at that time thy people shall be delivered, every one that shall be found written in the book. 2. And many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt. 3. And they that be wise shall shine as the brightness of the firmament; and they that turn many to righteousness as the stars for ever and ever.”*

Here we see the final deliverance of the children of Israel, the resurrection from the dead, and rewards for the righteous, which is a real problem for liberal scholars who try and relate all of these last chapters to Antiochus IV as they are future events. Nowhere in this great book does the attempt to make this book entirely history fail so miserably as here.

SECTION 50 - THE GREAT TRIBULATION

Chapter 12:1

1 And at that time shall Michael stand up, the great prince which standeth for the children of thy people: and there shall be a time of trouble, such as never was since there was a nation even to that same time: and at that time thy people shall be delivered, every one that shall be found written in the book.

KEY WORDS

Time	Eth	Time
Stand	Amad	To stand firm or still
Great	Gadol	Great
Prince	Sar	Head, Official, Captain
Children	Ben	Son
People	Am	A people
Trouble	Tsarah	Straightness, Distress
Nation	Goi	Nation, Corporate body
Found	Matsa	To be found
Written	Kathab	To write
Book	Sepher	Book, Writing

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

The opening phrase of this chapter “And at that time”, makes it very clear that this verse continues straight on from the previous chapter. It is talking about the time of the end, Daniel 11:40. It follows on chronologically.

What is being reviewed here is the Great Tribulation which is a theme of both the Old and New Testaments. Even back in Deuteronomy 4:30 it was predicted that Israel would in the “latter days” be in great tribulation. Jeremiah called it the time of Jacob’s trouble. **Jeremiah 30:7.**

Not only did the Lord Jesus Christ teach about the Tribulation relating it to the abomination of desolation as recorded by Daniel, but that he repeated that the people caught in the future fulfillment should also flee to the mountains. He said that the time will be so intense that unless it was shortened life would cease to exist on the earth.

The time is outlined extensively in Revelation 6 to 19 which is the longest passage on the time of the Tribulation in the Scriptures. All of the Bible agrees that this time is unique in its severity, and no one has been able to harmonize this verse with Antiochus IV.

In Zechariah 13:8ff the same time period appears to be described; a period of tremendous testing for the children of Israel, followed immediately by the final struggle for Jerusalem and the Second Advent of the Lord Jesus Christ which delivers Israel.

As the head of the elect angels, the Arch-Angel Michael is given the responsibility of protecting Israel. Divine protection, especially in relation to the Jews is essential, because Satan realizes that if he can eliminate all the Jews he has proven that God does not have control of his plan, and therefore is not God. If there are no Jews to deliver Jesus cannot return.

The fact that they are all “written in the book”, indicates that they are believers, with the book being the Book of Life.

APPLICATION

Satan, although he wishes to eliminate all the Jews, will not be able to do so, as they will be protected by God.

We as Christians are protected by God. He will protect us until our work on this earth is finished. Both now and in the Great Tribulation Period, God is in control, and all who walk with God walk in power, and can do so in absolute assurance of their safety and the final victory of the Lord.

DOCTRINE

BOOKS IN THE BIBLE

1. There are several books mentioned in the Bible:-
 - (a) The Book of Life.
 - (b) Lamb’s book of Life.
 - (c) The Books of Works.

2. The Book of Life contains the names of all who are physically alive. From this book names can be blotted out. (Revelation 3:5)

3. The names of Christian believers will never be blotted out but others, those who are lost, are blotted out.
4. Those who are blotted out of the book of life are removed on their physical death if they have not accepted the Lord Jesus Christ as Saviour. Their inclusion in the Book of Life shows the possibility of all to be saved which is God's will for the unbeliever (2 Peter 3:9) (See Unlimited Atonement).
5. The Lamb's Book of Life is the record of the eternal purposes of God. The names in it are written through God's foreknowledge from before the foundation of the world (Revelation 13:8, 21:27). They can never be blotted out. All that are written the Lamb's Book of Life have eternal life. It is based on God being all-knowing.
6. The Book of Works are books from which unbelievers are judged at the Last Judgment at the Great White Throne. (Revelation 20:11-15). The good works in the Books of Works are held up in comparison to the good work of Christ and demonstrated to be deficient. They are then sentenced to the lake of fire - the second death. (Revelation 20:11-15)

SECTION 51 - RESURRECTION OF OLD TESTAMENT SAINTS

Chapter 12:2-3

2 And many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt. 3 And they that be wise shall shine as the brightness of the firmament; and they that turn many to righteousness as the stars for ever and ever.

KEY WORDS

Many	Rab	Many
Sleep	Yashen	Sleeping
Dust	Aphar	Ashes, Clay, Dust
Earth	Adamah	Ground, Soil, Land
Awake	Quts	To awake from sleep
Everlasting	Olam	Age, Age lasting
Life	Chaiyim	Life
Shame	Cherpah	Reproach
Contempt	Deraon	Abhorrence, Thrusting away
Wise	Sakal	To cause to understand
Shine	Zahar	To cause to shine
Brightness	Sohar	Brightness, Shining
Firmament	Raqia	Expense
Righteousness	Tsadaq	To make righteous, Just
Stars	Kokab	A star
For Ever and Ever	Le-olam Va-ed	To the age and onward

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

These verses introduce the fact of the resurrection. The fact of resurrection was known from the beginning with Abraham alluding to it at the time he was actively preparing to sacrifice Isaac, and Job comments on the same faith-based reality for him, when he made the statement that he would see God in his flesh. **Job 19:25-26.**

Isaiah also stated this principle in **Isaiah 26:19**, so Daniel was not revealing something new here but relates the resurrection of his contemporaries to the timing of the Second Advent of Christ.

In this context we have to remember that the mystery doctrines of the church were not revealed in the Old Testament. In fact the only reference to the church in the Gospels was in the future tense, "on this rock I will build my church". The teaching of church age truths in the Gospels was restricted to John chapters 14-17, with the rest of the Gospels relating to the age of the Jews and Gentiles, in which Daniel found himself. The Church Age is inserted into the Age of the Jews/Gentiles, and the old age restarts once the Church is removed. We are here for a "Limited Time Only".

In the doctrine below it will be seen that the resurrection to commendation occurs in four stages, with the Lord Jesus Christ being the First Fruits, followed by the Church Age believers at the Rapture, the Old Testament saints at the Second Advent, which is the resurrection spoken of in this passage, and then the Millennial saints, just before eternity swallows up space-time. **2 Peter 3:10-18.**

For the righteous there will be rewards for the work that they have done for their Lord. Their eternal rewards will be ones of grace. They will be very great for those who help other believers in difficult days.

APPLICATION

There is life after death, at which point we are either eternally blessed as believers, or eternally under the curse that is the result of the choices to follow after the satanic path. There are only two paths – God's Path or the enemy's path.

There are rewards for those works done in the power of the Holy Spirit in our present Church Age, and in the Age of Israel past and to come, while the works of a believer when controlled by their human (OSN defiled) nature is burnt. **1 Corinthians 3:12-15**. Human efforts do not belong in heaven, but all we do in the Holy Spirit's power is made by God within us and the world, and so belongs in heaven. Refer to the "Doctrine of Rewards and Crowns" below.

DOCTRINES

RESURRECTION

1. The resurrection of Christ is central to the gospel. (1 Corinthians 15:3-4)
 - a) Had there been no resurrection then we would all still be in our sins. (1 Corinthians 15:17).
 - b) Resurrection indicates completion of justification. (Romans 4:25, 2 Corinthians 5:2 1)
 - c) Resurrection is a guarantee of ultimate sanctification. (1 Corinthians 15:20-23)
 - d) The resurrection is the Father's seal on Christ's completed work, and the public declaration of its acceptance.
 - e) Without the resurrection it is impossible for Christ to be glorified. The humanity of Christ is glorified higher than the angels. (John 7:39, John 16:14)

2. Historical proof of the resurrection:
 - a) The empty tomb. (Matthew 28)
 - b) Many of witnesses died rather than change their testimony.
 - c) Subsequent changes and confidence of the disciples after the resurrection.
 - d) The day of Pentecost. The reality of the resurrection was so well known that when Peter preached the first two sermons in Jerusalem over 8000 people were saved. (Acts 2:41, Acts 4:3-4)
 - e) The observance of the first day of the week as the worship day. (Acts 20:7, 1 Corinthians 16:2, Revelation 1:10)
 - f) The historic existence of the church. The church worships a literal risen Saviour, and not merely the memory of a dead martyr. (Romans 5:12,14,17, 6:3-9, 8:2, 1 Corinthians 15:26,54-55, Hebrews 2:14)

3. Baptism is a sign of the new resurrection life. (Romans 6:3-11, Colossians 2:12).

4. The Lord's Supper is a reminder of the expected return of the risen Lord. (1 Corinthians 11:23-26)

5. Order of the resurrections:-
 - a) The first for believers only including Jesus Christ which is divided into four parts.
 - i) The resurrection of Christ. (1 Corinthians 15:23, Romans 1:4, 1 Thessalonians 1:10, 1 Peter 1:3)
 - ii) The Rapture of the church (1 Corinthians 15:51-57, 1 Thessalonians 4:16-18)
 - iii) The Old Testament saints and tribulation martyrs at the end of the Tribulation. (Daniel 12:13, Isaiah 26-19-20, Revelation 20:4)
 - iv) The Millennial saints and those who survive the Tribulation to enter the Millennium in their physical bodies.
 - b) The second resurrection occurs at the end of the Millennium and is for unbelievers only. They are judged and cast into the lake of fire forever. (1 John 5:28, 29, Revelation 20:12-15, 2 Peter 3:7, Matthew 25:41)
 - c) Jesus, who must be the first eternally resurrected human., was not raised until three days after the crucifixion.
 - d) People in the Old Testament who were "raised from the dead" were merely resuscitated, and later died.
 - e) Matthew 27:52-53 is a transfer scene not a resurrection scene. The transfer is one of saints from paradise to the third heaven (Ephesians 4:8). Some were given resuscitated bodies to witness to the Jews.

6. The sequence of events at the Lord's resurrection is as follows:-
 - a) Mary Magdalene, Salome and Mary the mother of James and Joses head towards the tomb followed by other women carrying embalming spices.
 - b) The three find the stone rolled away. Mary Magdalene goes back to tell the disciples. (Luke 23:55-24:9, John 20:1-2)
 - c) Mary the mother of James and Joses draws near to the tomb and sees the angel. (Matthew 28:2)
 - d) She goes back to the women carrying the spices.
 - e) Peter and John who have been advised by Mary Magdalene arrive, look inside the empty tomb and go away.(John 20:3-10)
 - f) Mary Magdalene returns weeping, sees two angels and then Jesus.(John 20:11-18)
 - g) As instructed by the Lord she goes to tell the disciples.
 - h) Mary the mother of James and Joses meets the women with the spices and returning with them they see the two angels. (Luke 24:4-5, Mark 16:5)
 - i) They also receive advice from the angels and, going to seek the disciples, are met by Jesus. (Matthew 28:8-10)

7. Recorded appearances after his resurrection.
 - a) Mary Magdalene (John 20:14-18)
 - b) Women returning from the tomb (Matthew 28:8-10)
 - c) Emmaus couple (Luke 24:13-31)
 - d) Peter (Luke 24:34)
 - e) Ten disciples (Luke 24:36-43)
 - f) Disciples including Thomas (John 20:24-29)
 - g) Lake Tiberias appearance (John 21:1-23)

EVANGELICAL BIBLE COLLEGE OF WESTERN AUSTRALIA

- h) To the 500 (1 Corinthians 15:6)
- i) James (1 Corinthians 15:7)
- j) Disciples at the ascension (Acts 1:3-12)
- k) Stephen (Acts 7:55)
- l) Paul on Damascus Road (Acts 9:3-6)
- m) Paul in the Temple (Acts 22:17-21)
- n) Paul at night (Acts 23:11)
- o) John on Patmos (Revelation 1:10-19)

8. The resurrection body of Jesus Christ -

- a) Retained the nail prints in the hands and feet. (Psalm 22:16, Zechariah 12:10, John 20:25-29)
- b) Retained the wound scar in the side. (John 20:25-29)
- c) Christ was recognised on 15 appearances by his disciples as the one who died and rose again.
- d) Resurrection body of Christ could eat. (Luke 24:42-43)
- e) It had substance, it could be touched and felt. (Matthew 28:9, Luke 24:39, John 20:17)
- f) His body could breathe. (John 20:22)
- g) His body possessed flesh and bones. (Luke 24:39-40)
- h) Could walk through closed doors. (Luke 24:36, John 20:19)
- i) Appears and disappears suddenly. (Luke 24:31,36)
- j) Could move vertically or horizontally. (Acts 1:9,10)
- k) Our body will be just like His without the nail prints or wound in the side.

DESTINY OF BELIEVERS

1. He who believes in Jesus Christ has eternal life now (1 John 5:11-13). He will never die (John 11:25,26, John 8:51)
2. Believers are said to "fall asleep" at their death (1 Thessalonians 4:14). The soul departs to be consciously present with Christ, but the body "sleeps" in the grave until the resurrection (2 Corinthians 5:6-8)
3. When Christ comes at the Rapture, the bodies of those in Christ shall be raised from the dead (1 Thessalonians 4:16, 1 Corinthians 15:20-23)
4. Our physical bodies will be replaced by immortal bodies (2 Corinthians 5:1-4) - conformed to the body of Christ (Philippians 3:20-21)
5. We shall be like him (1 John 3:2) seeing His glory and reflecting it in ourselves (Colossians 3:4, John 17:22).
6. We will be rewarded because of works of faith (Luke 19:12-19) which will vary in proportion to our faithfulness in serving God (Matthew 6:20, 1 Corinthians 3:11-15)
7. In the Millennial Kingdom, we shall reign with Christ as priests of God and Christ (Revelation 20:6).
8. To the overcomer (1 John 5:4-5) Christ will give to eat of the tree of life (Revelation 2:7) and shall not be hurt by the second death - the lake of fire (Revelation 2:11). He will be given authority to rule over nations (Revelation 2:26-27) Jesus will acknowledge the believer before God (Revelation 3:4-5) who will be made a pillar in the temple of God. (Revelation 3:12) and will be seated with Christ in His own throne. (Revelation 3:21)
9. God will wipe away all tears from his eyes; sorrow, crying, pain, and death shall be no more (Revelation 21:4)
10. We shall know all things perfectly (1 Corinthians 13:12)
11. We will receive an incorruptible inheritance. (1 Peter 1:3-5) kept by our all powerful God in heaven.

UNBELIEVER

1. God is Holy and cannot compromise with sin or evil. (Psalm 22:1-3, John 1:5)
2. Sin is solved at the Cross for all. (1 John 2:2)
3. The way is therefore open to all who will believe. (John 3:16,36, Acts 16:31)
4. Those who reject Christ are without hope, promise and God in the world. (Ephesians 2:12, Romans 5:14,17, 6:23)
5. We are born dead to God. (Psalm 51:5)

6. It is only through Christ that we can be born again. (John 14:6)
7. The unbeliever spurns this grace offer and the Lord who died for him. (Hebrews 2:1-4)
8. God is Love, but when love is spurned, that person has chosen darkness rather than light. They are therefore judged on the basis of their works as they have rejected the Lord's work for them. (John 3:16-21, Revelation 20:11-15)
9. The first stop for the unbeliever after death is Torments in Hades or Sheol . This is a place of regret, torment and anguish. It is also called the bottomless pit. (Revelation 9:2)
10. Their ultimate state is the Lake of Fire after they have been judicially sentenced to it by the Lord Jesus Christ at the Last Judgment where they are judged according to their works. (Revelation 14:11, 20:11-15, Matthew 8:12, 25:41, Mark 9:44, Jude 13)

JUDGEMENT: GREAT WHITE THRONE [See page 99 above]

JUDGMENT SEAT OF CHRIST [See page 99 above]

REWARDS AND CROWNS

1. Rewards and Salvation are carefully separated in the scriptures. Salvation is a free gift from God, rewards are for meritorious service in the power of the Spirit.
2. Salvation - a free gift to the lost. (Ephesians 2:8-9, Romans 6:23, John 4:10) - an everlasting possession. (John 3:36, John 5:24, John 6:47)
3. Rewards - to the saved who faithfully work for the Lord. (1 Corinthians 9:24, 25, Revelation 22:12) - distributed at the Judgment Seat of Christ. (1 Corinthians 3:11-15, 2 Corinthians 5:10, Romans 14:10)
4. Rewards as Crowns:-
 - a) The incorruptible crown - for faithfulness in exercising self control. (1 Corinthians 9:24-27)
 - b) The crown of glory - for faithfulness in suffering. (1 Peter 5:4)
 - c) The crown of life - for faithfulness under trial. (James 1:12, Revelation 2:10)
 - d) The crown of righteousness - for faithful testimony. (2 Timothy 4:8)
 - e) The crown of rejoicing - for faithful service. (1 Thessalonians 2:19, 20, Philippians 4:1)

SECTION 52 - SEALING OF THE PROPHECY UNTIL THE END

Chapter 12:4-9

4 But thou, O Daniel, shut up the words, and seal the book, even to the time of the end: many shall run to and fro, and knowledge shall be increased. 5 Then I Daniel looked, and, behold, there stood other two, the one on this side of the bank of the river, and the other on that side of the bank of the river. 6 And one said to the man clothed in linen, which was upon the waters of the river, How long shall it be to the end of these wonders? 7 And I heard the man clothed in linen, which was upon the waters of the river, when he held up his right hand and his left hand unto heaven, and swore by him that liveth for ever that it shall be for a time, times, and an half; and when he shall have accomplished to scatter the power of the holy people, all these things shall be finished. 8 And I heard, but I understood not: then said I, O my Lord, what shall be the end of these things? 9 And he said, Go thy way, Daniel: for the words are closed up and sealed till the time of the end.

KEY WORDS

Shut Up	Satham	To shut out, up or in
Words	Dabar	A word, Matter, Thing
Seal	Chatham	To Seal, Seal up, Finish
Book	Sepher	Book, Writing
Time	Eth	Time
End	Qets	End, Extremity

Many	Rab	Many
Shall Run	Shut	To go to and fro
Knowledge	Daath	Knowledge
Increased	Rabah	To be or become many
Looked	Raah	To see, Look, Behold
Stood	Amad	To stand, stand still or fast
Two	Shenayim	Two
One	Echad	One
Bank	Saphah	Lip, Edge
River	Yeor	The Nile, A stream
Man	Ish	Man, Husband, Individual
Clothed	Lebash	To be clothed
Linen	Bad	Fine linen
Waters	Mayim	Water, Waters
End	Qets	End, Extremity
Wonders	Pele	A wonder, Singular thing
Heard	Shamea	To hear
Held	Rum	To lift up, Exalt
Right Hand	Yamim	Right hand or side
Left	Semol	Left hand or side
Heaven	Shamayim	Heavens, Heaved up things
Sware	Shaba	To swear
Liveth	Chai	Living, Alive
For Ever	Olam	Age, Age lasting
Time	Moed	An appointed time or season
Half	Chetsi	Half, Middle
Accomplished	Kalah	To be completed, Finished
Scatter	Naphats	To dash or beat in pieces, Spread out.
Power	Yad	Hand
Holy	Qodesh	Separation, Object set apart
People	Am	A people
Finished	Kalah	To be completed, Finished
Heard	Shamea	To hear
Understood	Bin	To understand, Consider
Closed	Satham	To shut out, up or in
Sealed	Chatham	To Seal, Seal up, Finish
Time	Eth	Time
End	Qets	End, Extremity

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

Travel - The period since the last World War has been the age of travel for all people of all social classes. Prior to this period it was only the rich who could afford to travel or had the leisure to do so. Since graduating in Engineering in 1961, Dr Moses has visited 70 countries, and has undertaken 7 trips in excess of three months visiting various countries.

Our fathers even in their wildest dreams would not have contemplated travel on this scale. At any moment today over one million people maybe in the air flying somewhere over the earth! Covid 19 will not permanently change this!!!

Knowledge - There is no doubt that in the last twenty to thirty years there has been a great knowledge boom. Knowledge was said to be doubling every ten years in the scientific area twenty years ago, now it doubles every three years. 95% of all scientists that have ever lived are said to be alive at this moment. A prominent scientist of the eighteenth century could boast that he/she knew all about science. Today people are highly specialised in one area of science.

Knowledge could also be gauged by the number of books that are published, bearing in mind that books were very rare at the time of Daniel. Around the year 2000 Russia published 90,000+ books, whilst the U.S.A published 85,000+, West Germany 45,000+ and Great Britain 35,000+.

Unfortunately with this knowledge the knowledge of the Scriptures appears to have declined. The topics for PhD study also have deteriorated, and political correctness rather than truth telling promotes any academic!

Another feature of the mixture of travel and knowledge is the concept of people traveling to and fro in a frantic searching for knowledge. He says that this will occur but it is not until the end that answers to these prophecies will occur.

Daniel now asks the question of the angels beside the river as to how long it will be to the end of these wonders. The answer is that it will be three and a half years from the scattering of the people to the end.

Daniel again asks the question, but he is told that the book is sealed till the end of the age and that none will be able to fully understand it until that time when it is required to be understood by the generation that needs to apply its truths.

This keeps Satan from knowing things also, and when the time is required the Holy Spirit will lead those who "need to know" to fully understand all they need to know.

APPLICATION

Prophecy is something that will encourage people under pressure. It is very encouraging in the fact that it shows that God's plan is going to work, there is not going to be a nuclear winter, although mankind will feel hopeless. The Lord will return to a world that can be saved, and He will save all who bow before Him, and He will then rebuild the earth.

It also reinforces the fact that the Word of God can be taken literally and is totally reliable.

The book of Daniel is a critical book when understanding particularly the Scriptures involving eschatology such as the Olivet discourse, Thessalonians, and the book of the Revelation.

The scattering of the people represents the middle of the Tribulation, the end, the Second Advent of Christ represents the second half of the seven year period.

The amount of revelation given by God to man is limited to that which He wishes man to know. It develops over time.

DOCTRINE

BIBLE: CANONICITY

DEFINITION - Canon - KANON (Greek) - a measuring rule or standard.

1. Why do we need a canon of Scripture?

- a) So that believers in every generation might have complete revelation from God.
- b) That man might have God's Word in writing. (1 Corinthians 2:16)
- c) A need for the preservation and circulation of sacred writing in the time of oppression.
- d) That people might know what was scripture and what was not, and know how God thinks.

2. CRITERIA FOR OLD TESTAMENT CANONICITY

- a) The question of Inspiration (2 Peter 1:21) - every existing book of an acknowledged messenger of God was immediately accepted as the Word of God being commissioned by God to make known his will.
- b) The principle of Internal evidence (Deuteronomy 31:24-26, Joshua 1:8, Judges 3:4). Nehemiah 8:1-8 shows that people were taught the word of God. Daniel in captivity read (Jeremiah 25:11-12, Jeremiah 29:10) and discovered Israel had a future giving rise to (Daniel 9:2, 5, 6. Zechariah 7:12)
- c) Documentation by quotation - New Testament quotes by Jesus Christ and others declare them to be the Word of God, e.g. (Matthew 22:29, John 5:39, John 10:35)
- d) The Law of Public Official Action (Nehemiah 8:5)
- e) The Law of Cause and Effect. In this area canonicity is a recognition of what God has done in the field of communication. Passages such as (2 Kings 22:1 - 23:2 and Nehemiah 8) are not historical accounts of the ratification of the Canon but the result of the existence of the Canon.
- f) Principle of external evidence - Israel had gone down spiritually prior to the Babylonian captivity (2 Chronicles 36:11-21) During captivity the Jews realised the importance of Bible doctrine and there was a spiritual resurgence led by people like Ezra, Nehemiah, Malachi, Zerubbabel who extra biblically attested to the canon of scripture. The Old Testament canon was closed in 425 BC-

3. DIVISION OF THE OLD TESTAMENT - Three sections.

- a) Torah or Law - The Pentateuch consisting of Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers and Deuteronomy.
- b) The Nabiim or Prophets This was divided into 2. The Former and the Latter Prophets, the division being the Babylonian Captivity.
- c) The Kethubim or Writings which were further subdivided into 3 subsections -
 - i) Poetical Books - Psalms and Job.
 - ii) The Five Rolls or Megilloth books that were read at various feasts.
Song of Solomon - Passover
Ruth- Pentecost
Ecclesiastes- Tabernacles
Esther- Purim
Lamentations- Anniversary of the fall of Jerusalem in 586 BC-
 - iii) Historical Books - Daniel, Ezra, Nehemiah and Chronicles.

4. NUMBER OF OLD TESTAMENT BOOKS

The number of books in the Hebrew Old Testament was 24 compared to 39 in the English: 1st and 2nd Kings etc. are combined and many of the prophets also combined into scrolls, e.g. Matthew in the New Testament when quoting Zechariah said "As Jeremiah said" (Matthew 27:9-10) Zechariah was in the Jeremiah scroll. (Zechariah 11:12-13)

5. CLASSIFICATION OF OLD TESTAMENT CANON.

- a) Homologoumena - these are writings that were accepted and had always been accepted as canonical.

b) Antilegoumia - these were five books which were eventually accepted as canonical which were disputed in the 1st - 5th centuries AD

i) ESTHER - because the name God was not mentioned.

ii) SONG OF SOLOMON - this dealt with a love affair which the early church fathers apparently were somewhat embarrassed about and thought it non-canonical.

iii) ECCLESIASTES - where Solomon was looking at life from a human viewpoint which was not reconcilable with Judaism or Bible Doctrine.

iv) EZEKIEL - because chapters 40-48 seemed to contradict the Mosaic Law. Ezekiel 40-48 deals with annual sacrifices in the Millennium not the Levitical usage.

v) PROVERBS - because one proverb seemed to contradict another.

c) Pseudepigrapha - these were the false writings and were rejected. Such books as "The Penitence of Jannes and Jambres" "The Magic Book of Moses", are in this category.

d)

Apocrypha - these were books written after 425 BC and have been rejected as not being canonical. The Apocrypha includes 14 books which are found in the Septuagint and Vulgate but never in the Hebrew Canon. False doctrine found in the Apocrypha includes:-

i) Prayers and Offerings for the Dead. - 2 Maccabees 12:42.

ii) Suicide Justified - 2 Maccabees 14:41.

iii) Atonement by Almsgiving - Ecclesiasticus 3:32, 4:1-11.

iv) Salvation by Almsgiving - Tobit 4:11

v) Cruelty to Slaves Justified - Ecclesiasticus 33:25-9.

vi) Preexistence of souls - Wisdom of Solomon 8:19,20.

vii) Other fallacies include magical incantations, purgatory, assassination, angels having the power of intercession.

6. REJECTION OF OLD TESTAMENT APOCRYPHA

a) These books are included in the apocrypha

1 & 2 Esdras, Tobit, Judith, additions to Esther, The wisdom of Solomon, Ecclesiasticus, Baruch, The letter of Jeremiah, The prayer of Azariah, Susanna, Bel and the Dragon, The prayer of Manassah, 1 & 2 Maccabees

b) The apocrypha was never in the Hebrew Canon.

c) Neither Jesus Christ nor any of the New Testament writers ever quoted once from the Apocrypha.

d) Josephus expressly excluded them from his history of sacred scriptures.

e) No mention of the Apocrypha was made in any catalogue of canonical books in the first 4 centuries AD

f) These apocryphal books were never asserted to be divinely inspired or to possess divine authority.

g) No prophets were connected with these writings.

h) These books contained many historical, geographical and chronological errors.

i) The apocrypha teaches doctrines and upholds practices which are contrary to the canon of scripture.

7. CRITERIA FOR NEW TESTAMENT CANONICITY

a) Apostolicity - every book must either to have been written by an apostle or someone closely associated with an apostle (Mark with Peter, Luke with Paul). An early date of writing is essential prior to 100 AD

b) Reception by the Churches - must be accepted by the churches as authentic when written.

c) Constancy of Doctrine - with Old Testament scripture and Apostolic teaching.

d) Inspiration - each book must have internal and external evidence of inspiration. This was evaluated using the spiritual gift of discernment during the formation of the canon. (1 Corinthians 12:10)

e) Recognition - each must be recognised by the Church Fathers as canonical. Four councils were held - Laodicea (336 AD), Damascus (382 AD), Carthage (397 AD), Hippo (419 AD).

f) Internal - each must contain exhortation to public evaluation of the word. (Colossians 4:16, 1 Thessalonians 5:27, 1 Timothy 4:13, Revelation 1:3).

8. CLASSIFICATION OF NEW TESTAMENT CANON

a) Homologoumena - the accepted books.

b) Antilegomena - the disputed books which were eventually accepted - James, 2 Peter, 2 & 3 John, Hebrews.

c) Pseudepigrapha - the false writings - Gospel of Peter, Gospel of Thomas, Acts of Andrew etc.

d) Apocrypha - the rejected writings - Acts of Paul, Epistle of Barnabas, Shepherd of Hermes, The Revelation of the Twelve, The Revelation of Peter.

SECTION 53 - THE ABOMINATION OF DESOLATION AND CONCLUSION - Chapter 12:10-13

10 Many shall be purified, and made white, and tried; but the wicked shall do wickedly: and none of the wicked shall understand; but the wise shall understand. 11 And from the time that the daily sacrifice shall be taken away, and the abomination that maketh desolate set up, there shall be a thousand two hundred and ninety days.

12 Blessed is he that waiteth, and cometh to the thousand three hundred and five and thirty days. 13 But go thou thy way till the end be: for thou shalt rest, and stand in thy lot at the end of the days.

KEY WORDS

Many	Rab	Many
Purified	Barar	To clear or purify self.
White	Laban	To become or show oneself white
Tried	Tsaraph	To be refined, tried, purified
Wickedly	Rasha	To do wrong, Wickedly
Understand	Bin	To understand, Consider
Wise	Sakal	To cause to understand
Daily	Tamud	Continual
Sacrifice	-----	Not in the original
Taken Away	Sur	To be turned aside
Abomination	Shiqquts	Abominable, Detestable thing
Desolate	Shamem	To desolate
Set up	Nathan	To give
Thousand	Eleph	A thousand
Hundred	Meah	Hundred
Ninety	Tishim	Ninety
Days	Yamim	Days
Blessed	Ashere	Happy, Very happy
Waiteth	Chakah	To wait earnestly
Thousand	Eleph	A thousand
Three	Sheloshah	Three
Hundred	Meah	Hundred
Five	Chamishshah	Five
Thirty	Sheloshim	Thirty
Days	Yamim	Days
End	Qets	End, Extremity
Rest	Nuach	To be at rest
Stand	Amad	To stand, stand still or fast
Lot	Goral	A lot

BACKGROUND AND ANALYSIS

The contrast between two groups is now given. The time of the end will have a two fold result, it will result in the purification of the saints in the midst of trouble, but will also show very clearly the wickedness of evil man's hearts.

In addition the wise shall understand things, but the wicked will not. The believers will understand the prophecy and its implications when they "need to know", while the unbelievers will not.

Daniel is given a time of 1290 days or three years and seven lunar months from the setting up of the abomination to its complete destruction.

It is clear from Scripture that the second half of the Tribulation is 1260 days or 42 months as given in Daniel 7:25, 12:7, Revelation 11:2, 12:6, 12:14, 13:5. Yet in total, we are given a period of 1335 days in verse 12.

Why the extra month? In fact why the extra two and a half months? Relax! Don't rush off to find a book on the subject!

Daniel does not explain these different time periods, but after the return of the Lord Jesus Christ there is a time to separate the sheep and the goats as outlined in Matthew 25:31-46, and the regathering and judging of Israel. Ezekiel 20:34-38. The actual full significance of these time frames will be made known **only at that time**.

In the last verse of this book it should be noted that Daniel has a guarantee of resurrection and possessions in the kingdom.

APPLICATION

The tribulation period will be one of great contrasts. It will reflect a totally polarized society world wide. There will be no sitting on the fence. Iniquity will abound, and those who are wealthy will deceive themselves that they will survive right until the end, especially as the first 3 ½ years will have great prosperity – Anti-Christ does deliver initially.

Prophecy to the believer brings great comfort, especially in times of adversity and death. In 1 Thessalonians 4 we as believers are told not to mourn as they who have no hope.

We have a guarantee of resurrection and eternal life through Christ who bought us back to God.

The Lord Jesus Christ is coming back. We can but echo one of the final phrases from the Book of the Revelation – "Even so come quickly Lord Jesus!"

DOCTRINES

Just as world conditions just before the flood indicated judgment was overdue so conditions now show that we are at the end of the last days.

1. Preoccupation with physical appetites - Luke 17:27
2. Rapid advances in technology - Genesis 4:22
3. Grossly materialistic attitudes and interests - Luke 17:28
4. Uniformitarian attitudes and interests - Hebrews 11:7
5. Inordinate devotion to pleasure and comfort - Genesis 4:21
6. No concern for God in either belief or conduct - 2 Peter 2:5, Jude 15
7. Disregard for the sacredness of the marriage relation. - Matthew 24:38
8. Rejection of the inspired Word of God - 1 Peter 3:19
9. Population explosion - Genesis 6:1,11
10. Widespread violence - Genesis 6:11, 13
11. Corruption throughout society - Genesis 6:12
12. Preoccupation with illicit sex activity - Genesis 4:19; 6:2
13. Widespread words and thoughts of blasphemy - Jude 15
14. Organised Satanic activity - Genesis 6:1-4
15. Promotion of systems and movements of abnormal depravity - Genesis 6:5, 12

ETERNAL SECURITY

1. When a person truly trusts Jesus Christ for salvation, he is saved forever. He cannot lose his salvation.
2. POSITIONAL APPROACH (Romans 8:38-39)
We are united with Christ ("in Christ"). Absolutely nothing can separate us from the love of God which is in Christ.
3. LOGICAL APPROACH (Romans 8:32, Romans 5)
As unbelievers we are enemies of God (Romans 5), as believers we are his children. If he did the most for his enemies what will he do for his children? This excludes loss of salvation for he saved us while we were his enemies.
4. GOD'S HANDS APPROACH (John 10:28, Psalm 37:24)
Neither shall anyone seize them out of my hand. God is all powerful.
5. EXPERIENTIAL APPROACH (2 Timothy 2:12-13)
If we deny Christ He is going to deny us rewards (context=suffering and rewards). If we renounce Him, HE REMAINS FAITHFUL. The believer is in Christ and Christ indwells the believer. He cannot deny Himself.
6. THE FAMILY APPROACH (Galatians 3:26, John 1:12)
When you believe in Christ you are born again as a child of God. You cannot be unborn, once a child always a child.
7. THE INHERITANCE APPROACH (1 Peter 1:4-5)
We have an inheritance incorruptible, undefiled which fadeth not away, reserved in heaven for us who are kept by the power of God. Perfect tense - it will always be reserved, since it is kept by God, not us.
8. THE SOVEREIGNTY APPROACH (2 Peter 3:9, Jude 24)
He is not willing that any should perish - refers to the whole human race (2 Peter 3:9) Now unto him who is able to keep you from falling (from perishing). Once you are saved, it is His will that you don't perish.
9. THE BODY APPROACH (1 Corinthians 12:21, Colossians 1:18)
Christ is the head, we are the members of the body. If any are lost, the body of Christ is incomplete.

10. THE GREEK TENSE APPROACH (Ephesians 2:8-9)

"For by Grace are ye saved". Perfect tense of the verb "sozo". For by Grace have you been saved in the past so that you go on being saved forever.

11. THE SEALING MINISTRY OF THE HOLY SPIRIT APPROACH (2 Corinthians 1:22, Ephesians 1:13, 4:30)

In the ancient world the seal was a guarantee for protection. The indwelling of the Holy Spirit guarantees our security.

ETERNITY PAST AND ETERNITY FUTURE

1. In eternity past

- a) The Father, Son and Holy Spirit existed in eternity past. (John 1:1 -2; 17:5,24).
- b) God allowed sin to come into the world, to be eliminated forever after human history. (Heb 9:26).
- c) the Son of God agreed to come to earth as a human being to destroy the works of the devil. (1 John 3:8).
- d) it was ordained that Christ would be slain for the ungodly. (1 Peter 1:18-20 Heb 10:5-10).
- e) the world and stars were created by Jesus Christ (Hob 1:10; Col 1:16).
- f) believers were chosen in Christ (Eph 1:4). Christ is chosen, we share as believers his election.
- g) a book was written containing the names of those who would believe. (Phil 4:3; Rev 17:8; 20:15).

2. In eternity future

- a) God reveals to us exceeding riches of His grace (Eph 2:7).
- b) God brings many sons into glory (Heb 2:10).
- c) believers enjoy an inheritance. (1 Peter 1:4)
- d) it is God's purpose for the church to know the manifold wisdom of God. (Eph 3:10).
- e) all former things pass away. There will be no more death, sorrow, pain, crying, sea, night or sun. (Rev 21:1-5,23).
- f) the curse will be lifted. (Rev 22:3).
- g) all things in heaven and earth will be gathered in Him. (Eph 1:10).
- h) the present creation will be forgotten (Isa 65:17).
- i) a river of water of life will run (Rev 22:1).
- j) the tree of life will be seen again. (Rev 22:2).
- k) The Son of God will rule eternally. (Dan 2:44; 7:13,14)
- l) He will still be subject to the Father. (John 10:29; 1 Cor 15:28).
- m) the lake of fire will continue forever (Isa 66:24; Rev 14:11).

DOCTRINE INDEX

DOCTRINE	PAGE
Abomination of Desolation	141
Alexander – One Worldism	140
Angel	144
Angelic Conflict	173
Angel of Jehovah	64
Anger	33
Antichrist – World Ruler	126
Anti-Semitism	59
Apostasy	89
Attitude	62
Belshazzar – Decadence	86
Bible: Canonicity	203
Bible: Inerrancy	49
Bible: Inspiration	49
Blessing	82
Books in the Bible	198
Christian Life	92
Christ: Second Advent	129
Confession of Sin	154
Covenants	155
Cyrus – Persian Shepherd	46
Daniel – Dedication	21
Death	101
Demons	144
Destiny of Believers	199
Education and Learning	17
Eternal Security	207
Eternity Past, Eternity Future	207
Evangelism	70
Evangelism – New Testament Pattern	71
Faithfulness of God	115
Fasting	113
Footstool	128
God Cares For You	110
God: Character of God	40
Government: National	45
Happiness	76
Heathenism and God Consciousness	29
Herod – Power Complex	123
Holy Spirit: Ministry in the New Testament	72
Holy Spirit: Ministry in the Old Testament	73
Holy Spirit Operation	72

DOCTRINE	PAGE
Idolatry	57
Jealousy	59
Jeremiah – God’s Messenger	154
Jerusalem	16
Judgment: Great White Throne	99
Judgment Seat of Christ	99
Kingdom – Millennial Kingdom	50
Last Days: Characteristics of the Last Days	206
Laws in the New Testament	106
Light	158
Maturity	169
Maturity: Cross to the Crown	169
Maturity – Signs of Maturity (Romans 15:1-15)	170
Mercy	40
Music	56
Nations and Races	183
Nebuchadnezzar – Pride	15
Not of This World	21
Obedience	96
Peace	176
Prayer	34
Prophecy: Fulfilled Prophecy Proof of Inspiration	191
Prophetic Analogy of Daniel 3	50
Religion	53
Resurrection	199
Revival	188
Revolution	140
Rewards and Crowns	201
Rock	49
Separation	24
Shekinah Glory	157
Signs	72
Sin	101
Spiritual Dynamic Mental Attitude	62
Stability	109
Trees	79
Tribulation in Matthew 24	196
Tribulation: Signs	195
Trinity	158
Unbeliever	201
Vegetarianism	25
Women	91
Worship and Praise	66

EZEKIEL CHAPTER 38**VERSES 1 – 13**

“1. And the word of the LORD came unto me, saying, 2 Son of man, set thy face against Gog, the land of Magog, the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal, and prophesy against him, 3 And say, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I am against thee, O Gog, the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal: 4 And I will turn thee back, and put hooks into thy jaws, and I will bring thee forth, and all thine army, horses and horsemen, all of them clothed with all sorts of armour, even a great company with bucklers and shields, all of them handling swords: 5 Persia, Ethiopia, and Libya with them; all of them with shield and helmet: 6 Gomer, and all his bands; the house of Togarmah of the north quarters, and all his bands: and many people with thee. 7 Be thou prepared, and prepare for thyself, thou, and all thy company that are assembled unto thee, and be thou a guard unto them. 8 After many days thou shalt be visited: in the latter years thou shalt come into the land that is brought back from the sword, and is gathered out of many people, against the mountains of Israel, which have been always waste: but it is brought forth out of the nations, and they shall dwell safely all of them. 9 Thou shalt ascend and come like a storm, thou shalt be like a cloud to cover the land, thou, and all thy bands, and many people with thee. 10 Thus saith the Lord GOD; It shall also come to pass, that at the same time shall things come into thy mind, and thou shalt think an evil thought: 11 And thou shalt say, I will go up to the land of unwalled villages; I will go to them that are at rest, that dwell safely, all of them dwelling without walls, and having neither bars nor gates, 12 To take a spoil, and to take a prey; to turn thine hand upon the desolate places that are now inhabited, and upon the people that are gathered out of the nations, which have gotten cattle and goods, that dwell in the midst of the land. 13 Sheba, and Dedan, and the merchants of Tarshish, with all the young lions thereof, shall say unto thee, Art thou come to take a spoil? hast thou gathered thy company to take a prey? to carry away silver and gold, to take away cattle and goods, to take a great spoil?”

REFLECTION

1. And the word of the LORD came unto me, saying, 2 Son of man, set thy face against Gog, the land of Magog, the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal, and prophesy against him, 3 And say, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I am against thee, O Gog, the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal:

This appears to be an abrupt shift in the prophetic flow, from Israel's future destiny to suddenly mention strange peoples who attack Israel, but it is in direct relation to the previous chapter, as it describes one of the final assaults upon God's people Israel, after their restoration as an unsaved nation, before their spiritual revival, and before the Second Advent of the Lord. Some argue this will occur at the end of the Millennial Kingdom but that makes no sense at all in light of its proximity to chapter 37 and the time to burn the weapons. Logic indicates that it will occur at some point before the Great Tribulation, and be a part of preparing the way for that time. We face here a great attack upon God's plan and God's people; not the worst attack, but one that we believe prefigures the worst, and sets the stage finally for it.

On mature reflection, having completed commentaries on all the books of the Bible, and now in my sixties, having studied ancient history for over forty years, I believe that this chapter applies to the years just before the Great Tribulation period, when a group of nations try to destroy the unbelieving modern state of Israel – Ezekiel 37, (and the surrounding Arab nations) and are frustrated in so doing. It is the aftermath of this attack, as described by Ezekiel here, that makes me believe it must occur before the days of the Great Tribulation and set the stage for the Tribulation Temple to be built alongside the two mosques, or their ruins, as they are also rebuilt. I believe the events described in these two chapters set in place all the last pieces on the stage for the end game of the Anti-Christ.

The nations of this penultimate great rebellion against God's plan are more numerous and murderous than those who have assaulted Israel at any earlier point in her history. What is described here has most certainly not occurred to this point in history as I edit this again in late 2020. Also, at the time of Ezekiel around 560 BC, some of these people groups would only have just heard of Israel due to their involvement in the armies of Nebuchadnezzar, but they play a minor part then. For the others mentioned here it was a “far, far away” place of no real significance to them. These two chapters were not fulfilled in any way by the invasions of 605, 597, 586 BC, nor have they been by anything since in history.

This great campaign will occur at a time when hatred for Israel is at an all time high amongst the States/People Groups that join this assault upon the land of Israel. This is a prophetic vision of Ezekiel that makes the hairs on my neck stand up in 2013-2022 as I write/re-write these words. Nebuchadnezzar was a Shemite, who used these Japhetic (Scythian) people as part of his army to destroy Jerusalem, but this invasion described by Ezekiel is totally Japhetic and they are fighting the sons of Shem, and are destroyed by the time they have some units arrive at/outside Jerusalem.

Let us look at the nations/people groups that gather to fight against the people of Israel, and the Lord in these last momentous days, declaring war on the Plan of God laid down from Genesis, and actually declaring war on the King of all kings, and the true Lord of all lords. The first mentioned and apparent leaders of the “rebellion” (it is a war – but more it is an active and malicious rebellion against the true plan of God) are the ruler(s) of the southern states of the old Soviet Empire. The official leader is called “Gog”, from the land of Magog. Genesis 10:2. This may be a Russian or Ukrainian leader, but he works to weld together an alliance that involves all the older Scythian-Parthian peoples in a hate filled invasion of the Middle East. The passage below tells us that it is driven by simple lust for goods, money and hatred.

It is distracting at this distance in time to try to be too specific in the identification of people and places here, but the names are Scythian in origin and that gives us the major clue we need to interpret this. The people groups involved are descendants of the Japhetic Line (Indo-European people group) of the Scythians, not of the Shemite line from which the Arabs and Jews descend. It is an "end time" attack upon the line of Shem, and an attack upon the very plan of God by evil north-eastern men of Japheth, and it will be destroyed by God. God's Plan calls, from the very beginning of the post-flood civilization, for the blessing and power of Japheth to be only "in the tents of Shem". Genesis 9:27. The power of the Indo-European peoples is only as they worship in the manner/revelation given to the sons of Shem (the Holy Scriptures). This invasion is led by people who reject this biblical direction.

These names appear to refer to the descendants of the Scythian peoples who inhabited the lands from the Carpathian Mountains in the West, through the Ukraine, lower Russian Steppes to the Hindu Kush - Tien Shan Mountains of China along the borders of Iraq, Iran and Afghanistan. The next group is made up of Rosh, Meshech and Tubal. These also appear to refer to the people of the old Scythian areas (Moschi/Muschki and Tibareni of the Romans) who dwelt in the region of the Taurus Mountains and north of the Black Sea. These regions are mixed Sunni-Shiite Moslem today, and it may be that what Ezekiel sees is the attempt by these States to join together with "radical" and other hate filled recruits from other areas and gain renown/fame by attacking Israel, but as we will see below, not only Israel. We will note that these people groups/nations are "drawn" by invisible forces to attack; their attack is not a logical thing to do at all!

Do an internet search of these names but be careful of the anti-Christian/Biblical bias of Wikipedia (which will edit out any Christian comments, including all that do not down-grade trust in the historicity of the Holy Scripture and mock Daniel and Ezekiel). The past and present Moslem clerics of this old Scythian area have many "Hadiths" (commentaries, prophetic words, teachings) on Magog and Gog also. These dominantly northern commentators and prophetic voices of Islam, combine discussion of the two names with end times, with Jesus, a beast/smoking evil figure from the West, and the end of the Hajj and worship at the Kaaba.

Many of these Hadiths are Shiite, but some are Sunni, and often details are confused, but some may record the alternative to Ezekiel's words, and some were certainly quoted by the ISIS group, who believed they were called to fulfil them, and end the Hajj and Kaaba worship (as they as extremists see it). These radicals still believe they will destroy the corrupt Sunni Moslem states, and kill all Sunni/Shiite who oppose them, all Jews and Christians, but then be delivered by Jesus! This sort of evil mix of minimum truth and maximum falsity is to be expected from any alternative commentary on a prophetic word that is as significant as Ezekiel's words are here. Do not spend too much time making sense of these Hadiths, as they may not make sense at all, except as a clue to the importance of Ezekiel 37-39! Satan doesn't waste his time producing alternative "scripture commentary" unless its important. This is also why Daniel is so attacked.

What we read in these two chapters, occurs after the "dry bones" of the state of Israel (Ezekiel 37) is established in unbelief and awaits the breath of the Holy Spirit to bring back spiritual life to them. Zechariah 12:10ff, 13:1ff. The placement of this prophetic vision by Ezekiel is of great significance, and its perversion by the Sunni Al Queda and ISIS people is the clue to its importance. Liberal/unbelieving commentators argue it is a late addition, but that simply betrays their unbelieving bias. It is significant that some of the prophetic statements of the false Hadiths relating to Gog/Magog identify the destruction of areas in Syria and Saudi Arabia, battles from Yemen to the Mediterranean Sea, and the climax of it all on the mountains of Israel, at the very mountains of Jerusalem, before the war ends in "fire and smoke" with the destruction of the forces of Gog and Magog (although the Hadiths see the end of all Jews and Christians and others...).

The Lord makes it clear here in Ezekiel that he is personally against these named people group's plans, and all they stand for in their rejection of his Word and his will. Those who stand against the Lord, and that means also against all the Sons of Abraham, will not stand! This prophecy will be an important one, as all people face these specific battles (and tactical nuclear weapon exchanges) in the days leading up to the Great Tribulation period. This prophetic word from Ezekiel tells us that we will see tactical nuclear warfare and possibly millions killed in the Middle East as a result of Iranian Clerical evil and foolish Scythian People Group, and other's plans. All those preaching lies and deceit today will be exposed as fools and fantasists, but those who read, believe and apply Ezekiel, Zechariah, and the other prophets, will demonstrate that God's Plan is indeed being worked out in spite of the murderous malice of evil and stupid men.

It will be a significant piece of biblical evidence for the accuracy of biblical prophecy, and the Lord's intervention in the affairs of men, and all people will see that the Bible alone provides full knowledge of the biblical truth concerning this world's final end! What happens during this great attack upon Israel (and the Arab States – all the "sons of Abraham") is that the teaching of the biblical prophetic books receives significant evidence of its vital importance.

4. And I will turn thee back, and put hooks into thy jaws, and I will bring thee forth, and all thine army, horses and horsemen, all of them clothed with all sorts of armour, even a great company with bucklers and shields, all of them handling swords:

These people are almost "drawn forward" into their evil by the Lord. How can this be, and these people still be free, and yet the Lord be just in condemning them? The answer comes when we remember the concept of the "hardening of the heart". Pharaoh had his heart "hardened" by God during the days leading up to the Exodus, so that he would not let the children of Israel go. He was "hardened" into his deepest resolve, and had to show his full malice and be judged in it.

As a result of this, the Pharaoh opened the door for total judgment upon the land of Egypt, and all the gods of Egypt were judged through the plagues that occurred. What then does this phrase mean? How can people who are "drawn by

hooks”, or “hardened in their hearts” still be free? The answer comes as we focus on the meaning here of the words involved. Refer to the BTB studies on GOD – DIVINE INSTITUTIONS – FREE WILL, and also HEART.

To harden a wet washing towel and thereby squeeze all the water out of it, you twist it, or wring it out. In this process the soft cotton towel becomes hard and all the water that is in it is wrung out. This is the concept of “hardening the heart”; God puts enough pressure on the person so that what is really within them is “wrung out” of them. It is the process whereby the true thoughts, intents, feeling and malice is forced to be disclosed by the Lord. No excuses, and no escape!

Pharaoh hated Israel and God, and so by Moses and Aaron’s words he was forced to really confront his true feelings and his desired decision making. He was not allowed by the Lord to be hypocritically polite, and just do the right thing for appearances sake, but he was forced to really disclose his true attitudes and intentions. This becomes clear when he pursues after the Israelites determined to kill them all. Exodus 14. Refer to BTB study of PHARAOH – GODS POWER.

The same process occurs with the hate filled peoples of the places described and the period of time we face here. It would be easy for them to keep “play acting” religious tolerance and diplomacy, but the Lord does not give them that option; they must disclose themselves and openly proclaim their true feelings and the extent of their evil malice. They are “drawn out” to rebel against God’s Word and God’s Plan and so disclose the true desires of their hearts. The “nut bars” of the extremist world join with them to fully express their hatred of Israel and the wealthy Arab States, and so they are also judged in their evil. It is a rebellion against God that clears away a great deal of extremist evil in one sweep, but through great suffering in the Middle East. From the Houthis, Somalis, to Lybia, and to the far north; all are judged.

The attackers are free agents, who then fully disclose the truth of their malicious evil, just as for years they have been free to hide their true feelings, but that freedom is now over, and they must disclose their heart’s true contents, for only those who love the Lord find any eternal or temporal spiritual blessing. As the days draw closer to the Great Tribulation all mankind is forced to take sides regarding the blessings flowing from Abraham, the truth of the Holy Scriptures, and the true identity of Jesus. We see this process seriously beginning with the questions raised by the Covid-19 crisis.

5. Persia, Ethiopia, and Libya with them; all of them with shield and helmet: 6. Gomer, and all his bands; the house of Togamah of the north quarters, and all his bands: and many people with thee. 7. Be thou prepared, and prepare for thyself, thou, and all thy company that are assembled unto thee, and be thou a guard unto them.

There are more nations that join the rebels, trying to attack Israel from all directions simultaneously. Such a concerted attack requires great arrogance, and long incubation of hatred. This tells us that the rebels have had to consciously decide to hate the Lord, and act against him and his people over considerable time. The nations here are a varied group. From the North-East come the Persians, and from the west the Libyans (or from the south-east the Yemenis/Houthis – the word here may indicate Yemen rather than Libya), and from the far south the hate filled war lords of Moslem Ethiopia/Somalia. They are all there as part of the great unholy alliance of the people groups who have hated the people of Israel, indeed all the sons of Abraham, and all their hatred and lust for plunder is focused in this venture.

Gomer is the Cimmerian peoples, and the house of Togamah, the people around Armenia; these people groups live in the north, and to the north of what is now Turkey and are close by the others mentioned above. The Lord warns them that they had better be well prepared for what they will face. The warning is deeply sinister, for their preparation needs to be to guard themselves, from themselves, for they are not united, as the satanically motivated are always self-centred and narcissistic, and so they don’t form good “team work”, but each fight for their own ends, and so are self destructive.

They are without excuse before God, for the Lord warns them that all they purpose will implode, and they will all die in the midst of their evils. Such a gracious and bluntly serious warning will fall on deaf ears, for they are determined, but have no hope of victory at all, for they are fighting against God in fighting against Israel and the Sunni Arab States in a way that has been prophesied so clearly. The “sons of Abraham” will win – God’s Word says it – “It is Written”. The precision of the words below will shock and amaze, and when the battles foretold unfold as predicted 2500 years before, all who have open hearts and clear thinking minds towards the Scriptures will be on their knees praying to the God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, through whom came Jesus/Isa/Y’Shua as Saviour, King and Lord of all.

8. After many days thou shalt be visited: in the latter years thou shalt come into the land that is brought back from the sword, and is gathered out of many people, against the mountains of Israel, which have been always waste: but it is brought forth out of the nations, and they shall dwell safely all of them. 9. Thou shalt ascend and come like a storm, thou shalt be like a cloud to cover the land, thou, and all thy bands, and many people with thee.

Verse eight reminds us that the hatred of Gog has been a long time in the making, and they have had ample opportunity to turn away to another course and repent of their evil. They have had the chance to worship the Lord their God, but have failed to so do. It is of note that these southern “Stans” of the old USSR have been the recipients of extensive evangelism by evangelical Christians since the collapse of the old USSR in the early 1990s. They will in these latter years of history launch their attack onto the ancient “mountains of Israel”, and they will try to do what so many have done before them, and they will lay the land waste. These mountains are also always “waste land”, very rocky, and very easy to defend as a result. This is not an “easy campaign” for the attacking troops, even though the Arabs and Israelis may not be 100% prepared for the numbers that assault them in this attack.

At this time the Jewish people are living in apparent peace; after many years of warfare they have found some level of rest in the land, and the evil leader Gog tries to disturb this peace. It is the peace of God, and so Gog is in for a shock (although they will read these words and feel smug and secure in their lies and self deceit, just as all rebels against God have felt through the centuries).

They will come up like a storm, with speed that is as fast as a violent storm approaching the land. They will be a vast host, for in numbers they deceive themselves into believing they will be victorious. They think that by sheer weight of numbers they will overwhelm what the mechanized Arab armies have failed to do in every war since 1948. The Arabs stand with Israel for this battle, and they fight together from this point to the end of the tribulation also.

10. Thus saith the Lord GOD; It shall also come to pass, that at the same time shall things come into thy mind, and thou shalt think an evil thought: 11. And thou shalt say, I will go up to the land of unwalled villages; I will go to them that are at rest, that dwell safely, all of them dwelling without walls, and having neither bars nor gates,

At least two thousand six hundred years in advance, the Lord tells the evil armies of this still future day, that they will think an evil thought at this time, and their thought will be to kill all those who live in apparent peace and security in the unwalled, and apparently undefended villages of the land of Israel. After many years of relative safety, the people dwell in a security that is untroubled by thoughts of such levels of extreme violence, but also the words here indicate the defences of the land of Israel are there. The majority of people are peaceful and do not think that anyone will do what these evil people from the named nations try to do. While most do not think this attack possible, they are ready to resist.

The evil men think in terms of lust for goods, and genocidal malice towards Arabs and Israelis, but their hatred is misplaced and their intentions known well in advance, and the Lord has already thwarted their plans. Most observers will be surprised at the sheer malicious power of this attack, but the defences of Israeli are not in walls and gates, but in secret strategies and hidden and deep defences, and they will hold. The enemy don't think the Israelis are prepared, but they are, and the hidden and deep defences are strong, and the tactical nuclear counter-plans are well laid and executed in the end to defend the Jewish people and the surrounding Arabs, who also are on the receiving end of this assault.

12. To take a spoil, and to take a prey; to turn thine hand upon the desolate places that are now inhabited, and upon the people that are gathered out of the nations, which have gotten cattle and goods, that dwell in the midst of the land. 13. Sheba, and Dedan, and the merchants of Tarshish, with all the young lions thereof, shall say unto thee, Art thou come to take a spoil? hast thou gathered thy company to take a prey? to carry away silver and gold, to take away cattle and goods, to take a great spoil?

What foolishness and what evil; to think that these lust filled forces can invade the lands of the Arabs and the land of Israel and seize their goods and make their people slaves and actually get away with it! Man's self centred evil is the heart of rebellion against the plan of God, and satanic over-estimation has always been a hallmark of evil plans since the beginning of time. Prosperity is not a cause of holiness, nor is peace and security the cause of goodness. Many today argue that if the world was a financially better place then the world would be a peaceful place. They argue that if there was peace and prosperity for all then there would be no crime and evil.

Even in today's world we can see that such a statement is a terrible and devious lie. In my own country a week does not go by when I do not read in my newspaper of a millionaire being charged with theft or immorality, or violent crime. Most criminals are not poor people, but wealthy, and with their satanic self centred malice desire more and more. Wealthy people persecute the poor, and rob from their own business partners, and fraudulently steal from their government and their own families, and in their narcissism don't think they will be caught. **Proverbs 6:16-22, James 2:1-7, 4:1-4, 5:1-6.**

Sadly all the nations listed by Ezekiel here are nations that are poor due to their religious and politically corrupt systems. They are locked in the past, living in a primitive manner in the midst of the modern world, and their satanic sense of "entitlement" means they act as if they can invade other nations as their ancestors did several hundred years ago. While the attackers are all backward looking Shiite and even radical Sunni Moslem people groups, many of the more modern Moslem countries **do not join** the evil invaders, and we will note that below, for they will actually support and fight with Israel in that day.

Nothing changes in the Old Sin Nature of men and women, and all the wealth and prosperity that is possible to receive, does not change it. When the past American president, Bill Clinton, was asked why he had some form of sex with an intern on his staff, he initially lied, but when he finally was honest, he gave good insight into why the wealthy and most powerful man in the world would do such a foolish and evil thing. He said, "I did it because I could!" This is what the evil men of this day do and what they have always done. Evil is defined as "I" trouble – it is narcissistic self centeredness. **Isaiah 14:12-15, Ezekiel 28:2-19.** Evil distorts logical thinking, creating tunnel vision that excludes reality – they will fail.

This is an evil at the heart of us all, and the filling of the Holy Spirit alone keeps us from such self centred evil and sin. We are to be wary of temptations, and never feel superior to them, but walk humbly and quietly before our God. **1 Corinthians 10:12, 1 Timothy 3:6-7, James 5:12.** In this evil day, as the evil men, the rebels against God's Plan, determine to advance and commit evil, the other people groups from the Japhetic lines stand up and oppose them.

The Bible believing merchants from the western nations who all trade with the Arabs and Israel, even from far away nations, will all challenge them, and will ask them why they do such an evil thing, to believe that they can get away with this? It is so dumb and preposterous a plan that it will catch some by surprise, for none want to believe such an

enterprise could happen in “modern days”. These dominantly Shiite invaders of the mainly Sunni Middle East are foolishly arrogant and do not see the whirlwind they reap until too late for their armies. I had initially thought it was a Shiite-Sunni divide, but the Middle East and the different people groups are not that simple; it is a mixed group of attackers, driven by lust and hatred. It is possibly an invasion that is used by God to sort out those Moslems driven by emotion and malice, and those with intelligent faith based thinking, preparing the survivors for tribulational days, who may then be led to saving faith! These events are a “curtain raiser” for the Tribulation period, preparing many for the salvation decision they will need to take then.

Notice the nations that do not join in with the invaders, who argue with them, and then fight against them. Sheba, Dedan, and the “merchants of Tarshish”, all oppose the invasion, and their “young lions” (soldiers) oppose them actively. The “merchants” may be the NATO/European Union trading bloc that actively opposes them, and applies a trade ban on the invaders. Tarshish was a way of describing Western Europe in Ezekiel’s day, as the nations of the far West before arriving at the Atlantic Ocean. The indication is that they do far more than just institute a trade ban; they send armies.

Sheba and Dedan are names that incorporate all the nations/tribes of the Northern Arabian Peninsula. This is intriguing, as they side with Israel against these other predominantly Shiite Moslem States. This includes Saudi Arabia, the United Arab Emirates and other Gulf States, Jordan, and possibly may include parts of Syria, although probably does not include the Yemeni States and Aden, as these appear to be listed with the Somalis as part of the enemy forces. The battle lines are dominantly Shiite versus Sunni/Israeli in nature, although remember in the Moslem world nothing is as simple as this for longer than a few months. This makes sense after 9-11-2020 – the “Abraham Accords”.

PASTORAL APPLICATION

1. **ECONOMIC POVERTY OR PROSPERITY DOES NOT MAKE PERFECT CHARACTER.** People are not changed for good/bad by their finances or environment, but by their righteous relationship with the Lord God alone, and their obedience to the Holy Spirit alone. The “fruit” of their lives proves the source of their inner power. **Galatians 5:12-26.** Obedience to the commands of Jesus is required of all the servants of the Lord, and if we resent the Lord’s righteous demands we will pay a terrible price for our foolishness. **John 15:1-17.**

2. **THE TEST OF SPACE-TIME IS VOLITION; WHAT WILL EACH PERSON DO IN THEIR RELATIONSHIP WITH THE CREATOR AND SAVIOUR?** The Lord seeks for our response to his character and work, and right until the end of our brief journey through space-time he asks us to confront our sin, bring it before him, and to serve him in the beauty of holiness. Our choices determine our outcomes in this life and the next; temptations are to be faced and beaten until the end of our journey – careful – as we cannot be sure that any “mistake” might not be a “fatal error”.

3. **THE PRESENT MOSLEM WORLD WILL SPLIT INTO TWO WARRING CAMPS, AND THE ARABS WILL SUPPORT THEIR BRETHREN IN ABRAHAM, ISRAEL, IN THE END.** Do not be caught as a pastor of God’s Word preaching against the Arab sons of Abraham, for they will stand with Israel at this great time of testing and carnage. They also are blessed in their father Abraham, all receiving the promises of Genesis 12-14, as all his sons were “in his loins” at that point. Preach the truths of the Word to the Arab world, for we have God’s Word on it, the Arab Sunni nations will support Israel and many amongst them will come to faith. Remember that God’s Word is more real than today’s newspaper, and is to be believed against presently seen evidence. September 2020 (9-11 “The Abraham Accords”) saw the open recognition of a treaty between UAE and Israel, with the other Sunni States to join in public announcements later – Iran is seen by all as the threat. Ezekiel gives a glimpse of things to come, and so as teachers of the Word, let us rejoice in this truth, and be part of the path of history that leads to victory in Jesus as Saviour and Lord of all.

EZEKIEL 38:14 – 23

“14. Therefore, son of man, prophesy and say unto Gog, Thus saith the Lord GOD; In that day when my people of Israel dwelleth safely, shalt thou not know it? 15 And thou shalt come from thy place out of the north parts, thou, and many people with thee, all of them riding upon horses, a great company, and a mighty army: 16 And thou shalt come up against my people of Israel, as a cloud to cover the land; it shall be in the latter days, and I will bring thee against my land, that the heathen may know me, when I shall be sanctified in thee, O Gog, before their eyes. 17 Thus saith the Lord GOD; Art thou he of whom I have spoken in old time by my servants the prophets of Israel, which prophesied in those days many years that I would bring thee against them? 18 And it shall come to pass at the same time when Gog shall come against the land of Israel, saith the Lord GOD, that my fury shall come up in my face. 19 For in my jealousy and in the fire of my wrath have I spoken, Surely in that day there shall be a great shaking in the land of Israel; 20 So that the fishes of the sea, and the fowls of the heaven, and the beasts of the field, and all creeping things that creep upon the earth, and all the men that are upon the face of the earth, shall shake at my presence, and the mountains shall be thrown down, and the steep places shall fall, and every wall shall fall to the ground. 21 And I will call for a sword against him throughout all my mountains, saith the Lord GOD: every man’s sword shall be against his brother. 22 And I will plead against him with pestilence and with blood; and I will rain upon him, and upon his bands, and upon the many people that are with him, an overflowing rain, and great hailstones, fire, and brimstone. 23 Thus will I magnify myself, and sanctify myself; and I will be known in the eyes of many nations, and they shall know that I am the LORD.”

REFLECTION

14. Therefore, son of man, prophesy and say unto Gog, Thus saith the Lord GOD; In that day when my people of Israel dwelleth safely, shalt thou not know it? 15. And thou shalt come from thy place out of the north parts, thou, and many people with thee, all of them riding upon horses, a great company, and a mighty army:

Having seen the full extent of the evil of the Gog led invasion, the prophet is given the message to announce to them. Now pause a moment and reflect; this possibly is only a few years away as I revise these things in 2013 through 2022, for it occurs before the Great Tribulation and Millennium, yet Ezekiel, 2600 years at least before it, is given the message to address to the attackers. God's grace is seen in this, and the certainty of his plan being victorious is to be proclaimed loudly. God in grace seeks for these people to be saved, even though most will die in their freely chosen evil path of theft and murder. **2 Peter 3:9.**

Remember that the evangelism of these backward mixed Sunni and Shiite areas has been extensive in recent years through cable television networks, and this evil invasion is clearly going to lead to the salvation of many, for the Lord's "Word does not return to Him void". **Isaiah 55:11.** The invitation to join this invasion is given by its leaders to all the people groups of the area, and some join but others heed the Word of Word and pull back from involvement. Those joining it mostly die, and those who pull back live. We are called by all means at our disposal to warn these people groups of this great evil that they will be invited to join.

This is the Lord's reminder that his eternal plan is the correct one, and he alone determines who will win and who will lose, and it is all in relationship with the volition of individuals towards God. These people think they are numerous and powerful, yet the prophet of 2600 years before condemns them! Do you see the power of this? This is a reflection of the Holy Character and Plan of God, both his sovereignty, but also his mercy and love, for to warn such people for so long indicates just how many barriers of love and truth they must break to rebel against his Word and reject his Plan in such a way as they do. They will all stand, without exception or excuse, before the throne of God. **Revelation 20:11-15.**

16. And thou shalt come up against my people of Israel, as a cloud to cover the land; it shall be in the latter days, and I will bring thee against my land, that the heathen may know me, when I shall be sanctified in thee, O Gog, before their eyes.

They will actually launch their attack upon the people of Israel and upon the land of the Lord God, and the time is referred to as "the latter days" – the days just before the Tribulation period, possibly only a few years before. They will come as a vast multitude against the Arab lands and Israel, murdering all those they resent as they advance. These people hate Israel, but they also hate the wealthy, successful, and modern Arabs also; it is sheer satanic malice that drives them. Their satanic malice brings together the sons of Abraham in unity to fight for the first time since his days.

The Arab peoples targeted on the way to Jerusalem are also the sons of Abraham, and so they also come under God's care through Abraham, and so when the Arabian nations support Israel, they enter the covering of the Lord's protection. The Abraham promise of protection and blessing applies to the Arabs and the Jews, for all of them (Ishmael, Isaac, and the sons of Keturah) are all "in the Loins of Abraham" when the initial promises are made. **Genesis 12:2-3, 12:7-9, 13:14-17, 15:1-7.** Remember what liberals despise and stand against – God will keep His Word to Abraham!

The Lord gives the attackers no option but to express their hatred of Him and his people in open war. They are denied their use of hypocrisy and double talk any longer, they must launch their attack, and instead of repentance, they sweep towards and over the ancient borders of the land of Israel. Remember these borders are the ancient ones, not the modern ones, and so vast areas of Jordan, Syria and the Lebanon are involved in the fighting.

They try to destroy the Jewish people, who they resent, and the wealthy and modern Arabs who they also hate, but the Lord God will be sanctified through their evil! They will see the Lord's glory, and the entire world of non-Jewish/Arab people will see that God is Lord, and the "heathen" rebels will surely know the judgment of God upon them. The evil men look around and see their mighty army, and know others are gathering to resist them, but they believe they have enough of a "head start", and so having little time before the arrival of the western forces, they move in malicious and murderous haste.

The evil men see their vast numbers and trust their malice and power, but they do not look up and remember that they fight against the Creator of the Universe and author of the Plan from eternity past. The Lord blessed Abraham and his descendants and any fool that forgets this is doomed. The Lord will use this invasion to glorify his holy name and sift the evil of the nations, making it harder for the Anti-Christ in the days that follow, for many of his would be allies are dead or thoroughly disillusioned and later accept the Lord Jesus Christ.

God is Alpha and Omega, the Beginning and the End, and He will make an end of their plans and schemes and all mankind will draw breath and see that God is indeed powerful. This is the last great demonstration of God's power and plan openly before the Anti-Christ reveals himself to deceive the evil remnant of mankind later.

17. Thus saith the Lord GOD; Art thou he of whom I have spoken in old time by my servants the prophets of Israel, which prophesied in those days many years that I would bring thee against them? 18. And it shall come to pass at the same time when Gog shall come against the land of Israel, saith the Lord GOD, that my fury shall come up in my face.

The Lord will at that time refer back to these days of Ezekiel and remind Gog and his host that he had moved the prophet 2600 years before to proclaim their fate. All Moslems honour Ezekiel and so to assault the land in this invasion is to despise both the prophet and God who gave him this message! He assures them that their fate is sealed in their invasion, as is the fate of all who rebel against the will of the Lord their God and assault his people at any time in history.

As the Arab world says, "It is written" – there is no hope for these evil people, for the Plan of God has been revealed by Ezekiel and they will lose; it is certain, because God said it! There is no hiding and no escape from the judgment of God, for He is the one who made the universe and all that there is in it. God knows the end from the beginning all all points between – Satan doesn't, and in his arrogance he deceives himself and his followers.

All the prophets record the Lord's judgment, but this invasion will reap a terrible judgment for those who attack, but will also be used to set all the pieces in order for the final act of man's evil, the Great Tribulation itself! Gog is but another pale imitation of the Anti-Christ to come, and both will be crushed by God, for they are both, like all who have gone before them, simply Satan's fools.

19. For in my jealousy and in the fire of my wrath have I spoken, Surely in that day there shall be a great shaking in the land of Israel; 20. So that the fishes of the sea, and the fowls of the heaven, and the beasts of the field, and all creeping things that creep upon the earth, and all the men that are upon the face of the earth, shall shake at my presence, and the mountains shall be thrown down, and the steep places shall fall, and every wall shall fall to the ground.

The start of the judgment of the armies of Gog is that every wall in the entire land of Israel is shaken down by God. There would appear to be a vastly powerful (Richter Scale 8+) earthquake. This may also involve the collapse of the great mosques and 16th century walls of Jerusalem. The entire land has many of its walls and buildings flattened, even before the enemy army enters it. The earthquake is centred in Israel, as the "Great Rift Valley" fault runs through it, but will be felt around the entire Middle East, and it may even go wider – as these events here appear to be a prelude to the events of the Great Tribulation. This event is a true tectonic "beginning of sorrows" for mankind, the majority of whom are determined to be without God. In every part of the land, the foundations of all buildings are shaken and many fall. Later Ezekiel will speak of the "isles of the sea" (Cyprus and Crete especially) also being judged, possibly by earthquake triggered tsunamis from the shocks to the Great Rift Valley Fault.

The saved people are safe in this as they take the Word seriously and move away from the coastal death zones, but they are confronting the fact that they are entering the last stage of the history of humanity upon this earth in this present universe. This earthquake in Israel is a sign to the unsaved Jewish and Arab people, and a reminder to all the saved of the earth that this world is to be shaken and finally imploded, and a new one created, with the saved of all the ages alone entering the new one. **2 Peter 3:9-18, Revelation 21-22.** It is mankind's last "wake up call" before the Anti-Christ arrives.

The earthquake however will make defence for the Israelis and Arab forces easier, as rubble makes good cover. It makes the attacker's job harder and the defender's job easier. The earthquake seriously slows the enemy's advance, with roads blocked and passes through the mountains covered in rubble. The time it buys means the Western European-American Powers are possibly able to arrive in time in force from the sea to later play a decisive role.

21. And I will call for a sword against him throughout all my mountains, saith the Lord GOD: every man's sword shall be against his brother. 22. And I will plead against him with pestilence and with blood; and I will rain upon him, and upon his bands, and upon the many people that are with him, an overflowing rain, and great hailstones, fire, and brimstone. 23. Thus will I magnify myself, and sanctify myself; and I will be known in the eyes of many nations, and they shall know that I am the LORD

There is total war declared upon the attackers, with the entire population taking up arms in the lands attacked to fight against all who have opposed the Lord their God, even to traitorous members of their own family/neighbours. The Lord also rains fire and hailstones of burning lava (?numbers of artillery delivered tactical nuclear 1 KT weapons I suspect from their description?) upon the enemy forces, and the army of the satanically inspired invaders are wiped out with few survivors (next chapter).

The end of mankind's time upon the earth, even well before the Lord's return, is soaked in blood because of the rebelliousness of unsaved man. This "prelude type" war is a bloody one, with the invading army nearly all destroyed. The "beginning of sorrows", beginning in 1917, when America's entry into WWI makes it truly a World War, is but the start of the judgments that find their end in the Great Tribulation period. **Matthew 24:4-8.**

The start of all this is the carnage of the two World Wars, leading to the deaths of over 100 million people from the warfare and the resultant diseases and famines that flowed from each war. This great Middle Eastern War is the third continuation of these earlier world wars, but it is still the "beginning of sorrows", for the Great Tribulation is far far worse.

The devastation of this war is such that many of the people of the earth will open their Bibles and read the words of Ezekiel and seeing them fulfilled, they will then read Revelation and shudder. Let us hope and pray that they do more than shudder, but actually accept and worship the Lord. **James 2:19, Acts 4:8-12, John 3:16.** This great war is the greatest encouragement to mankind to read the Bible literally ever received by human beings world wide. In the midst of the judgment here there is the last great grace encouragement for each person to see that God has a plan written in advance, and that it has been revealed in ages past for each generation to respond in their own day with faith that will

save them! It is the last chance for the foolish theologians who have peddled their “figurative” explanations to lay them aside and embrace a literal hermeneutic, and be saved from fear and death.

All will know that the Lord is truly God of all, as this act of man’s evil history upon this earth is played out. In some way, not revealed to us, or known at the time by the prophet, this invasion prepares the way for, both tremendous evangelism in the Great Tribulation, and for the acceptance of the one world ruler, the Antichrist. The two paths are starkly drawn attention to by events. **Matthew 7:13-23**. The choices each person makes here are eternal in significance.

It is a watershed event; dividing people into two opinions about God and the needs of mankind, and about the Word of God itself. It may also be the first step leading to the later salvation of the 144,000 Jewish evangelists who will witness during the Great Tribulation. **Revelation 7:1-3**. Clearly the events within the Middle East change all these lands and in Israel may lead their later corrupted leadership to believe they need the Treaty that the Antichrist is going to negotiate, promising false peace between the Western Powers and Israel. Decisions from this time onwards are either fatal or saving! The days of casual living are over for all after this war, and it starts mankind thinking about the “last days”.

These events also lead to the rebuilding of the Temple, and peace between especially Sunni Arab and Jew (although there may be a building of wide reaching peace before – like the treaty between UAE and Israel in September of 2020). There is a lot more in this vision than we see at our point before events unfold, but at the time it unfolds, the Lord’s godly prophets and preachers will see, and preach, and many will have their eyes opened then and later through it. **Ephesians 2:4-13**. God will bring glory from this apparent disaster. **Romans 8:28-39**.

PASTORAL APPLICATION

1. **GOD’S FOREKNOWLEDGE IS SEEN IN THIS PROPHECY.** At least 2600 years before it occurs, the fate of Gog and Magog and their allies is foretold in full. God’s grace is such that none in their armies, and the armies of the Arabs and Jews are left without excuse for any rebellion they raise against his Plan, and all who assault God’s people Israel are judged. This rebellion against God’s clear Plan and purposes is a full and final warning not to mess around with Arab or Jew! It is evidence for unsaved men to see during the Great Tribulation, that attacking Israel is a wrongful thing. It may be the piece of evidence that leads to the salvation of many in that even more terrible time of Great Tribulation. God truly will turn the awfulness of this time into glory for many; cursing will become blessing to all those who accept the Lord as a result of seeing these things.

2. **THE END OF MAN’S TIME UPON THE EARTH BEFORE THE LORD’S RETURN IS A TIME OF REBELLION AND DESTRUCTION, BUT ALSO OPPORTUNITY/EVANGELISM.** This earth is not eternal, and nor are the unsaved and evil rebels, for they all perish with the earth in the end. Satan and all his followers are tied into the present universe, and their power and influence ends at the end of space and time. In the new universe dwells righteousness alone. Those who hated God and His people exist only within the eternal judgment of the “Lake of Fire” in whatever form it takes within the New Creation. Revelation 21:4, 8, 27.

The end of humanity’s present time upon the earth before the Lord’s return is a time of great carnage and sadness, and finally all of saved mankind will be ready to say “goodbye” to this old tired and sin filled planet/universe, with all its memories of evil and the Fall. We still love this earth now, but the events of the years leading up to the Great Tribulation and then its evils, eliminates all that in the end from all the saved of mankind. By the end of the Millennial Kingdom all are ready for this universe to perish and be replaced by the next and greater creation. 2 Peter 3:10-18, Revelation 21-22. Truly the best is yet to come, but these events described by Ezekiel are truly shocking and awful.

EZEKIEL CHAPTER 39**EZEKIEL 39:1- 10**

“1. Therefore, thou son of man, prophesy against Gog, and say, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I am against thee, O Gog, the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal: 2 And I will turn thee back, and leave but the sixth part of thee, and will cause thee to come up from the north parts, and will bring thee upon the mountains of Israel: 3 And I will smite thy bow out of thy left hand, and will cause thine arrows to fall out of thy right hand. 4 Thou shalt fall upon the mountains of Israel, thou, and all thy bands, and the people that is with thee: I will give thee unto the ravenous birds of every sort, and to the beasts of the field to be devoured. 5 Thou shalt fall upon the open field: for I have spoken it, saith the Lord GOD. 6 And I will send a fire on Magog, and among them that dwell carelessly in the isles: and they shall know that I am the LORD. 7 So will I make my holy name known in the midst of my people Israel; and I will not let them pollute my holy name any more: and the heathen shall know that I am the LORD, the Holy One in Israel. 8 Behold, it is come, and it is done, saith the Lord GOD; this is the day whereof I have spoken. 9 And they that dwell in the cities of Israel shall go forth, and shall set on fire and burn the weapons, both the shields and the bucklers, the bows and the arrows, and the handstaves, and the spears, and they shall burn them with fire seven years: 10 So that they shall take no wood out of the field, neither cut down any out of the forests; for they shall burn the weapons with fire: and they shall spoil those that spoiled them, and rob those that robbed them, saith the Lord GOD.”

REFLECTION

1. Therefore, thou son of man, prophesy against Gog, and say, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I am against thee, O Gog, the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal: 2. And I will turn thee back, and leave but the sixth part of thee, and will cause thee to come up from the north parts, and will bring thee upon the mountains of Israel:

Verses 1-20 contain more judgments upon Gog. Why would the prophet apparently “waste his powder” on such repetition? Surely what we have read in the chapter before is enough; what he has said only needs to be said once, does it not? This is a challenge to us all to repeat vital messages in slightly different ways to reinforce the truth. By deliberate repetition we do not insult people; rather, we honour them, taking their plight seriously and giving them several opportunities to come to the truth and be delivered. God is gracious and his Word is always open to lead to salvation until the day of death. The vital importance of this prophetic word is also underlined by this repetition here.

The exact figures of survivors from the evil armies are given here. The Lord will bring the enemy forces right through to the mountains of Israel, which will be their death zone, and there they will be defeated, and 1/6th of the invading army alone survives. Now this passage that records the 1/6th survival, is a question filled passage, and it may be that none of the evil army that murders and pillages survive at all. Who are these survivors? Are these the believers amongst them, forced to accompany the army, are they the baggage train servants only, or are they the ones who repent and withdraw?

We do not know, but the justice of God is such that these are the most likely options as to the identity of the survivors. Two Psalms used by the people of Israel through this time are **Psalms 40:14-17, 68:1-4**. Also refer to **Isaiah 37:27-29**.

In some powerful way these events form the pre-evangelism of Israel that will lead during the Great Tribulation to the salvation of the people. Zechariah 12:10ff. Another thing to reflect upon is the identity of the “Mountains of Israel”. Look at your Bible Maps, [not your modern ones](#), and reflect that under the kingdom of David and Solomon the “mountains of Israel” incorporate much of the mountains of Jordan, Lebanon, and Syria, not just the central spine of Israel. Ezekiel in the following chapters of his prophetic work will reflect the larger view of ancient Israel, not the reduced “rump” of Judah!

3. And I will smite thy bow out of thy left hand, and will cause thine arrows to fall out of thy right hand. 4. Thou shalt fall upon the mountains of Israel, thou, and all thy bands, and the people that is with thee: I will give thee unto the ravenous birds of every sort, and to the beasts of the field to be devoured.

Their weapons will be blasted out of their hands, and they will fall to the ground like ripe fruit. Their bodies will fall upon the mountains by the judgment of God and the birds of Africa and Arabia will gather to devour them. The Jewish people and their Arab supporters and fellow targets at this time, are clearly looked after through this terrible period of invasion and carnage. The Lord removes most of his people from harms away, so that the cleared mountains become the fields of death for the invaders only. **Psalms 46:6-11, 76:1-12, Isaiah 34:1-8**. Do they flee underground to shelters?

This judgment is a “Day of the Lord”, and he will judge the people of Gog, but not stop there, for he will judge all who sought to bring comfort to those who practised this evil hatred of the sons of Abraham. The Lord is going to judge these people and through that judgment He is going to give evidence to that last generation of his power, majesty, and just plan. This is not the final judgment, which will occur at the end of the Great Tribulation, but it prefigures it in many ways. The events described in these two chapters of Ezekiel sets the stage for the last great judgment before the return of the Lord, and the message is clear; there is no escape for those who work evil.

The Great Tribulation is in many ways prepared for by this great invasion and all the nations of mankind are polarized as to attitude to Israel and the Word/Plan of God. Refer to the BTB for studies of the three greatest judgments upon the

earth and see the similarities and differences. COVENANTS – NOAHIC, JUDGMENT – BAPTISM OF FIRE, DAY OF WRATH, and also JUDGMENT: GREAT WHITE THRONE and CHRIST: RETURN OF OUR LORD.

5. Thou shalt fall upon the open field: for I have spoken it, saith the Lord GOD. 6. And I will send a fire on Magog, and among them that dwell carelessly in the isles: and they shall know that I am the LORD. 7. So will I make my holy name known in the midst of my people Israel; and I will not let them pollute my holy name any more: and the heathen shall know that I am the LORD, the Holy One in Israel.

The Lord has spoken the judgment and it will happen because of this, for the Lord's words express truth and certainty. The judgment will fall upon the land of Gog; and even upon the land and cities of Magog itself. Fire will fall upon them and they will know that the Lord is their God, but they will see the truth too late to save themselves from the judgments that will fall upon them. These nations are severely damaged by the wrath unleashed upon them. Is this a nuclear exchange and/or severe earthquakes and other tectonic activity? It is clearly so violent and sudden that it opens the door later to more acceptance by most nations of a one world leader in the Great Tribulation period, and so it is most likely a mix of both, but these events leave possibly hundreds of thousands, or even millions dead!

The judgment also falls upon the "islands of the seas". In these far off islands, the people have become careless of morality and casual about holiness, and so they have sinned in the same way the people of Isaiah and Ezekiel's days have sinned. They have become immoral and disobedient in their worship to the Lord. Their slackness in following the truth has led them into the path of lies, sin and death.

In some way the "isles" are disciplined by the Lord directly; possibly by volcano/earthquake/tsunami. The earthquake that flattens many of the walls in Israel at this time may be repeated world wide and such quakes set off tsunami, just as we have seen in 2001, 2005, 2009 and 2011. A major quake in Israel rupturing the Great Rift Valley fault line could set off tsunami in the Mediterranean at least, hitting Cyprus and Crete (the original "Isles of the Sea"). The "far isles" (New Zealand) in the South Pacific have violated God's Laws by approving Abortion, Same Sex Marriage, Marijuana is on the edge of approval with only 50.7% opposed to it, and NZ has just approved Euthanasia by 67%, and also had voted for Hamas (still firing missiles into Israeli settlements weekly) against Israel in the UN, and compounded that just before the end of 2016! We are all ripe for judgment after such great evils, and it may be that great judgments unfold upon us at this time.

The unbelieving Israelis world wide are also judged in this process, and as for the non-Jewish people upon the earth, just so for the Jewish people. All are judged by the Lord for their evil ways. The Lord will not allow any to pollute his holy name much longer. This invasion and its earthquake precursor is a "wake up call" to the wavering people of the nations, to either get their hearts right with the Lord, and so ignore the "Politically Correct/Popular" options, or they will later throw their lot in with the dictator of the world, who will become the Antichrist.

The events of Ezekiel 38-39 mean that the people of the earth cannot sit on the spiritual fence much longer; they are either for the Lord or for the enemy. Thus the stage is set for the Great Tribulation. We need to be more vigilant over the details of our own life every day, and let prophetic study purify our daily lives. The fruit of prophetic study is that we do not let the Lord's name be taken in vain by ourselves; either in the words of our lips, or by our sinful actions. **Isaiah 43:1-7, 55:1-9**. The fruit of all walking with Jesus is assurance; "For God has not given us a spirit of fear, but of Power, Love, and a Sound/focused Mind". **2 Timothy 1:7**.

8. Behold, it is come, and it is done, saith the Lord GOD; this is the day whereof I have spoken. 9. And they that dwell in the cities of Israel shall go forth, and shall set on fire and burn the weapons, both the shields and the bucklers, the bows and the arrows, and the hand staves, and the spears, and they shall burn them with fire seven years:

The prophet speaks now from the perspective of the completed work of God upon these evil people. In a vision he sees the Lord's judgment completed. We must remember that the prophet "sees" all these things, and the shock and the horror of the nuclear blasted deaths of hundreds of thousands would have stayed with him. This is why he is urgent, even 2600+ years before the events, to record every detail that will help these people resist the temptation to join this doomed rebellion against the Holy One of Israel.

Remember many of the Persian and old Scythian peoples join this evil expedition and the prophet sees that and desires to warn them all, that they might avoid joining the armies. Many will heed the prophet's warning in Iran and the "Stans" and be saved as a result. Though dead for 2600 years the prophet Ezekiel still speaks words of salvation to those who love and serve God in these areas. Ezekiel is seeing this vision in Babylon, the very region that the armies will initially sweep over and he sees that in the vision and is horrified by the carnage. Many believers are in these areas today, and these two chapters stand as God's warning – do not join this domed invasion of the Middle East!

He also has a glimpse of events after this time, and is even more urgent that the people return to righteousness, so that they are ready to play their part in facing this great satanic assault upon Israel, for this is not the last one, the Great Tribulation is the last one! Remember, great revival can be followed quickly by great apostasy, as the days of Josiah were followed quickly by the days of Zedekiah! The events described here are momentous and may produce temporary revival, but it may last no longer than Josiah's did before the Anti-Christ moves.

The amount of weaponry involved is extensive, with seven years "fuel" in the supplies that are gathered by the Israelis after the battle. It is this comment regarding the time for the burning of the weaponry that sways me from the view I held previously, that this was a rebellion at the end of the Millennial Kingdom (Revelation 20:7-9 is clearly another incident involving the same and other people groups), for this prepares the way for the events of the Great Tribulation.

If the Gog-Magog Rebellion/invasion occurs at the end of the Millennium, then my previous comments from the first edition of the Ezekiel commentary would apply. "From this comment it would appear that (if) this war occurs at the end of the Millennium, there is a clean up and settling period after it, perhaps while the Great White Throne judgment occurs for all the unbelievers of history. The Great White Throne Judgment is described in Revelation 20:11 and it may involve a seven year period, or more, to ensure every unbeliever of history is dealt with personally by the Lord."

While this is logical, I no longer believe this to be the case, as the "plain sense" of these chapters indicates that this great invasion occurs in such a way to set the scene for a greater event to follow, and that event is not the Great White Throne Judgment, but the Great Tribulation. These visions are positioned by Ezekiel in his book **after** the "Dry Bones" prophecy, indicating the re-establishment of the unbelieving State of Israel, and **before** the Chapters describing the Lord's rule over the earth, and so logical sequence within the prophet Ezekiel indicates things will unfold in this order.

So the context indicates these events are a prelude to the Great Tribulation – which ends with the Lord's return to rule from the Millennial Temple (Ezekiel 40-48). As we have seen, the events here will prepare all earth's people groups to make their final choice regarding the true identity of the Lord Jesus Christ, and decide whether they will accept and worship Him or the human-demonic alternative – the Anti-Christ. It is the ultimate prelude to the events described in the book of Revelation. As we always note, we will not "fall out with brethren" who disagree with us on these matters.

10. So that they shall take no wood out of the field, neither cut down any out of the forests; for they shall burn the weapons with fire: and they shall spoil those that spoiled them, and rob those that robbed them, saith the Lord GOD

The weapons that are gathered provide the fuel for fires, and the food and money that the army carry provides the living expenses of the Lord's people of the land for the next seven years. Those who came to spoil the land are themselves spoiled and destroyed. The wealth of their army provides the means for the Israelis to rebuild their land, buildings, and industry/farming so that they are more ready for the events of the Great Tribulation.

The extensive damage they experience may explain why they think, in their vulnerability, they really do need the treaty with the Western Powers leader who will later be revealed as the Anti-Christ. Those who have read their bibles as a result of this invasion however now know what is to come, and will ensure the rebuild of the land includes good defensive positions for the last great attack upon the land at the end of the Great Tribulation period.

PASTORAL APPLICATION

1. THE LORD'S PLAN IS A PERFECT PLAN AND ENDS WITH A FINAL JUDGMENT. All who do not do the will of the Lord will face him, from the least to the greatest. Revelation 20:11-15. The great revival of these days after the invasion of Israel does not last, but those who repent and read their Bibles are prepared for the even more momentous days that quickly follow thereafter. The Word protects, when it is read, believed, and applied into daily life. In the Great Tribulation period only one third+ of the nation Israel are going to be saved. Zechariah 12:10ff. Sadly what this means also, is that 2/3 of the people believe and follow the Anti-Christ and his second in command, the Jewish False Prophet. Do not expect to be in the majority believer, from our own days before this great invasion of the Middle East, right through to the end! Few will have faith in these end days before the Tribulation begins. **Luke 18:8.**

EZEKIEL 39:11- 20

"11. And it shall come to pass in that day, that I will give unto Gog a place there of graves in Israel, the valley of the passengers on the east of the sea: and it shall stop the noses of the passengers: and there shall they bury Gog and all his multitude: and they shall call it The valley of Hamongog. 12 And seven months shall the house of Israel be burying of them, that they may cleanse the land. 13 Yea, all the people of the land shall bury them; and it shall be to them a renown the day that I shall be glorified, saith the Lord GOD. 14 And they shall sever out men of continual employment, passing through the land to bury with the passengers those that remain upon the face of the earth, to cleanse it: after the end of seven months shall they search. 15 And the passengers that pass through the land, when any seeth a man's bone, then shall he set up a sign by it, till the buriers have buried it in the valley of Hamongog. 16 And also the name of the city shall be Hamonah. Thus shall they cleanse the land. 17 And, thou son of man, thus saith the Lord GOD; Speak unto every feathered fowl, and to every beast of the field come; gather yourselves on every side to my sacrifice that I do sacrifice for you, even a great sacrifice upon the mountains of Israel, that ye may eat flesh, and drink blood. 18 Ye shall eat the flesh of the mighty, and drink the blood of the princes of the earth, of rams, of lambs, and of goats, of bullocks, all of them fatlings of Bashan. 19 And ye shall eat fat till ye be full, and drink blood till ye be drunken, of my sacrifice which I have sacrificed for you. 20 Thus ye shall be filled at my table with horses and chariots, with mighty men, and with all men of war, saith the Lord GOD."

REFLECTION

11. And it shall come to pass in that day, that I will give unto Gog a place there of graves in Israel, the valley of the passengers on the east of the sea: and it shall stop the noses of the passengers: and there shall they bury Gog and all his multitude: and they shall call it The valley of Hamongog. 12. And seven months shall the house of Israel be burying of them, that they may cleanse the land.

The stink will rise up from the land for many months, from the remains of the bodies of the fallen, and they will all be buried in the land of Israel. Their remains will be granted decent burial there, in the land they came to destroy they will lie in their graves, and there await their turn to be called to the Great White Throne before being sent to the Lake of Fire. All who travel through the land to the feasts in the last years of peace before the Great Tribulation begins will have to block their noses, the smell of death will be so heavy in the air.

It will take seven months to bury all the obvious corpses (given the means of their death - the body parts of the dead), there will be so many "bits" of them, but the terrible job is to be done, and the land is cleansed of the blood that has polluted it. If tactical nuclear weapons are used, as it would appear from the text, then the time frame is understandable, as a thorough search needs to be made for body parts, and some will pop up for years to come. It will be a time of holy actions by the believing Jewish people, as they bury the dead, and then, after seven long months undertake a solemn seven day purification of the land and people from the blood shed. Numbers 19:16-22, Deuteronomy 21. This marks a turning point in the religious life of the land itself, with a priesthood now starting to operate fully in a Mosaic manner as a result of these events. (A Levitical Priesthood is already being trained, and a Chief Priest was appointed in 2019.)

My suspicion is that the nature and carnage of this invasion and its clear fulfilment of these two chapters move the Israeli people to return fully to the Law of Moses and apply its rituals, even to the rebuilding of the Temple on the Temple Mount. The support of the Arab nations at the outset of and all through the invasion may also point to this. If the Saudis support them, and they are "guardians of the holy places of Islam", then a treaty may be envisaged that would allow the new temple to go up alongside the Mosques (if they exist – or be rebuilt at the same time), with peace between surviving Jew and surviving Arab, for all have been through this invasion together and buried family members together.

It appears that the Sunni Moslem Arabs share the battles and their lands experience the carnage of this invasion/earthquakes, as does Israel. There are many world changing things behind these verses that will only be clear when they occur! The great earthquake that starts the battles may even flatten the ancient mosques and the whole site may be a rebuilding site for the two great religions, but certainly a new temple rises here, I suspect with the other buildings (mosques and churches) rebuilt in their present places. Jerusalem then becomes immediately the focal point for all three great monotheistic religions, as it unifies all three on one extended site.

13. Yea, all the people of the land shall bury them; and it shall be to them a renown the day that I shall be glorified, saith the Lord GOD. 14. And they shall sever out men of continual employment, passing through the land to bury with the passengers those that remain upon the face of the earth, to cleanse it: after the end of seven months shall they search.

All the people of the land will be involved in this task, under their political and religious leadership. It is vital that all take part, horrible though it is, for it underlines the disgusting and nasty consequences of evil/sin. Every person will have their stomach turned by this work, and so after a short time there are special "decontamination teams" set up for the task of flagging, identifying, then burying the remains of the dead when they are found.

This would be expected especially if the dead are contaminated by nuclear fallout and special training and processes are needed. Normal work on the land would be disrupted for seven years while trees are replanted and land cleared of contamination from dead bodies of humans and animals, incinerated vehicles, fuel dumps, and munitions.

There is enough time during this clean up period for all the survivors in the land to fully understand God's holiness and his reasons for this judgment, for they have seen the consequences of their own sin upon their land. There is a special group of body buriers (decontamination teams) who travel the land even after the seven months is up to search out for any remnants/piles of bones left behind after the initial seven months, to ensure all are buried. They will purify the land of the bodies of the fallen, and the land will have material prosperity again for the last years of this Age, underlining the grace and mercy and provision of the Lord, in his ability to restore all things to peace, ready for the last acts of the age.

15. And the passengers that pass through the land, when any seeth a man's bone, then shall he set up a sign by it, till the buriers have buried it in the valley of Hamongog. 16. And also the name of the city shall be Hamonah. Thus shall they cleanse the land.

The bones of the dead are to be identified and all buried in one spot by the special burial teams. Even though the peace upon the earth may last only a short while before the Great Tribulation begins, the purity of the land is to be maintained. In these little things we see the care the Lord wants us to take of all things in our own lives, to root out thoughts of evil and so keep ourselves pure before him.

It is like the cleansing of the temple by the Lord before his ministry and just before it ends to ensure that the message of the temple sacrifices gets clearly out to all. The cleansing of the land at this time is a preparation for the Israelis for the days soon to come upon them in the tribulation period.

All travellers through the land will be briefed on what they are to do if they come upon a bone or body part, and every fragment of bone seen is to be marked (small flags on marker sticks) and the teams of buriers will search and find them and bury them immediately. With smart phones and GPS this is now easy. They will cleanse the land, and live in the city named in verse 16 as Hamonah (the place of the multitude), in the Valley of burial, until the work is done. These people do a dirty and defiling job, but they do it as unto the Lord and they are all blessed by their obedience. The city of Hamonah becomes a memorial, as does the valley of burial; a reminder to all mankind of the terrible consequences of fighting against God. Even so the Great Tribulation will still be a "sifting time" for volition for/against God.

This is a vital piece of evidence for the people entering the Great Tribulation, so that they have a physical witness to the Lord's power to judge, so that anyone who seeks the Lord may remember. They can know that He will indeed be victorious, as He was against Gog-Magog, and they can be assured that Antichrist is a liar and will also fall just as Gog did in his evil plans! Even then **only one third of Israelis are saved** in that Tribulation time! **Zechariah 12:10-14:9**.

One commentator has "worked out" if a million able bodied men are in the land, and each one buries one animal/human corpse per day over seven months, then with Sabbath days off work the total could be over 180,000,000 contaminated corpses of men and animals! The valley described is filled to the top with the dead of the rebellious nations! The vastness of this carnage and its aftermath is staggering, beyond words, but the figures given by this commentator are vastly overstated for after nuclear weapon use, as we have seen above, it is parts of bodies that are being identified and buried but the numbers of people killed is clearly excessive.

17. And, thou son of man, thus saith the Lord GOD; Speak unto every feathered fowl, and to every beast of the field come; gather yourselves on every side to my sacrifice that I do sacrifice for you, even a great sacrifice upon the mountains of Israel, that ye may eat flesh, and drink blood. 18. Ye shall eat the flesh of the mighty, and drink the blood of the princes of the earth, of rams, of lambs, and of goats, of bullocks, all of them fatlings of Bashan.

The birds of the lands close by the nation Israel are gathered to eat the flesh of the fallen and they feast themselves for the seven months of the burial process. The Lord offers the birds this sacrifice as a gift to them for these last years of the final Age of rebellious man upon the degenerate earth. They not only eat the flesh of men, but also of all the animals of the land that have been caught up in the carnage.

The battles and the use of fire-based (Nuclear) weapons indiscriminately kill all living things over the mountains that are not hidden by the Lord. The blotting out of all life upon the hills of Israel is total, with hundreds of thousands of people and animals slaughtered in a day, and buried over the next seven months.

19. And ye shall eat fat till ye be full, and drink blood till ye be drunken, of my sacrifice which I have sacrificed for you. 20. Thus ye shall be filled at my table with horses and chariots, with mighty men, and with all men of war, saith the Lord your God.

The "table" for the feast of the birds is groaning under the weight of the corpses of the fallen. The earth itself "groans" at the carnage. There is a total end of all invasion forces here, and as we have already seen, with only 1/6th of the soldiers who came against the land of God alive at the end, if that. It may be that all the evil invaders are killed by the weapons used against them and only their support units well back from the front escape.

Only at the time will the figure of 1/6th be seen and understood, and form more evidence that the words of the Bible hold true (as this equation of survivors is unusually precise and a strange percentage), and so people will surely know that the book of Revelation is to be fulfilled literally, just as Ezekiel has been! It is this result that we see being the main thing in this prophetic word – it is a last, definitive word to the people who figuratively interpret scripture – they are proved wrong – but the majority of religious people will keep following after lying deceit – and so the Anti-Christ has very full powerless liberal churches throughout his reign (until he kills them all) – with his false system of on-world-religion fooling the majority. Tranquilizing moral, religious people with pleasant half truths has always been Satan's strategy and it continues to the end.

PASTORAL APPLICATION

1. TO OPPOSE GOD'S WILL IS A FOOLISH AND FATAL THING. All who rebel against the PLAN OF GOD are cast down, and all who hate God must face their maker and realise their hatred was an evil and stupid thing for which they are rightly judged. The end of this invasion is the last great prophetic trumpet call to mankind before the Rapture/Great Tribulation.

2. SOME JOBS ARE DIRTY AND HARD, BUT THEY ARE TO BE DONE. The burial parties are doing a job that hinders their eating, their sleep, and their worship, but the job is to be done "as unto the Lord", and these people do it cheerfully before the Lord, and make their prayers to the Lord as they go. The Lord may call us to dirty work, and if so, we are to relax, and freely serve the Lord in joy and peace.

EZEKIEL 39:21 - 29

“21. And I will set my glory among the heathen, and all the heathen shall see my judgment that I have executed, and my hand that I have laid upon them. 22 So the house of Israel shall know that I am the LORD their God from that day and forward. 23 And the heathen shall know that the house of Israel went into captivity for their iniquity: because they trespassed against me, therefore hid I my face from them, and gave them into the hand of their enemies: so fell they all by the sword. 24 According to their uncleanness and according to their transgressions have I done unto them, and hid my face from them. 25 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; Now will I bring again the captivity of Jacob, and have mercy upon the whole house of Israel, and will be jealous for my holy name; 26 After that they have borne their shame, and all their trespasses whereby they have trespassed against me, when they dwelt safely in their land, and none made them afraid. 27 When I have brought them again from the people, and gathered them out of their enemies' lands, and am sanctified in them in the sight of many nations; 28 Then shall they know that I am the LORD their God, which caused them to be led into captivity among the heathen: but I have gathered them unto their own land, and have left none of them any more there. 29 Neither will I hide my face any more from them: for I have poured out my spirit upon the house of Israel, saith the Lord GOD.”

REFLECTION

21. And I will set my glory among the heathen, and all the heathen shall see my judgment that I have executed, and my hand that I have laid upon them. 22 So the house of Israel shall know that I am the LORD their God from that day and forward.

The Lord acts to ensure all know the truth about who rules and who is God. The fallen proclaim his power in their deaths and the living praise him for their life and deliverance from/through such carnage. Psalms 76:1-12, Haggai 2:21-22. Those nations and people who remain “heathen” will know before their judgment that they are judged by the God they have ignored, and that their judgment is righteous. Also, the saved of Israel will praise the Lord, and for the rest of time will affirm the truth about the character and acts of Almighty God. The great mystery of human free will is that though people may be forced to recognize truth, they may still hate it, and refuse to embrace and act upon it. **James 2:19.**

The writer here records these things as if even the people of God have forgotten the truth, and they have.... After 2000 years of wandering the earth for Israel it is possible to forget the Lord’s character, as the daily grind of life distracts from holiness, and people fall into a formalistic religious observance rather than a living faith. This great invasion is a wake up call to Israel, and appears to prepare them for the last great challenge they face before the godly remnant of 1/3 of the people welcome their Messiah. Zechariah 12:10ff.

The terrible Holocaust of 1942-1945 saw the establishment of Israel as a nation again, but as a secular State, in “dry bones” unbelief, exactly in accordance with Ezekiel 37. The events described in Ezekiel 38-39 appear to move the nation towards the revival that breaks out in the Great Tribulation period, Zechariah 12:10ff, and prepares them, by their return to the Law of Moses, for the return of the one Moses spoke of. Deuteronomy 5:22-33, 18:15-22.

Today, Israel, like most other nations is secular and narcissistic in its life style and religious life. A sense of “entitlement” to good things is one of the diagnostic pointers to the problem of Narcissism. In the Bible such an attitude is simply referred to as “pride”, “evil”, and arrogance. It is the root of the Devil's problem, and is the destroyer of blessing, and the bringer of judgment upon those who have become so self centred.

This great invasion of Gog-Magog is the end of narcissism for many in Israel, and the start of a revival of interest in spiritual things that leads to the salvation of one third of the nation in the Great Tribulation period. Zechariah 12:10ff. It may also lead to the last great evangelistic push before the Church leaves, certainly just afterwards!

Christ/Messiah centeredness is the only remedy for self centeredness; for if the Lord is our centre, then we have true stability, and a true assessment of our worth and place in the world. This issue of self centeredness remains the great challenge to all mankind, throughout all the ages of history. We are challenged to daily turn from preoccupation with self, and lean upon, worship, and depend upon, the person and power of the Lord Jesus Christ and so position to truly bless and assist others. Psalms 9:9-10, 15-20, 32:1-11, Jeremiah 31:34-35, John 17:1-5, 1 John 5:20. This great invasion, the major earthquake, and the carnage filled conventional and nuclear war at this time is the last “wake up call” for all men and women before the Anti-Christ makes his move.

23. And the heathen shall know that the house of Israel went into captivity for their iniquity: because they trespassed against me, therefore hid I my face from them, and gave them into the hand of their enemies: so fell they all by the sword. 24. According to their uncleanness and according to their transgressions have I done unto them, and hid my face from them.

Having spoken of things yet 2600+ years away, the prophet now turns things back to the Exiles of his own day. None there know that these events are so far away, and so without the reference point we now have from the writings of John the Apostle, they can apply the prophecy directly to themselves. This is all right to do. All prophetic truth is to be applied directly into the present day, with it's lessons of power and encouragement applied into the daily life of the people of God. All scripture is for us, even if its primary application is not “to us”.

The people in the Exile of Ezekiel's day need to see that their slavery is a means to bring glory to God; that their apparent curse, is indeed a blessing in the Lord. In the plan of God, the Lord brings good out of apparent evil, when his people turn their lives and ways over to him. They have suffered exactly what the Lord through Moses said they would; they have no complaint against the Lord, for he warned them thoroughly. Leviticus 26, Deuteronomy 31:17-18, 32:19-30.

This later invasion described by Ezekiel is the start of the breakthrough of the Holy Spirit's ministry of conviction upon Israel and the nations that will lead to the salvation of multitudes during the Great Tribulation period. As the Exiles looked back to the words of Moses, so the people of the yet future day will look back to Ezekiel and bow before the Lord as God indeed.

The unbelieving nations of Ezekiel's day saw that the Israelites had gone into captivity due to their sins, and they will all learn from this fact. The question remains, will Israel learn from these terrible coming events also? They rejected God, opposed his will, and disobeyed his commands, and so they perished at the hand of their enemies. They have been punished in direct relationship to their evils. Sin separates us from blessing. **Psalms 66:18, Isaiah 1:15, Jeremiah 2:9-19, 5:25, Habakkuk 1:13.** There is hope for Israel as the Holy Spirit begins his work upon them as a direct result of this great invasion. It will bear full fruit in the midst of, and at the end of, the Great Tribulation. Zechariah 12:10ff.

The way is open for restoration of blessing, and it remains the same throughout history; it is the way of repentance and forgiveness. **Isaiah 1:16-20, 3:10-11, 59:16-19.** In Ezekiel's day they had all these words of Isaiah, and could have turned to them at any time and changed their viewpoint. After the news of the fall of the city of Jerusalem in 586 BC they will indeed return to the Lord through the ministries of Jeremiah's words, and Ezekiel and Daniel, and blessing will flow again to them and then to their grandchildren, as they return to the land in 535 BC. The revival that Ezekiel leads is just a foretaste of the great revival that will flow directly from the Gog-Magog invasion.

25. Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; Now will I bring again the captivity of Jacob, and have mercy upon the whole house of Israel, and will be jealous for my holy name; 26. After that they have borne their shame, and all their trespasses whereby they have trespassed against me, when they dwelt safely in their land, and none made them afraid.

The promise of return is again given. Both Jeremiah and Ezekiel, as we have seen so many times, remind the people that they are not totally cut off, and that they will return to the Lord their God. The Lord will bring them all back to the land and rebuild the nation from this remnant, and he will remain "jealous for his holy name". The standards of God will not change throughout history; they will remain the same, and all men and women must come to terms with God in truth, not expect God to change to make it easier for them! It is this pride, when a person thinks God should change for them that leads to disaster.

That viewpoint leads people to join satanic plots and plans, and finally they join Satan in the Lake of Fire, for that was his sin. Isaiah 14, Ezekiel 28. Satan expected God to change the rules for him, and to lift him up and share his glory with him, but God will not share his glory with any who demand it. The great good news of the Bible is that God gives us of his glory in and through our relationship with Christ Jesus. We receive glory in Christ by grace, but we are to receive his glory in humility and truth. The truth is we remain his creation, and do not lift ourselves up above our place in the order of created beings. He lifts us up; we do not lift up ourselves! **1 Peter 5:5-9.**

The people Ezekiel speaks to will be blessed in the day when they return from Babylonian Exile, and when they return again after the Lord's Second Advent, and when they return to their hills after the defeat of Gog and his army. Three times will they return to the mountains of Israel, and three times they will be blessed by the Lord and will dwell in safety again. Each time will be after great pressures have been applied to them and they have faced their sin and dealt with all that has separated them from fellowship with their maker and their Saviour. **Psalms 99:1-9, Jeremiah 3:22-24.** Just as Moses had recorded the Lord's Word regarding restoration, so they will be restored; but after their repentance! **Leviticus 26:3-6, 40-45, Deuteronomy 30:1-10.** This occurs in 535 BC and will occur again after the Great Tribulation ends with the return of the Lord. Zechariah 12-14.

27. When I have brought them again from the people, and gathered them out of their enemies' lands, and am sanctified in them in the sight of many nations; 28. Then shall they know that I am the LORD their God, which caused them to be led into captivity among the heathen: but I have gathered them unto their own land, and have left none of them any more there. 29. Neither will I hide my face any more from them: for I have poured out my spirit upon the house of Israel, saith the Lord GOD.

The restoration of the nation will be full and final in the end, with no Israelites left in any other land than Israel after the Lord's return. From this passage it may be that the invasion of Gog leads to the capture of many Israelites, and if that is so, then there is a promise of full restoration of them all. In each earlier time of invasion there was a dispersion of the Israelites, and the Lord promises a full restoration of them all.

In the return of the 6th Century BC, 535 BC, the majority of the Jewish people stayed behind in Babylon, and the colony of Jews there remained strong until the Medieval period. There were more Jews in Alexandria in Egypt than in Jerusalem when the last great revolt began in 67 AD, and the numbers of the diaspora exceeded the number of Jews in Israel until 2019. The Jews world wide today are almost the same as the numbers in the land in 2022 for the first time since 586 BC.

The return in the days after the Lord's Second Advent is full, final and complete. They will then have a thousand final years of blessing in their land before this old world and its tired universe is wound up. **2 Peter 3:10-18**. There will be a full and final last pouring of the Holy Spirit upon all the surviving believers in the end of the ages of mankind upon this present earth. The ages of fallen man end in blood in the Tribulation, but are finished in the fire of the Spirit before the last day of the winding up of all things associated with this present creation, and it's replacement by another eternal one.

PASTORAL APPLICATION

1. **EVIL IS FINALLY TO BE REPLACED BY WORSHIP in TIME and ETERNITY.** The end of this phase of the history of fallen mankind is God's judgment. The Lord wipes all tears away, and the world finally completes it's life with the blessing of the creator upon it and it's surviving people, and he brings them through into a new universe, where the limits of space and time no longer apply, and where Satan and all his angels and human servants are no more remembered.

2. **PRE-OCCUPATION WITH SELF HIDES MAN FROM FELLOWSHIP WITH GOD.** We must challenge all people to step outside their own self centeredness and worship the Lord in spirit and in truth. The Devil always tries to get people to be preoccupied with their own things, and all our efforts are to be directed at this challenge; to lift the eyes up and see God for who He is.

3. **THE PLAN OF GOD IS CERTAIN.** From 2600+ years in the past, the words of Ezekiel will burn into the hearts and minds of the people of the closing days of the world before the Lord's Second Advent, and they will all know that this is truly the work of God. There will be plenty of evidence of God's work to counter the satanic deception of those days.

APPENDICES

APPENDIX 1 - So Called "apocalyptic genre literature"

Is there any such thing as "apocalyptic genre" writing in the Bible?

Is it not actually just one aspect of over-all prophetic revelation, that the "scoffers" and "mockers" (**1 Timothy 4:1-5, 2 Timothy 3:1-7, 4:1-5, 2 Peter 3:1-9**) hate most? Unbelievers must exclude all prophetic truth from contention or focus, for it is God's revelation that proves the things that "scoffers and mockers" hate most – that God is active in history, that God speaks, and that God will judge them all.

They hate these biblical passages of prophetic truth because they prove absolutely that God has an Eternal Plan, and that HE has revealed it through the prophetic voices He has chosen to use in space-time, to give us a glimpse of how things truly will end, and how space-time implodes, and how we enter into eternity-infinity.

The prophetic words of the Holy Scriptures are all an open rebuke to all atheists (rather "anti-theists" – for they hate the idea of a God who demands anything of them). The sections they identify as "apocalyptic literature" are the parts of prophecy that are particularly confronting for them. They call them "apocalyptic literature", to separate them with unbelieving surgical precision from the rest of Scripture, and so remove all things that disturb their comfortable theology of a god that doesn't demand anything of mankind, nor intrude into history.

The truth however is – that history is "His-Story". The God of the Bible is the Creator of this space-time universe, and HE has revealed systematically through Space-Time that HE is active in his creation and expects worship from his creatures, and that HE will wind this whole S-T creation up one day, and that our choices right now determine our eternal destiny!!!!

It is this truth that the liberal/unbelieving theologians have to distract people from, hide from them, or openly attack and remove from Scripture, rendering them just "literature" of ancient people, who were not as smart, cultured and savvy as they are!!! The new field of "cognitive archaeology" is very selectively applied to the ancient world by unbelieving scholars. The Bible is not seen as a legitimate historical "artefact" that emerges from its cultural-spiritual context within ancient Israel, rather it is not believed unless there is other "evidence".

Religion is seen by unspiritual people as a system that emerges from societies and "helps regulate the social and economic processes of society". Even modern texts then quote Karl Marx..... This is evil unbelieving nonsense! God's prophetic Word does not "emerge" from a society; it is God's voice into society to transform it from above! This is not a "process" than unsaved men and women can tolerate – so they refer to

biblical revelation in terms of “literature”, not God’s Word to mankind, but women and men’s words about the “god idea”.

It’s all in the definitions....

If you are an atheist/liberal and you identify the aspects of prophetic teaching that are particularly difficult to get around, or accept with an atheistic, or “non-interventional god”, and they can be fitted into a category of writing, especially if the later fake versions of them have a distinct style, it is the perfect solution to group the prophetic words as an invented “category”, and then you can discard the lot! “Apocalyptic Genre Literature” is simply a phrase that utilizes this device – a term to lump false teaching and heretical books together with true prophetic words in order to exclude the uncomfortable prophetic words.

It is our contention that the so called “liberal theologians”, (read unbelievers), have developed this concept of “apocalyptic literature” from the false doctrine teachings of the ancient world, and then placed all sections of prophetic writing that are uncomfortable to them under their invented category/genre title. By joining the clearly satanic false teachings with the true prophets they achieve two results immediately. **Firstly** they lower God’s Word to a collection of writings, that educated “critical scholars” can dissect and remove offensive teaching from. **Secondly** they have combined the false with the true; the pseudapigraphal writers of fiction are linked in their sentences with the great prophetic voices of Scripture and all are thereby reduced to fiction.

The term “apocalyptic” is we argue a simple device to surgically remove the truth. It is designed by the “critical/unbelieving” academics to obscure the truth that this is the “visited planet”, and that God is active in history, and God knows the end from the beginning, as He is the creator of this temporary space-time universe, and so HE can see all events from start to end; creation to wrap up! Genesis 1:1, John 1:1, 2 Peter 3:9-18.

These academics are starting from their unbelief based conclusion, then pretending to the world that they have proved it! They mock genuine believers, and it is time for genuine believers to mock them thoroughly – for they are not philosophically sound in any of their conclusions.

They begin with the hypothesis that there can be no prophecy! They begin with a concept of God, if they have one at all, that is the divine watch-maker, not interested in the universe that has been “made”, or has “evolved”. They have a god that has no accountability, no judgment, no rewarding of saints in eternity, for all return to star dust in their viewpoint. In their world view there is no personal God demanding responses from our free-will choices within space-time.

They do not believe in the possibility of prophetic truth being revealed in advance of events. They accept accidental concurrence at times, but cannot fathom that prophecy could direct people to action. The very thought that the Magi, led by Daniel’s prophetic words (Daniel 2:47-49, 9:24-27), would have headed out when they saw the star in Virgo, to travel several thousand miles to worship the King, such a thought is impossible to them...

These mocking unbelievers, masquerading as “Christians”, must refer to the Magi “story” as a “mythic element” of the incarnation story, as they cannot accept its truth, for they would not have joined the Magi on their journey! They do not accept Daniel as a historic and prophetic voice, but nor do they accept problematic sections of Isaiah, Jeremiah, Ezekiel, Zechariah... to these academics the truly great prophets are just primitive voices of ancient Israel, with all their words to be taken as moral injunctives, not literal directives! Note, even though Jesus refers to Daniel as a “Prophet”, they reject this, for they know more than the Lord, for He was just a “child of his times”.... Matthew 24:15, Mark 13:14.

These modern people follow the theologians Clement and Origen of Alexandria from the third century of our era. These two men and their school looked at the land that once was Israel, and it was a blasted, non-Jewish place in their day and they didn’t see any possibility of the Jews coming back as a people. These theologians re-interpret scripture to fit their own world view and their time, as they could not see how prophecy could be literally fulfilled in their day. They make the mistake of reading Israelite Scripture in terms of Greco-Egyptian philosophical concepts, and what they could see in their days, and so they robbed their church of truth because their minds didn’t “get it”.

Do not be misled by the modern “apocalyptic genre scholars”, mighty in their own eyes as they are, and dominant in Western Seminaries as they now are, for they follow the Alexandrians, but sadly they go further. Clement and Origen may be indeed believers, but most of these modern academics do not come anywhere

near the historic definition of apostolic faith! **Jude 3**. These people reject the very concept of a Creator-Saviour-God, they reject the incarnation of Jesus as the unique God-Man, come to be the efficacious propitiatory sacrifice for the sin of mankind. They reject the miracles of Jesus, let alone all others recorded in Scripture, they reject the physical bodily resurrection of Jesus, the ascension, and they certainly do not want to have a bar of any Second Advent Return to rule!

They begin with their belief/unbelief – there is no prophecy! They then surgically remove anything from scripture that resembles the fake/counterfeits of the “apocalyptic authors” of the Maccabean period and Gnostic period afterwards, and lump scripture in with the fakes labelling them all as, “apocalyptic literature/elements”, that are to be interpreted in terms of the fakes!!!! That is – they are to be spiritualized away as dramatic expressions of genuine beliefs of these human authors, who were grappling with the promises of God’s Word that didn’t appear to be happening, or be possible to happen! They have excluded the true by its combination with the false! It is a trick from Satan’s tool box – beware such people - they are enemy, not friends of truth!

Now, if we consider the fake works of early apocalyptic writing, and also add in other gnostic heresy work of later centuries, I would agree. The authors of this nonsense are indeed grappling with the reality that God doesn’t appear to be acting in accordance with their theology! GOD is certainly not doing so!! Their theology is rubbish! Reason = they are as wrong as Job’s theologian “friends” were! **Job 42:7-9!** From the oldest book in the Bible (JOB) to the last book written, First John, we are warned against following the theology of men who have begun their system by excluding the fact that God acts in history according to His Eternal Plan, not according to our capacity to understand things! Would we presently judge our Christian Theology by a recent Jehovah Witness publication? No, most certainly not! Neither should we accept Maccabean or Gnostic rubbish as anything relevant to Christian beliefs and biblical revelation!

God’s Word has a number of warnings against thinking that your theology has got the truth summed up neatly within your tiny brain’s invented system.... Job, the earliest book in the Bible makes it very clear – everything that the “friends”, the false theologians have said (both the men who sound like John Calvin and those who sound like modern Pentecostals) are **100% wrong!!!** Isaiah will sum it up beautifully with a direct revelation from God!

Isaiah 55:8. *“For my thoughts are not your thoughts, neither are my ways your ways, saith the Lord. For as the heavens are higher than the earth, so are my ways higher than your ways, and my thoughts, than your thoughts.”*

Humility is the start of wisdom, not the arrogance of the mockers of genuine Scripture!!!! Believing you know more than you can know is a truly dumb starting point, but that is where the “scholars” begin and they separate texts from their contexts and so they come up with pretexts.... As Dr David L Cooper said so many years ago, “when the plain sense, makes common sense, do not seek any other sense lest you find nonsense...”

These unbelieving writers want to exclude Job, Moses, Isaiah, Jeremiah, Ezekiel, Zechariah, John the Apostle and any other “section” of work that they find uncomfortable if its true... They would not have got on their camels and joined the Magi. My question to you is, would you have joined the Magi, or would you also have followed the “Job’s-friends/Alexandrian school of theology” and stayed at home and tutted into your coffee, “its all figurative.....nothing is going to happen....” Beware of this viewpoint – it is condemned by God’s prophets and preachers down the centuries – these false teachers are on the wrong side of history.

Read **1 Timothy 4:1-5, 2 Timothy 3:1-7, 4:1-5, 2 Peter 3:1-9**. Pick your company on this issue believer – are you with the unbelievers with their false German Theology influenced PhDs, or are you with the Apostles?

Would you have been with the Magi on that two thousand kilometer ride, or do you not accept prophetic truth yourself?

The “Angelic Conflict” is at the heart of this controversy!

The Bible is very clear that Satan is the great counterfeiter. The “angel of false light” who delights in deception, distortion, and distraction from the truth that would otherwise galvanize believers into action to “redeem the time” and be active in their world, heeding the Holy Spirit’s teaching and leading.

Oh, I forgot to tell you – the people who speak about “apocalyptic literature” don't accept the existence of a personal Devil either... they believe that monotheism was an invention of Akhenaton and that the idea of a devil developed from the Persian philosophies much later still..... Great beliefs are they not??? – and clearly not biblical, and yet the foolish theologians of so many of our seminaries have swallowed the lot....

From the earliest book in the Bible, JOB, we have clear teaching about Satan, but they will ignore anything that doesn't suit them... Don't expect consistent logic from these people – “calling themselves wise they have become fools”... **Proverbs 14:8-9, Romans 1:22, Ephesians 5:15-18.....**

They have simply entered Scripture with their naturalistic and limited minds, but rather than accepting their limits and humbly bowing before God, they reject anything that is “too weird” for their tiny minds to handle and mock all concepts that indicate God is going to judge this earth at any point. Their error is to join the unbelieving authors of the apocalyptic nonsense of the past and say, “because God hasn't judged at this point, he clearly wont, or we must spiritualize the judgment to another time and space....” They may as well say, “Let's not try to work this out darlings, let's just worship the great architect and feel as good, and be as good as we can be...”

The choice is a very stark one for us today!

We either join the “mockers” who do not believe God speaks into space-time from eternity-infinity, and who do not believe HE has revealed his Plan to his prophets through the millennia of space-time. Or we accept that God has spoken, and that the Plan can be known, as far as it has been revealed, and that the last elements will be revealed only to those who “need to know” at the time. We wont be date setting or pretending we have all the facts, for we do not, but we wont be denying the relevance of prophecy either....

As Bible believers we ought to believe that God is real, God is active in our world, that Satan is also real but inferior, and that since the Cross and Empty Tomb he is a defeated, yet still dangerous deceptive enemy. We can know that this is the visited planet and be assured that it will be visited again! Every Communion Service should contain this biblical affirmation – “Until He comes...” These things are the clear teaching of Scripture, but they are hated by those who don't want a God who tells them what to do and holds them accountable, let alone tells history in advance...

We can know, as we have God's Word on it, that eternal judgment upon all who desire evil rather than good is certain, but delayed in grace until the exact moment called for by the Plan. We don't need to grasp at the false and unnecessary academic solutions of apocalyptic literature nonsense... We have the sure words of prophetic revelation, and we don't need to surgically divide it up with the false hermeneutic framework of the unbelieving theologians from the hymn singing Rotary Clubs.

Since 2016, when the background radiation from the “moment of creation” (the scientists term) was discovered by scientists here in New Zealand, none can ignore the space-time universe was “made”. None can argue, and have respect amongst physicists, that space-time did not “begin”, and that eternity-infinity is where it all began and where it will all go....

It's not a big step philosophically back to Genesis 1:1, or John 1:2, but it is an enormous step when you don't want a God who acts in history, and to whom you are desperate not to be accountable!

The Bible is saturated with references to the “Angelic Conflict” and the fabric of history is the battle between the Devil and his angelic hordes, and the free will of each human being and the elect angels. There is a great conflict being worked out here, and denial of it isn't helpful to your survival if it is real.... **IF its not real** then throw away the Bible and become a Buddhist – for that is the only logical option. **Either** there is a battle in space-time that we are part of, **or** there is the challenge to simply adjust to, and relax with everything, before returning to star dust!!!!

That is the heart of the issue with all the nonsense written about “apocalyptic genre literature” – it is written by people who do not want to sound like “literalists”. They fear sounding like Jehovah's Witnesses with literal and highly coloured pictures of their view of the Millennial Kingdom. While this fear is understandable – if there is a literal fulfilment of prophetic truths, then all comparison to cults is to be laid aside, and God's Word and His Prophetic voices are to be heard – where-ever they lead us.....

If there is an eternal plan for us, and if we are woven into the great battle between good and evil, then we need to have clarity on our role, responsibilities, accountabilities, our enemies, and our destiny (and the destiny of our enemy).

The full biblical revelation is very scary, very confronting, and very clearly as literal as our own death is! Your death is literal and real – you “go” – the question is only “Where to?” Life is terminal here on this space-time limited temporary planet. We are however here for a purpose, and it is not of our own making if we want to enter eternity with God; it is God’s purpose we must find if we seek eternity with God!!!!

This is the issue at its core – do we seek eternity with God or not? Do we seek the Creator-Saviour’s purpose for our lives or not?

Will we allow the enemy’s deception to rob us of the prophetic words that have come? Our message as a ministry is loud and strident - Open the Word and hear it as it was revealed believer! Don’t bring your limited mind to the equation, allow your mind to be transformed by the Holy Spirit. Hear God’s prophets, and do not limit yourself to the philosophies of limited men and women.

Do not waste time with the fake fictions of the Apocrypha, the Pseudapigrapha, and the other Gnostic nonsense of later centuries, rather, follow the Apostles and embrace all of the Canonical Scriptures and allow the Holy Spirit to teach you – and so redeem the short time you have here on this temporary planet.

Proverbs 3:1-8, 4:23-27, Psalm 90:12, Ephesians 5:15-18.

APPENDIX 2 Alexander the Great and Aristotle - and the Koine Form of the Greek Language

It is sad to reflect how the “evolutionary hypothesis” has permeated all our culture today, even to the reinterpreting of events of history. Modern philologists and historians are now saying that the Koine version of the many Greek Language dialects, “evolved from the spread of Greek language following the conquests of Alexander the Great”. (Andriotis, Bubenik, Christidis.)

This is clearly illogical nonsense. The Koine had to be organized as a systematic means of communication **before** Alexander ordered “Quick March” with his mixed Greek language armed forces to invade Persia. Had he not had this organized, with Alexander’s well known efficiency, the Army would not have had cohesion in communication – a fatal thing when heading out to fight a force outnumbering you by 10:1, and always 3:1 in local battles. Alexander had learned that the Greeks fought each other over everything, from the Games to the way they spoke. He had to eliminate this confusion/conflict, and have an “equal” language that united them all and offended few. It couldn’t be the Macedonian dialect, or it smacked of conquest.

The “evolutionary boys and girls” of today, and earlier scholars like Hatzidakis, identify that at its core Koine has a “stable nucleus” of Attic (Athenian) Greek, that gives the “common” language its basic structure, with some Ionic forms, and with various admixtures brought about through dialect levelling with other varieties of the Greek language. With its Attic core, grounded in classical literature, he had the historic roots around which a common language could be “formed”, and we argue strongly, it was consciously “formed”, and grammar/lexicons made, to teach it to all his mixed language troops **before the Army marched!**

The Koine language is seen in surviving literature by the 280s BC, but it is clearly around and in wide spread use before that time by which time it has taken easy and confident literary form. The most logical explanation (and we argue the only intelligent explanation) is that it is actually consciously developed in the 330s BC as a means of uniting the mixed Greek-Macedonian troops of Alexander’s Army, before the expedition marched. It couldn’t “evolve/develop” later because the Empire fell apart within months of Alexander’s death. We argue that this was an invented composite language, and that an individual, with the power to do so (Alexander), instituted it for ease of giving orders within his mixed army, and for all communication with his administration from the point of invasion across the Hellespont onwards. It survived because it worked so well.

It makes most sense to see Alexander’s great tutor, Aristotle, as the one who develops the concept of a “common Greek” that all could understand easily, without any misunderstanding of what was being communicated. Aristotle was from an Attic language background and that would account for the basic structure being Attic. This development of a “common Greek language” would accord with Alexander and

Aristotle's philosophical viewpoints on politics and the Greek's place in the world, for without clear, concise and unambiguous communication they could not both out-administer, or out-fight the Persians, nor influence the wider world with their ideas.

Aristotle's own use of the Attic Greek was seen in his use of prepositions as a "forerunner of Koine Greek", by classical scholar P T Stevens as far back as 1936. This is the best evidence of Aristotle as the "developer", to use an IT term. The argument is that no-one "invents" a language, but actually, it has occurred recently with modern Hebrew being developed by specifically assigned scholars from a core of ancient Hebrew, and then it was formally "instituted" for national use. This process occurred because there was a parallel political and military reason for it to what existed for Alexander the Great's "great crusade against the Persians".

The Jewish State needed one language, without confusion for its governing and fighting; for both its administration and its Army order transmission. It needed to unify people who felt by their varied languages and cultures quite different after centuries apart, so that both European (Ashkenazi) and Oriental (Sephardic) forms of Yiddish and other dialects that had developed through the centuries of diaspora were left behind, and all were united in the "new" Hebrew (based on the ancient biblical core).

Although this argument about Koine's development remains circumstantial, it is the only logical explanation for what we see in history. It makes sense that Aristotle was set the task by young Alexander to build a language to unify Greek City State armies, and then Greece itself, ready for the "great crusade" against Persia. While each group of Greeks continued to speak different dialects they had reason to see difference rather than similarity, and that produces disunity.

Three years fighting rebellions after his father's murder taught Alexander this and gave him the time to work out final details, set the task for Aristotle to work on, and fine tune any difficulties. Alexander was smart enough not to select a Macedonian form of the Greek language, as it would simply "prove" that the rest were "conquered", and through resentment would build up later dissent and rebellions amongst the other more minor Greek City States. The selection of Aristotle to undertake the task makes sense, as he was the one other great mind of the day, and with his grasp of the Classic, Attic, and Ionian Greek, he could put together a really effective communication tool for army and administrative use and write the Grammar and Lexicons for training use.

Alexander clearly used these later, when ordering all captured peoples to use the language – handing them the training material and giving them a limited time to learn so they could speak to him in Koine Greek! Alexander was very specific about his demands; you did exactly what he said, and you were his friend, or you didn't, and he killed you all and levelled your city into the dust.

Even though Alexander tried to bring unity, it fell apart after his death and Aristotle himself was on the receiving end of anti-Macedonian feeling, being forced to flee from the Lyceum in Athens, and "retire" to Epiris where he died within a few months. Maybe he was particularly blamed for the Macedonian Military-Political and Koine linguistic "takeovers", by helping Alexander with the Koine language development.

The success of the Koine was guaranteed however by Alexander's practice of "ordering" all conquered places to use his new language to speak with him, refusing to use any other language than the one he developed to use for his Empire building. He understood that if you change people's language, over one generation you change their thinking patterns and culture.

We see this with Chinese migrants within two decades in New Zealand, where their children speak mainly English with Kiwi accents and the very structure of their thinking has changed, and with it how they define themselves. They are no longer defining themselves as "Chinese". It all "fits" with Alexander's grandiose scheme for world domination – stopped by his own "god-like" attitudes and the malice of his generals, who murder him, exactly as the Bible had predicted 200 years before by the prophet Daniel. Daniel 8:8.

The brilliant success of the "Koine" language itself meant that it didn't die with Alexander, for by the time of his death it was in use from Greece to India and would remain so for the next 600 years in many places. It would become the language of the new Christian Church, and became the common language of the Jews of the Diaspora, with/alongside Aramaic, with which it had extensive parallels in form. Both languages allow precise ways of saying things, although Aramaic would last much longer, without much change. Aramaic is the language of the conquering Babylonians in 605 BC and is still today the language of parts of Iraq and Syria, alongside Arabic. Only Akkadian had a longer usage as a diplomatic-trade language (lingua franca).

The Koine Greek became, due to its clear grammar of use and precision, the preferred language for scholars also, and so the new Universities that grew up in Alexander's conquest area used it to teach and write in. The great universities, medical schools and libraries of Athens, Tarsus, and Alexandria sought out the "great books" in the Koine Greek, so all could read them. The educated Jewish people of the large Greek cities were very keen to prove that the, "best thoughts of the Greek authors came from Moses or the prophets". This is a position we accept at EBCWA – seeing in Moses and many of the prophets better philosophical thinking than much emerging from Greece, and several centuries beforehand!

Around 280 BC Ptolemy Philadelphus required a Greek translation of the Torah of Moses, securing men from Jerusalem to produce an "authorized" Greek translation, for his library in Alexandria. Over the next century the entire Old Testament was translated into Greek, becoming known as the Septuagint (LXX). It became the preferred "Bible" of the New Church and was used for the evangelization of the eastern Roman world.

Look at how God has woven things together, and then look around into the fabric of our world. See past the increasing corruption, and One world government emergence, and ask only one question for each thing that unfolds before you – "What is God doing here, and what is my role in this?"